

# Welcome

Thank you for choosing Freenove products!

## How to Start

When reading this, you should have downloaded the ZIP file for this product.

Unzip it and you will get a folder containing tutorials and related files. Please start with this PDF tutorial.

- ! Unzip the ZIP file instead of opening the file in the ZIP file directly.
- ! Do not move, delete or rename files in the folder just unzipped.

## Get Support

Encounter problems? Don't worry! Refer to "TroubleShooting.pdf" or contact us.

When there are packaging damage, quality problems, questions encountering in use, etc., just send us an email. We will reply to you within one working day and provide a solution.

[support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## Attention

Pay attention to safety when using and storing this product:

- This product is not suitable for children under 12 years of age because of small parts and sharp parts.
- Minors should use this product under the supervision and guidance of adults.
- This product contains small and sharp parts. Do not swallow, prick and scratch to avoid injury.
- This product contains conductive parts. Do not hold them to touch power supply and other circuits.
- To avoid personal injury, do not touch parts rotating or moving while working.
- The wrong operation may cause overheat. Do not touch and disconnect the power supply immediately.
- Operate in accordance with the requirements of the tutorial. Fail to do so may damage the parts.
- Store this product in a dry and dark environment. Keep away from children.
- Turn off the power of the circuit before leaving.

Any concerns?  [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## About

Freenove provides open source electronic products and services.

Freenove is committed to helping customers learn programming and electronic knowledge, quickly implement product prototypes, realize their creativity and launch innovative products. Our services include:

- Kits for learning programming and electronics
- Kits compatible with Arduino®, Raspberry Pi®, micro:bit®, ESP8266®, etc.
- Kits for robots, smart cars, drones, etc.
- Components, modules and tools
- Design and customization

To learn more about us or get our latest information, please visit our website:

<http://www.freenove.com>

## Copyright

All the files provided in the ZIP file are released under [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License](#). You can find a copy of the license in the ZIP file.



It means you can use these files on your own derived works, in part or completely. But not for commercial use.

Freenove® brand and logo are trademarks of Freenove Creative Technology Co., Ltd. Must not be used without permission.



Other registered trademarks and their owners appearing in this document:

Arduino® is a trademark of Arduino LLC (<https://www.arduino.cc/>).

Raspberry Pi® is a trademark of Raspberry Pi Foundation (<https://www.raspberrypi.org/>).

micro:bit® is a trademark of Micro:bit Educational Foundation (<https://www.microbit.org/>).

ESPRESSIF® and ESP8266® are trademarks of ESPRESSIF Systems (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (<https://www.espressif.com/>).

**Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)**

# Contents

Welcome.....	i
Contents .....	1
Prepare.....	5
ESP8266.....	6
Chapter 0 Ready (Important) .....	9
0.1 Installing Thonny (Important) .....	9
0.2 Basic Configuration of Thonny .....	14
0.3 Installing CH340 (Important).....	16
0.4 Burning Micropython Firmware (Important).....	27
0.5 Testing codes (Important).....	34
0.6 Thonny Common Operation.....	42
Chapter 1 LED (Important).....	48
Project 1.1 Blink .....	48
Project 1.2 Blink .....	57
Chapter 2 Button & LED .....	66
Project 2.1 Button & LED.....	66
Project 2.2 MINI table lamp.....	74
Chapter 3 LED Bar .....	79
Project 3.1 Flowing Light .....	79
Chapter 4 Analog & PWM .....	85
Project 4.1 Breathing LED.....	85
Project 4.2 Meteor Flowing Light .....	93
Chapter 5 RGBLED .....	99
Project 5.1 Random Color Light.....	99
Project 5.2 Gradient Color Light.....	105
Chapter 6 NeoPixel .....	108
Project 6.1 NeoPixel .....	108
Project 6.2 Rainbow Light.....	114
Chapter 7 Buzzer .....	117

---

Project 7.1 Doorbell.....	117
Project 7.2 Alertor .....	123
<b>Chapter 8 Serial Communication.....</b>	<b>126</b>
Project 8.1 Serial Print.....	126
Project 8.2 Serial Read and Write .....	130
<b>Chapter 9 ADC Converter .....</b>	<b>132</b>
Project 9.1 Read the Voltage of Potentiometer.....	132
<b>Chapter 10 Potentiometer &amp; LED .....</b>	<b>138</b>
Project 10.1 Soft Light .....	138
Project 10.2 Color Light .....	141
Project 10.3 Soft Rainbow Light.....	145
<b>Chapter 11 Photoresistor &amp; LED .....</b>	<b>149</b>
Project 11.1 NightLamp .....	149
<b>Chapter 12 Thermistor .....</b>	<b>154</b>
Project 12.1 Thermometer .....	154
<b>Chapter 13 74HC595 &amp; LED Bar Graph .....</b>	<b>159</b>
Project 13.1 Flowing Water Light.....	159
<b>Chapter 14 74HC595 &amp; 7-Segment Display.....</b>	<b>165</b>
Project 14.1 7-Segment Display.....	165
Project 14.2 4-Digit 7-Segment Display.....	171
<b>Chapter 15 74HC595 &amp; LED Matrix .....</b>	<b>176</b>
Project 15.1 LED Matrix.....	176
<b>Chapter 16 Relay &amp; Motor.....</b>	<b>184</b>
Project 16.1 Relay & Motor .....	184
<b>Chapter 17 Motor &amp; Driver .....</b>	<b>191</b>
Project 17.1 Control Motor with Potentiometer.....	191
<b>Chapter 18 Servo .....</b>	<b>200</b>
Project 18.1 Servo Sweep.....	200
Project 18.2 Servo Knop .....	206
<b>Chapter 19 Stepper Motor.....</b>	<b>210</b>
Project 19.1 Stepping Motor.....	210

---

Chapter 20 LCD1602 .....	218
Project 20.1 LCD1602 .....	218
Chapter 21 Ultrasonic Ranging .....	225
Project 21.1 Ultrasonic Ranging .....	225
Project 21.2 Ultrasonic Ranging .....	231
Chapter 22 Matrix Keypad .....	234
Project 22.1 Matrix Keypad .....	234
Chapter 23 Infrared Remote .....	240
Project 23.1 Infrared Remote Control .....	240
Project 23.2 Control LED through Infrared Remote .....	246
Chapter 24 Hygrothermograph DHT11 .....	251
Project 24.1 Hygrothermograph .....	251
Project 24.2 Hygrothermograph .....	257
Chapter 25 Infrared Motion Sensor .....	261
Project 25.1 Infrared Motion Detector with LED Indicator .....	261
Chapter 26 Attitude Sensor MPU6050 .....	267
Project 26.1 Read a MPU6050 Sensor Module .....	267
Chapter 27 RFID .....	273
Project 27.1RFID read UID .....	273
Project 27.2RFID Read and Write .....	283
Chapter 28 WiFi Working Modes .....	291
Project 28.1 Station mode .....	291
Project 28.2 AP mode .....	296
Project 28.3 AP+Station mode .....	300
Chapter 29 TCP/IP .....	304
Project 29.1 As Client .....	304
Project 29.2 As Server .....	319
Chapter 30 Smart Home .....	325
Project 30.1 Control_LED_through_Web .....	325
Chapter 31 Soldering Circuit Board .....	331
Project 31.1 Soldering a Buzzer .....	331
Project 31.2 Soldering a Flowing Water Light .....	335



---

What's next? .....	339
End of the Tutorial.....	339

# Prepare

ESP8266 is a micro control unit with integrated Wi-Fi launched by Espressif, which features strong properties and integrates rich peripherals. It can be designed and studied as an ordinary Single Chip Microcontroller(SCM) chip, or connected to the Internet and used as an Internet of Things device.

ESP8266 can be developed both either with C/C++ language or micropython language. In this tutorial, we use micropython. With Micropython is as easy to learn as Python with little code, making it ideal for beginners. Moreover, the code of ESP8266 is completely open-source, so beginners can quickly learn how to develop and design IOT smart household products including smart curtains, fans, lamps and clocks.

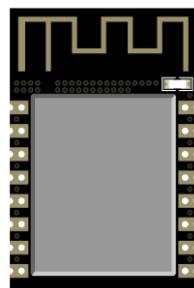
We divide each project into four parts, namely Component List, Component Knowledge, Circuit and Code. Component List helps you to prepare material for the experiment more quickly. Component Knowledge allows you to quickly understand new electronic modules or components, while Circuit helps you understand the operating principle of the circuit. And Code allows you to easily master the use of ESP8266 and its accessory kit. After finishing all the projects in this tutorial, you can also use these components and modules to make products such as smart household, smart cars and robots to transform your creative ideas into prototypes and new and innovative products.

In addition, if you have any difficulties or questions with this tutorial or toolkit, feel free to ask for our quick and free technical support through [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## ESP8266

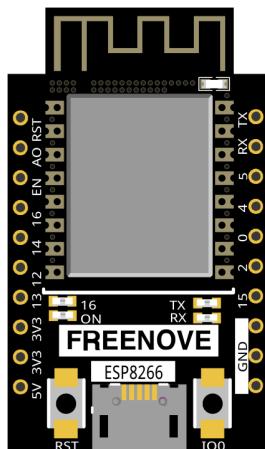
ESP8266 has PCB on-board antenna. The PCB on-board antenna is an integrated antenna in the chip module itself, so it is convenient to carry and design.

PCB on-board antenna

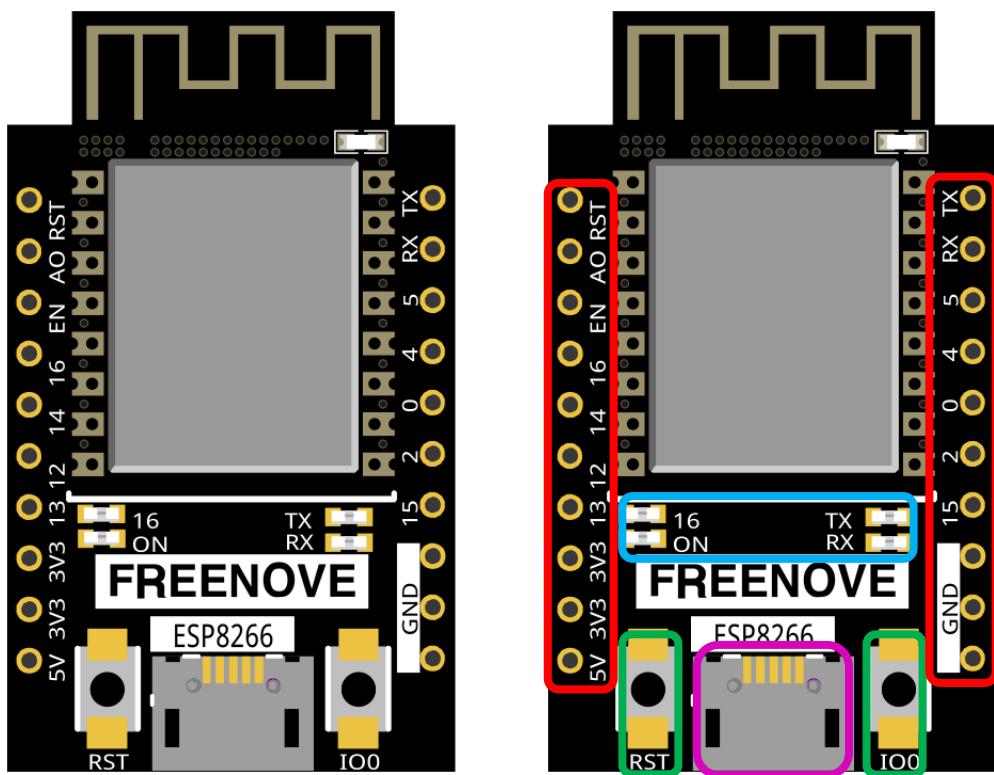


In this tutorial, the ESP8266 development board is designed based on the PCB on-board antenna-packaged ESP8266 module. The following tutorials will be based on the ESP8266 development board.

ESP8266 development board



The hardware interfaces of ESP8266 are distributed as follows:



Compare the left and right images. We've boxed off the resources on the ESP8266 in different colors to facilitate your understanding of the ESP8266 development board.

Box color	Corresponding resources introduction
	<b>GPIO pin</b>
	<b>LED indicator</b>
	<b>Reset button, Boot mode selection button</b>
	<b>USB port</b>

NO.	Pin Name	Functional Description
1	RST	Reset Pin, Active Low
2	ADC	AD conversion, Input voltage range 0~1V, the value range is 0~1024.
3	EN	Chip Enabled Pin, Active High
4	IO16	Connect with RST pin to wake up Deep Sleep
5	IO14	GPIO14; HSPI_CLK
6	IO12	GPIO12; HSPI_MISO
7	IO13	GPIO13; HSPI_MOSI; UART0_CTS
8	VCC	Module power supply pin, Voltage 3.0V ~ 3.6V
9	GND	GND
10	IO15	GPIO15; MTDO; HSPICS; UART0
11	IO2	GPIO2; UART1_TXD
12	IO0	GPIO2; UART1_RXD
13	IO4	GPIO4
14	IO5	GPIO5; IR_R
15	RXD	UART0_RXD; GPIO3
16	TXD	UART0_TXD; GPIO1

Description of the ESP8266 series module boot mode:

Mode	CH_PD(EN)	RST	GPIO15	GPIO0	GPIO2	TXD0
Download mode	high	high	low	low	high	high
Running mode	high	high	low	high	high	high

Notes: Some of the pins inside the module have been pulled or pulled down.

For more information, please visit: [https://docs.ai-thinker.com/\\_media/esp8266/docs/esp-12s\\_product\\_specification\\_en.pdf](https://docs.ai-thinker.com/_media/esp8266/docs/esp-12s_product_specification_en.pdf)

# Chapter 0 Ready (Important)

Before starting building the projects, you need to make some preparation first, which is so crucial that you must not skip.

## 0.1 Installing Thonny (Important)

Thonny is a free, open-source software platform with compact size, simple interface, simple operation and rich functions, making it a Python IDE for beginners. In this tutorial, we use this IDE to develop ESP6266 during the whole process.

Thonny supports various operating system, including Windows、Mac OS、Linux.

### Downloading Thonny

Official website of Thonny: <https://thonny.org>

Open-source code repositories of Thonny: <https://github.com/thonny/thonny>

Follow the instruction of official website to install Thonny or click the links below to download and install.  
(Select the appropriate one based on your operating system.)

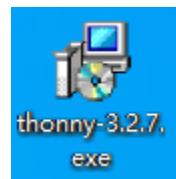
Operating System	Download links/methods
Windows	<a href="https://github.com/thonny/thonny/releases/download/v3.2.7/thonny-3.2.7.exe">https://github.com/thonny/thonny/releases/download/v3.2.7/thonny-3.2.7.exe</a>
Mac OS	<a href="https://github.com/thonny/thonny/releases/download/v3.2.7/thonny-3.2.7.pkg">https://github.com/thonny/thonny/releases/download/v3.2.7/thonny-3.2.7.pkg</a>
Linux	<b>The latest version:</b> <b>Binary bundle for PC (Thonny+Python):</b> bash <(wget -O - https://thonny.org/installer-for-linux)  <b>With pip:</b> pip3 install thonny  <b>Distro packages (may not be the latest version):</b> <b>Debian, Raspbian, Ubuntu, Mint and others:</b> sudo apt install thonny  <b>Fedoras:</b> sudo dnf install thonny

You can also open “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Software**”, we have prepared it in advance.

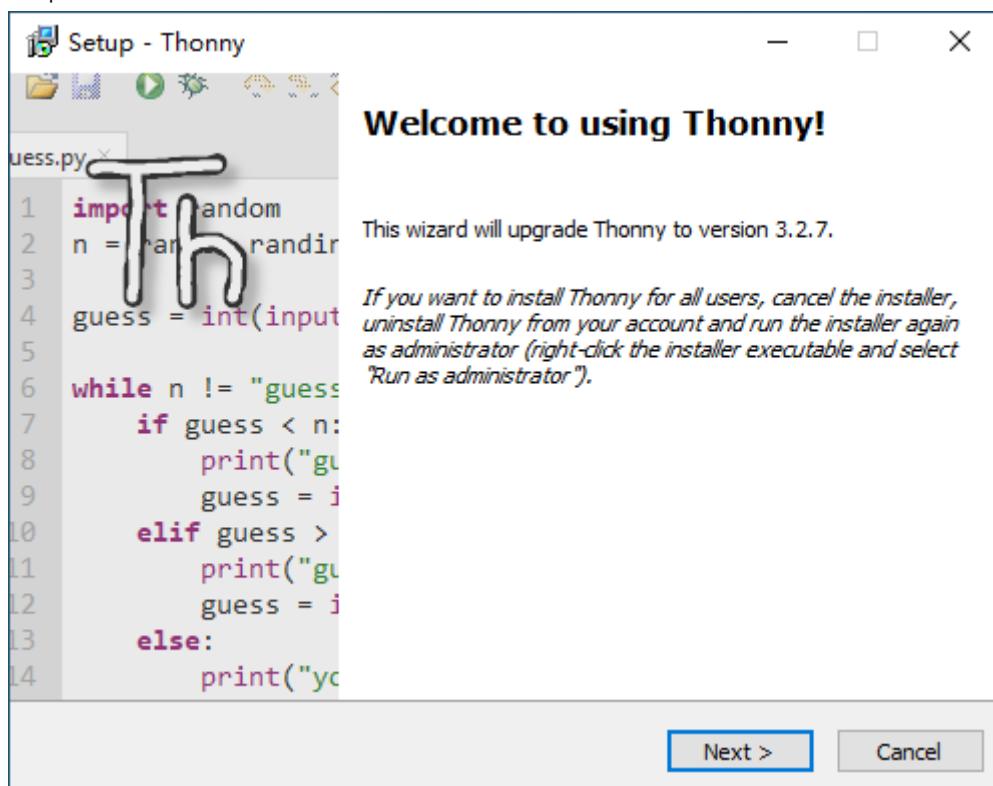


## Installing on Windows

The icon of Thonny after downloading is as below. Double click "thonny-3.2.7.exe".

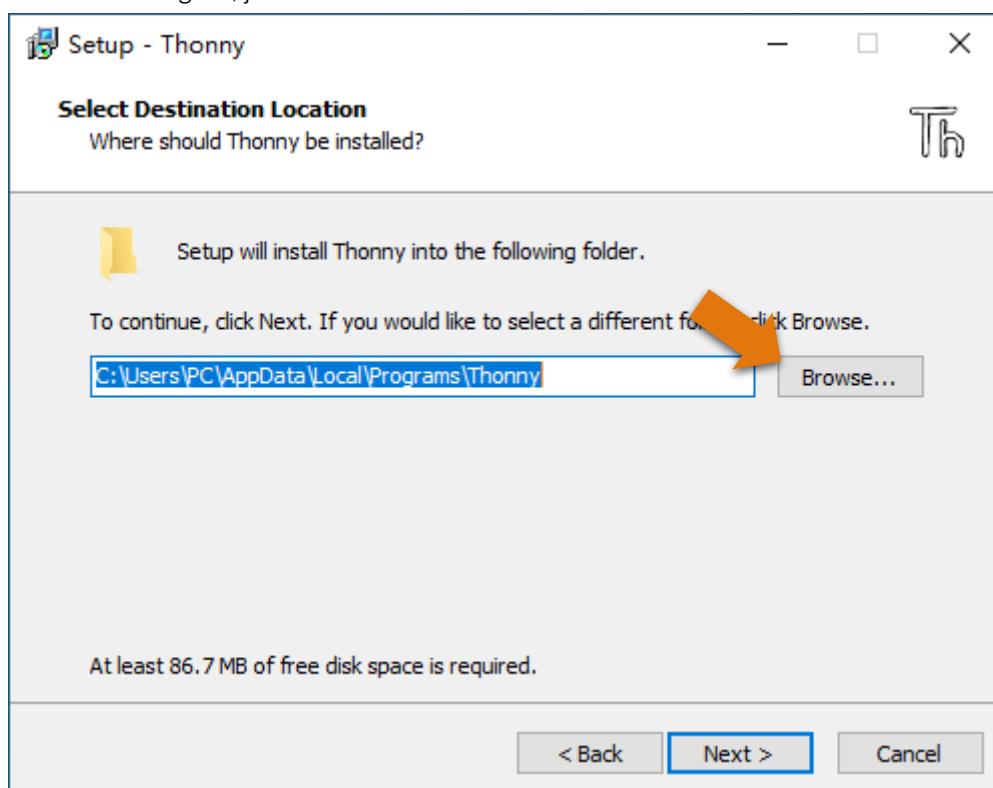


If you're not familiar with computer software installation, you can simply keep clicking "Next" until the installation completes.



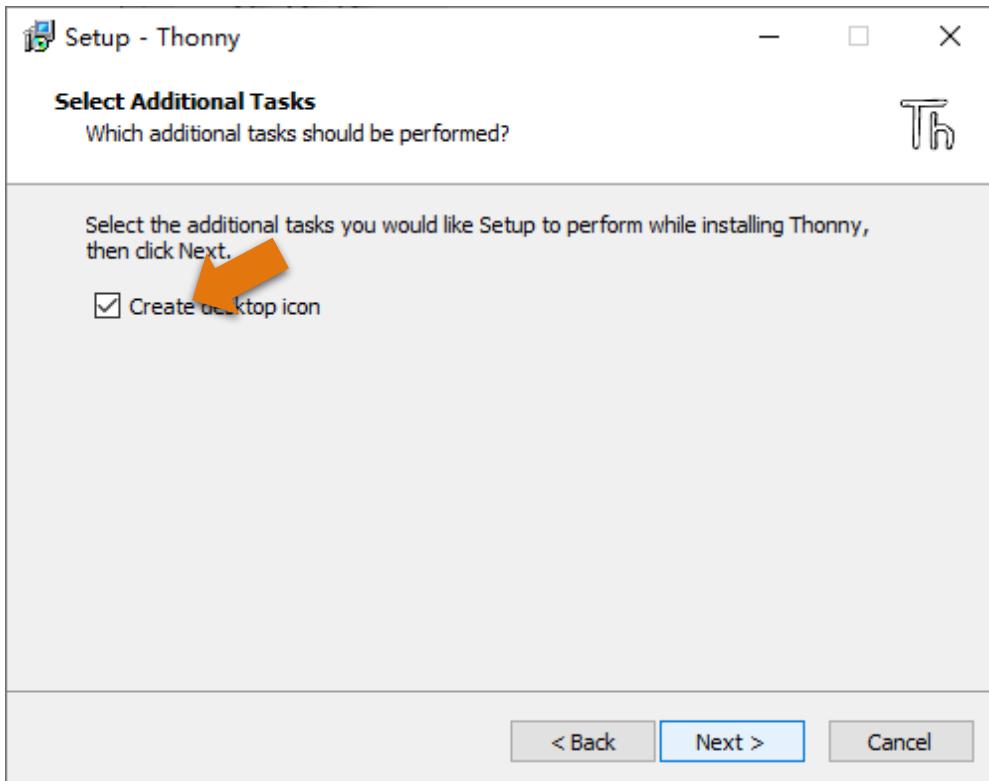
If you want to change Thonny's installation path, you can click "Browse" to modify it. After selecting installation path, click "OK".

If you do not want to change it, just click "Next".

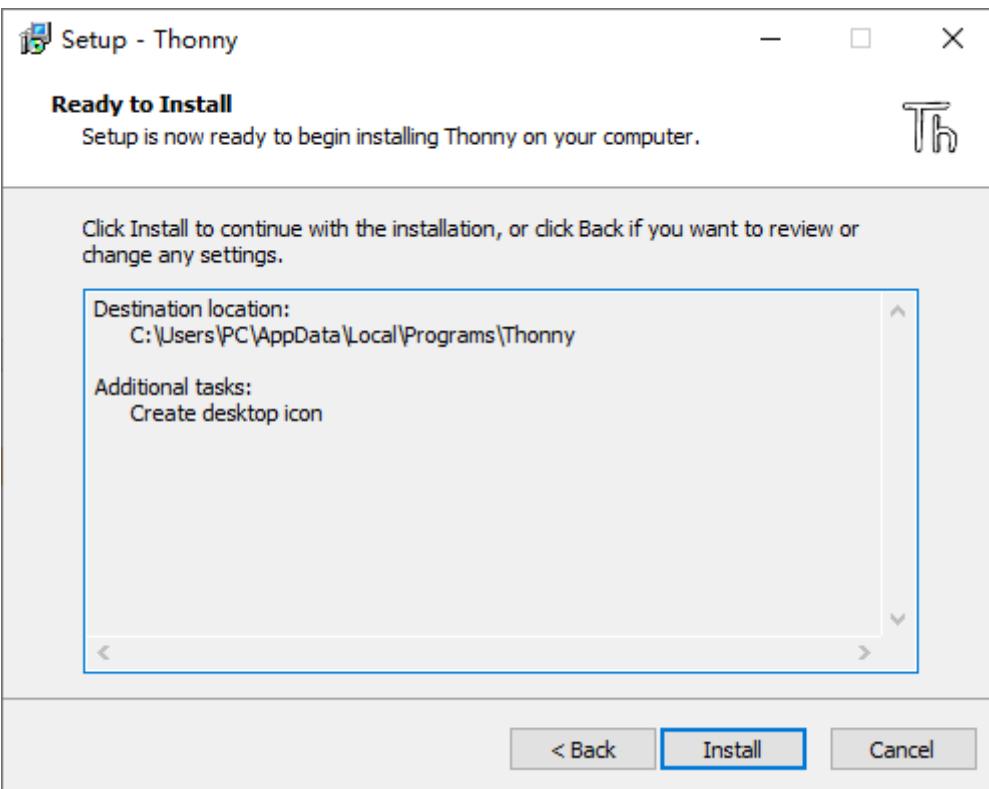




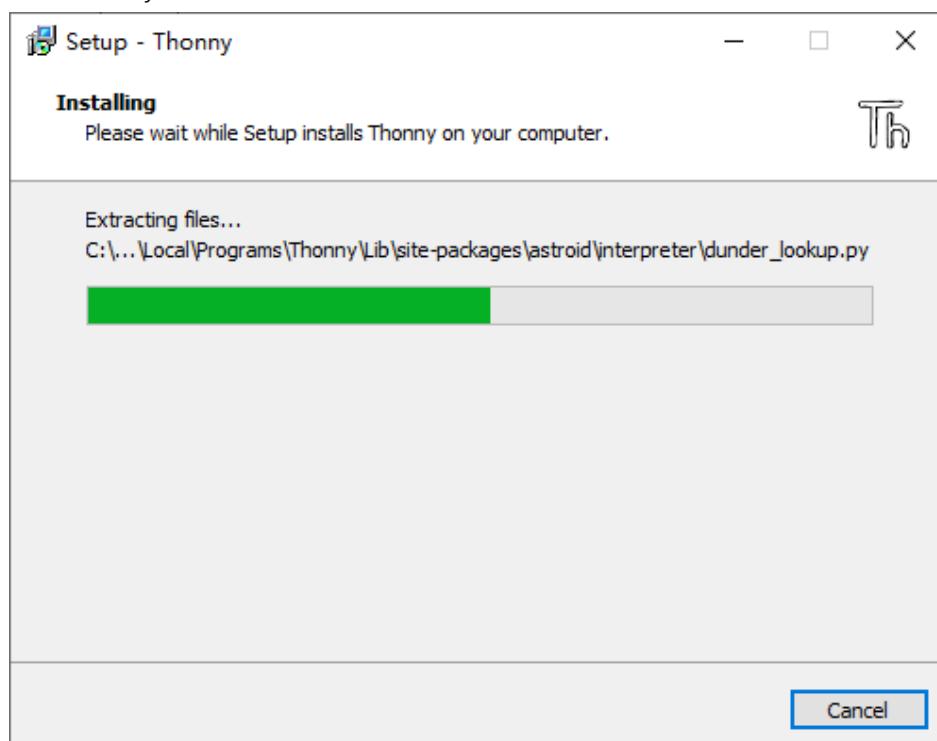
Check “Create desktop icon” and then it will generate a shortcut on your desktop to facilitate you to open Thonny later.



Click “install” to install the software.



During the installation process, you only need to wait for the installation to complete, and you must not click "Cancel", otherwise Thonny will fail to be installed.



Once you see the interface as below, Thonny has been installed successfully.



If you've checked "Create desktop icon" during the installation process, you can see the below icon on your desktop.



Any concerns? [✉ support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

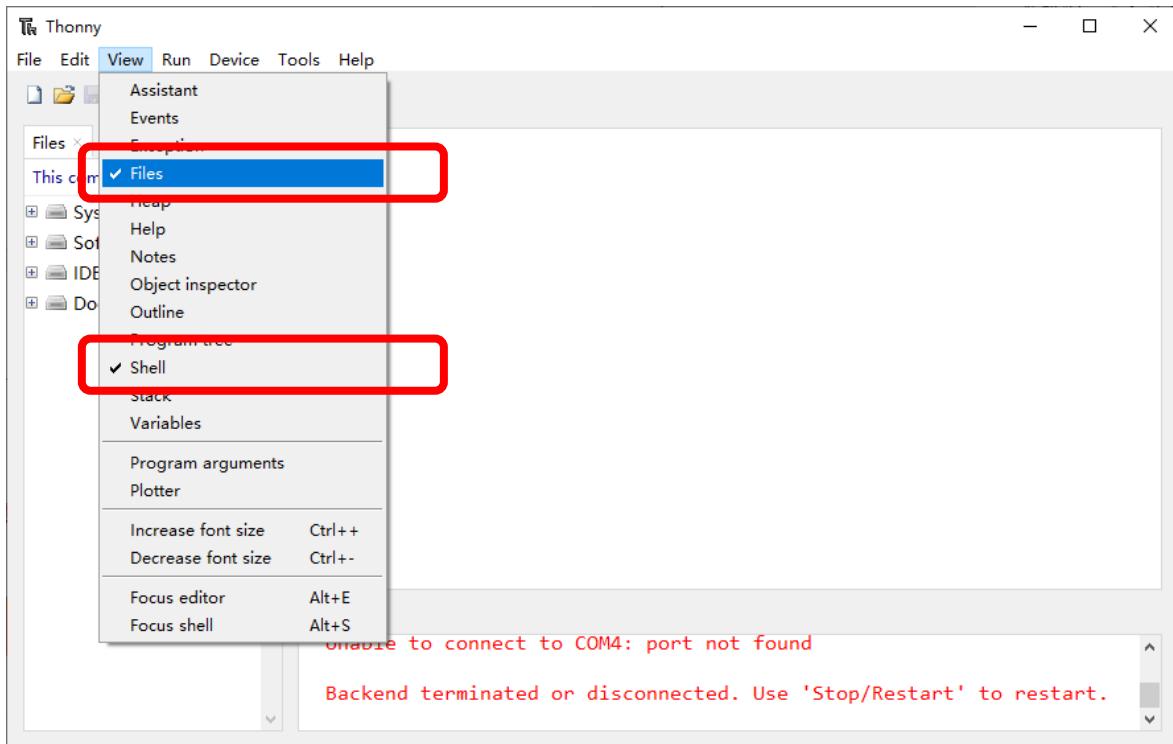


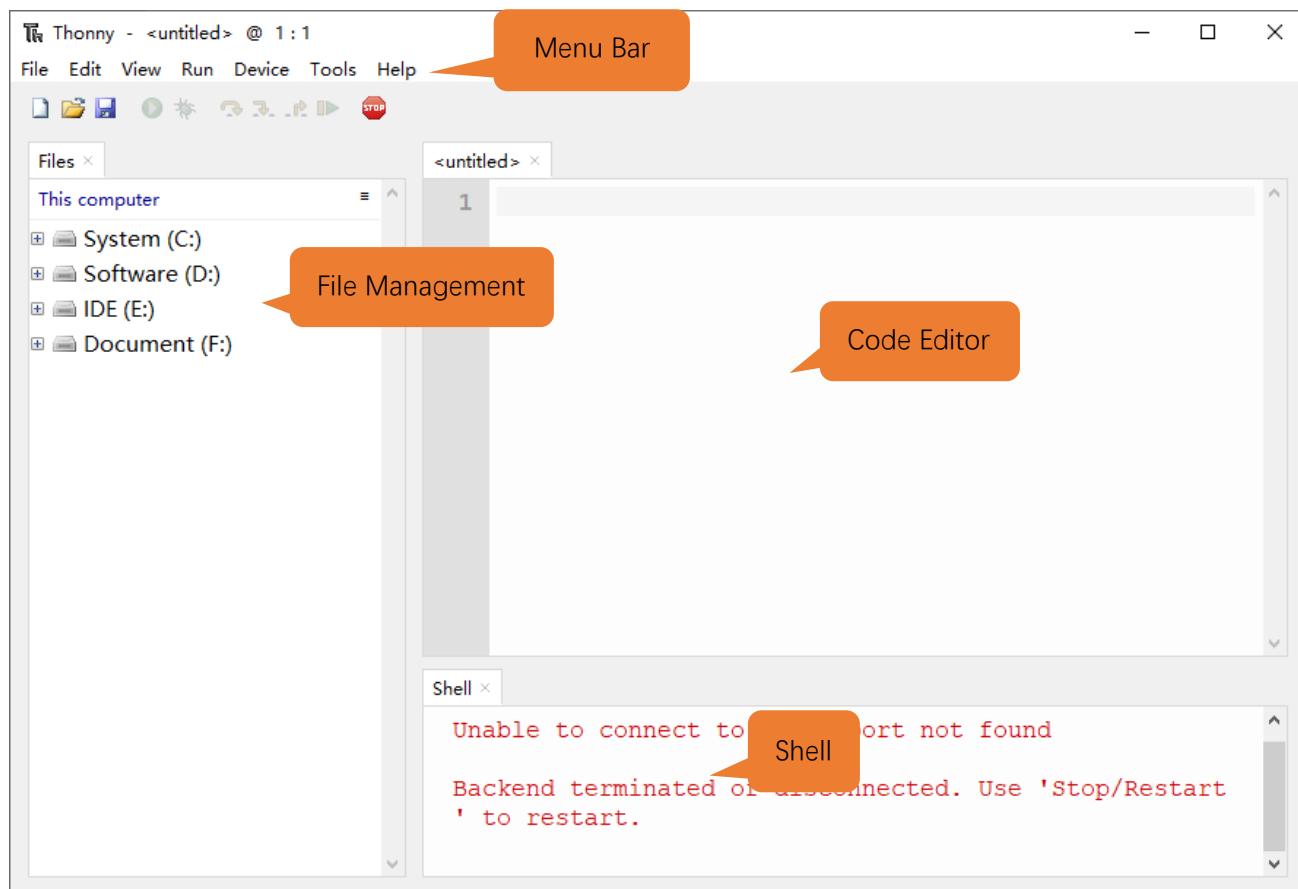
## 0.2 Basic Configuration of Thonny

Click the desktop icon of Thonny and you can see the interface of it as follows:



Select "View" → "Files" and "Shell".







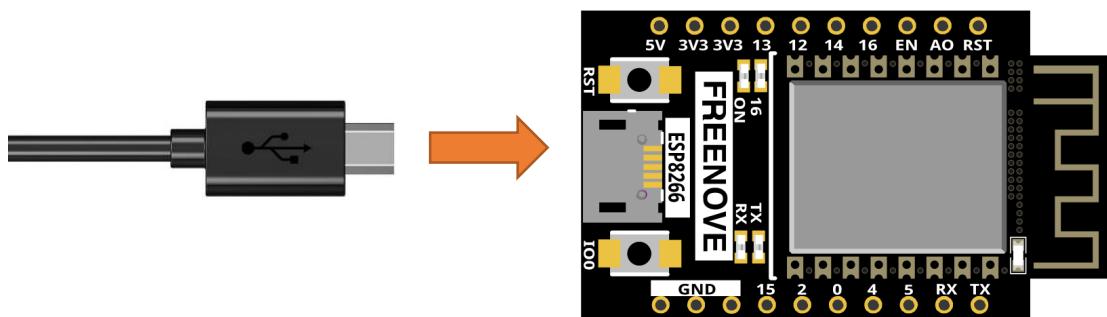
## 0.3 Installing CH340 (Important)

ESP8266 uses CH340 to download codes. So before using it, we need to install CH340 driver in our computers.

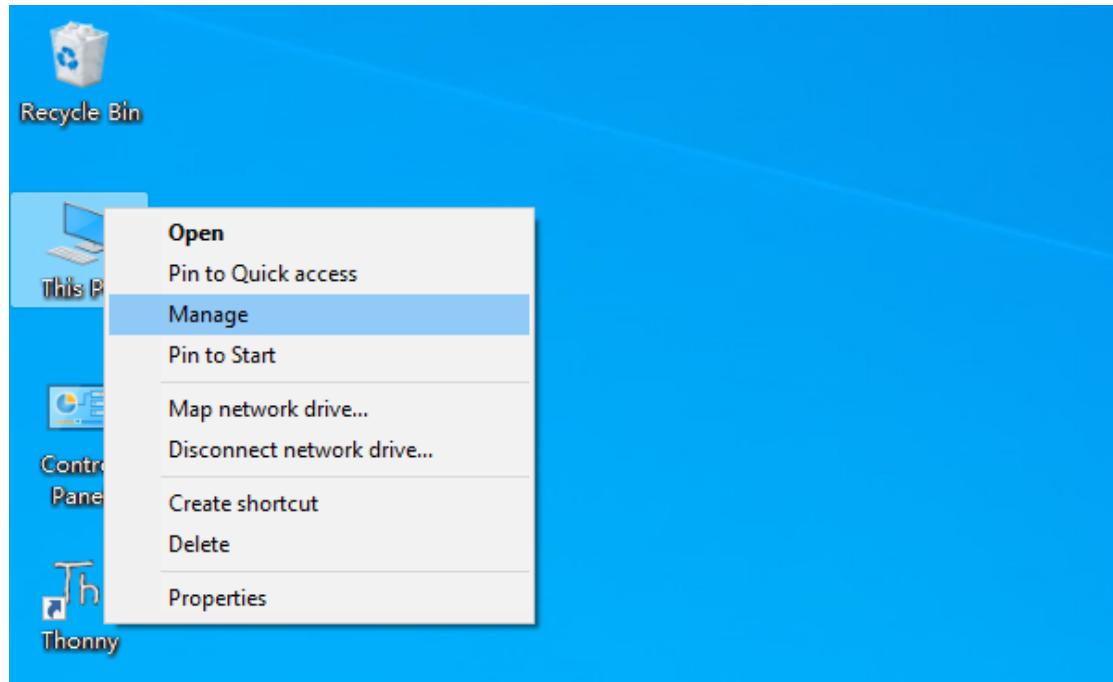
### Windows

Check whether CH340 has been installed

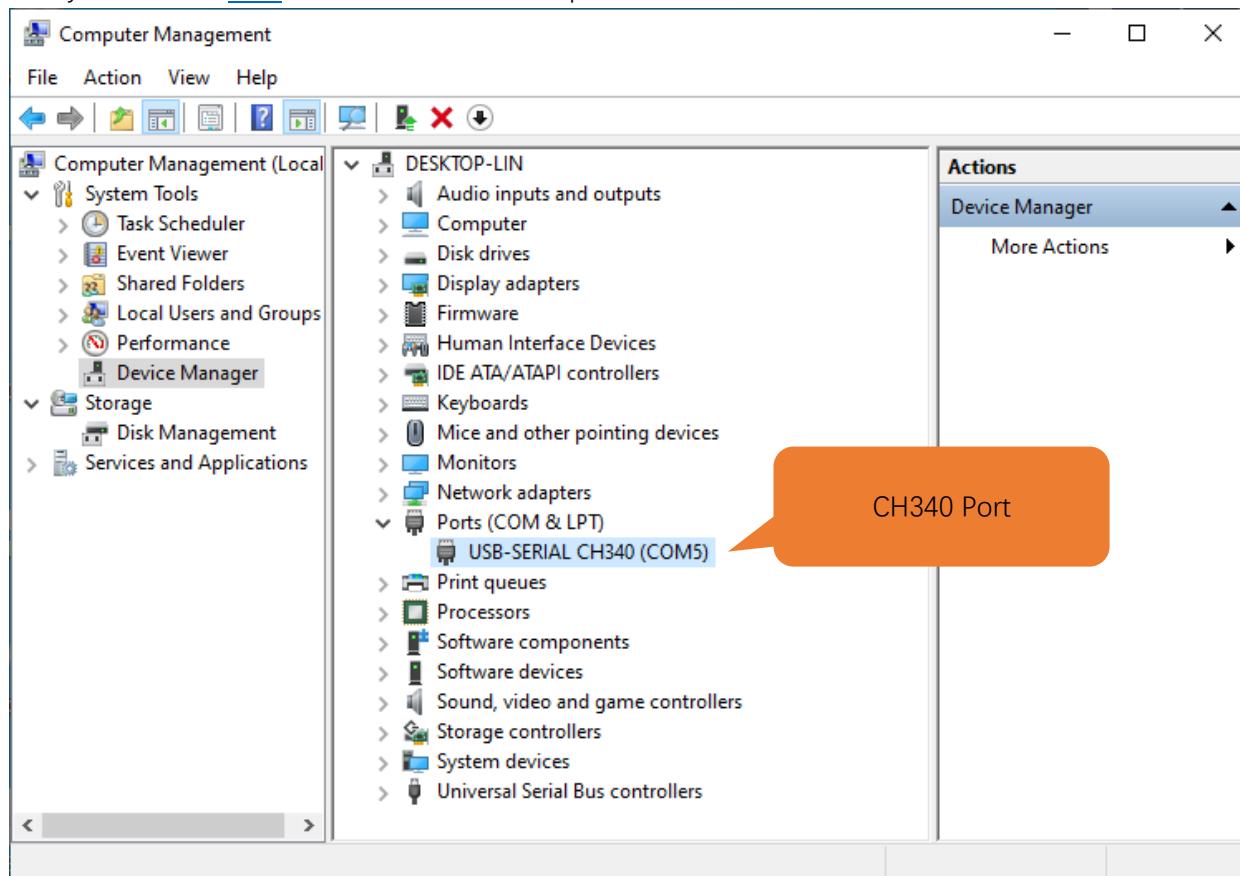
1. Connect your computer and ESP8266 with a USB cable.



2. Turn to the main interface of your computer, select "This PC" and right-click to select "Manage".



3. Click "Device Manager". If your computer has installed CH340, you can see "USB-SERIAL CH340 (COMx)". And you can click [here](#) to move to the next step.





## Installing CH340

- First, download CH340 driver, click <http://www.wch-ic.com/search?q=CH340&t=downloads> to download the appropriate one based on your operating system.

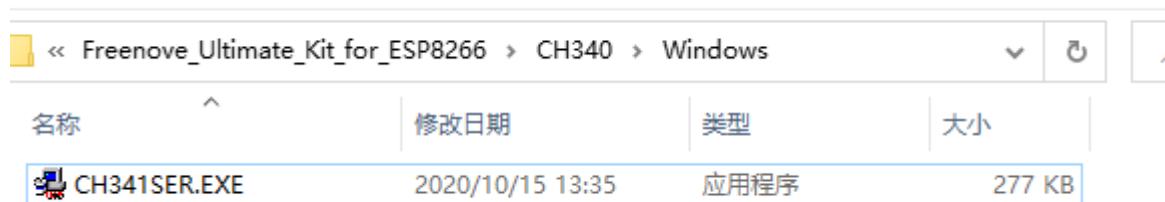
The screenshot shows a search results page for 'CH340' on a website. The left sidebar has categories: All (14), Downloads (7) [highlighted in blue], Products (4), Application (2), Video (1), and News (0). The main area is titled 'keyword CH340' and shows 'Downloads( 7 )'. A table lists the files:

file category	file content	version	upload time
Driver&Tools	<b>Windows</b>		
CH341SER.EXE	CH340/CH341 USB to serial port Windows driver, supports 32/64-bit Windows 10/8.1/8/7/VISTA/XP, Server 2016/2012/2008/2003, 2000/ME/98	3.5	2019-03-18
CH341SER.ZIP	CH340/CH341 USB to serial port Windows driver, includes DLL dynamic library and non-standard baud rate settings and other instructions. Supports 32/64-bit Windows 10/8.1/8/7/VISTA/XP, Server 2016/2012/2008/2003, 2000/ME/98	3.5	2019-03-05
CH341SER_ANDROID...	CH340/CH341 USB to serial port Android free drive application library, for Android OS 3.1 and above version which supports USB Host mode already, no need to load Android kernel driver, no root privileges. Contains apk, lib library file (Linux Driver), App Demo Example (USB to UART Demo)	1.6	2019-04-19
CH341SER_LINUX...	CH340/CH341 USB to serial port LINUX driver	1.5	2018-03-18
CH341SER_MAC.ZI...	CH340/CH341 USB to serial port MAC OS driver	1.5	2018-07-05
Others			
PRODUCT_GUIDE.P...	Electronic selection of product selection manual, please refer to related product technical manual for more technical information.	1.4	2018-12-29
InstallNoteOn64...	Instructions for the driver after 18 years of August cannot be installed under some 64-bit WIN7 (English)	1.0	2019-01-10

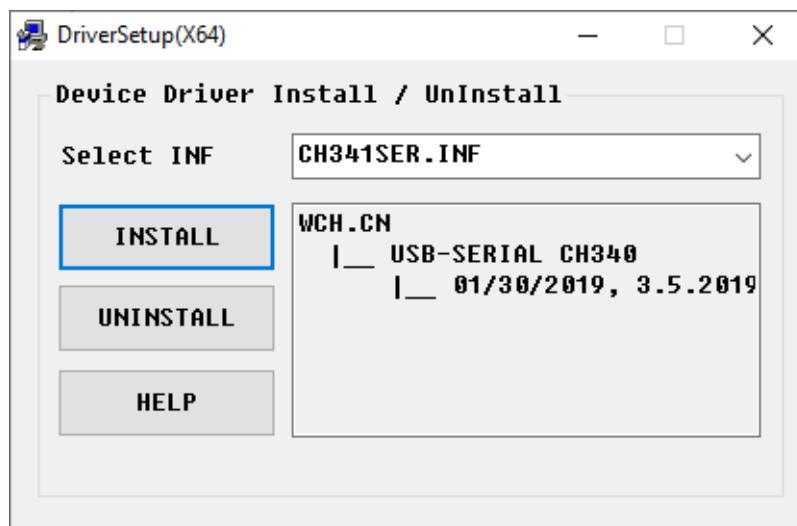
You can also open “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/CH340”, we have prepared the installation package.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
Linux	8/14/2020 5:24 PM	File folder	
MAC	8/14/2020 5:23 PM	File folder	
Windows	8/14/2020 5:23 PM	File folder	

2. Open the folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/CH340/Windows/ch341ser”

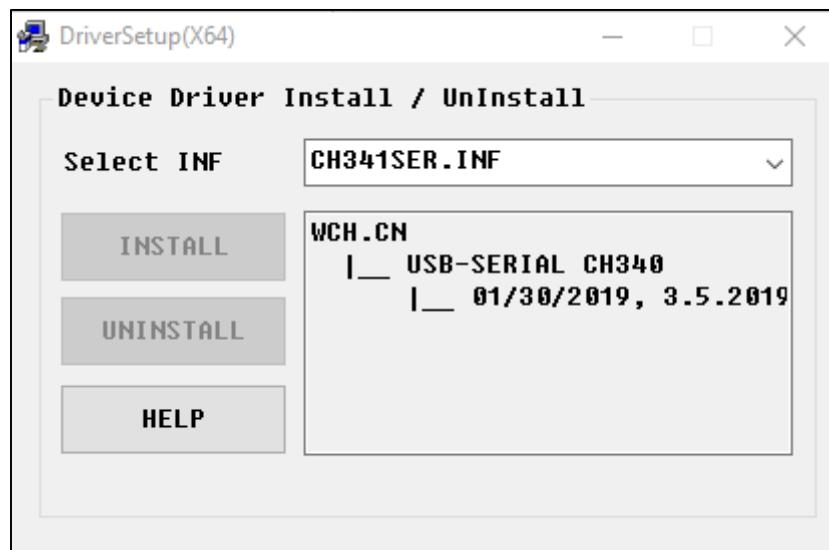


3. Double click “CH341SER.EXE”.

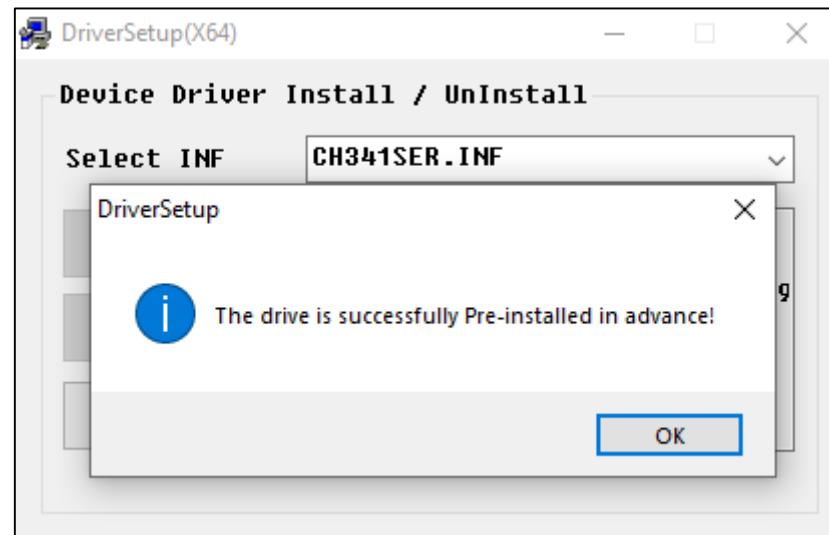




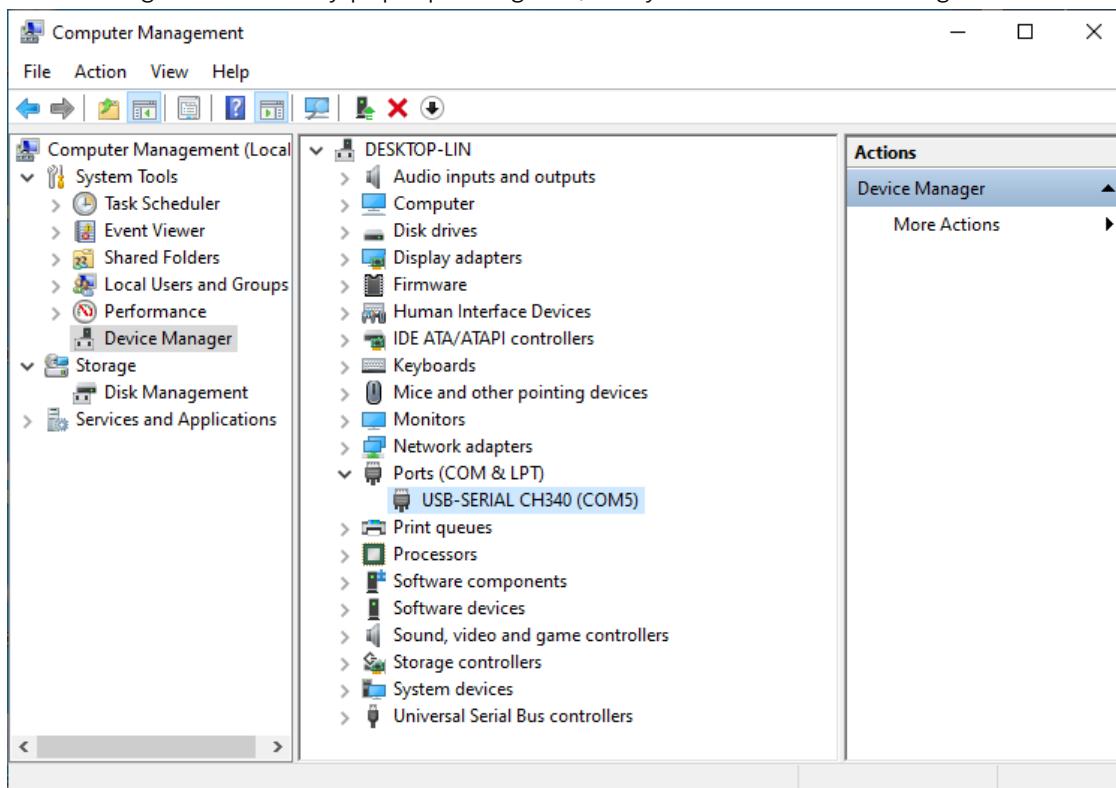
4. Click “INSTALL” and wait for the installation to complete.



5. Install successfully. Close all interfaces.



6. When ESP8266 is connected to computer, select "This PC", right-click to select "Manage" and click "Device Manager" in the newly pop-up dialog box, and you can see the following interface.



7. So far, CH340 has been installed successfully. Close all dialog boxes.

## MAC

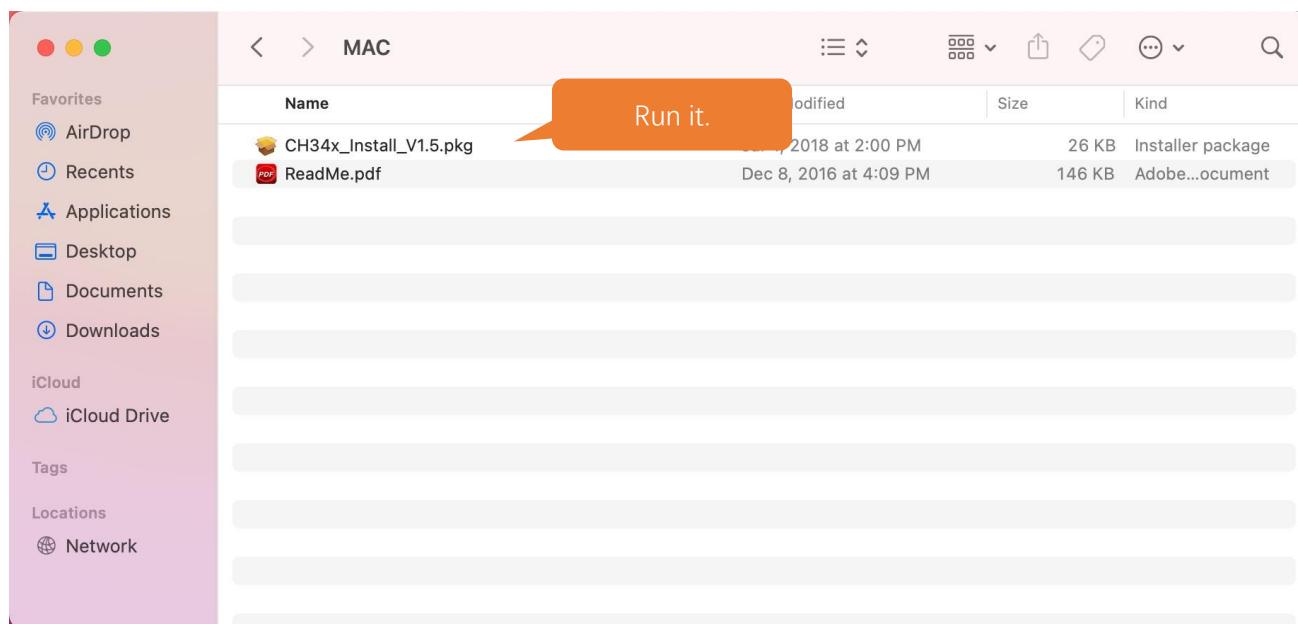
First, download CH340 driver, click <http://www.wch-ic.com/search?q=CH340&t=downloads> to download the appropriate one based on your operating system.

The screenshot shows a search results page for 'ch340' on the WCH website. The left sidebar has categories: All (14), Downloads (7), Products (4), Application (2), Video (1), and News (0). The main area shows search results for 'Downloads( 7 )'. There are three orange callout boxes pointing to specific files: 'Windows' points to CH341SER.EXE, 'Linux' points to CH341SER\_LINUX..., and 'MAC' points to CH341SER\_MAC.ZIP. The table columns are file category, file content, version, and upload time.

file category	file content	version	upload time
Driver&Tools	CH341SER.EXE CH340/CH341 USB to serial port Windows driver, supports 32/64-bit Windows 10/8.1/8/7/VISTA/XP, Server 2016/2012/2008/2003, 2000/ME/98	3.5	2019-03-18
	CH341SER.ZIP CH340/CH341 USB to serial port Windows driver, includes DLL dynamic library and non-standard baud rate settings and other instructions. Supports 32/64-bit Windows 10/8.1/8/7/VISTA/XP, Server 2016/2012/2008/2003, 2000/ME/98	3.5	2019-03-05
	CH341SER_ANDROID... CH340/CH341 USB to serial port Android free drive application library, for Android OS 3.1 and above version which supports USB Host mode already, no need to load Android kernel driver, no root privileges. Contains apk, lib library file (Java Driver), App Demo Examples, and STM32 Demo SDK.	1.6	2019-04-19
	CH341SER_LINUX... CH340/CH341 USB to serial port LINUX driver	1.5	2018-03-18
	CH341SER_MAC.ZIP CH340/CH341 USB to serial port MAC OS driver	1.5	2018-07-05
Others			

If you would not like to download the installation package, you can open "Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/CH340", we have prepared the installation package.

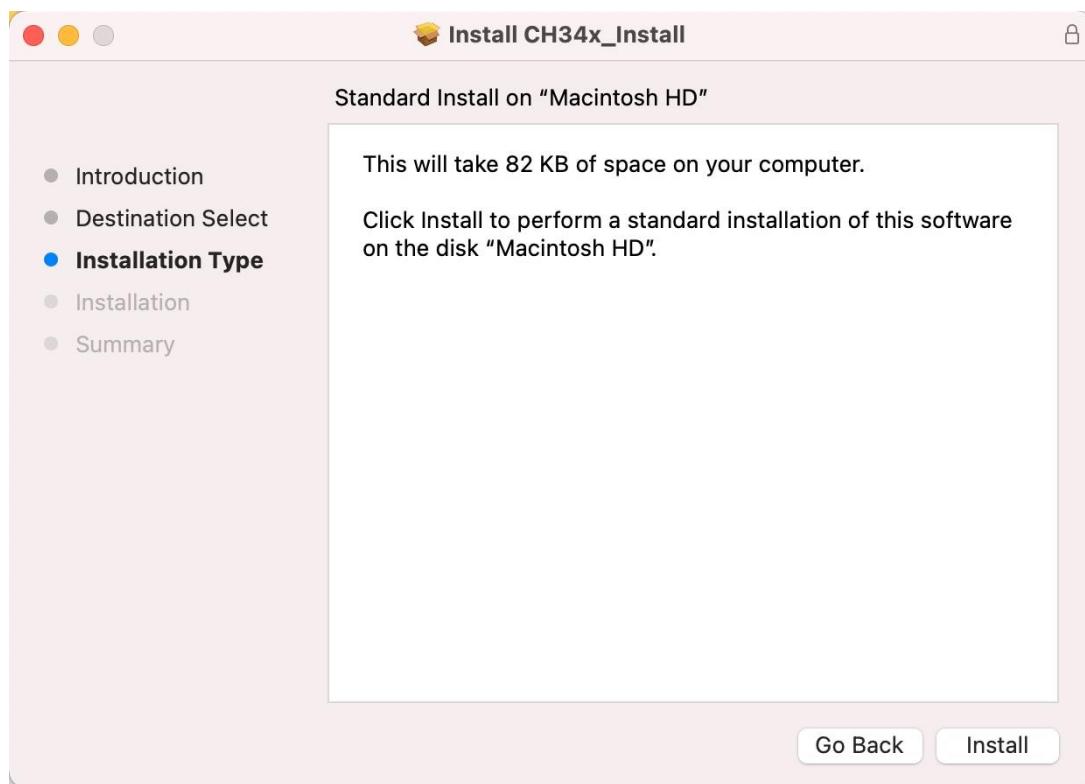
Second, open the folder "Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/CH340/MAC/"



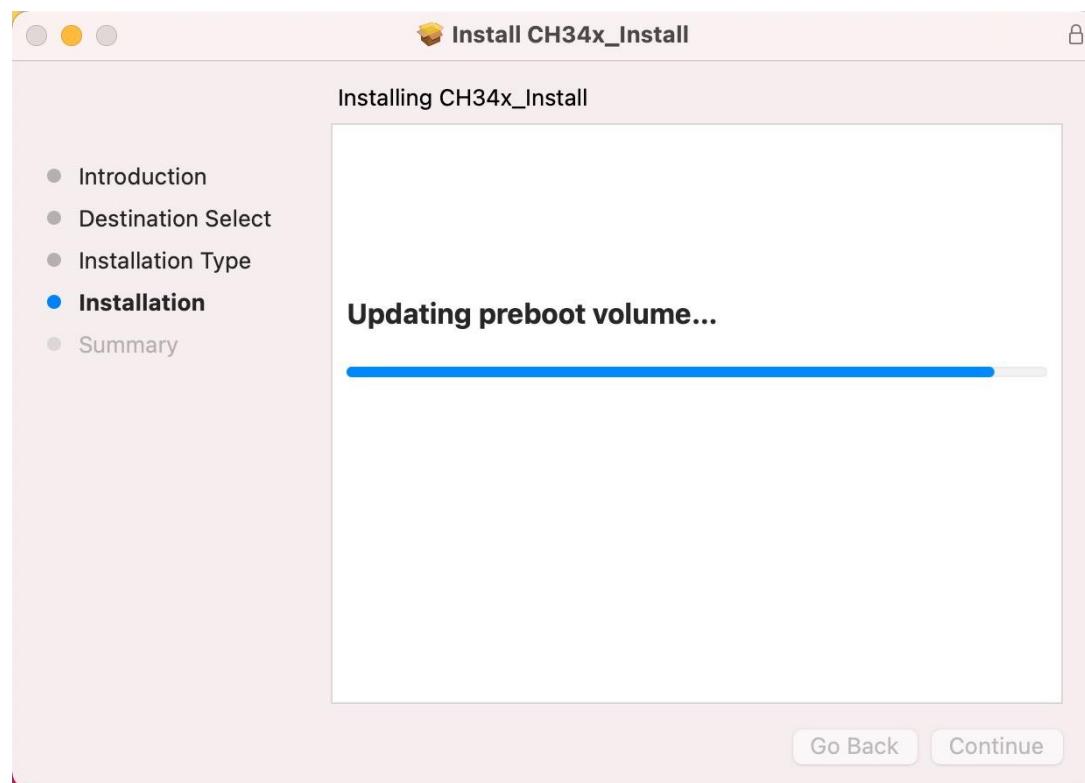
Third, click Continue.



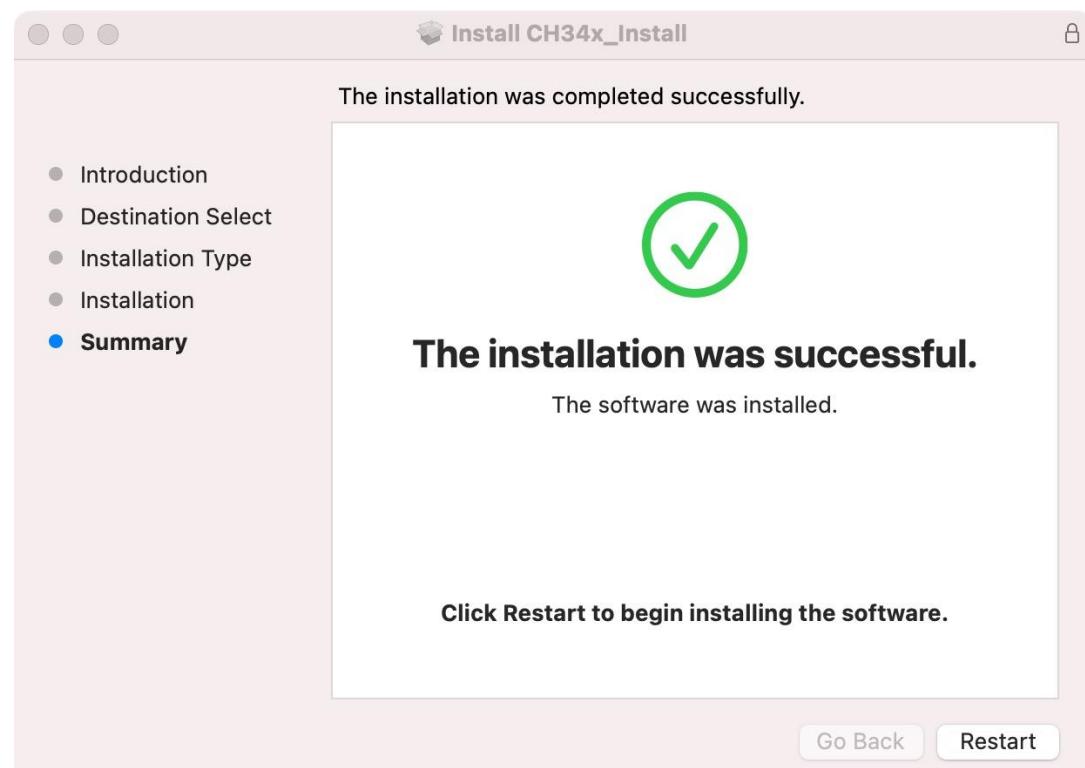
Fourth, click Install.



Then, waiting Finsh.

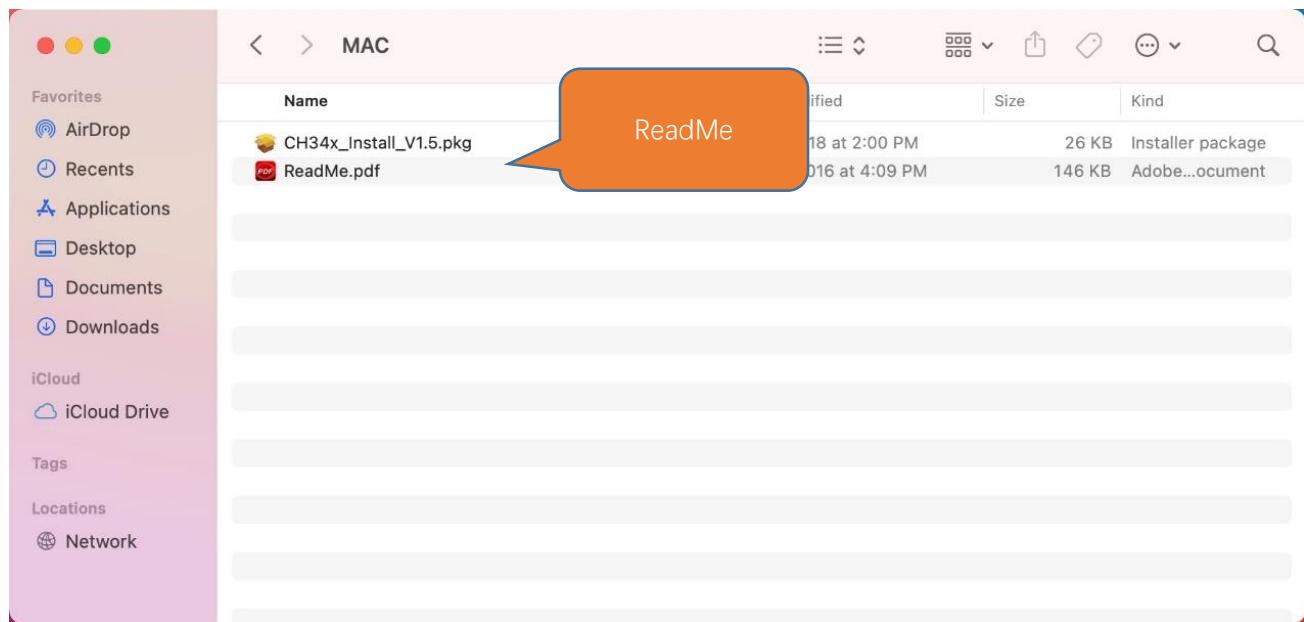


Finally, restart your PC.





If you still haven't installed the CH340 by following the steps above, you can view `readme.pdf` to install it.



Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## 0.4 Burning Micropython Firmware (Important)

To run Python programs on ESP8266, we need to burn a firmware to ESP8266 first.

### Downloading Micropython Firmware

Official website of microPython: <http://micropython.org/>

Webpage listing firmware of microPython for ESP8266: <https://micropython.org/download/esp8266/>

## Firmware

### Releases

**v1.18 (2022-01-17) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes] (latest)**

v1.17 (2021-09-02) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.16 (2021-06-18) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.15 (2021-04-18) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.14 (2021-02-02) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.13 (2020-09-11) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.12 (2019-12-20) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.11 (2019-05-29) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.10 (2019-01-25) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.9.4 (2018-05-11) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.9.3 (2017-11-01) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.9.2 (2017-08-23) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.9.1 (2017-06-12) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.9 (2017-05-26) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]  
v1.8.7 (2017-01-08) .bin [.elf] [.map] [Release notes]

Firmware used in this tutorial is **esp8266-20220117-v1.18.bin**

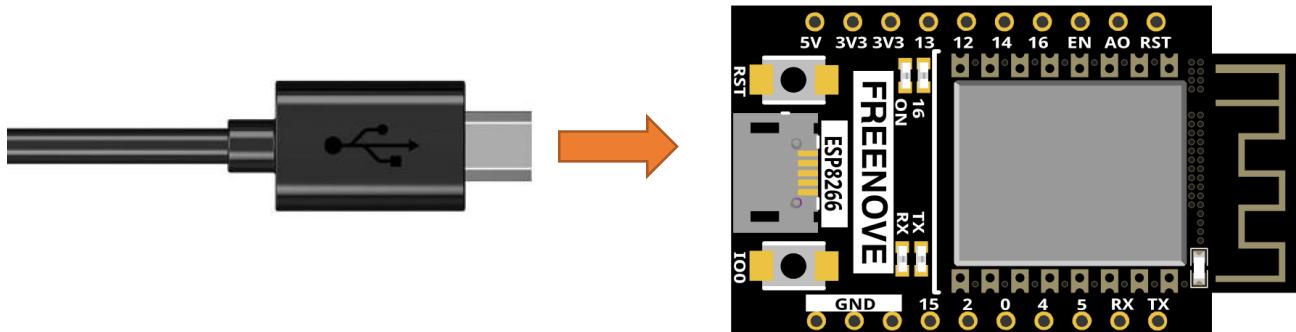
Click the following link to download directly:

<https://micropython.org/resources/firmware/esp8266-20220117-v1.18.bin>

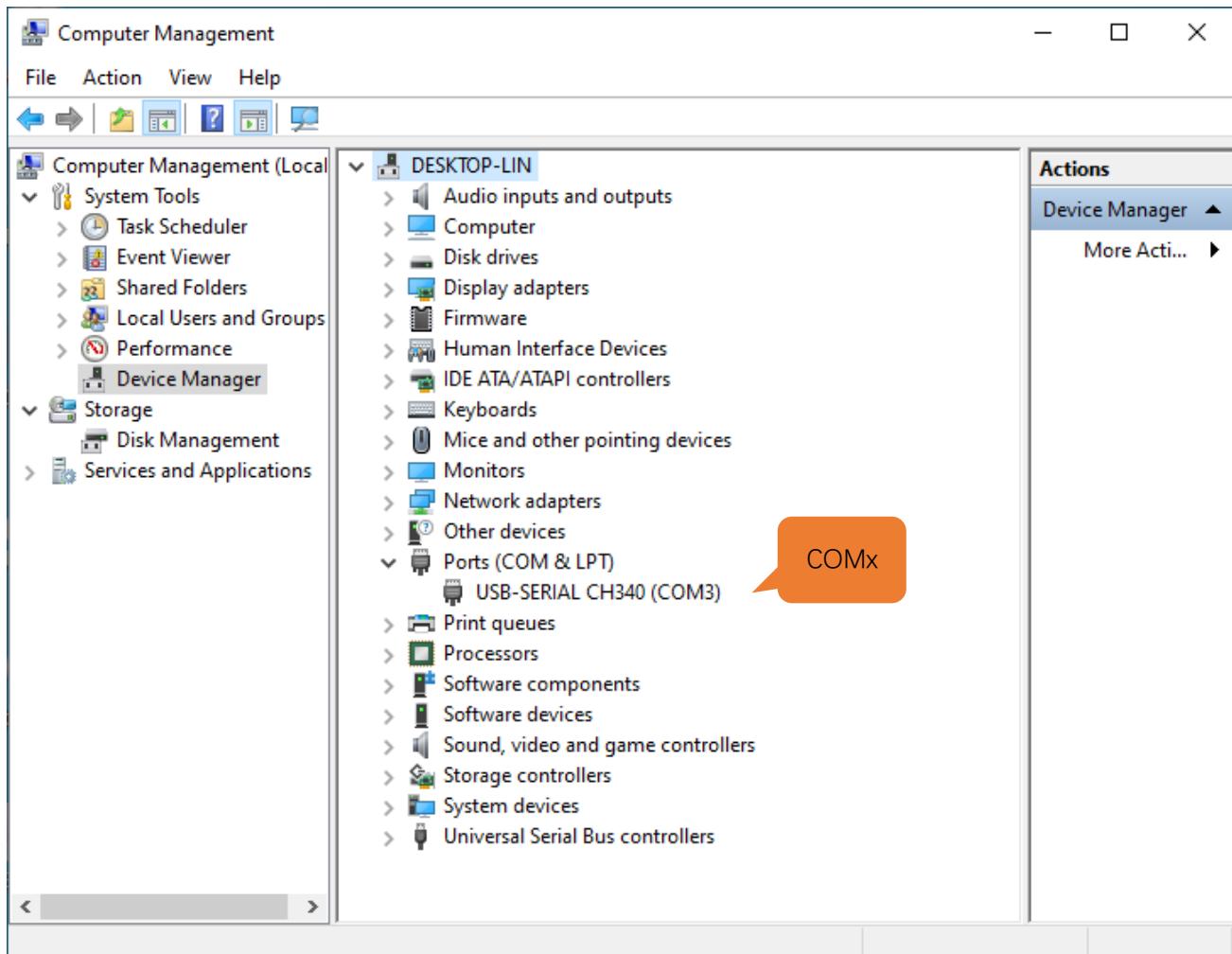
This file is also provided in our data folder "**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266 /Python/Python\_Firmware**".

## Burning a Micropython Firmware

Connect your computer and ESP8266 with a USB cable.

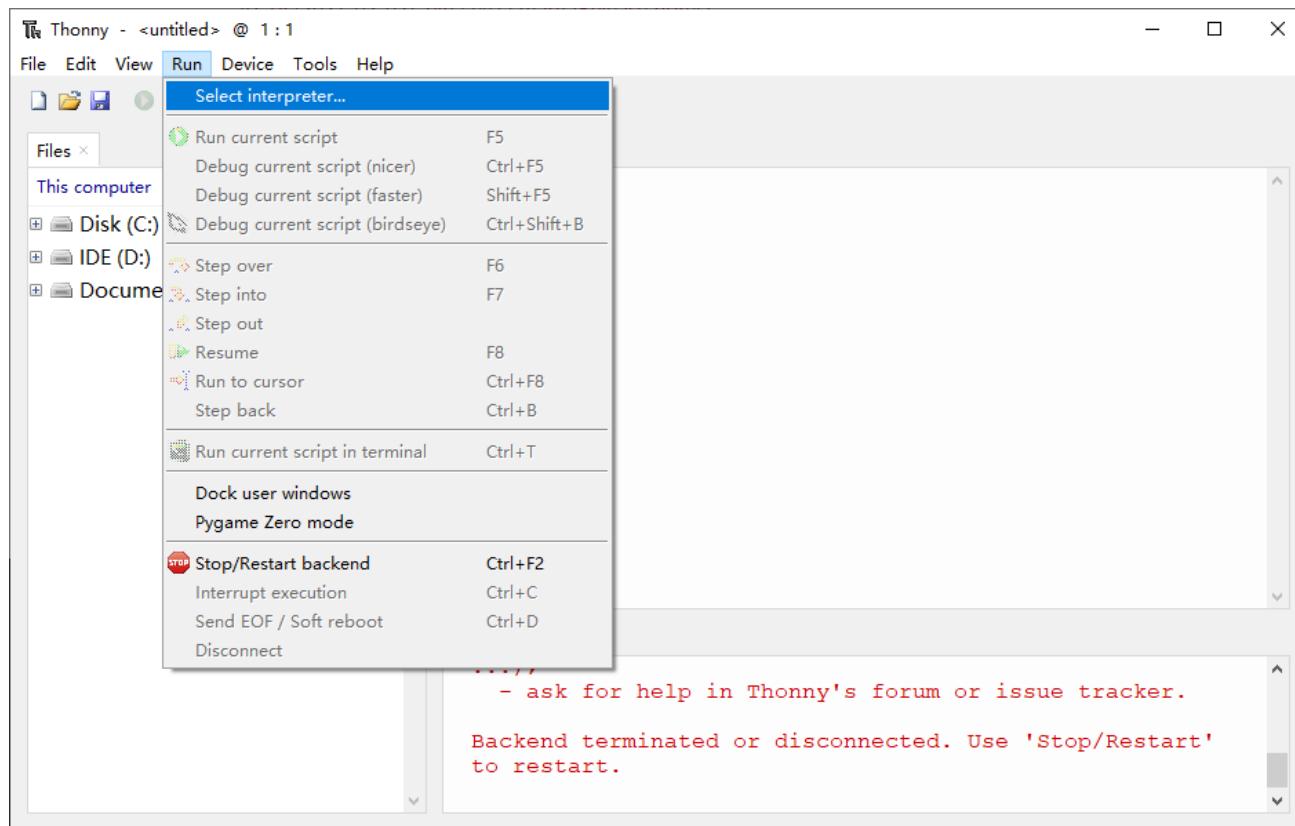


Make sure that the driver has been installed successfully and that it can recognize COM port correctly. Open device manager and expand “Ports”.



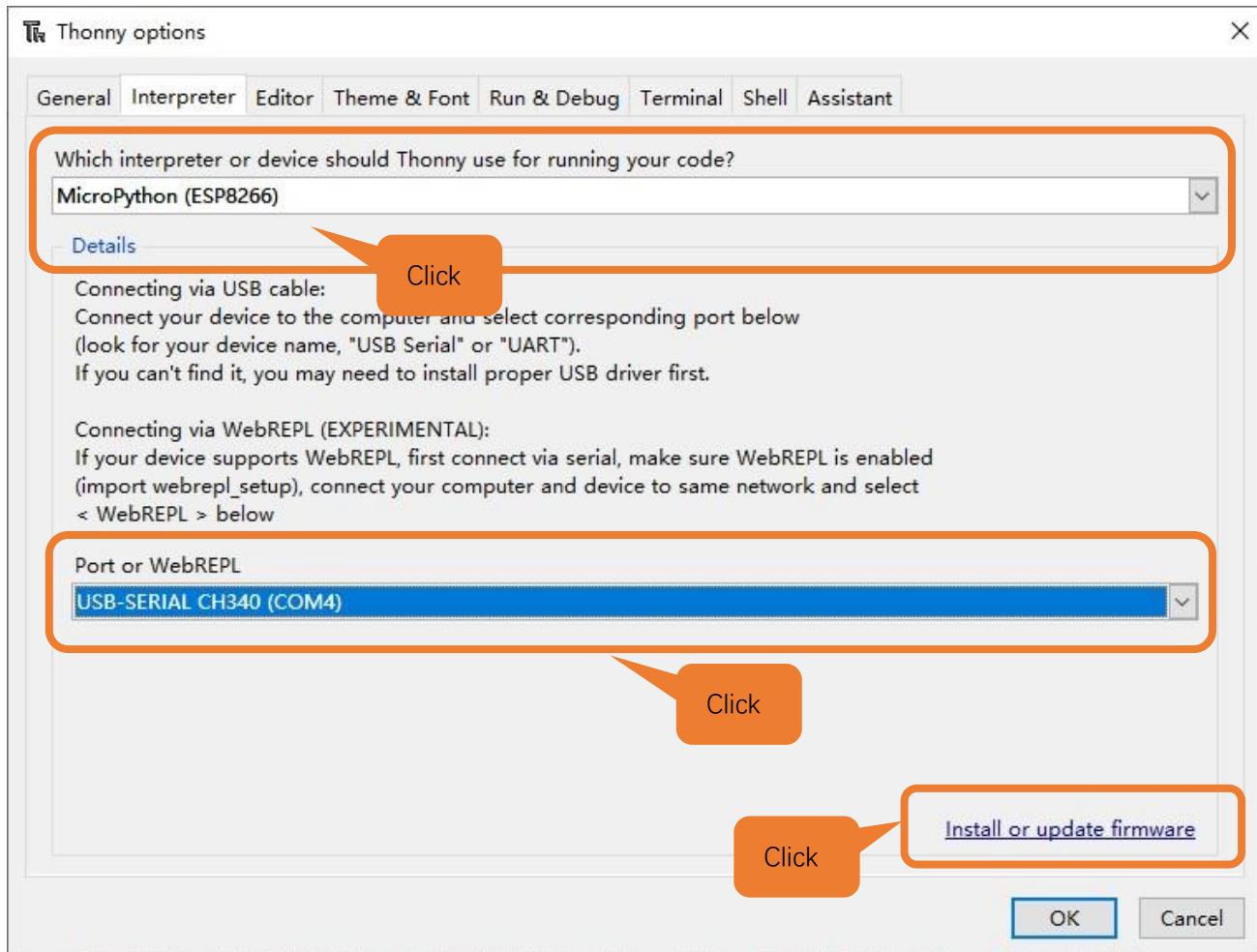
Note: the port of different people may be different, which is a normal situation.

1. Open Thonny, click "run" and select "Select interpreter..."





2. Select “Micropython (ESP8266)”, select “USB-SERIAL CH340 (COM4)”, and then click the long button under “Firmware”.



3. The following dialog box pops up. Select “USB-SERIAL CH340 (COM4)” for “Port” and then click “Browse...”. Select the previous prepared microPython firmware “**esp8266-20220117-v1.18.bin**”. Check “Erase flash before installing” and click “install” to wait for the prompt of finishing installation.

Here we need to select Flash mode. On our ESP8266 development board, choose "DIO" mode or "DOUT" mode for better compatibility. If the ESP8266 module is abnormal, check whether the ESP8266 module works in the two modes.

Flash works in DOUT, DIO, QOUT, and QIO modes.

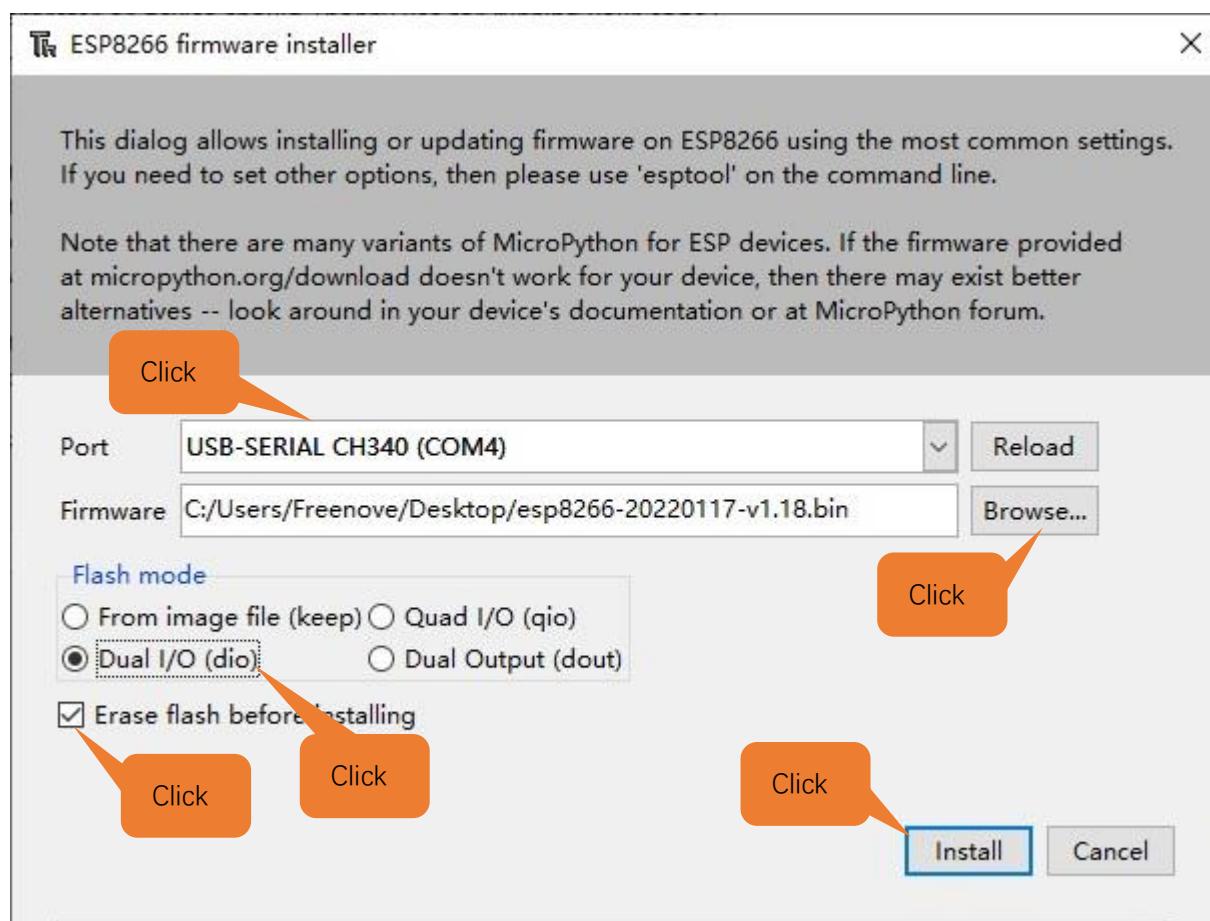
1.DOUT: Address is input in 1-line mode and data is output in 2-line mode.

2.DIO: Address is input in 2-line mode and data is output in 2-line mode.

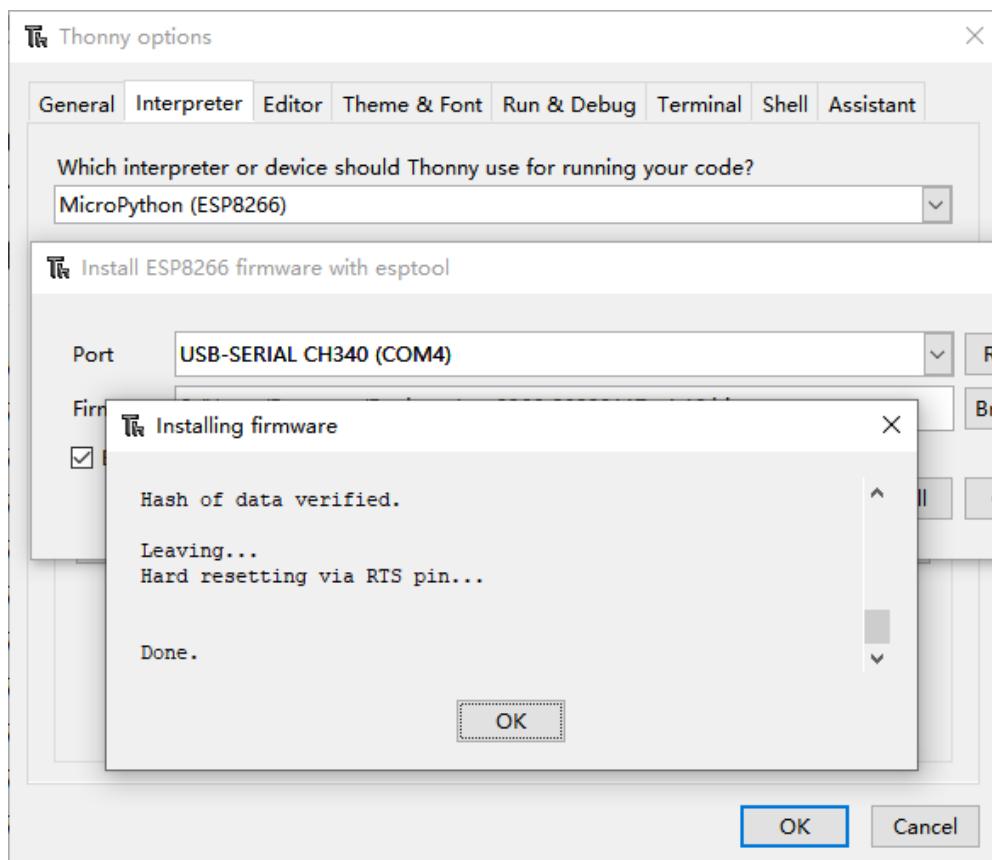
3.QOUT: Address is input in 1-line mode and data is output in 4-line mode.

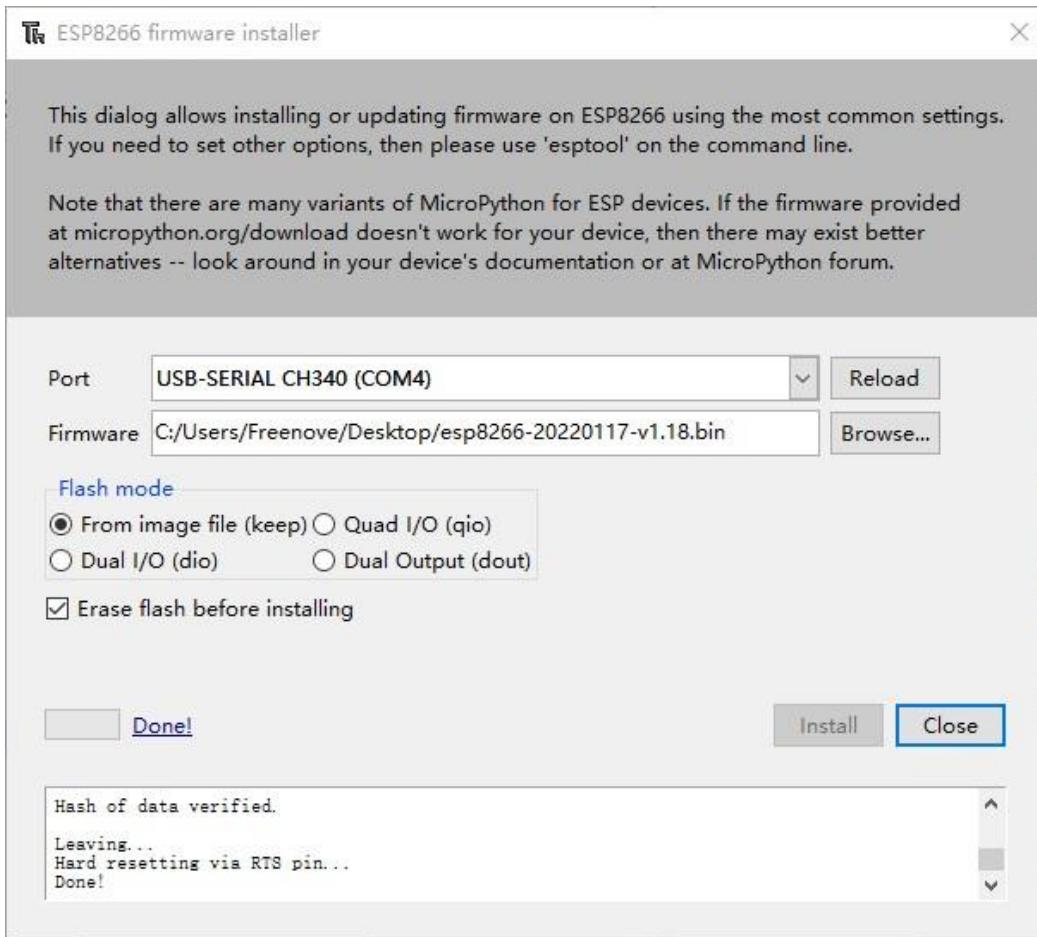
4.QIO: Address is input in 4-line mode and data is output in 4-line mode.

If you need to use the QIO mode, ensure that the Flash supports the QIO mode.



- Wait for the installation to be done.

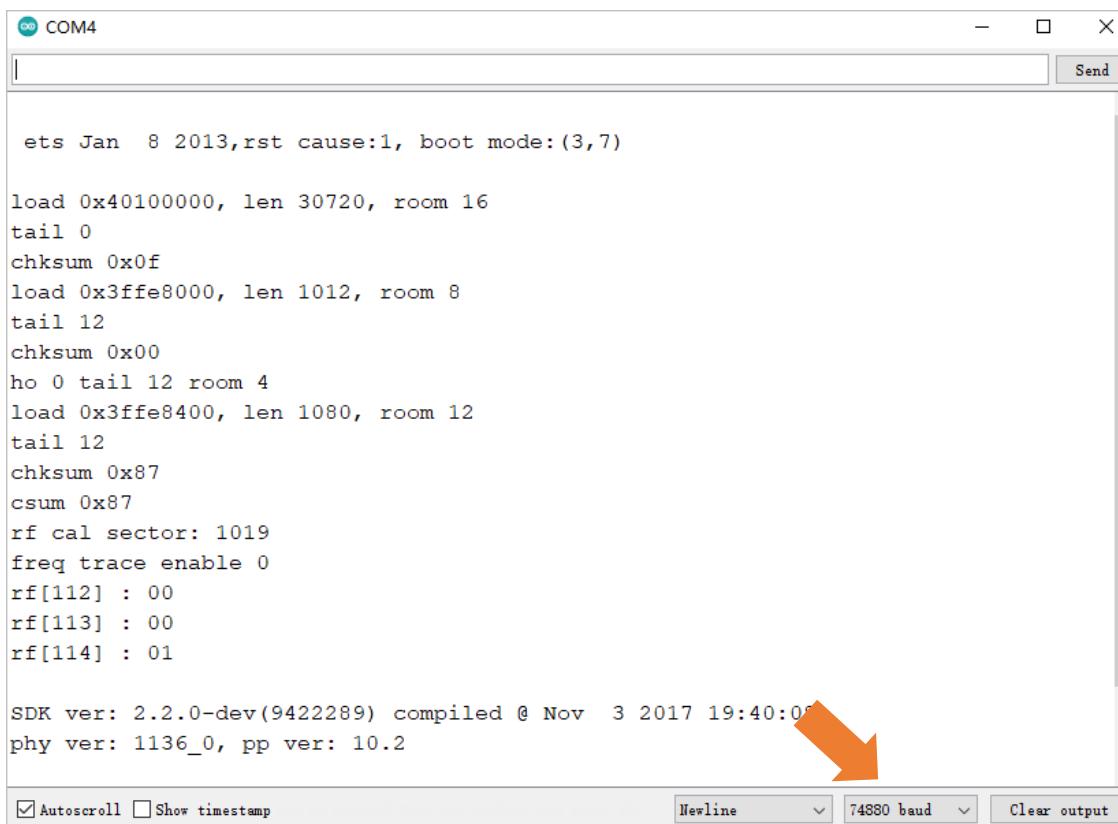




After burning the MicroPython firmware, "shell" will display some garbled characters, please do not worry, the garbled characters are displayed as follows:

Any concerns?  support@freenove.com

When the ESP8266 is powered on, the default baud rate is 74880. The default communication and serial port in the ESP8266 firmware is 115200. So if you set the serial port to 74880, this time can be displayed normally. Here, we use The Arduino IDE serial port tool for output and display. The details are as follows:



```

ets Jan  8 2013,rst cause:1, boot mode:(3,7)

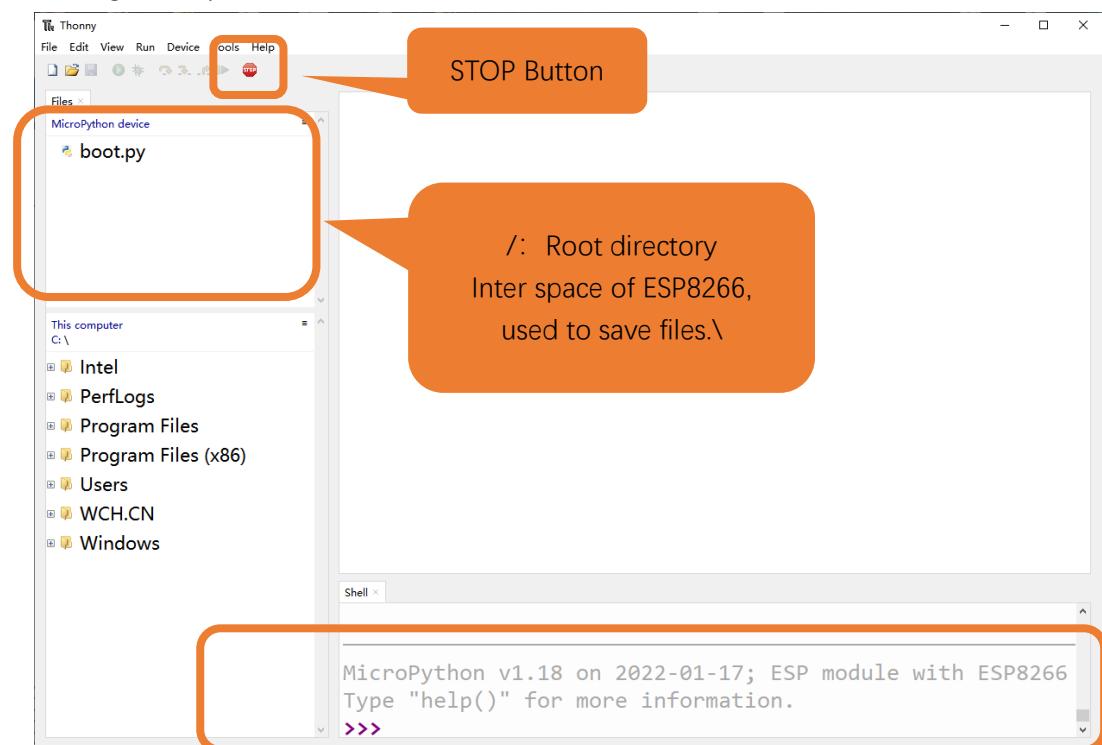
load 0x40100000, len 30720, room 16
tail 0
chksum 0x0f
load 0x3ffe8000, len 1012, room 8
tail 12
chksum 0x00
ho 0 tail 12 room 4
load 0x3ffe8400, len 1080, room 12
tail 12
checksum 0x87
cs 0x87
rf cal sector: 1019
freq trace enable 0
rf[112] : 00
rf[113] : 00
rf[114] : 01

SDK ver: 2.2.0-dev(9422289) compiled @ Nov  3 2017 19:40:05
phy ver: 1136_0, pp ver: 10.2

```

Autoscroll  Show timestamp      Newline      74880 baud      Clear output

- Close all dialog boxes, turn to main interface and click “STOP”. As shown in the illustration below. Ignore the garbled part here.



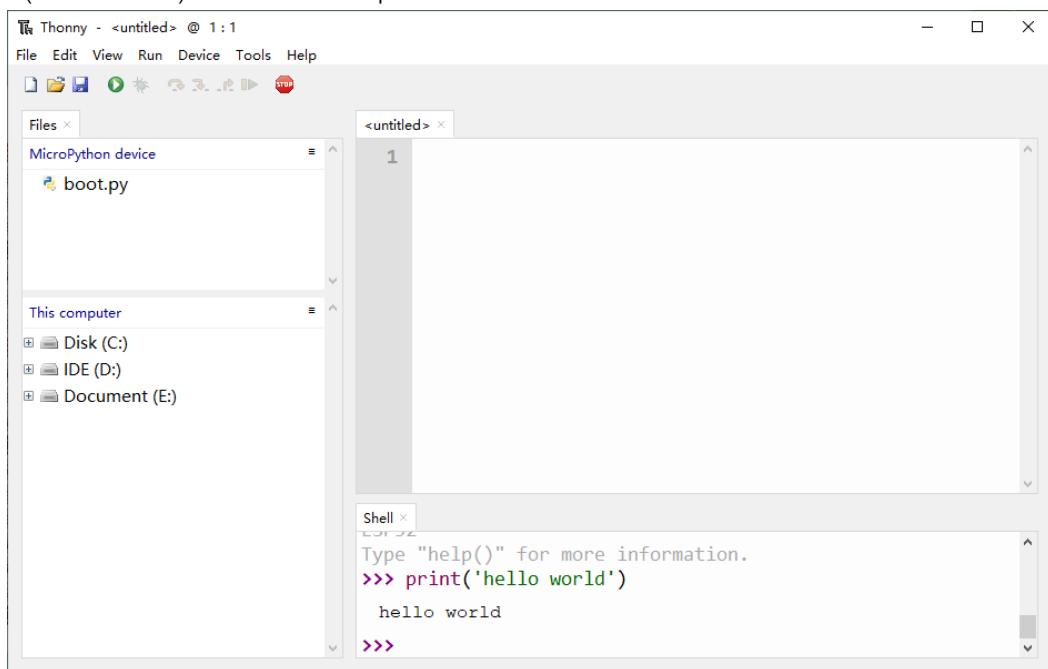
- So far, all the preparations have been made.



## 0.5 Testing codes (Important)

### Testing Shell Command

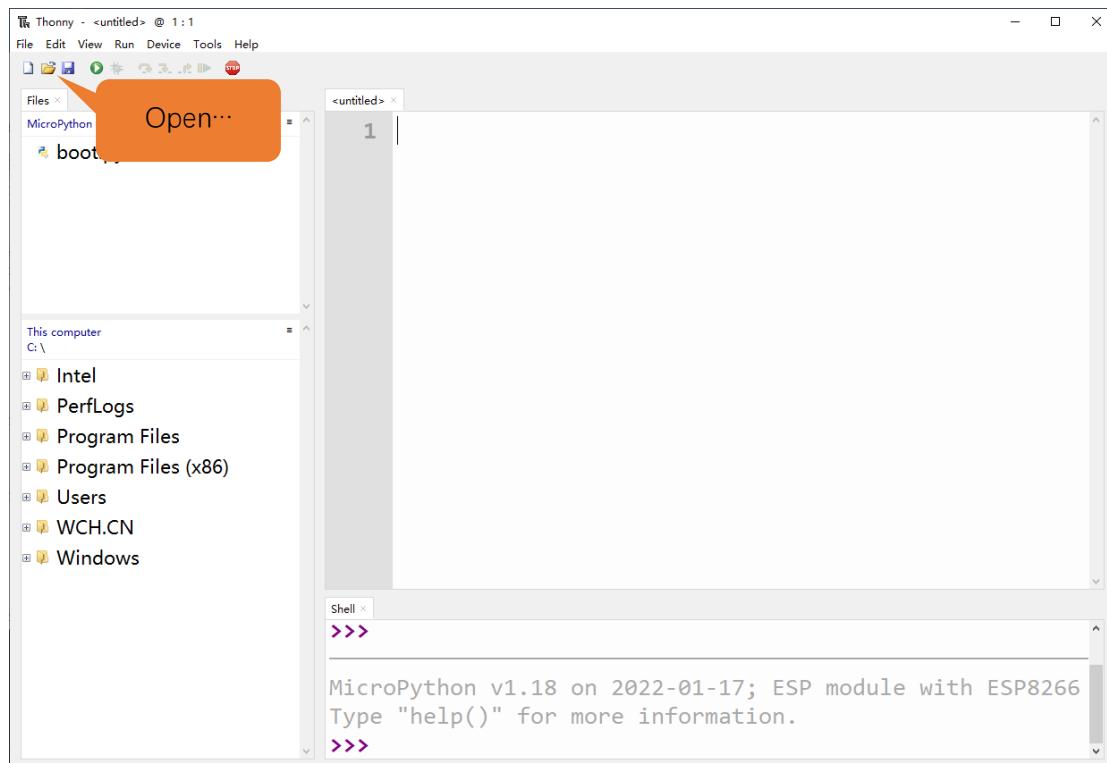
Enter “print('hello world')” in “Shell” and press Enter.



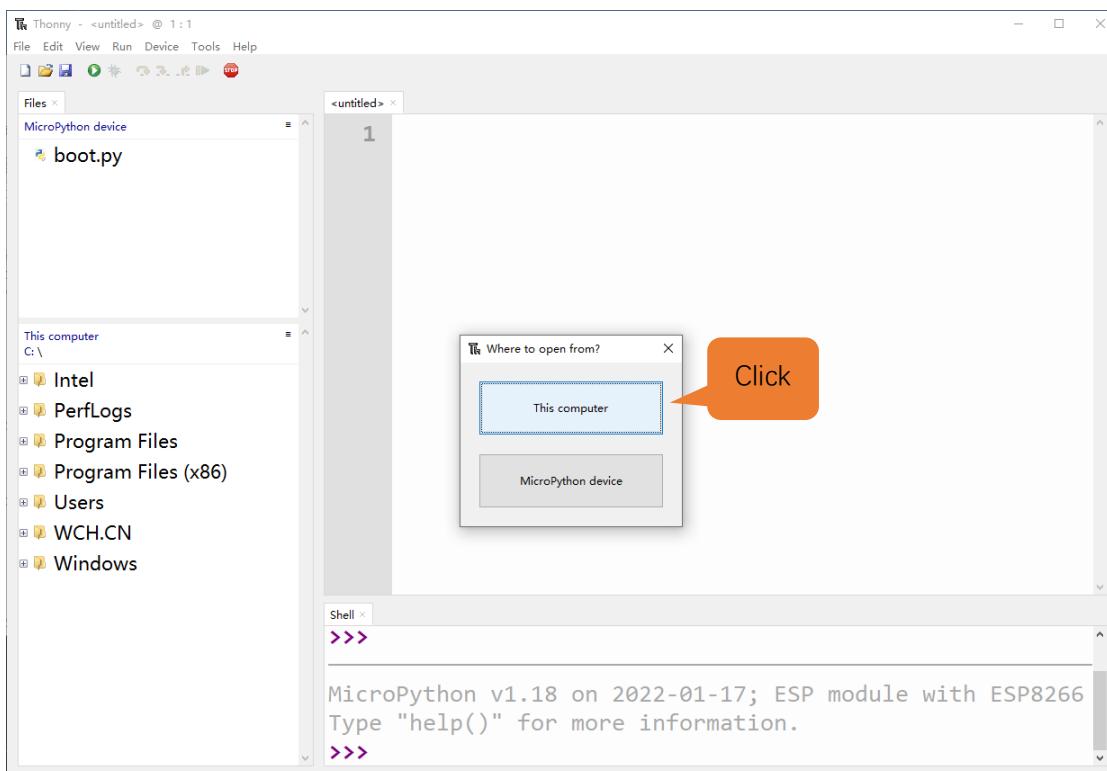
## Running Online

ESP8266 needs to be connected to a computer when it is run online. Users can use Thonny to write and debug programs.

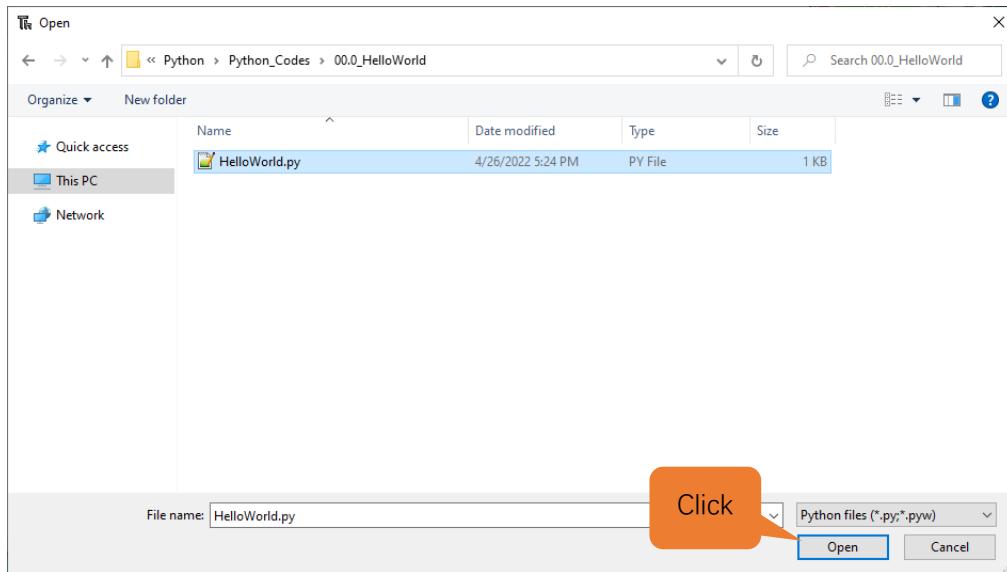
1. Open Thonny and click “Open…”.



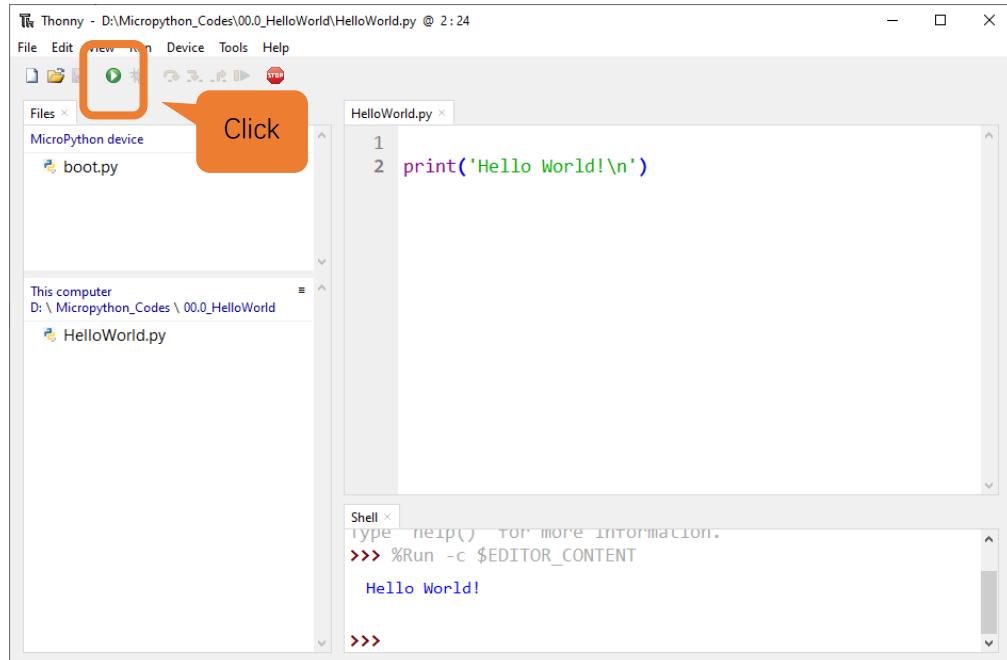
2. On the newly pop-up window, click “This computer”.



In the new dialog box, select “**HelloWorld.py**” in “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes/00.0\_HelloWorld**” folder.



Click “Run current script” to execute the program and “Hello World” will be printed in “Shell”.

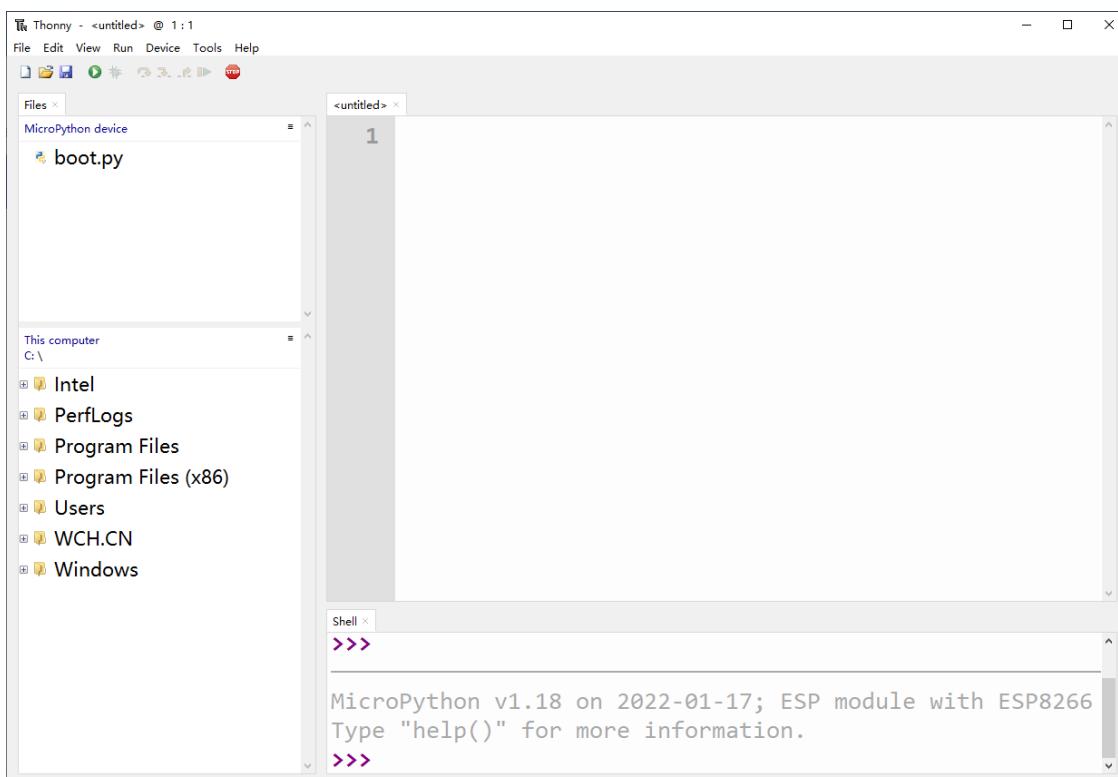


Note: When running online, if you press the reset key of ESP8266, user's code will not be executed again. If you wish to run the code automatically after resetting the code, please refer to the following [Running Offline](#).

## Running Offline (Important)

After ESP8266 is reset, it runs the file boot.py in root directory first and then runs file main.py, and finally, it enters "Shell". Therefore, to make ESP8266 execute user's programs after resetting, we need to add a guiding program in boot.py to execute user's code.

1. Move the program folder "**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**" to disk(D) in advance with the path of "**D:/Micropython\_Codes**". Open "Thonny".



2. Expand "00.1\_Boot" in the "Micropython\_Codes" in the directory of disk(D), and double-click boot.py, which is provided by us to enable programs in "MicroPython device" to run offline.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Tools, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for file operations like Open, Save, and Run. The main window has three tabs: Files, boot.py, and Shell.

- Files Tab:** Shows a file tree with "This computer" expanded, showing "D:\ Micropython\_Codes\00.1\_Boot" and "boot.py".
- boot.py Tab:** Displays the following Python code:
 

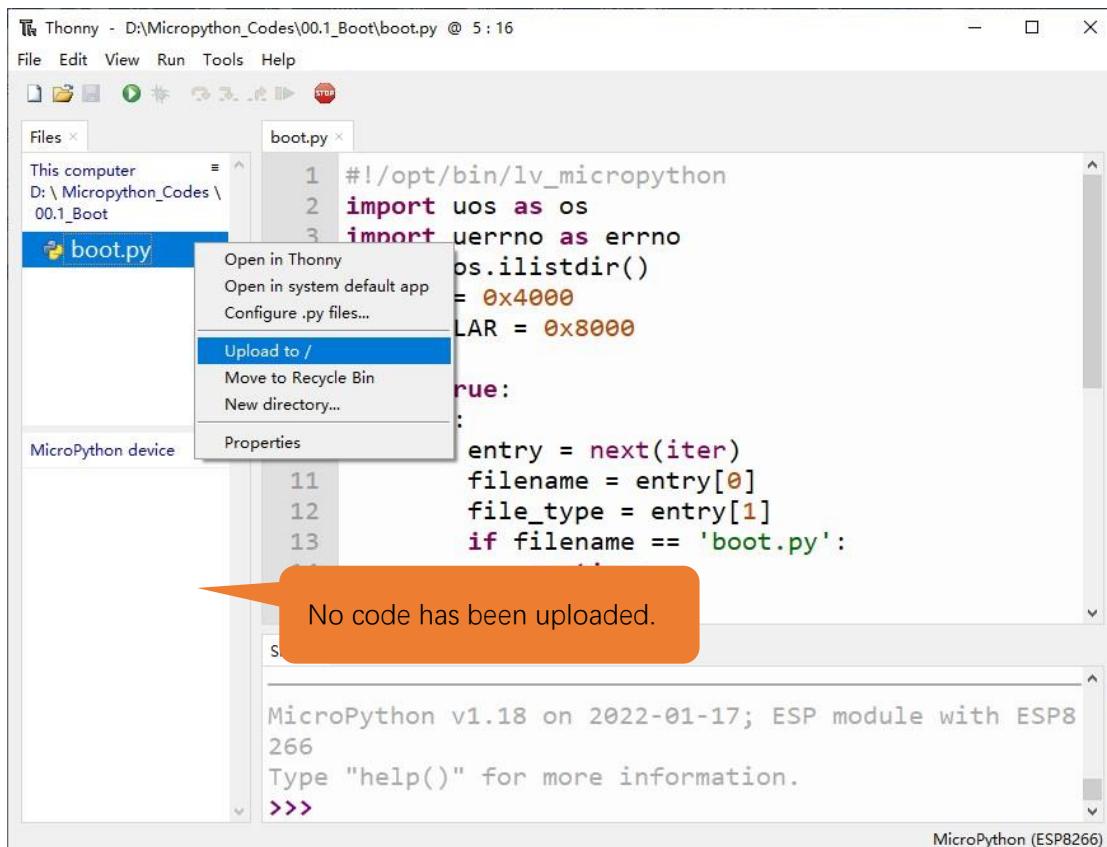
```

1 #!/opt/bin/lv_micropython
2 import uos as os
3 import uerrno as errno
4 iter = os.ilistdir()
5 IS_DIR = 0x4000
6 IS_REGULAR = 0x8000
7
8 while True:
9     try:
10         entry = next(iter)
11         filename = entry[0]
12         file_type = entry[1]
13         if filename == 'boot.py':
14             continue
15         else:
      
```
- Shell Tab:** Shows the MicroPython shell output:
 

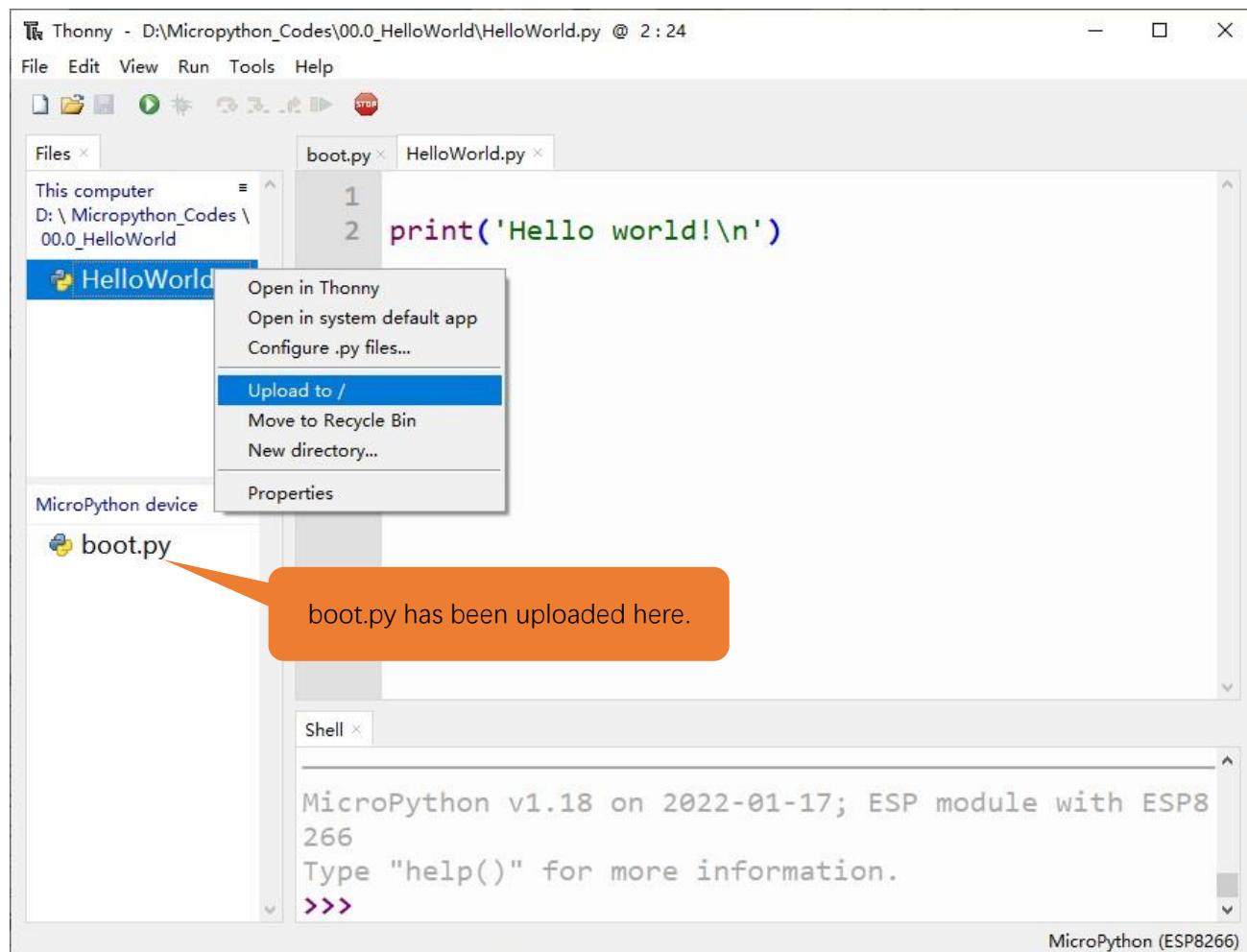
```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
66
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>
      
```

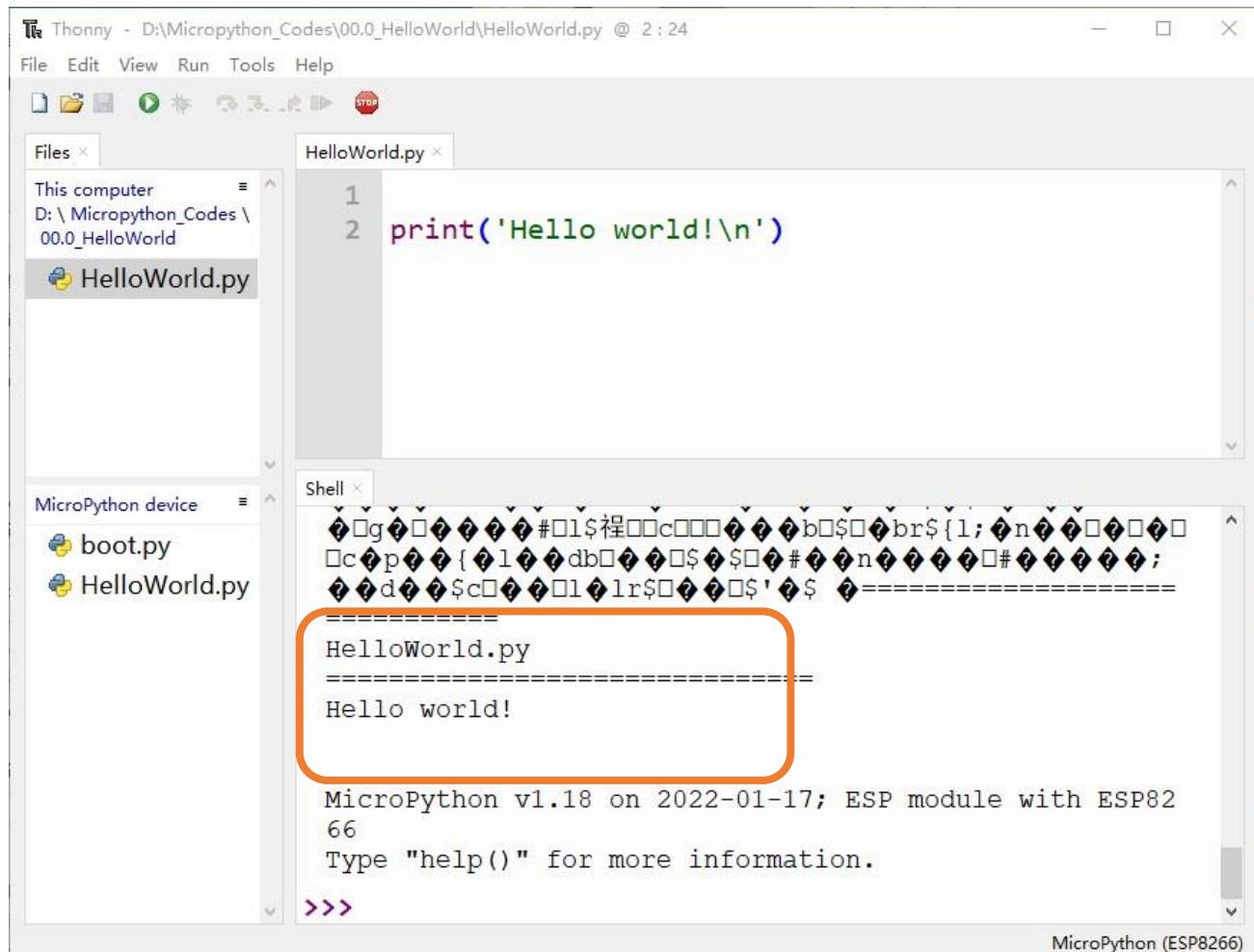
If you want your written programs to run offline, you need to upload boot.py we provided and all your codes to “MicroPython device” and press ESP8266’s reset key. Here we use programs 00.0 and 00.1 as examples. Select “boot.py”, right-click to select “Upload to /”.



Similarly, upload “HelloWorld.py” to “MicroPython device”.



3. Press the reset key and in the box of the illustration below, you can see the code is executed.



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. In the top menu bar, it says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\00.0\_HelloWorld\HelloWorld.py @ 2 : 24". The left sidebar shows a file tree with "This computer" and "MicroPython device" sections, both containing "boot.py" and "HelloWorld.py". The main area has a "Files" tab with "HelloWorld.py" selected, displaying the code:

```

1 print('Hello world!\n')

```

The "Shell" tab shows the output of the program execution:

```

=====
HelloWorld.py
=====
Hello world!

```

The "Shell" tab also displays the MicroPython version and information:

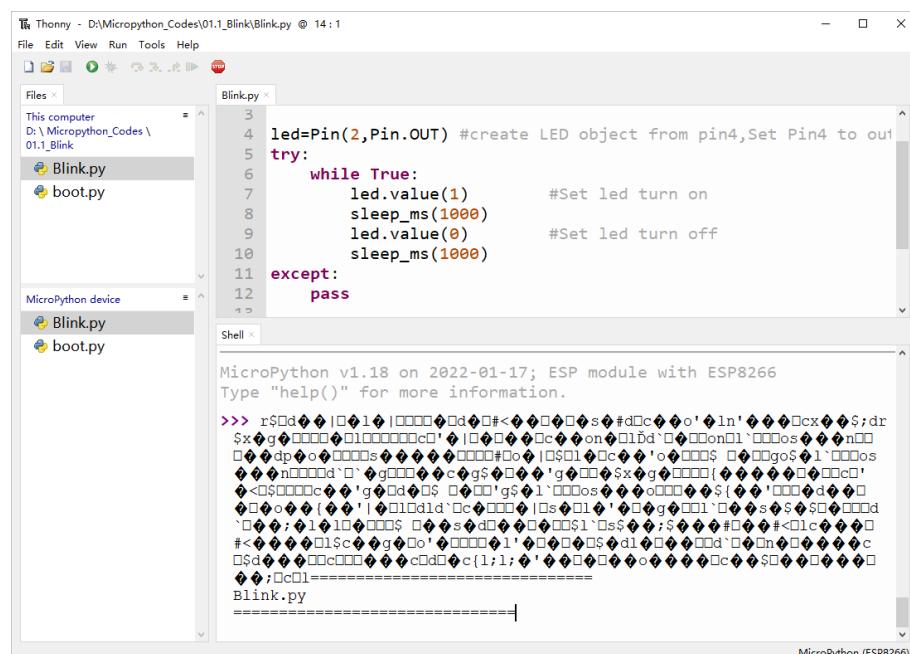
```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
66
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

In the bottom right corner of the shell window, it says "MicroPython (ESP8266)".

When you press the Reset key to run the offline code, the program will continue to execute while the ESP8266 is powered on.



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. In the top menu bar, it says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\01.1\_Blink\Blink.py @ 14 : 1". The left sidebar shows a file tree with "This computer" and "MicroPython device" sections, both containing "Blink.py" and "boot.py". The main area has a "Files" tab with "Blink.py" selected, displaying the code:

```

3 led=Pin(2,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin4,Set Pin4 to out
4
5 try:
6     while True:
7         led.value(1)          #Set led turn on
8         sleep_ms(1000)
9         led.value(0)          #Set led turn off
10        sleep_ms(1000)
11    except:
12        pass

```

The "Shell" tab shows the output of the program execution:

```

=====
Blink.py
=====

```

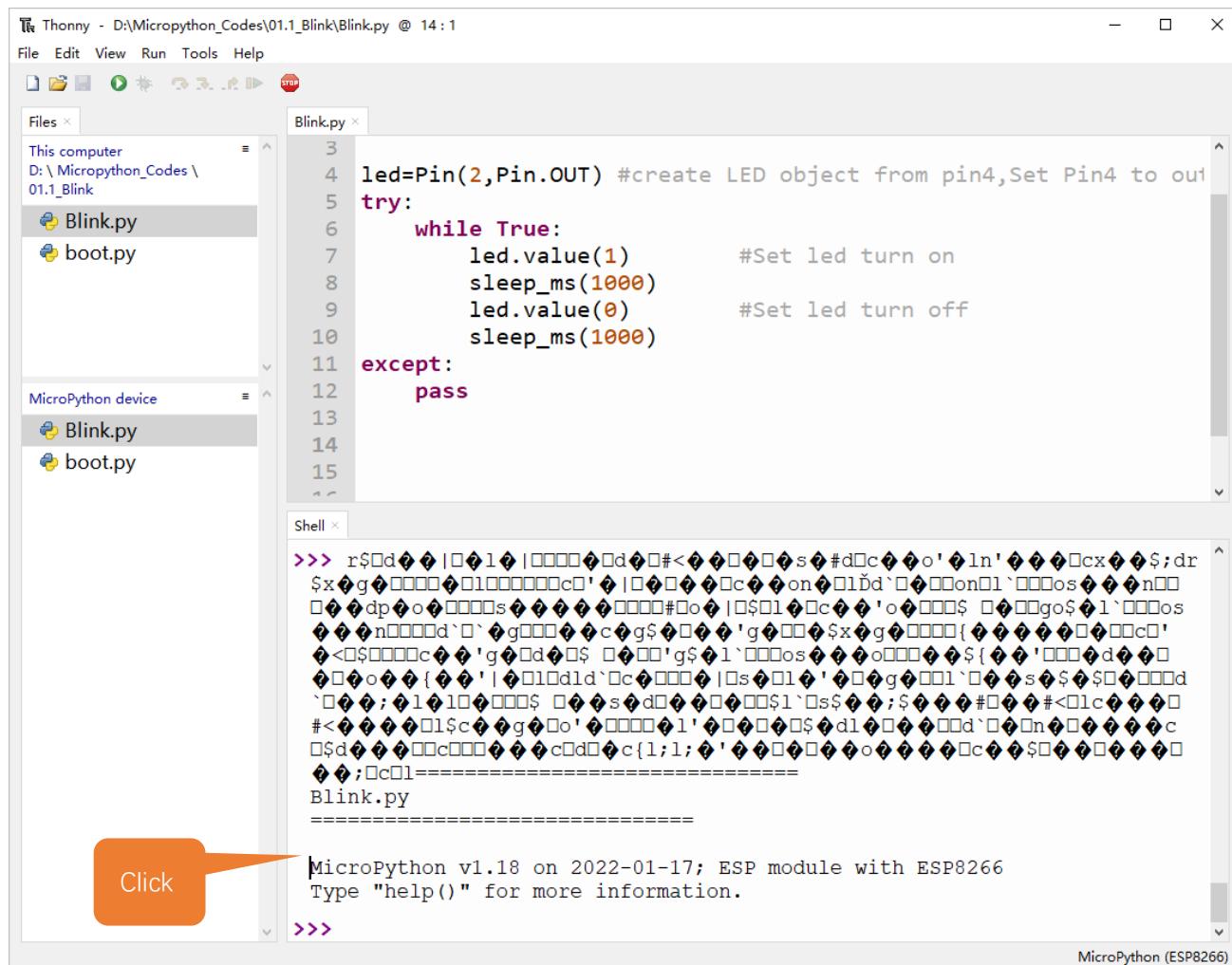
The output then shows a series of binary characters representing the LED blink pattern, followed by the message "Blink.py" and a final "=====

In the bottom right corner of the shell window, it says "MicroPython (ESP8266)".

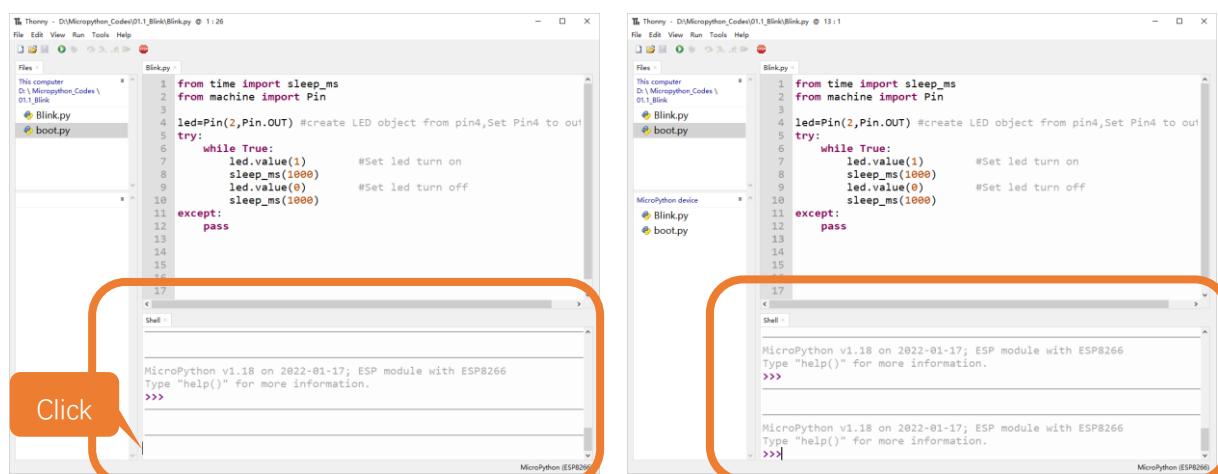
When you run offline code, you can exit the running program by pressing "CTRL" and "C" at the same time.

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

Before pressing the keyboard, click "Shell" with the mouse, and then press the keyboard key.



When your "Shell" is unresponsive or abnormal, you can exit the running program by pressing "CTRL" and "C" simultaneously.



If the ESP8266 does not work properly, you can press CTRL and C at the same time to observe whether the Shell responds. If the ESP8266 still does not work properly, you can also [rewrite the Micropython firmware](#) and perform related operations again.



## 0.6 Thonny Common Operation

### Uploading Code to ESP8266

For convenience, we take the operation on “boot.py” as an example here. We have added “boot.py” to every code directory. Each time when ESP8266 restarts, if there is a “boot.py” in the root directory, it will execute this code first.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. In the top bar, it says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\00.1\_Boot\boot.py @ 13:34". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Tools, Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for file operations. The main area has three tabs: "Files", "boot.py", and "Shell". The "boot.py" tab contains the following Python code:

```

1 import uerrno as errno
2 iter = os.ilistdir()
3 IS_DIR = 0x4000
4 IS_REGULAR = 0x8000
5
6 while True:
7     try:
8         entry = next(iter)
9         filename = entry[0]
10        file_type = entry[1]
11        if filename == 'boot.py':
12            continue
13        else:
14            print("====")
15            print(filename, end="")
16
17

```

The "Files" tab shows a file tree with "This computer", "D:\ Micropython\_Codes\ 01.1\_Blink", "Blink.py", and "boot.py". An orange callout points to the "boot.py" file in the tree. The "Shell" tab shows the MicroPython version and a prompt: "MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266" and ">>>". A large orange callout bubble on the right side states: "Codes in ESP8266's root directory will be executed automatically."

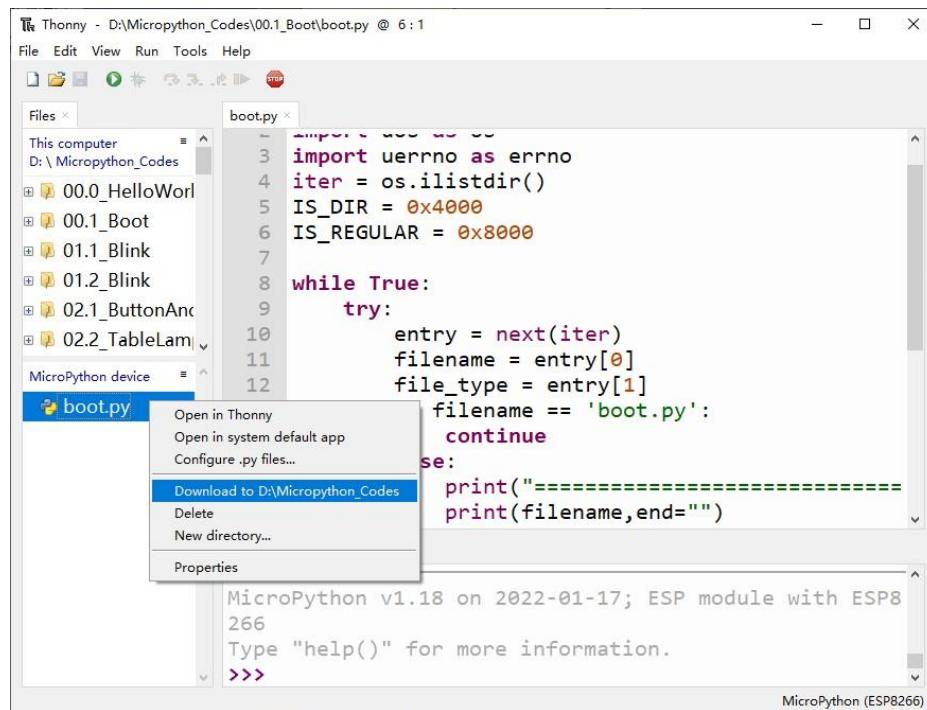
Select “Blink.py” in “01.1\_Blink”, right-click your mouse and select “Upload to /” to upload code to ESP8266’s root directory.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface again. The "boot.py" file is selected in the file tree. A context menu is open over the "boot.py" file, with "Upload to /" highlighted. Other options in the menu include "Open in Thonny", "Open in system default app", "Configure .py files...", "Move to Recycle Bin", "New directory...", and "Properties". The "boot.py" code and shell output are visible below the menu. The shell output shows "MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266" and ">>>".

Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com

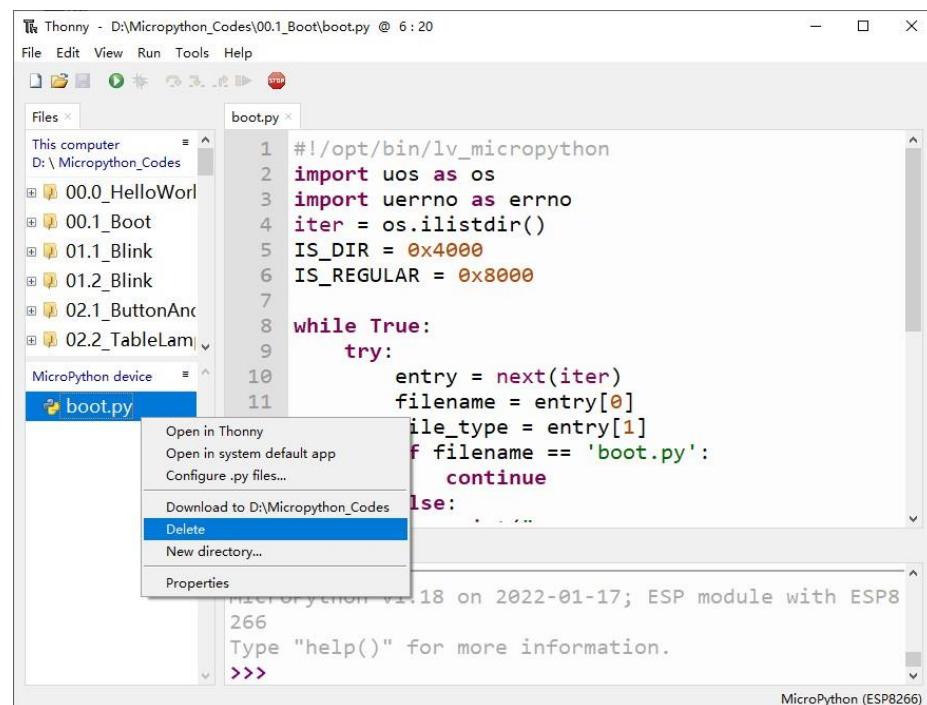
## Downloading Code to Computer

Select “boot.py” in “MicroPython device”, right-click to select “Download to ...” to download the code to your computer.



## Deleting Files from ESP8266's Root Directory

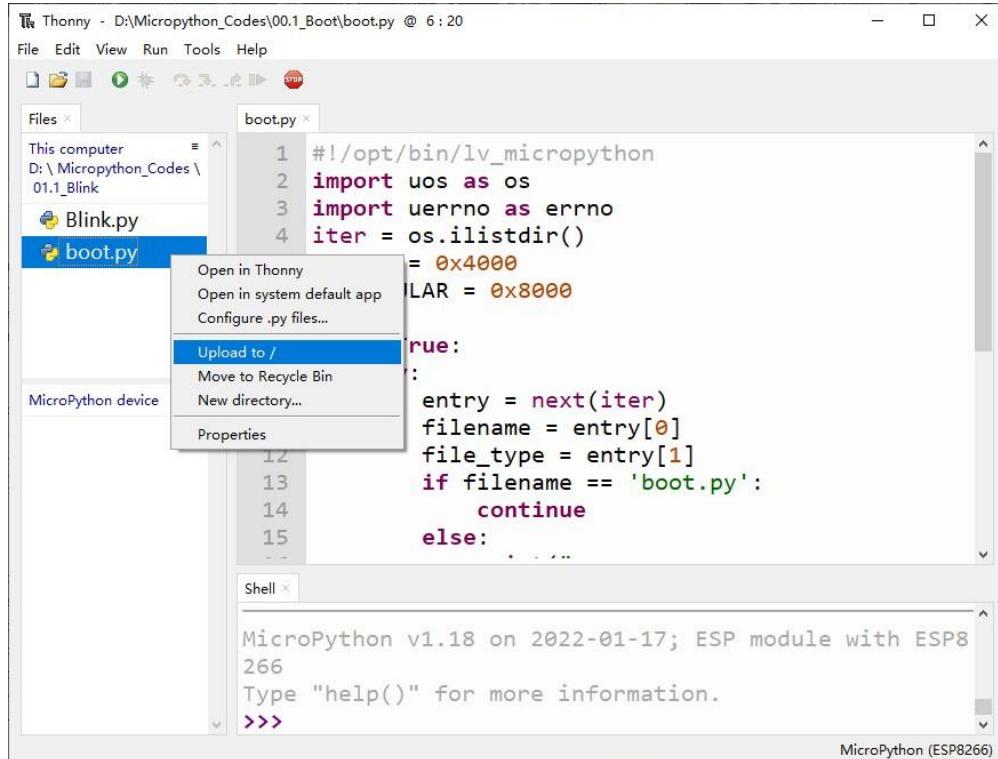
Select “boot.py” in “MicroPython device”, right-click it and select “Delete” to delete “boot.py” from ESP8266's root directory.





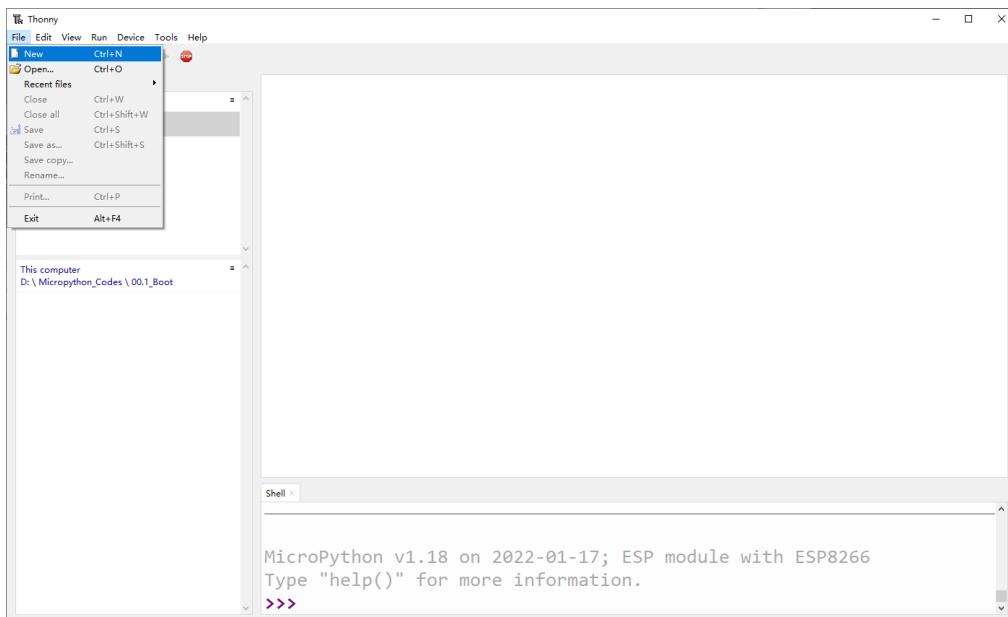
## Deleting Files from your Computer Directory

Select “boot.py” in “00.1\_Boot”, right-click it and select “Move to Recycle Bin” to delete it from “00.1\_Boot”.



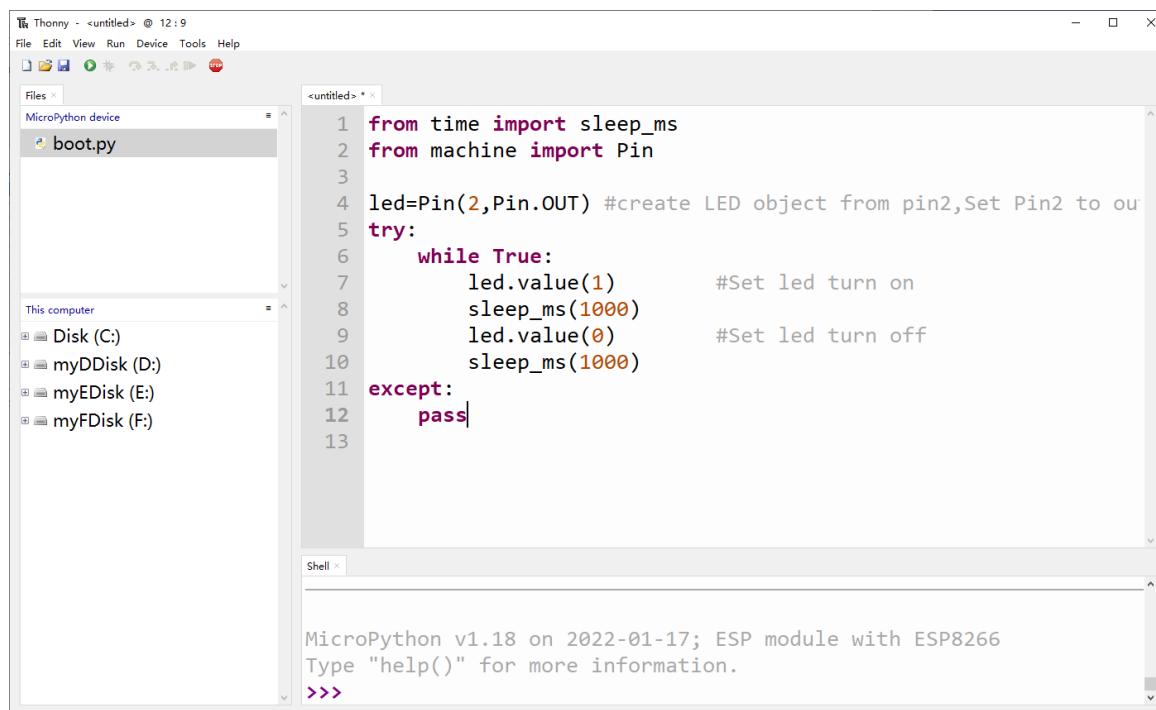
## Creating and Saving the code

Click “File” → “New” to create and write codes.



Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com

Enter codes in the newly opened file. Here we use codes of “01.1\_Blink.py” as an example.



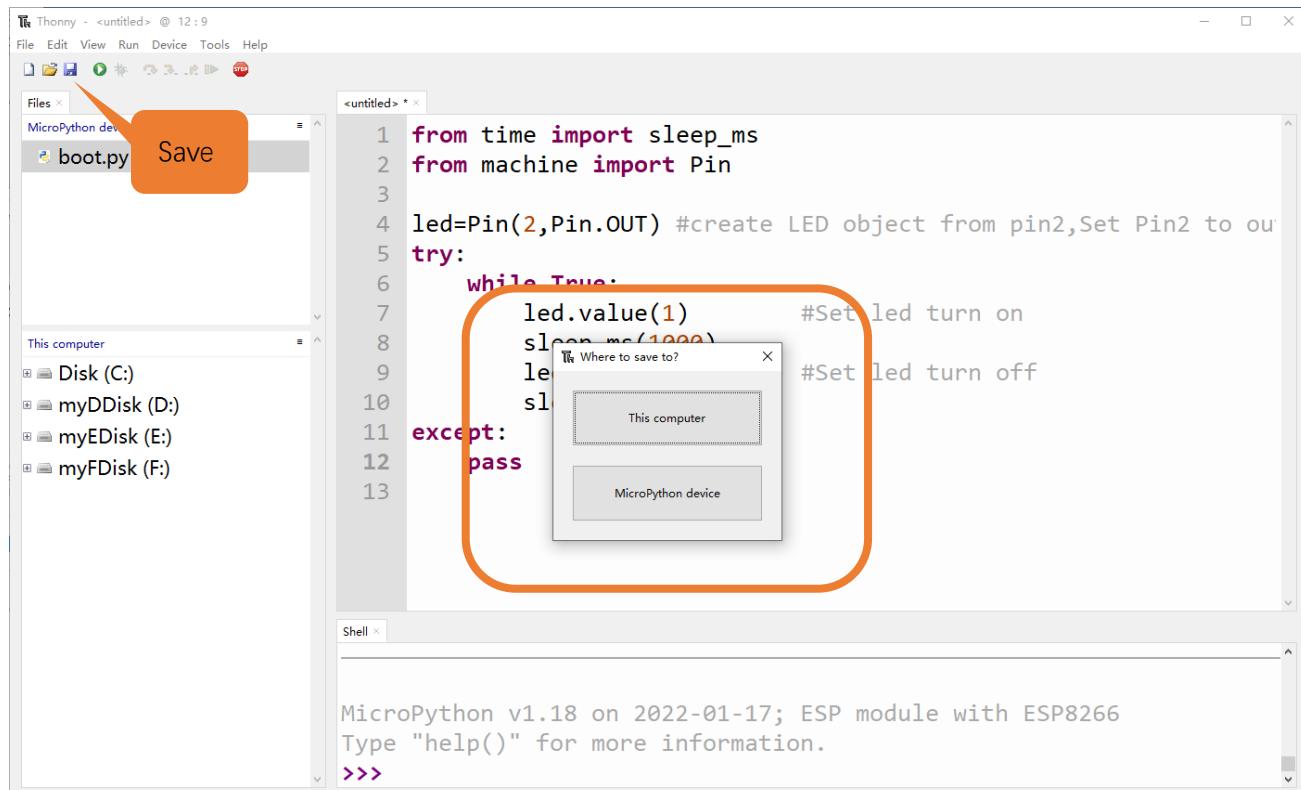
```

from time import sleep_ms
from machine import Pin

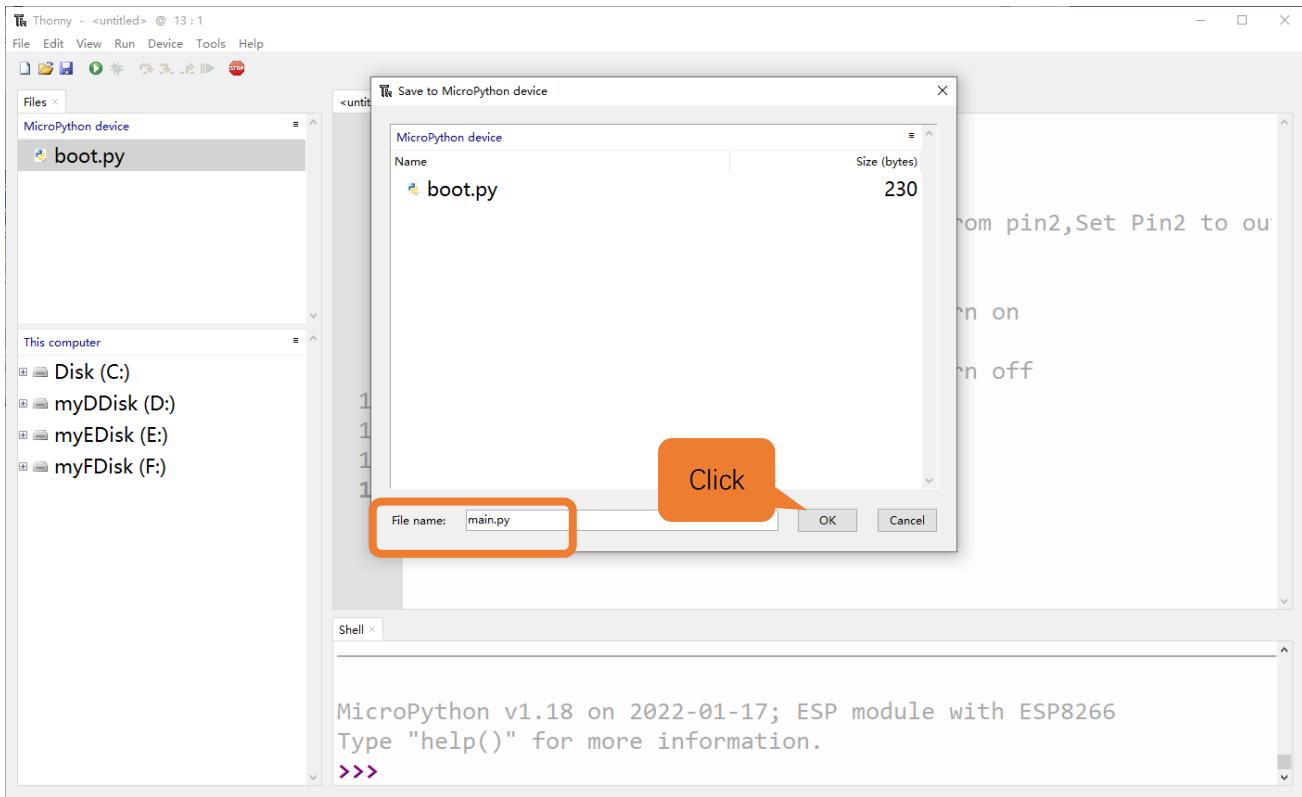
led=Pin(2,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin2,Set Pin2 to output
try:
    while True:
        led.value(1)          #Set led turn on
        sleep_ms(1000)
        led.value(0)          #Set led turn off
        sleep_ms(1000)
except:
    pass

```

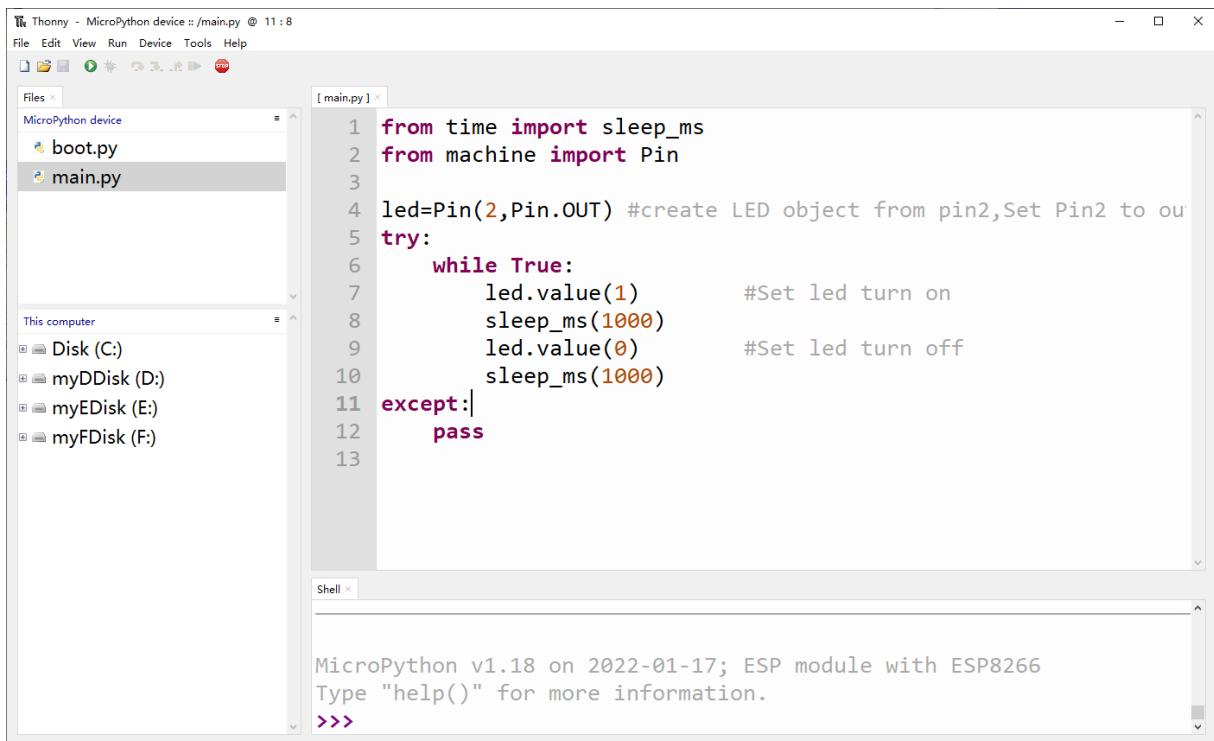
Click “Save” on the menu bar. You can save the codes either to your computer or to ESP8266.



Select “MicroPython device”, enter “main.py” in the newly pop-up window and click “OK”.



You can see that codes have been uploaded to ESP8266.



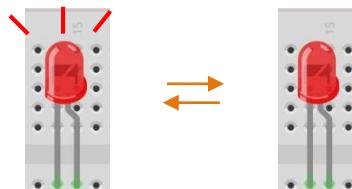
```

1 from time import sleep_ms
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 led = Pin(2, Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin2,Set Pin2 to output
5
6 while True:
7     led.value(1)          #Set led turn on
8     sleep_ms(1000)
9     led.value(0)          #Set led turn off
10    sleep_ms(1000)
11 except:
12     pass
13

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.  
=>

Disconnect and reconnect USB cable, and you can see that LED is ON for one second and then OFF for one second, which repeats in an endless loop.





# Chapter 1 LED (Important)

This chapter is the Start Point in the journey to build and explore ESP8266 electronic projects. We will start with simple “Blink” project.

## Project 1.1 Blink

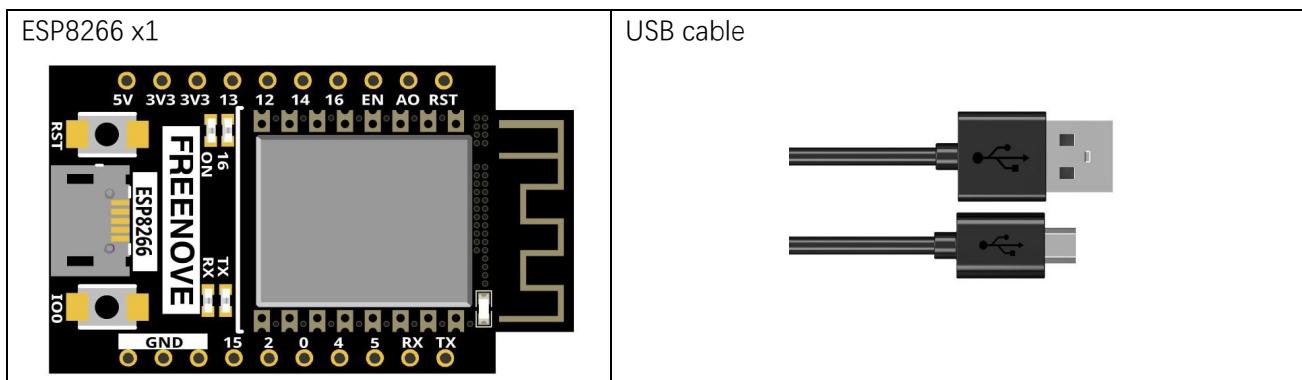
In this project, we will use ESP8266 to control blinking a common LED.

If you have not yet installed Thonny, click [here](#).

If you have not yet downloaded MicroPython Firmware, click [here](#).

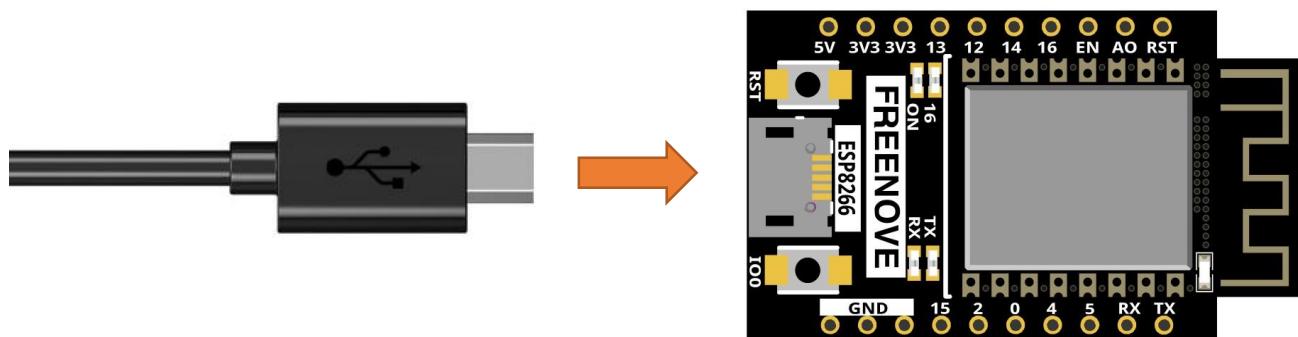
If you have not yet loaded MicroPython Firmware, click [here](#).

## Component List



### Power

ESP8266 needs 5v power supply. In this tutorial, we need connect ESP8266 development board to computer via USB cable to power it and program it. We can also use other 5v power source to power it.



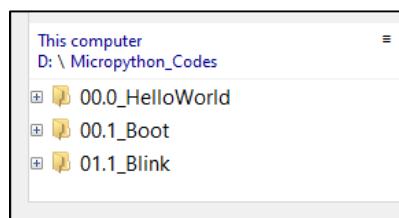
In the following projects, we only use USB cable to power ESP8266 development board by default.

## Code

Codes used in this tutorial are saved in “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**”. You can move the codes to any location. For example, we save the codes in Disk(D) with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

### 01.1\_Blink

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer”→“D:”→“Micropython\_Codes”.



Expand folder “01.1\_Blink” and double click “Blink.py” to open it. As shown in the illustration below.



Make sure ESP8266 is properly connected to your computer. Click “Stop/Restart backend” or press the reset button, and then wait to see what interface will show up.

```

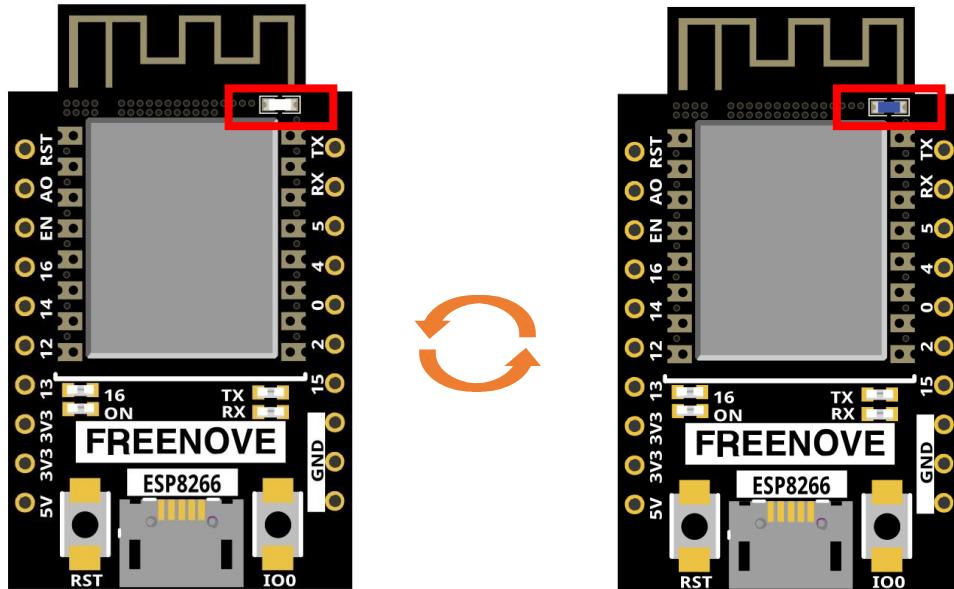
1. Stop/Restart backend
2. Run current script

This indicates
that the
connection is
successful.

File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
D:\Micropython_Codes\01_1_Blink\Blink.py @ 2 : 8
MicroPython device
boot.py
This computer
D:\ Micropython_Codes \ 01_1_Blink
Blink.py
1 from time import sleep_ms
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 led = Pin(2, Pin.OUT)
5
6 def main():
7     led.value(1) #Set led turn on
8     sleep_ms(1000)
9     led.value(0) #Set led turn off
10    sleep_ms(1000)
11
12 except:
13     pass
14
15
16
Shell <
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

```

Click “Run current script” shown in the box above, the code starts to be executed and the LED in the circuit starts to blink.



#### Note:

This is the code [running online](#). If you disconnect USB cable and repower ESP8266 or press its reset key, LED stops blinking and the following messages will be displayed in Thonny.

```

Type "help()" for more information.

>>>
Connection lost (GetOverlappedResult failed (PermissionError(13, 'Access is de
nied.', None, 5)))

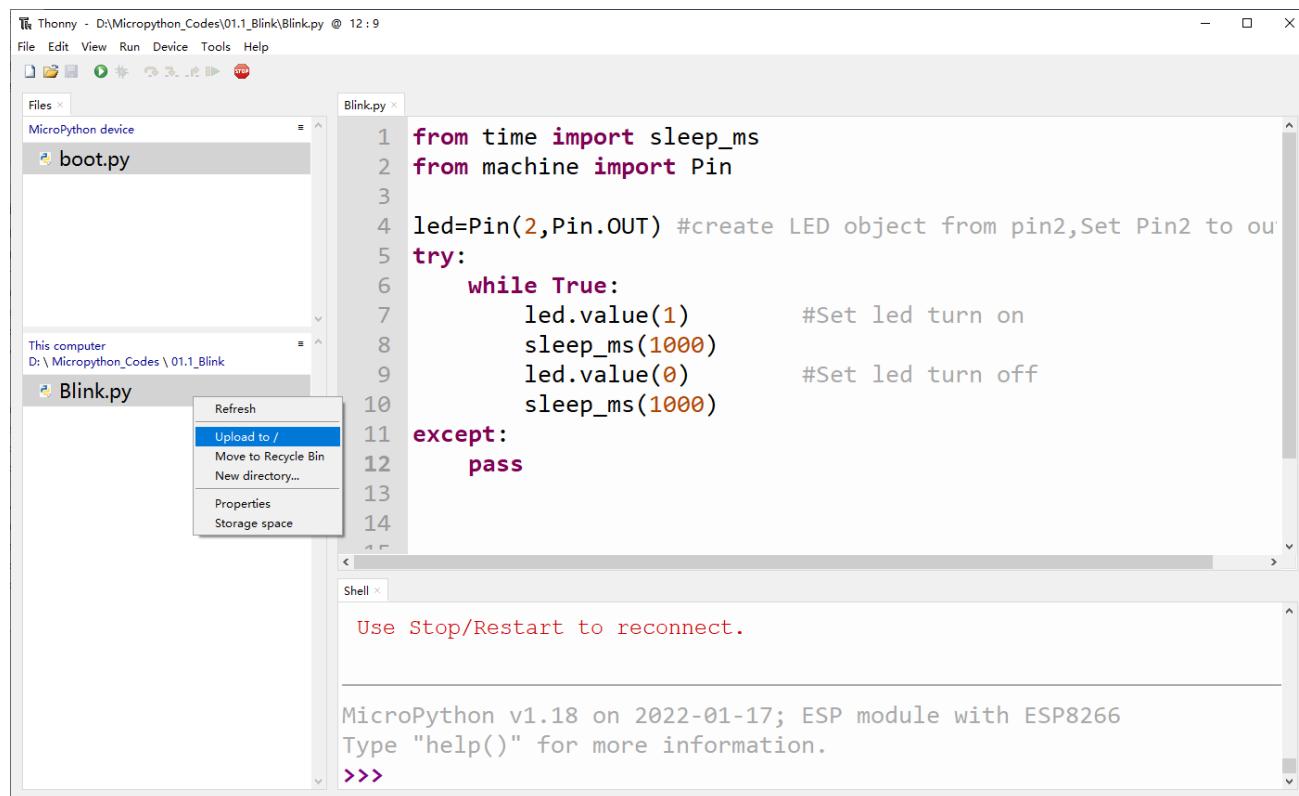
Use Stop/Restart to reconnect.

```

Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com

## Uploading code to ESP8266

As shown in the following illustration, right-click the file Blink.py and select “Upload to /” to upload code to ESP8266.



Upload boot.py in the same way.

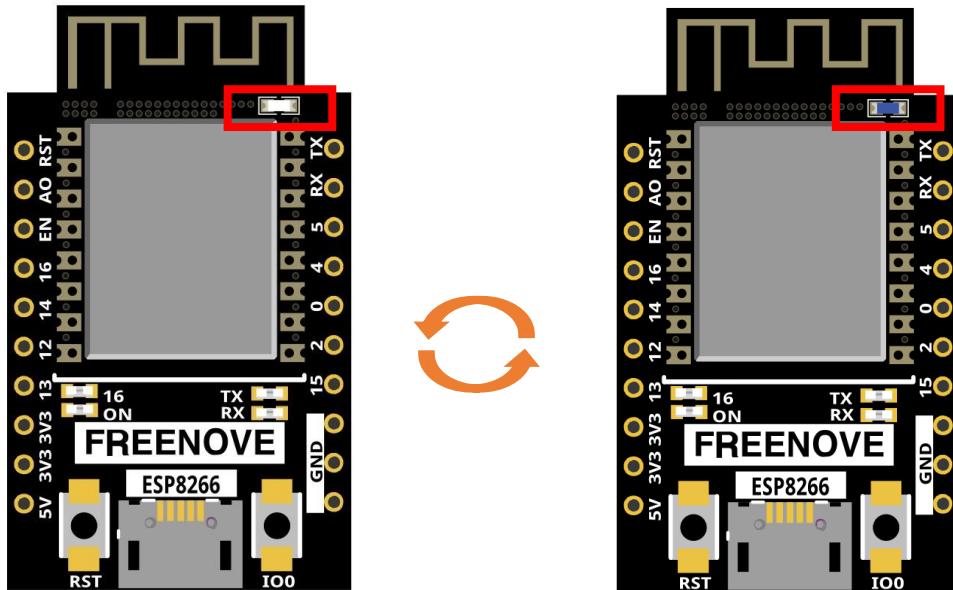
```

Thonny - D:\Micropython_Codes\01.1_Blink\Blink.py @ 4 : 12
File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
File Open Save Run Stop
MicroPython device
Blink.py
boot.py
This computer
D:\ Micropython_Codes \ 01.1_Blink
Blink.py
Refresh
Upload to /
Move to Recycle Bin
New directory...
Properties
Storage space
Blink.py
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
except:
    pass
led.value(1)
sleep_ms(1000)
led.value(0)
sleep_ms(1000)
#Set led turn on
#Set led turn off
Use Stop/Restart to reconnect.

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

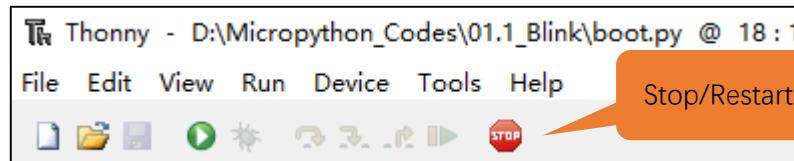
```

Press the reset key of ESP8266 and you can see LED is ON for one second and then OFF for one second, which repeats in an endless loop.



Note:

Codes here is run offline. If you want to stop running offline and enter Shell, just click "Stop" in Thonny.



Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com

If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

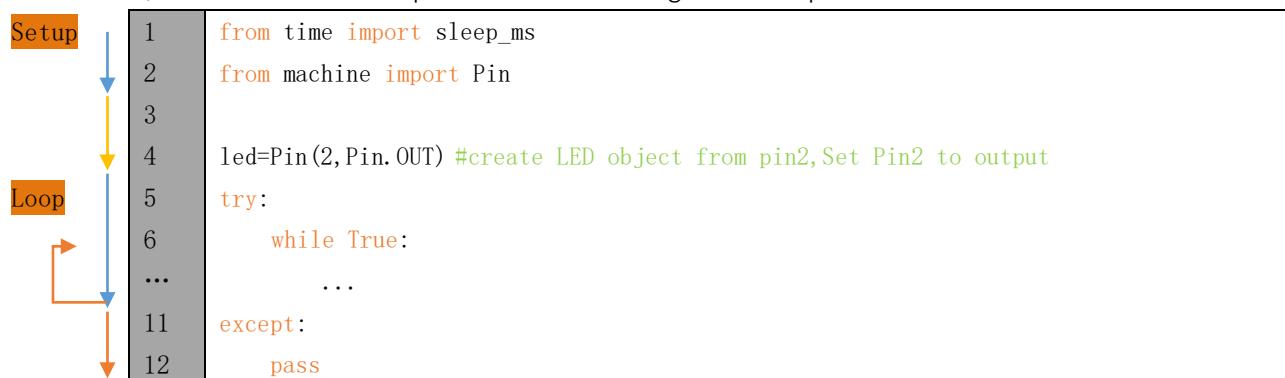
The following is the program code:

```

1  from time import sleep_ms
2  from machine import Pin
3
4  led=Pin(2,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin2, Set Pin2 to output
5  try:
6      while True:
7          led.value(1) #Set led turn on
8          sleep_ms(1000)
9          led.value(0) #Set led turn off
10         sleep_ms(1000)
11     except:
12         pass

```

Each time a new file is opened, the program will be executed from top to bottom. When encountering a loop construction, it will execute the loop statement according to the loop condition.



`Print()` function is used to print data to Terminal. It can be executed in Terminal directly or be written in a Python file and executed by running the file.

```
print("Hello world!")
```

Each time when using the functions of ESP8266, you need to import modules corresponding to those functions: Import `sleep_ms` module of `time` module and `Pin` module of `machine` module.

```

1  from time import sleep_ms
2  from machine import Pin

```

Configure GPIO2 of ESP8266 to output mode and assign it to an object named "led".

```
4  led=Pin(2,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin2, Set Pin2 to output
```

It means that from now on, LED represents GPIO2 that is in output mode.

Set the value of LED to 1 and GPIO2 will output high level.

```
7  led.value(1) #Set led turn on
```

Set the value of LED to 0 and GPIO2 will output low level.

```
9  led.value(0) #Set led turn on
```

Execute codes in a while loop.

```

6  while True:
...

```

Put statements that may cause an error in “try” block and the executing statements when an error occurs in “except” block. In general, when the program executes statements, it will execute those in “try” block. However, when an error occurs to ESP8266 due to some interference or other reasons, it will execute statements in “except” block.

“Pass” is an empty statement. When it is executed, nothing happens. It is useful as a placeholder to make the structure of a program look better.

```
5   try:  
...  
11  except:  
12    pass
```

The single-line comment of Micropython starts with a “#” and continues to the end of the line. Comments help us to understand code. When programs are running, Thonny will ignore comments.

```
9 #Set led turn on
```

MicroPython uses indentations to distinguish different blocks of code instead of braces. The number of indentations is changeable, but it must be consistent throughout one block. If the indentation of the same code block is inconsistent, it will cause errors when the program runs.

```
6   while True:  
7       led.value(1) #Set led turn on  
8       sleep_ms(1000)  
9       led.value(0) #Set led turn off  
10      sleep_ms(1000)
```

### How to import python files

Whether to import the built-in python module or to import that written by users, the command “import” is needed.

If you import the module directly you should indicate the module to which the function or attribute belongs when using the function or attribute (constant, variable) in the module. The format should be: <module name>.<function or attribute>, otherwise an error will occur.

```
import random  
  
num = random.randint(1, 100)  
print(num)
```

If you only want to import a certain function or attribute in the module, use the from...import statement. The format is as follows.

```
from random import randint  
num = randint(1, 100)  
print(num)
```

When using “from...import” statement to import function, to avoid conflicts and for easy understanding, you can use “as” statement to rename the imported function, as follows.

```
from random import randint as rand  
num = rand(1, 100)  
print(num)
```

## Reference

### Class machine

Before each use of the **machine** module, please add the statement “**import machine**” to the top of python file.

**machine.freq(freq\_val):** When freq\_val is not specified, it is to return to the current CPU frequency; Otherwise, it is to set the current CPU frequency.

**freq\_val:** 80000000(80MHz)、160000000(160MHz)、240000000(240MHz)

**machine.reset():** A reset function. When it is called, the program will be reset.

**machine.unique\_id():** Obtains MAC address of the device.

**machine.idle():** Turns off any temporarily unused functions on the chip and its clock, which is useful to reduce power consumption at any time during short or long periods.

**machine.disable\_irq():** Disables interrupt requests and return the previous IRQ state. The disable\_irq () function and enable\_irq () function need to be used together; Otherwise the machine will crash and restart.

**machine.enable\_irq(state):** To re-enable interrupt requests. The parameter **state** should be the value that was returned from the most recent call to the disable\_irq() function

**machine.time\_pulse\_us(pin, pulse\_level, timeout\_us=1000000):**

Tests the duration of the external pulse level on the given pin and returns the duration of the external pulse level in microseconds. When pulse level = 1, it tests the high level duration; When pulse level = 0, it tests the low level duration.

If the setting level is not consistent with the current pulse level, it will wait until they are consistent, and then start timing. If the set level is consistent with the current pulse level, it will start timing immediately.

When the pin level is opposite to the set level, it will wait for timeout and return “-2”. When the pin level and the set level is the same, it will also wait timeout but return “-1”. **timeout\_us** is the duration of timeout.

**Class Pin(id[, mode, pull, value])**

Before each use of the **Pin** module, please add the statement “**from machine import Pin**” to the top of python file.

**id:** Arbitrary pin number

**mode:** Mode of pins

**Pin.IN:** Input Mode

**Pin.OUT:** Output Mode

**Pin.OPEN\_DRAIN:** Open-drain Mode

**Pull:** Whether to enable the internal pull up and down mode

**None:** No pull up or pull down resistors

**Pin.PULL\_UP:** Pull-up Mode, outputting high level by default

**Pin.PULL\_DOWN:** Pull-down Mode, outputting low level by default

**Value:** State of the pin level, 0/1

**Pin.init(mode, pull):** Initialize pins

**Pin.value([value]):** Obtain or set state of the pin level, return 0 or 1 according to the logic level of pins.

Without parameter, it reads input level. With parameter given, it is to set output level.

**value:** It can be either True/False or 1/0.

**Pin.irq(trigger, handler):** Configures an interrupt handler to be called when the pin level meets a condition.  
**trigger:**

**Pin.IRQ\_FALLING:** interrupt on falling edge

**Pin.IRQ\_RISING:** interrupt on rising edge

**3:** interrupt on both edges

**Handler:** callback function

**Class time**

Before each use of the **time** module, please add the statement “**import time**” to the top of python file

**time.sleep(sec):** Sleeps for the given number of seconds

**sec:** This argument should be either an int or a float.

**time.sleep\_ms(ms):** Sleeps for the given number of milliseconds, ms should be an int.

**time.sleep\_us(us):** Sleeps for the given number of microseconds, us should be an int.

**time.time():** Obtains the timestamp of CPU, with second as its unit.

**time.ticks\_ms():** Returns the incrementing millisecond counter value, which recounts after some values.

**time.ticks\_us():** Returns microsecond

**time.ticks\_cpu():** Similar to ticks\_ms() and ticks\_us(), but it is more accurate(return clock of CPU).

**time.ticks\_add(ticks, delta):** Gets the timestamp after the offset.

**ticks:** ticks\_ms()、ticks\_us()、ticks\_cpu()

**delta:** Delta can be an arbitrary integer number or numeric expression

**time.ticks\_diff(old\_t, new\_t):** Calculates the interval between two timestamps, such as ticks\_ms(), ticks\_us() or ticks\_cpu().

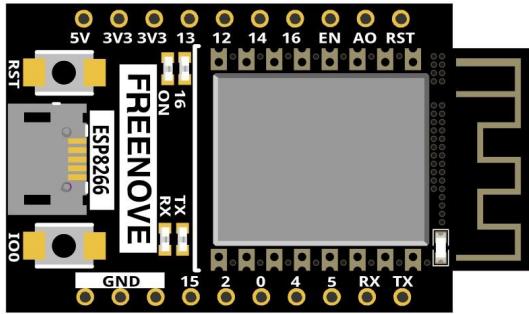
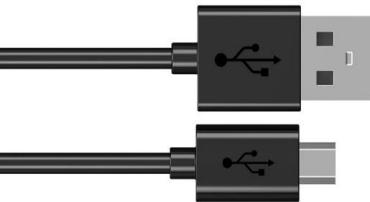
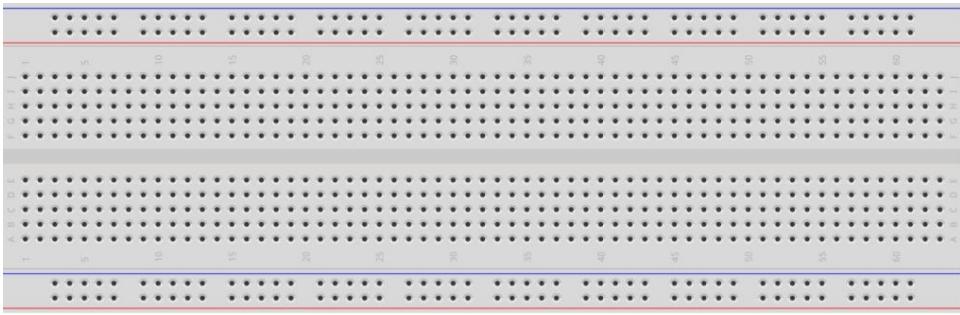
**old\_t:** Starting time

**new\_t:** Ending time

## Project 1.2 Blink

In this project, we will use ESP8266 to control blinking a common LED.

### Component List

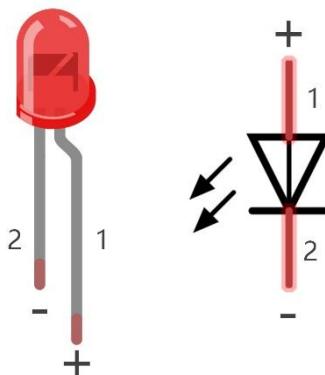
ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
LED x1	Resistor 220Ω x1	Jumper wire M/M x3
		

### Component knowledge

#### LED

An LED is a type of diode. All diodes only work if current is flowing in the correct direction and have two Poles. An LED will only work (light up) if the longer pin (+) of LED is connected to the positive output from a power source and the shorter pin is connected to the negative (-). Negative output is also referred to as Ground (GND). This type of component is known as “Polar” (think One-Way Street).

All common 2 lead diodes are the same in this respect. Diodes work only if the voltage of its positive electrode is higher than its negative electrode and there is a narrow range of operating voltage for most all common diodes of 1.9 and 3.4V. If you use much more than 3.3V the LED will be damaged and burn out.



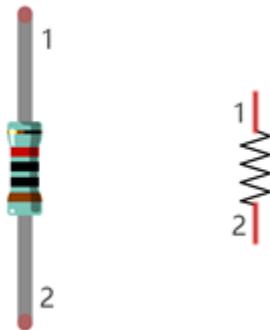
LED	Voltage	Maximum current	Recommended current
Red	1.9-2.2V	20mA	10mA
Green	2.9-3.4V	10mA	5mA
Blue	2.9-3.4V	10mA	5mA
Volt ampere characteristics conform to diode			

Note: LEDs cannot be directly connected to a power supply, which usually ends in a damaged component. A resistor with a specified resistance value must be connected in series to the LED you plan to use.

### Resistor

Resistors use Ohms ( $\Omega$ ) as the unit of measurement of their resistance ( $R$ ).  $1M\Omega=1000k\Omega$ ,  $1k\Omega=1000\Omega$ .

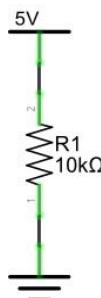
A resistor is a passive electrical component that limits or regulates the flow of current in an electronic circuit. On the left, we see a physical representation of a resistor, and the right is the symbol used to represent the presence of a resistor in a circuit diagram or schematic.



The bands of color on a resistor is a shorthand code used to identify its resistance value. For more details of resistor color codes, please refer to the appendix of this tutorial.

With a fixed voltage, there will be less current output with greater resistance added to the circuit. The relationship between Current, Voltage and Resistance can be expressed by this formula:  $I=V/R$  known as Ohm's Law where  $I$  = Current,  $V$  = Voltage and  $R$  = Resistance. Knowing the values of any two of these allows you to solve the value of the third.

In the following diagram, the current through R1 is:  $I=U/R=5V/10k\Omega=0.0005A=0.5mA$ .

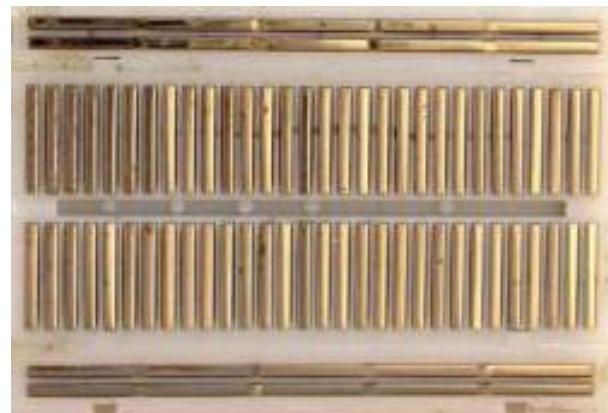
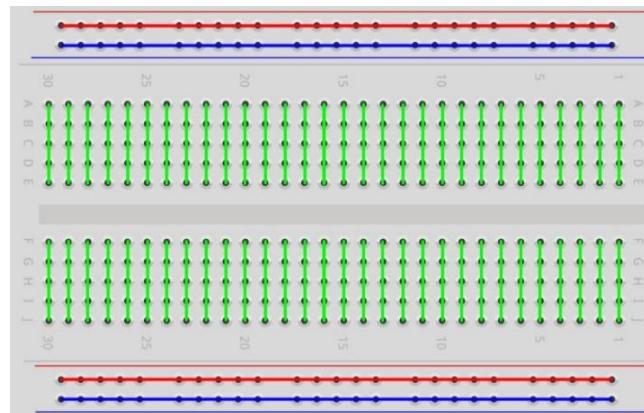


**WARNING:** Never connect the two poles of a power supply with anything of low resistance value (i.e. a metal object or bare wire) this is a Short and results in high current that may damage the power supply and electronic components.

Note: Unlike LEDs and Diodes, Resistors have no poles and are non-polar (it does not matter which direction you insert them into a circuit, it will work the same)

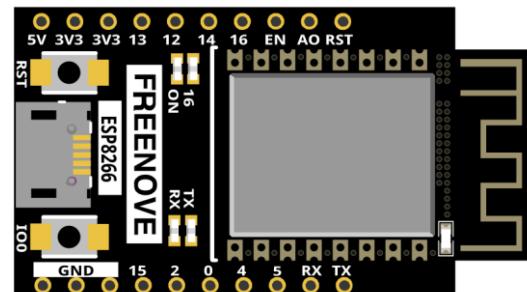
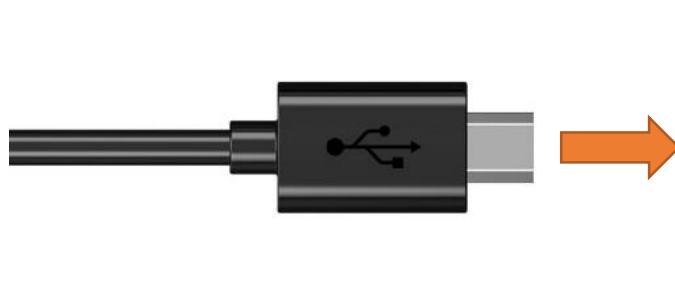
### Breadboard

Here we have a small breadboard as an example of how the rows of holes (sockets) are electrically attached. The left picture shows the way to connect pins. The right picture shows the practical internal structure.



### Power

ESP8266 needs 5v power supply. In this tutorial, we need connect ESP8266 to computer via USB cable to power it and program it. We can also use other 5v power source to power it.



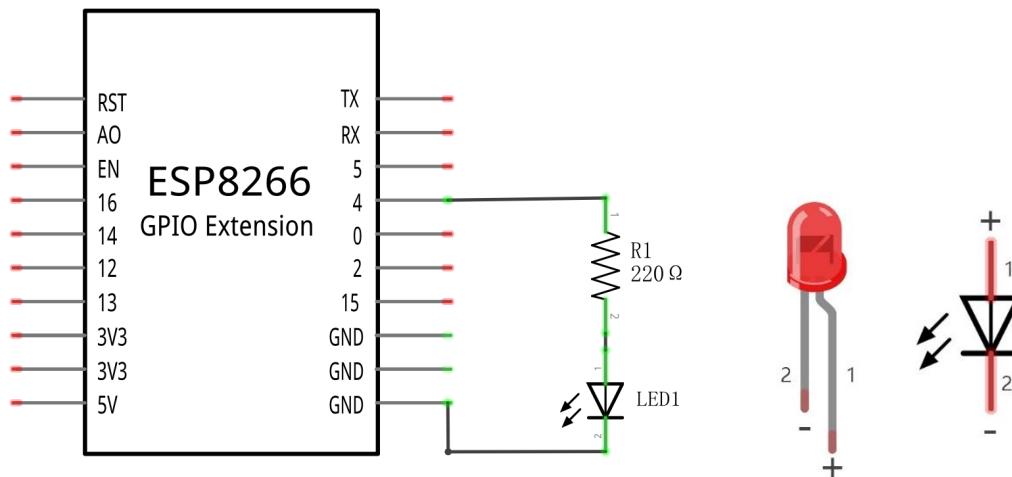
Later, we only use USB cable to power ESP8266 in default.

## Circuit

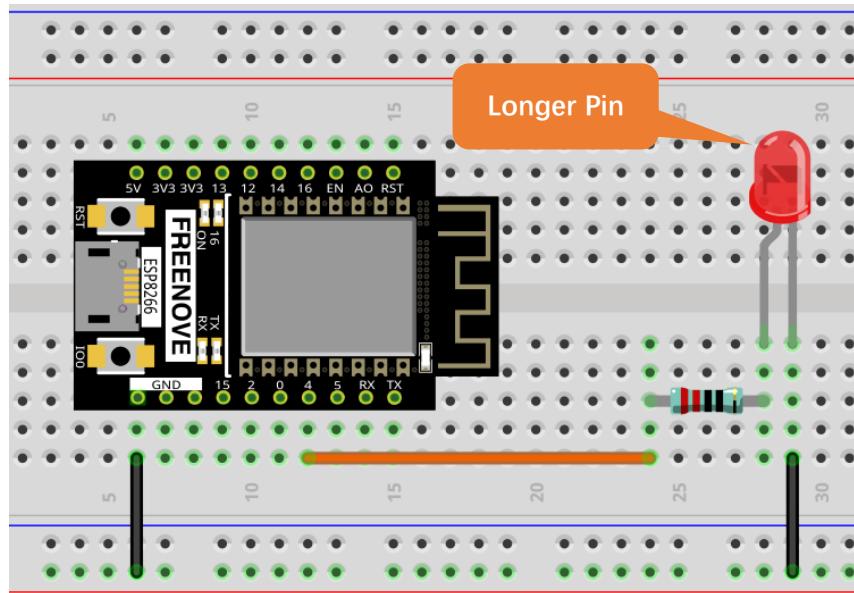
First, disconnect all power from the ESP8266. Then build the circuit according to the circuit and hardware diagrams. After the circuit is built and verified correct, connect the PC to ESP8266.

**CAUTION:** Avoid any possible short circuits (especially connecting 5V or GND, 3.3V and GND)! **WARNING:** A short circuit can cause high current in your circuit, create excessive component heat and cause permanent damage to your hardware!

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. **If you need any support, please contact us via: support@freenove.com**



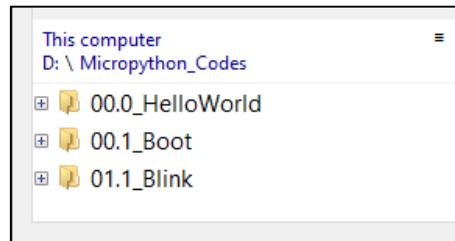
## Code

Codes used in this tutorial are saved in “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**”. You can move the codes to any location. For example, we save the codes in Disk(D) with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

## 01.2\_Blink

Open "Thonny", click "This computer" → "D:" → "Micropython\_Codes".



Expand folder "01.2\_Blink" and double click "Blink.py" to open it. As shown in the illustration below.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The title bar says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\01.2\_Blink\Blink.py @ 5 : 5". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The toolbar has icons for file operations like Open, Save, and Run. The left sidebar shows a tree view of the project structure under "MicroPython device" and "This computer". The main area displays the Python code for "Blink.py":

```
from time import sleep_ms
from machine import Pin

led=Pin(4,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin4,Set
try:
    while True:
        led.value(1)          #Set led turn on
        sleep_ms(1000)
        led.value(0)          #Set led turn off
        sleep_ms(1000)
except:
    pass
```

The right side of the interface shows the "Shell" tab with the MicroPython environment:

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
```

Make sure ESP8266 has been connected with the computer with ESP8266 correctly. Click "Stop/Restart backend" or press the reset button, and then wait to see what interface will show up.

```

1 from time import sleep_ms
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 led=Pin(4,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin4,Set Pin4 to output
5
6 try:
7     while True:
8         led.value(1)           #Set led turn on
9         sleep_ms(1000)
10        led.value(0)          #Set led turn off
11    sleep_ms(1000)
12 except:
13     pass
14
15
16

```

This indicates that the connection is successful.

1, Stop/Restart backend

2, Run current script

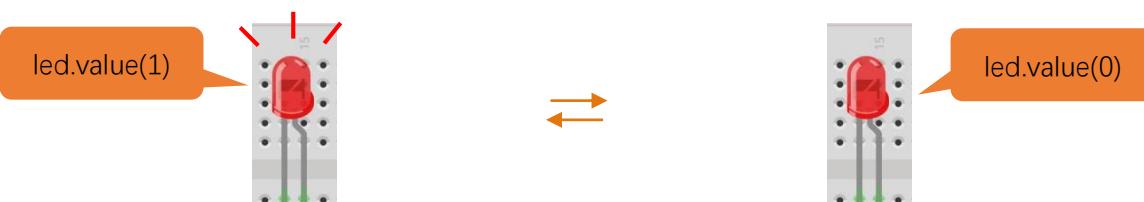
Shell >

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

```

Click “Run current script” shown in the box above, the code starts to be executed and the LED in the circuit starts to blink.



Note:

This is the code [running online](#). If you disconnect USB cable and repower ESP8266 or press its reset key, LED stops blinking and the following messages will be displayed in Thonny.

```

Type "help()" for more information.

>>>
Connection lost (GetOverlappedResult failed (PermissionError(13, 'Access is denied.', None, 5)))

Use Stop/Restart to reconnect.

```

### Uploading code to ESP8266

As shown in the following illustration, right-click the file Blink.py and select “Upload to /” to upload code to ESP8266.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for file operations like Open, Save, and Run. The main window has two panes: 'Files' on the left and 'Blink.py' on the right. The 'Files' pane shows a directory structure with 'boot.py' and 'Blink.py'. A context menu is open over 'Blink.py', with options: Upload to / (highlighted in blue), Move to Recycle Bin, New directory..., Properties, and Storage space. The 'Blink.py' pane contains the following code:

```
from time import sleep_ms
from machine import Pin

led=Pin(4,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin4,Set
try:
    while True:
        led.value(1)          #Set led turn on
        sleep_ms(1000)
        led.value(0)          #Set led turn off
        sleep_ms(1000)
except:
    pass
```

The 'Shell' pane at the bottom shows the MicroPython environment:

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
>>>
```



Upload boot.py in the same way.

```

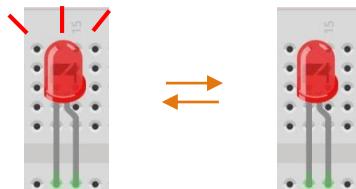
1 led=Pin(4,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin4,Set
2 try:
3     while True:
4         led.value(1)           #Set led turn on
5         sleep_ms(1000)
6         led.value(0)           #Set led turn off
7         sleep_ms(1000)
8     except:
9         pass
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17

```

Shell >>>

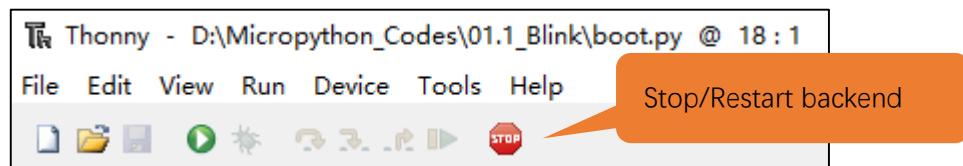
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.

Press the reset key of ESP8266 and you can see LED is ON for one second and then OFF for one second, which repeats in an endless loop.



Note:

Codes here is run offline. If you want to stop running offline and enter Shell, just click "Stop" in Thonny.



If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

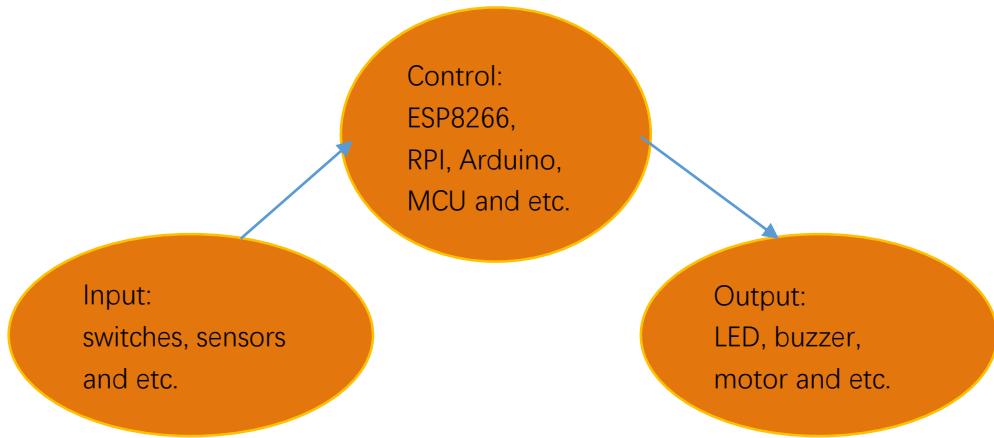
Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

The following is the program code:

```
1  from time import sleep_ms
2  from machine import Pin
3
4  led=Pin(4,Pin.OUT) #create LED object from pin2, Set Pin2 to output
5  try:
6      while True:
7          led.value(1) #Set led turn on
8          sleep_ms(1000)
9          led.value(0) #Set led turn off
10         sleep_ms(1000)
11 except:
12     pass
```

# Chapter 2 Button & LED

Usually, there are three essential parts in a complete automatic control device: INPUT, OUTPUT, and CONTROL. In last section, the LED module was the output part and ESP8266 was the control part. In practical applications, we not only make LEDs flash, but also make a device sense the surrounding environment, receive instructions and then take the appropriate action such as LEDs light up, make a buzzer turn ON and so on.

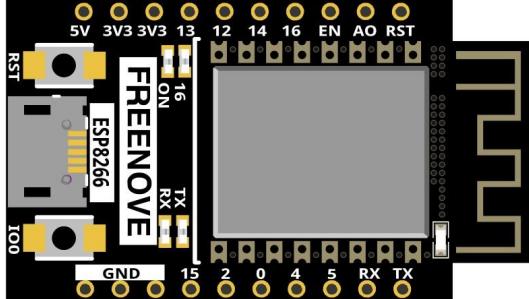
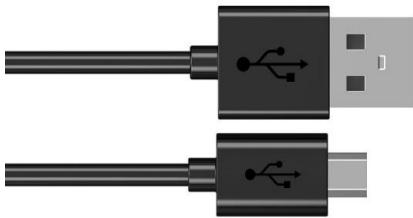
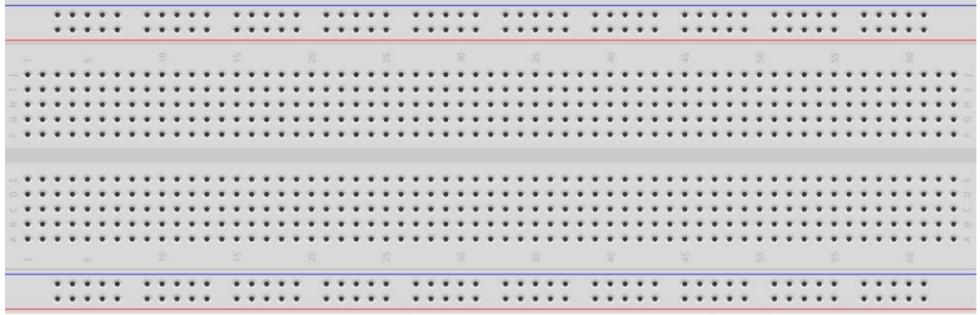


Next, we will build a simple control system to control an LED through a push button switch.

## Project 2.1 Button & LED

In the project, we will control the LED state through a Push Button Switch. When the button is pressed, our LED will turn ON, and when it is released, the LED will turn OFF. This describes a Momentary Switch.

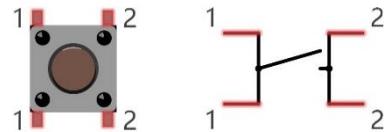
## Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable			
				
Breadboard x1				
Jumper wire M/M x6	LED x1	Resistor 220Ω x1	Resistor 10kΩ x2	Push button x1
				

## Component knowledge

### Push button

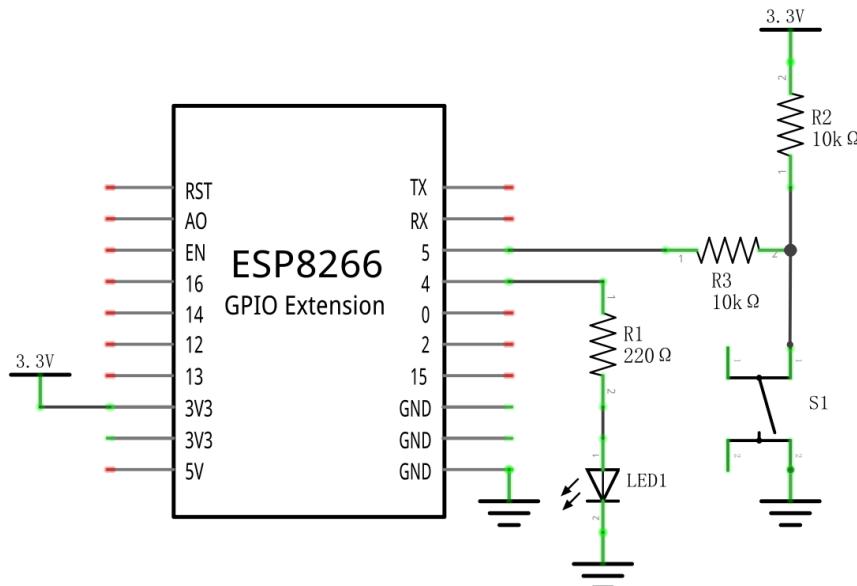
This type of Push Button Switch has 4 pins (2 Pole Switch). Two pins on the left are connected, and both left and right sides are the same per the illustration:



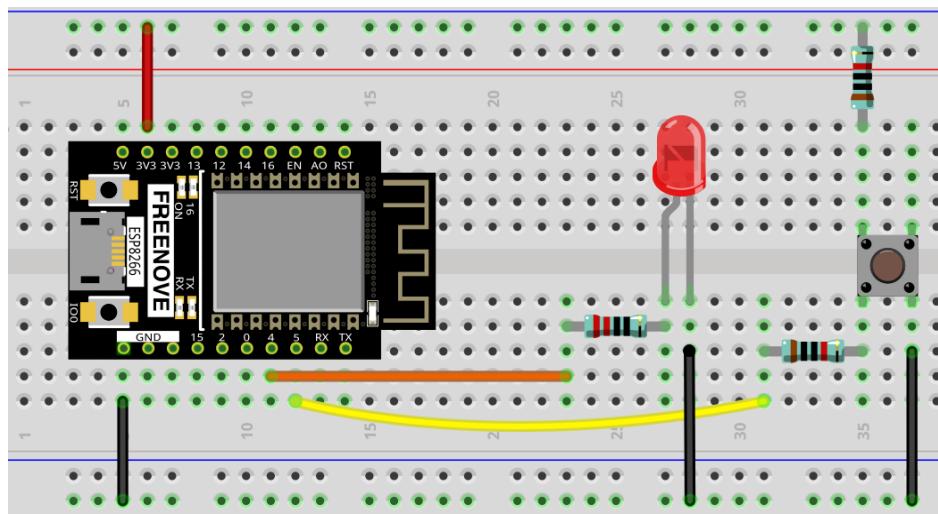
When the button on the switch is pressed, the circuit is completed (your project is Powered ON).

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

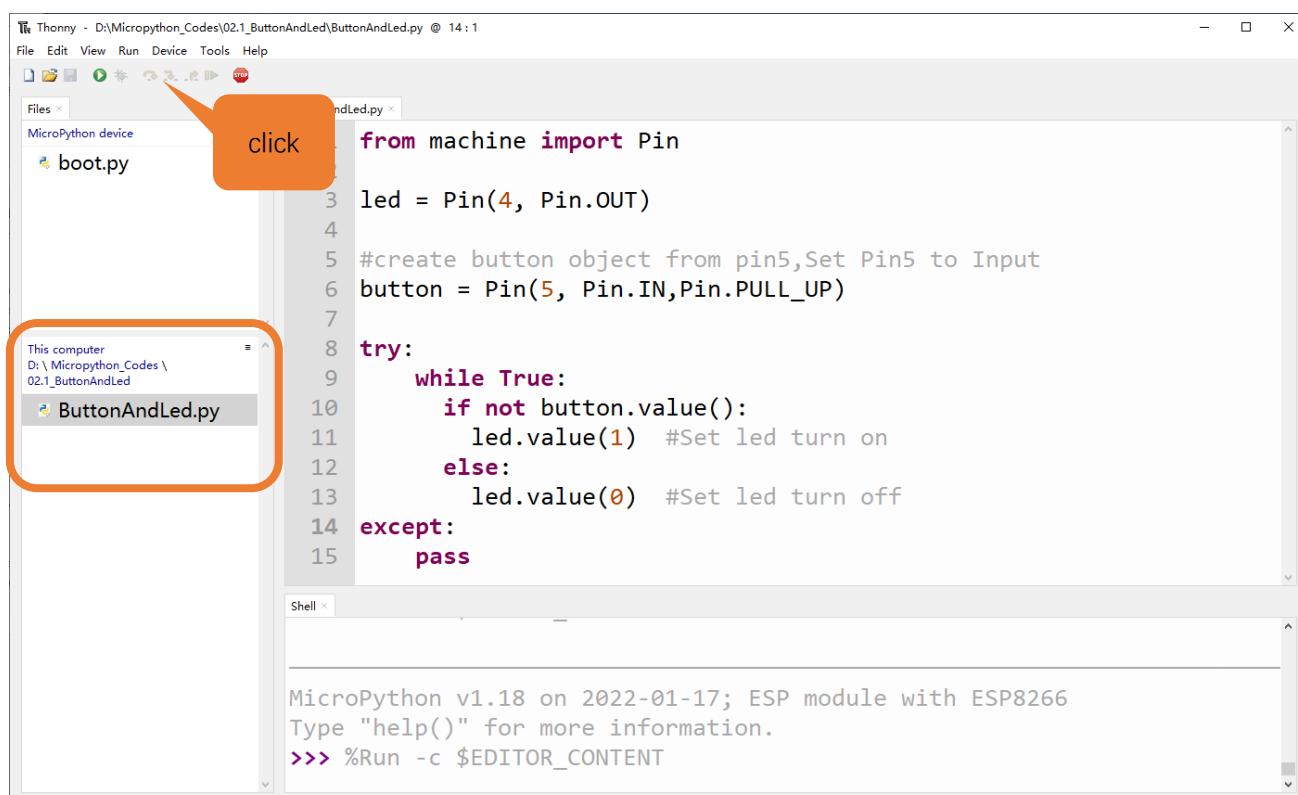
## Code

This project is designed to learn to control an LED with a push button switch. First, we need to read the state of the switch and then decide whether the LED is turned on or not based on it.

Move the program folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “D:/Micropython\_Codes”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “02.1\_ButtonAndLed” and double click “ButtonAndLed.py”.

### 02.1\_ButtonAndLed



```

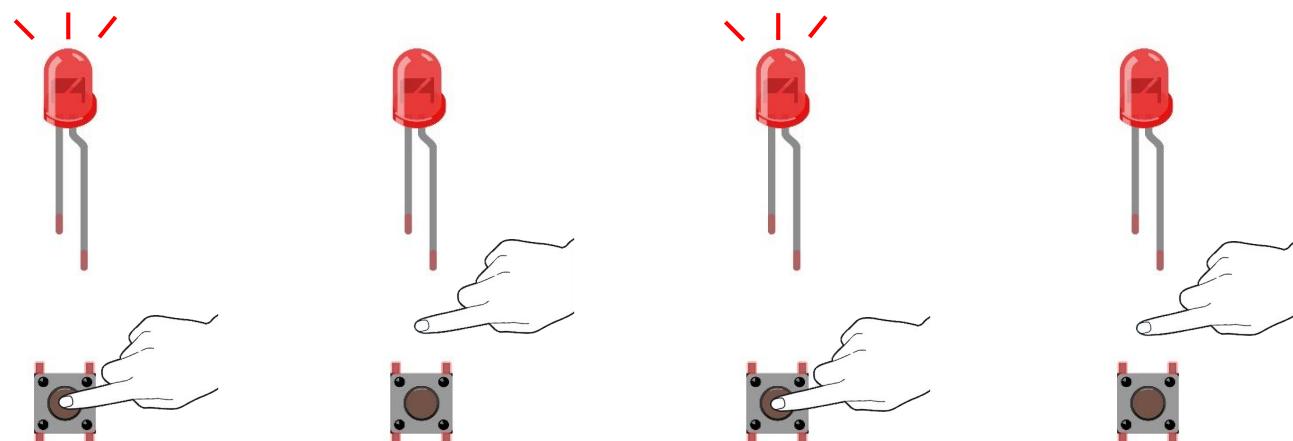
from machine import Pin
led = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
#Create button object from pin5, Set Pin5 to Input
button = Pin(5, Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)

try:
    while True:
        if not button.value():
            led.value(1) #Set led turn on
        else:
            led.value(0) #Set led turn off
except:
    pass

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.  
=>>> %Run -c \$EDITOR\_CONTENT

Click “Run current script” shown in the box of the above illustration, press the push button switch, LED turns ON; release the switch, LED turns OFF.



Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com



### Upload Code to ESP8266

As shown in the following illustration, right-click file 02.1\_ButtonAndLed and select “Upload to /” to upload code to ESP8266.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. In the center, there is a code editor window titled "ButtonAndLed.py" containing the following Python code:

```
1 from machine import Pin
2
3 led = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
4
5 #create button object from pin5,Set Pin5 to Input
6 button = Pin(5, Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)
7
8 try:
9     while True:
10         if not button.value():
11             led.value(1) #Set led turn on
12         else:
13             led.value(0) #Set led turn off
14 except:
15     pass
```

On the left, there is a file browser window titled "Files" showing a directory structure under "MicroPython device". A context menu is open over the file "boot.py", with the option "Upload to /" highlighted in blue. Below the code editor, there is a "Shell" window displaying the MicroPython prompt and some initial setup text.

Upload boot.py in the same way.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. On the left, the 'Files' tab displays two files: 'boot.py' and 'ButtonAndLed.py'. A red box highlights these two files. An orange callout bubble points from the text above to this red box. The main editor window contains the following Python code:

```
#create button object from pin5,Set Pin5 to Input
button = Pin(5, Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)

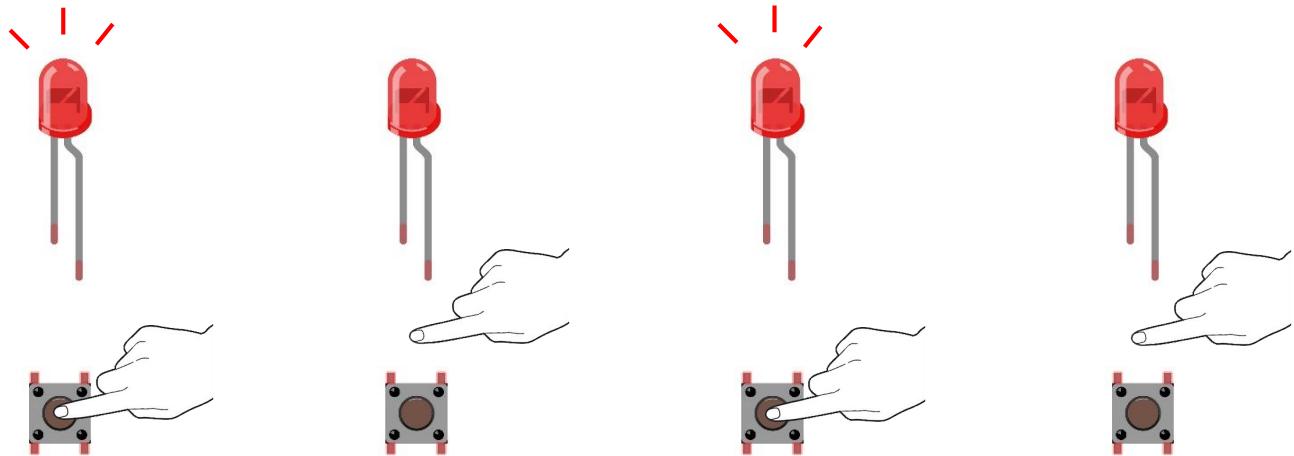
try:
    while True:
        if not button.value():
            led.value(1) #Set led turn on
        else:
            led.value(0) #Set led turn off
except:
    pass
```

The bottom shell window shows the MicroPython environment:

```
>>>
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
```



Press ESP8266's reset key, and then push the button switch, LED turns ON; Push the button again, LED turns OFF.



The following is the program code:

```

1 from machine import Pin
2
3 led = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
4
5 #create button object from pin5, Set Pin5 to Input
6 button = Pin(5, Pin.IN, Pin.PULL_UP)
7
8 try:
9     while True:
10        if not button.value():
11            led.value(1) #Set led turn on
12        else:
13            led.value(0) #Set led turn off
14 except:
15     pass

```

In this project, we use the Pin module of the machine, so before initializing the Pin, we need to import this module first.

```
1 from machine import Pin
```

In the circuit connection, LED and Button are connected with GPIO4 and GPIO5 respectively, so define led and button as 4 and 5 respectively.

```

3 led = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
4
5 #create button object from pin5, Set Pin5 to Input
6 button = Pin(5, Pin.IN, Pin.PULL_UP)

```

Read the pin state of button with value() function. Press the button switch, the function returns low level and the result of "if" is true, and then LED will be turned ON; Otherwise, LED is turned OFF.

```
9  while True:  
10     if not button.value():  
11         led.value(1) #Set led turn on  
12     else:  
13         led.value(0) #Set led turn off
```

If statement is used to execute the next statement when a certain condition is proved to be true (or non0). It is often used together with "else" statement, which judges other statements except the if statement. If you need to judge if the result of a condition is 0, you can use if not statement.

```
10    if not button.value():  
11        ...  
12    else:  
13        ...
```

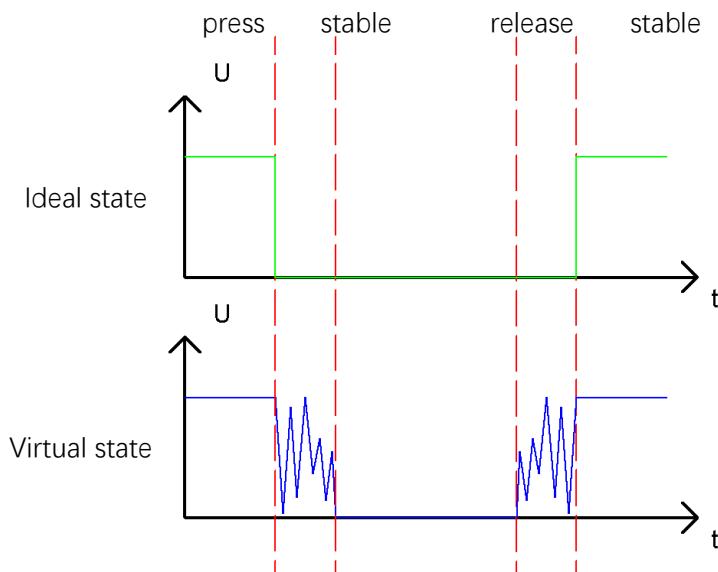
## Project 2.2 MINI table lamp

We will also use a Push Button Switch, LED and ESP8266 to make a MINI Table Lamp but this will function differently: Press the button, the LED will turn ON, and pressing the button again, the LED turns OFF. The ON switch action is no longer momentary (like a door bell) but remains ON without needing to continually press on the Button Switch.

First, let us learn something about the push button switch.

### Debounce for Push Button

When a Momentary Push Button Switch is pressed, it will not change from one state to another state immediately. Due to tiny mechanical vibrations, there will be a short period of continuous buffeting before it completely reaches another state too fast for Humans to detect but not for computer microcontrollers. The same is true when the push button switch is released. This unwanted phenomenon is known as “bounce”.



Therefore, if we can directly detect the state of the Push Button Switch, there are multiple pressing and releasing actions in one pressing cycle. This buffeting will mislead the high-speed operation of the microcontroller to cause many false decisions. Therefore, we need to eliminate the impact of buffeting. Our solution: to judge the state of the button multiple times. Only when the button state is stable (consistent) over a period of time, can it indicate that the button is actually in the ON state (being pressed).

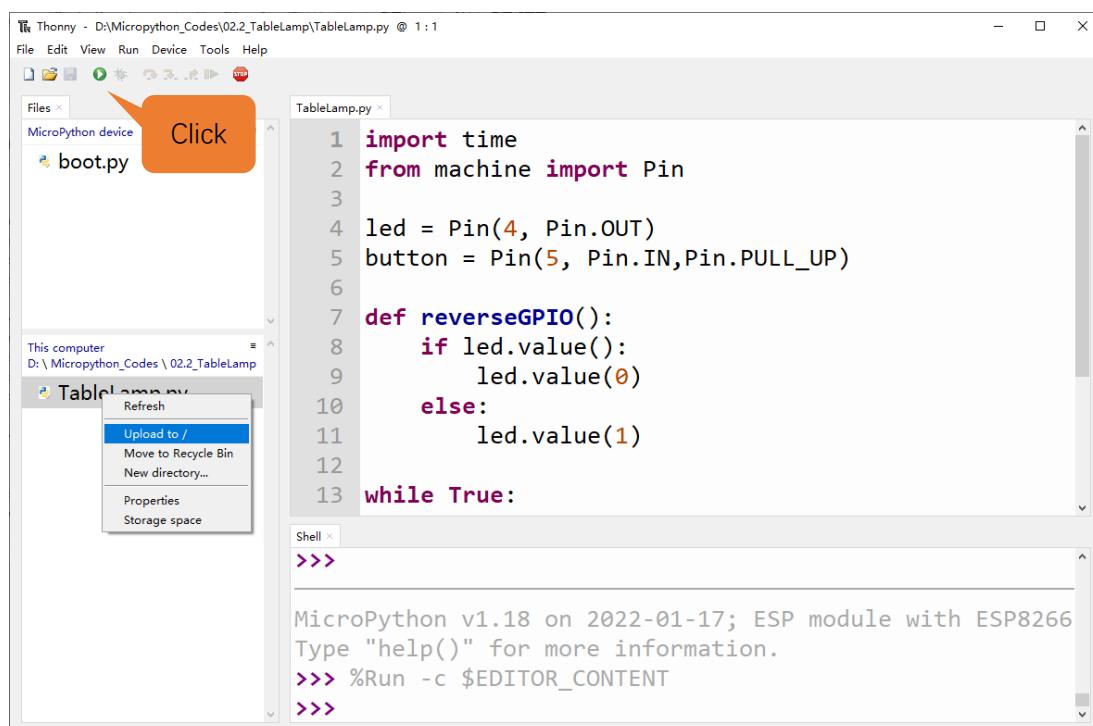
This project needs the same components and circuits as we used in the previous section.

## Code

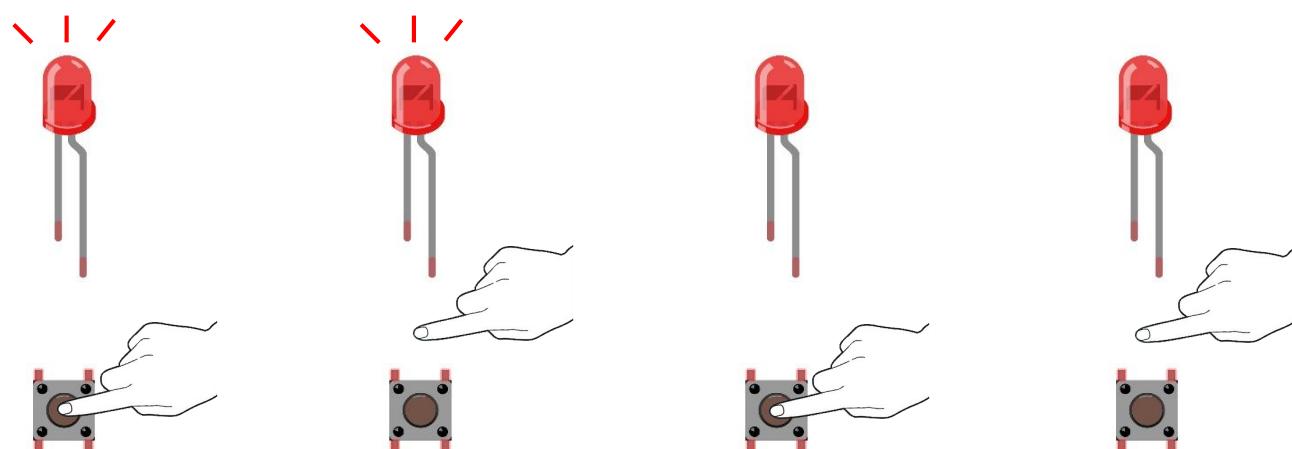
### 02.2\_Tablelamp

Move the program folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “D:/Micropython\_Codes”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “02.2\_TableLamp” and double click “TableLamp.py”.



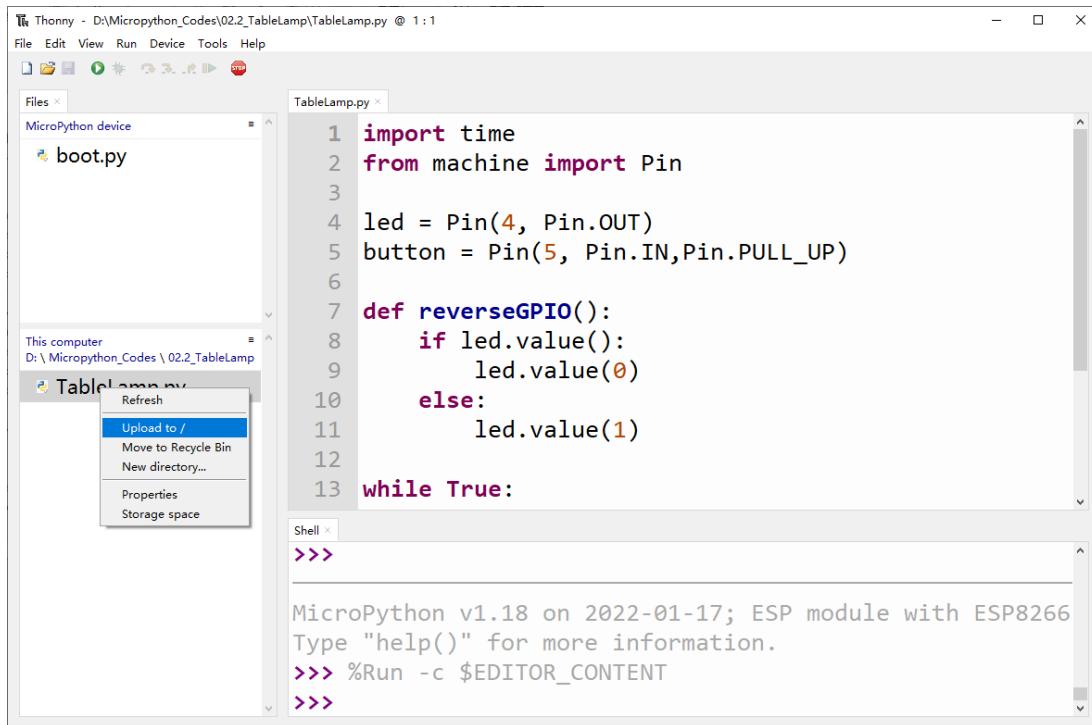
Click “Run current script” shown in the box of the above illustration, press the push button switch, LED turns ON; press it again, LED turns OFF.



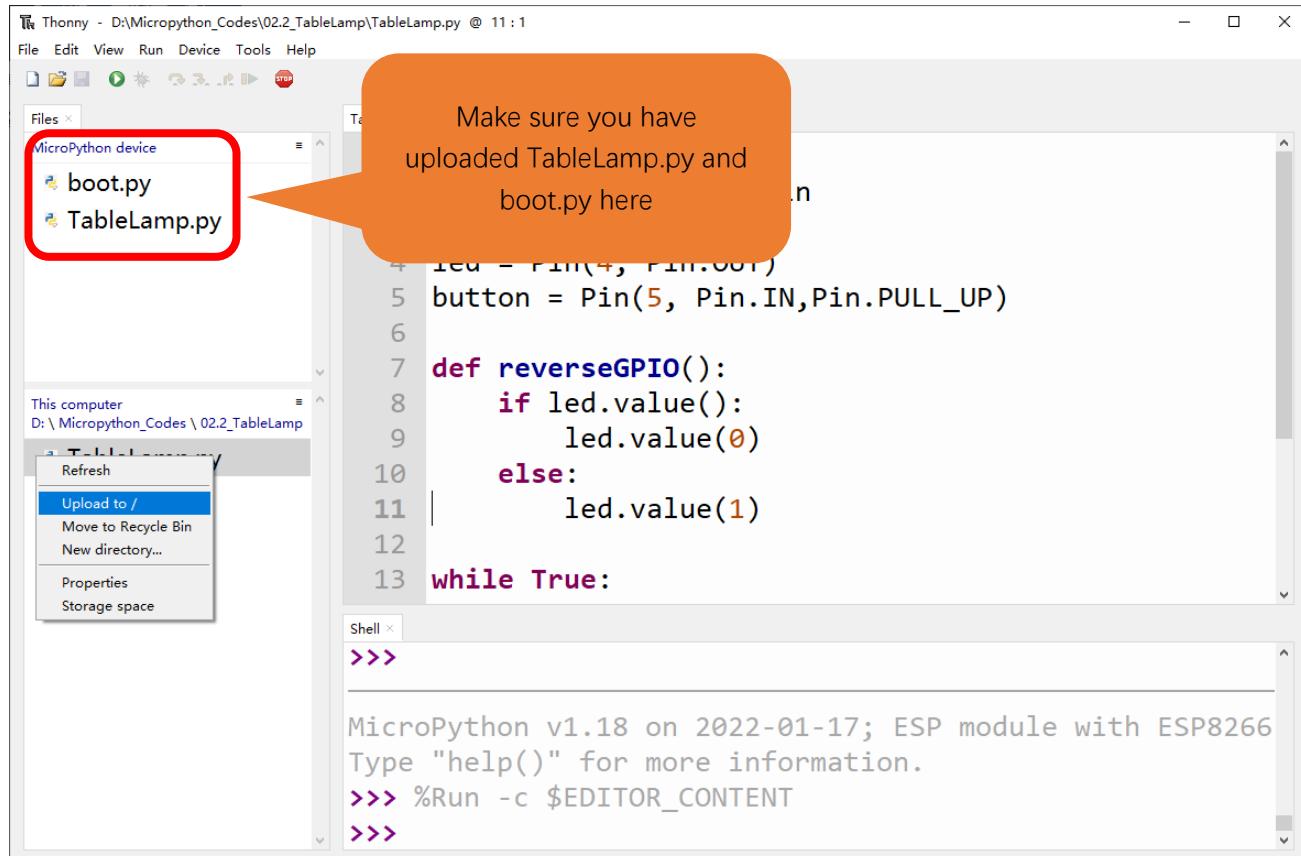
If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

### Upload code to ESP8266

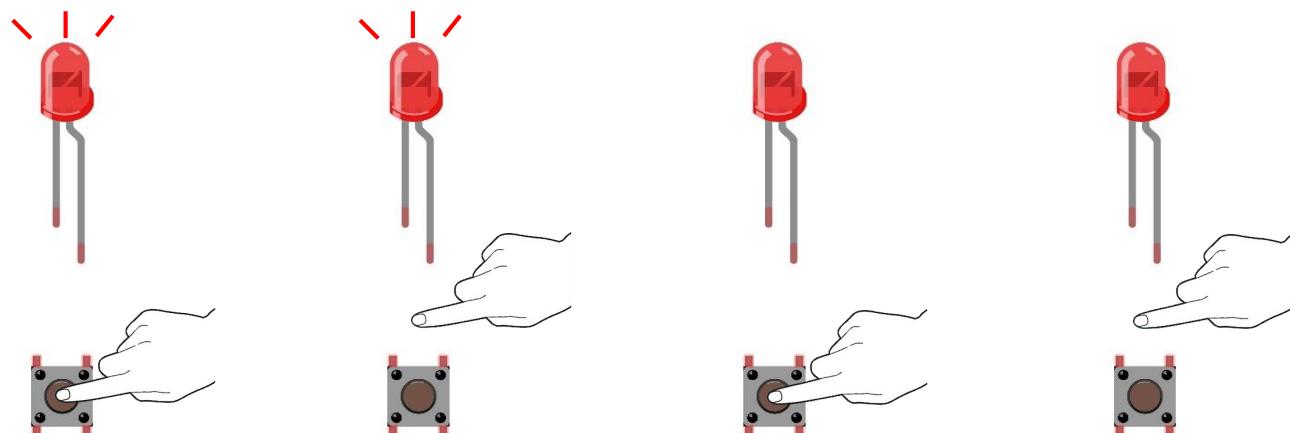
As shown in the following illustration, right-click file 02.2\_TableLamp and select “Upload to /” to upload code to ESP8266.



Upload boot.py in the same way.



Press ESP8266's reset key, and then push the button switch, LED turns ON; Push the button again, LED turns OFF.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 led = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
5 button = Pin(5, Pin.IN, Pin.PULL_UP)
6
7 def reverseGPIO():
8     if led.value():
9         led.value(0)
10    else:
11        led.value(1)
12
13 while True:
14     if not button.value():
15         time.sleep_ms(20)
16         if not button.value():
17             reverseGPIO()
18             while not button.value():
19                 time.sleep_ms(20)

```

When the button is detected to be pressed, delay 20ms to avoid the effect of bounce, and then check whether the button has been pressed again. If so, the conditional statement will be executed, otherwise it will not be executed.

```

13 while True:
14     if not button.value():
15         time.sleep_ms(20)
16         if not button.value():
17             reverseGPIO()
18             while not button.value():
19                 time.sleep_ms(20)

```

Customize a function and name it reverseGPIO(), which reverses the output level of the LED.

```
7 def reverseGPIO():
8     if led.value():
9         led.value(0)
10    else:
11        led.value(1)
```

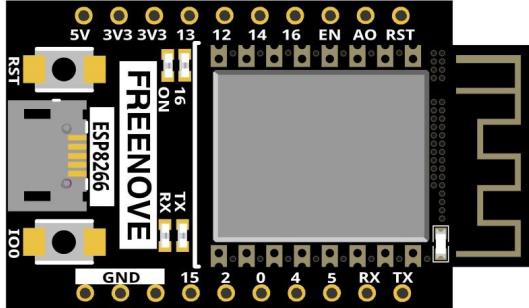
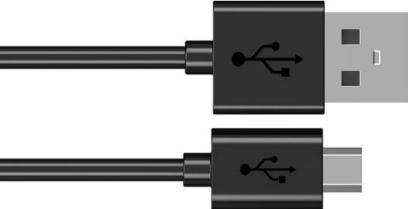
# Chapter 3 LED Bar

We have learned how to control a LED blinking, next we will learn how to control a number of LEDs.

## Project 3.1 Flowing Light

In this project, we use a number of LEDs to make a flowing light.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
Jumper wire M/M x10	LED bar graph x1	Resistor 220Ω x9

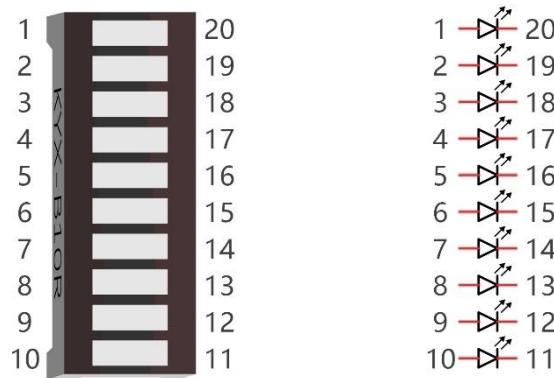


## Component knowledge

Let us learn about the basic features of these components to use and understand them better.

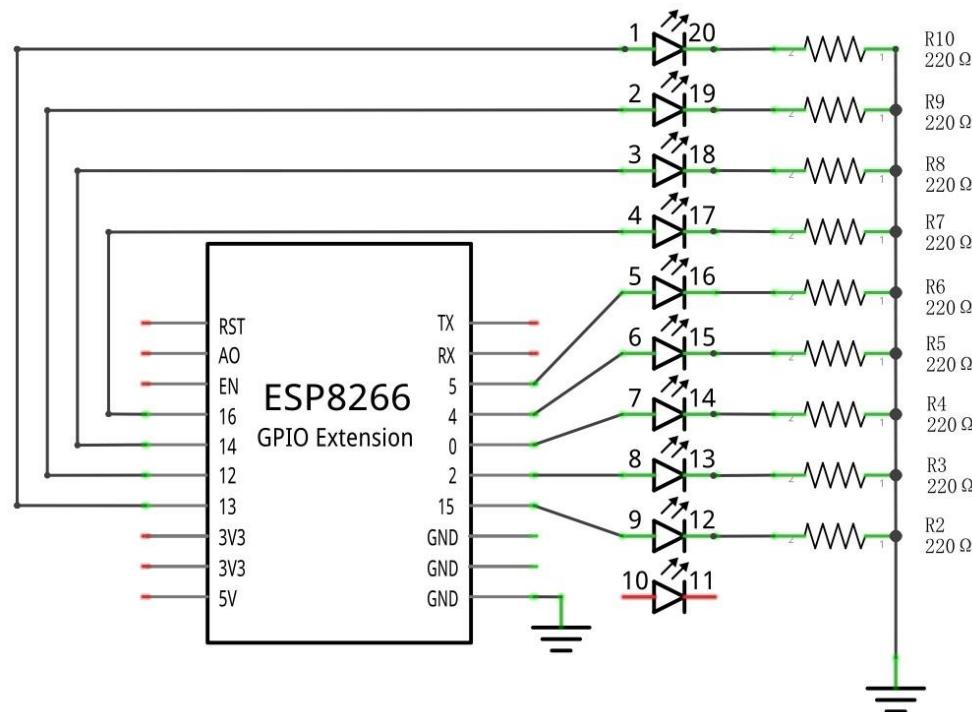
### LED bar

A Bar Graph LED has 10 LEDs integrated into one compact component. The two rows of pins at its bottom are paired to identify each LED like the single LED used earlier.

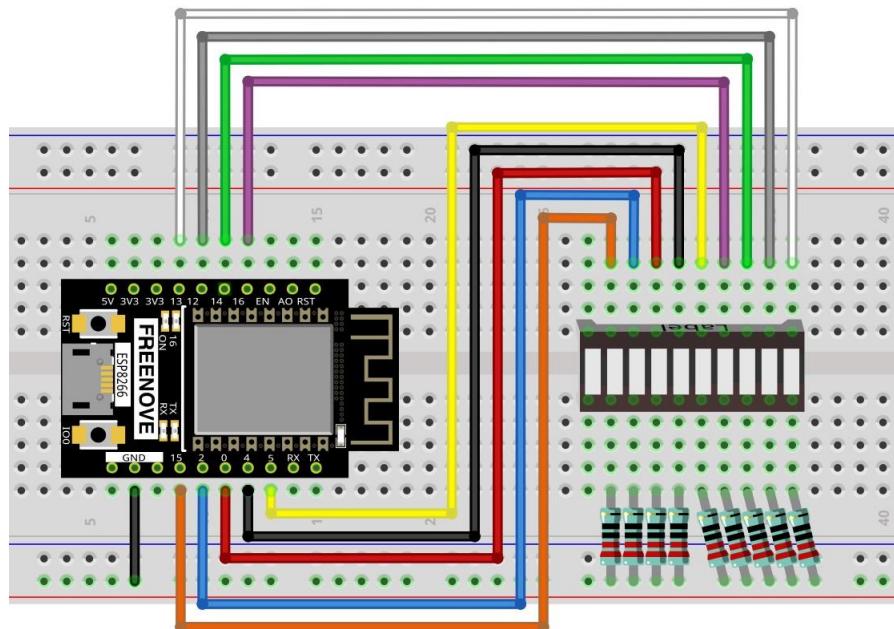


## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



If LEDbar doesn't work, try to rotate LEDbar for 180°. The label is random.

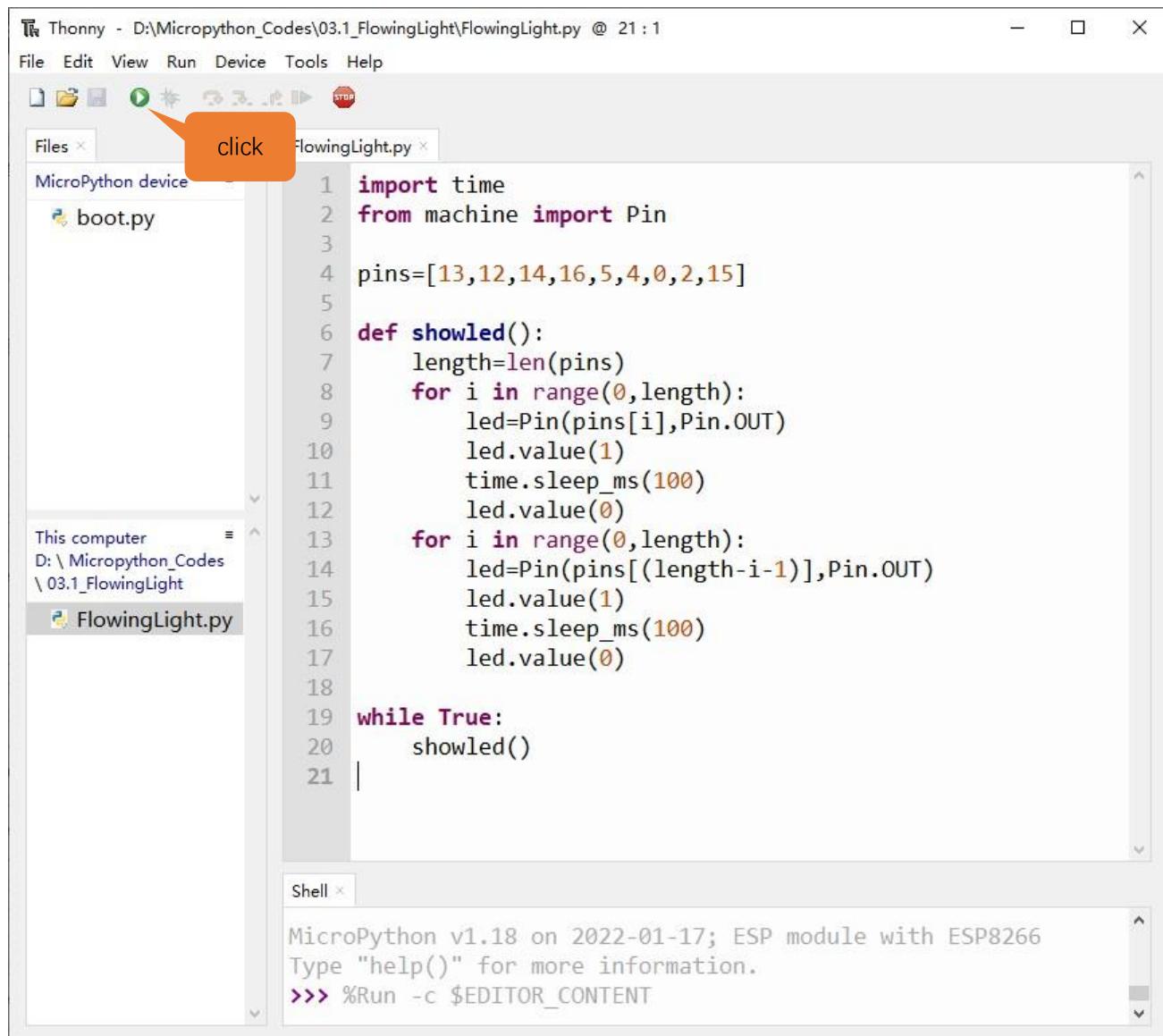
## Code

This project is designed to make a flowing water lamp. Which are these actions: First turn LED #1 ON, then turn it OFF. Then turn LED #2 ON, and then turn it OFF... and repeat the same to all 10 LEDs until the last LED is turns OFF. This process is repeated to achieve the “movements” of flowing water.

### 03.1\_FlowingLight

Move the program folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “D:/Micropython\_Codes”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “03.1\_FlowingLight” and double click “FlowingLight.py”.



```

1 import time
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 pins=[13,12,14,16,5,4,0,2,15]
5
6 def showled():
7     length=len(pins)
8     for i in range(0,length):
9         led=Pin(pins[i],Pin.OUT)
10        led.value(1)
11        time.sleep_ms(100)
12        led.value(0)
13    for i in range(0,length):
14        led=Pin(pins[(length-i-1)],Pin.OUT)
15        led.value(1)
16        time.sleep_ms(100)
17        led.value(0)
18
19 while True:
20     showled()
21

```

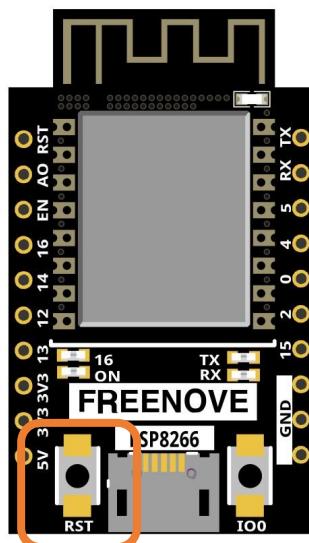
The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The title bar says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\03.1\_FlowingLight\FlowingLight.py @ 21 : 1". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The toolbar has icons for file operations and a green play button. A callout bubble with the text "click" points to the play button. The left sidebar shows a file tree with "boot.py" and "FlowingLight.py" selected. The main code editor window contains the provided Python script. The bottom right pane is a "Shell" window displaying MicroPython v1.18 startup information and a command prompt: "MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266" and ">>> %Run -c \$EDITOR\_CONTENT".

Click “Run current script” shown in the box above, LED Bar Graph will light up from left to right and then back from right to left.



Press the "RST" button on the ESP8266 development board and exit the program. You can also click “Run current script” again.

If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 pins=[13, 12, 14, 16, 5, 4, 0, 2, 15]
5
6 def showled():
7     length=len(pins)
8     for i in range(0, length):
9         led=Pin(pins[i], Pin.OUT)
10        led.value(1)
11        time.sleep_ms(100)
12        led.value(0)
13     for i in range(0, length):
14         led=Pin(pins[(length-i-1)], Pin.OUT)
15         led.value(1)
16         time.sleep_ms(100)
17         led.value(0)
18

```

Any concerns? [✉ support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

```
19 while True:
20     showled()
```

Use an array to define 10 GPIO ports connected to LED Bar Graph for easier operation.

```
4 pins=[13, 12, 14, 16, 5, 4, 0, 2, 15]
```

Use len() function to obtain the amount of elements in the list and use a for loop to configure pins as output mode.

```
7 length=len(pins)
8 for i in range(0, length):
9     led=Pin(pins[i], Pin.OUT)
```

Use two for loops to turn on LEDs separately from left to right and then back from right to left.

```
8 for i in range(0, length):
9     led=Pin(pins[i], Pin.OUT)
10    led.value(1)
11    time.sleep_ms(100)
12    led.value(0)
13    for i in range(0, length):
14        led=Pin(pins[(length-i-1)], Pin.OUT)
15        led.value(1)
16        time.sleep_ms(100)
17        led.value(0)
```

### Reference

**for i in range(start,end,num: int=1)**

For loop is used to execute a program endlessly and iterate in the order of items (a list or a string) in the sequence

start: The initial value, the for loop starts with it

end: The ending value, the for loop end with it

num: Num is automatically added each time to the data. The default value is 1

# Chapter 4 Analog & PWM

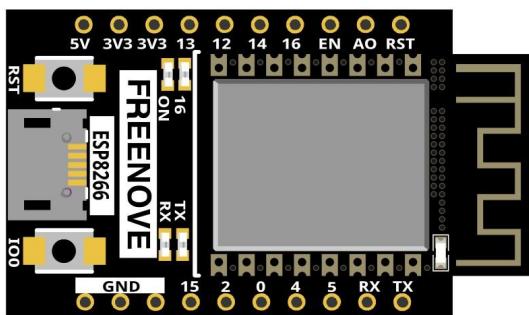
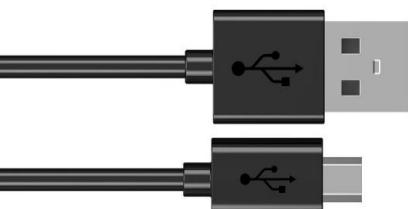
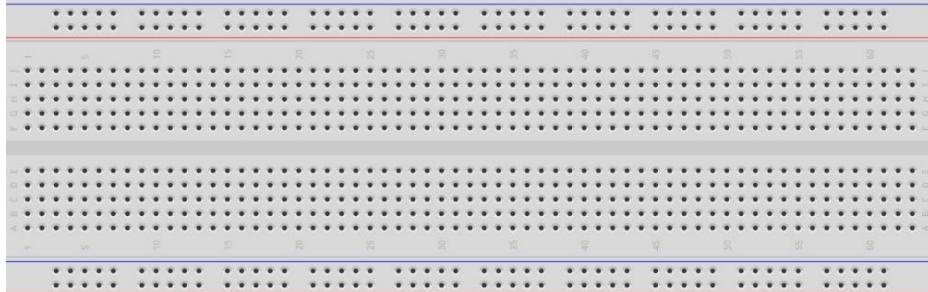
In previous study, we have known that one button has two states: pressed and released, and LED has light-on/off state, then how to enter a middle state? How to output an intermediate state to let LED "semi bright"? That's what we're going to learn.

First, let's learn how to control the brightness of a LED.

## Project 4.1 Breathing LED

Breathing light, that is, LED is turned from off to on gradually, and gradually from on to off, just like "breathing". So, how to control the brightness of a LED? We will use PWM to achieve this target.

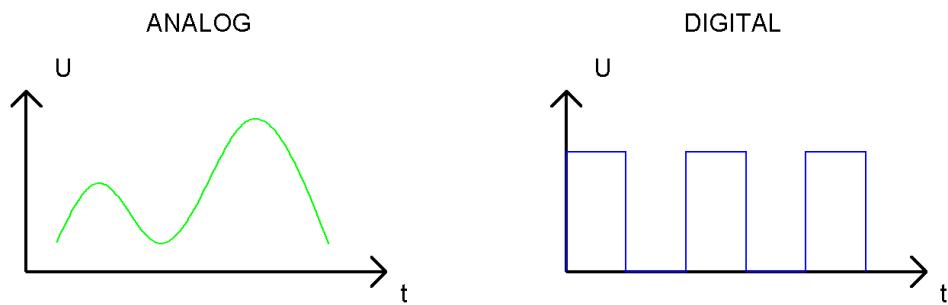
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
LED x1	Resistor 220Ω x1	Jumper wire M/M x3

## Related knowledge

### Analog & Digital

An Analog Signal is a continuous signal in both time and value. On the contrary, a Digital Signal or discrete-time signal is a time series consisting of a sequence of quantities. Most signals in life are analog signals. A familiar example of an Analog Signal would be how the temperature throughout the day is continuously changing and could not suddenly change instantaneously from 0°C to 10°C. However, Digital Signals can instantaneously change in value. This change is expressed in numbers as 1 and 0 (the basis of binary code). Their differences can more easily be seen when compared when graphed as below.



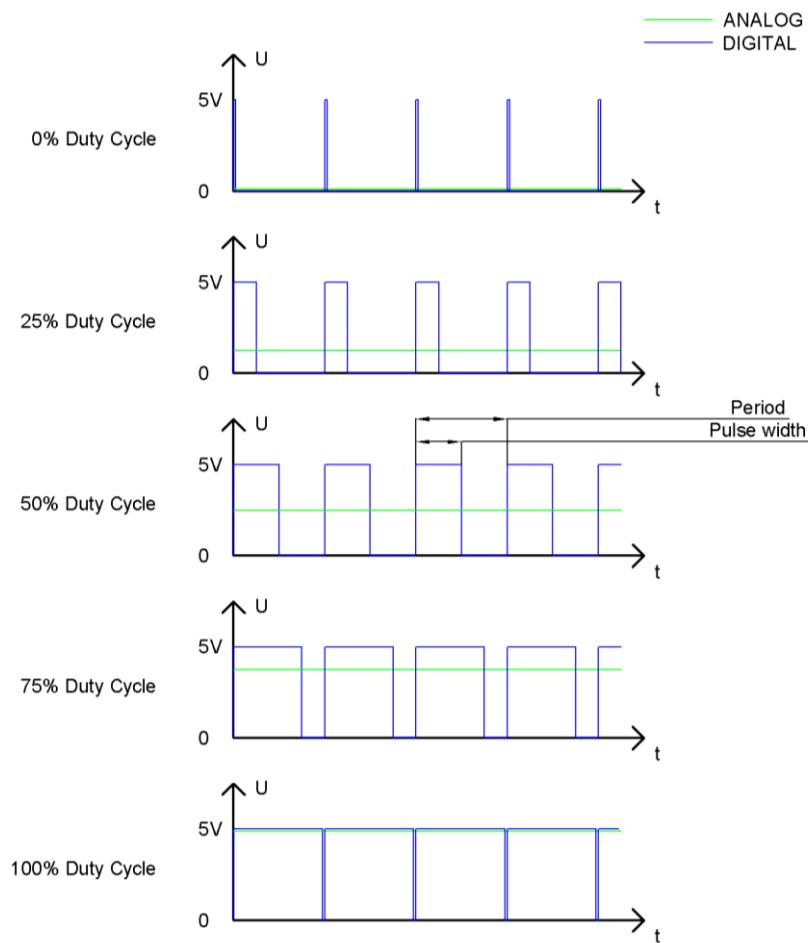
In practical application, we often use binary as the digital signal, that is a series of 0's and 1's. Since a binary signal only has two values (0 or 1), it has great stability and reliability. Lastly, both analog and digital signals can be converted into the other.

### PWM

PWM, Pulse-Width Modulation, is a very effective method for using digital signals to control analog circuits. Common processors cannot directly output analog signals. PWM technology makes it very convenient to achieve this conversion (translation of digital to analog signals).

PWM technology uses digital pins to send certain frequencies of square waves, that is, the output of high levels and low levels, which alternately last for a while. The total time for each set of high levels and low levels is generally fixed, which is called the period (Note: the reciprocal of the period is frequency). The time of high level outputs are generally called "pulse width", and the duty cycle is the percentage of the ratio of pulse duration, or pulse width (PW) to the total period (T) of the waveform.

The longer the output of high levels last, the longer the duty cycle and the higher the corresponding voltage in the analog signal will be. The following figures show how the analog signal voltages vary between 0V-5V (high level is 5V) corresponding to the pulse width 0%-100%:

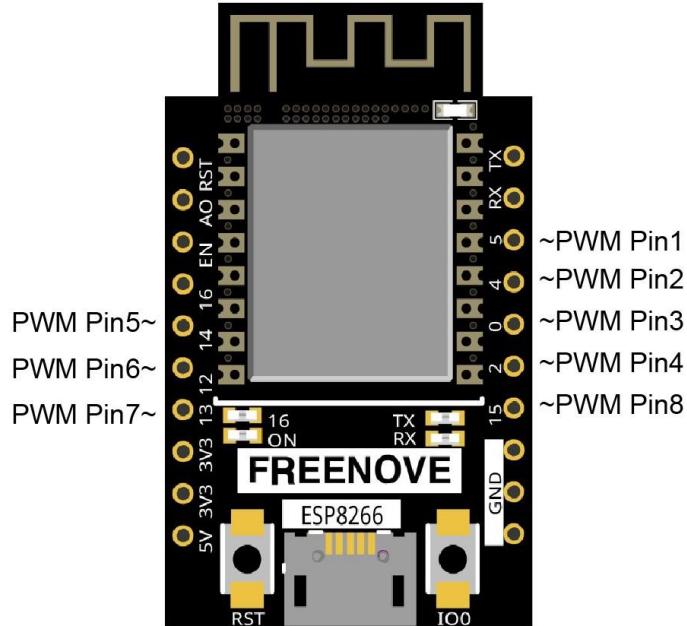


The longer the PWM duty cycle is, the higher the output power will be. Now that we understand this relationship, we can use PWM to control the brightness of an LED or the speed of DC motor and so on. It is evident from the above that PWM is not real analog, and the effective value of the voltage is equivalent to the corresponding analog. so, we can control the output power of the LED and other output modules to achieve different effects.

### ESP8266 and PWM

The ESP8266 PWM controller has 8 independent channels, each of which can independently control frequency, duty cycle, and even accuracy. Unlike traditional PWM pins, the PWM output pins of ESP8266 are configurable and they can be configured to PWM.

The ESP8266 supports PWM pins as follows:

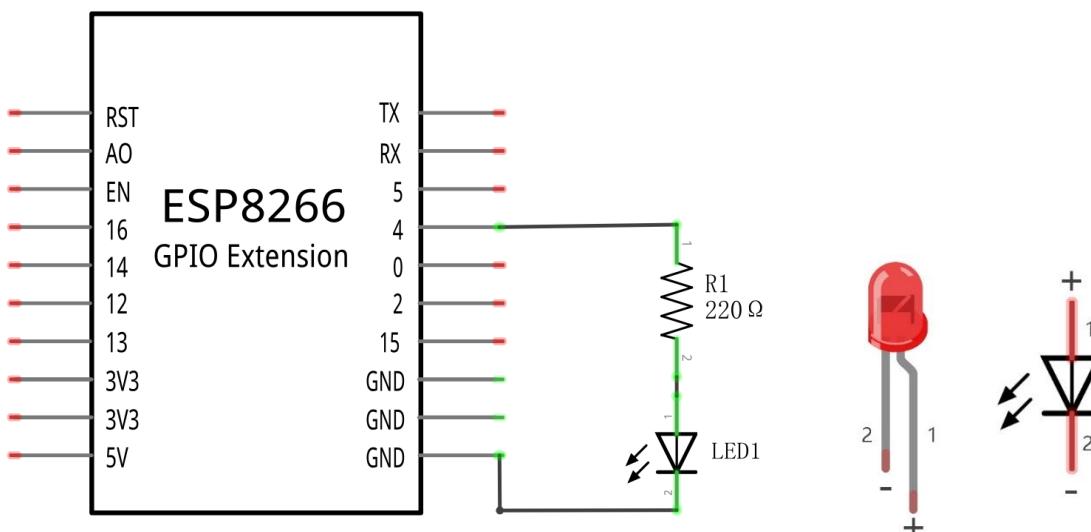


The longer the PWM duty cycle is, the higher the output power will be. Now that we understand this relationship, we can use PWM to control the brightness of an LED or the speed of DC motor and so on.

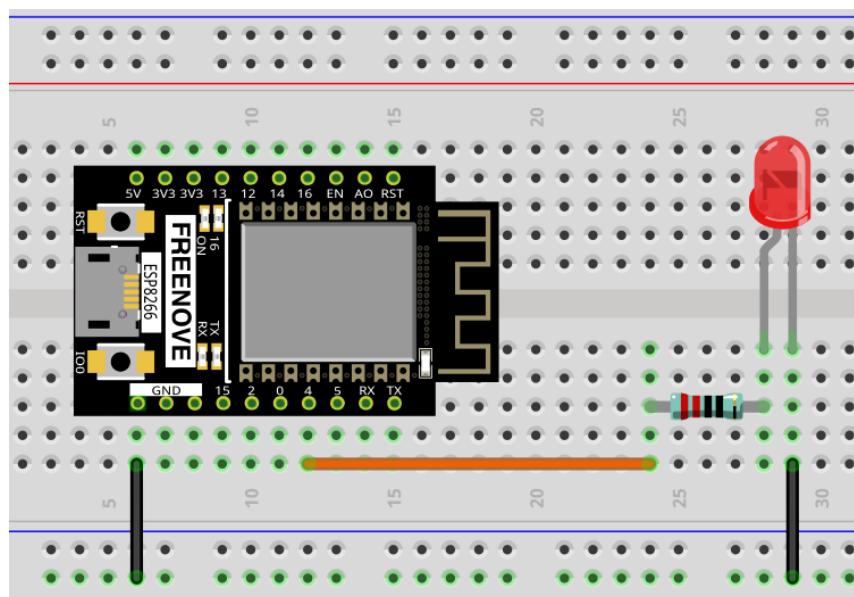
## Circuit

This circuit is the same as the one in project Blink.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. **If you need any support, please contact us via: support@freenove.com**



## Code

This project is designed to make PWM output GPIO4 with pulse width increasing from 0% to 100%, and then reducing from 100% to 0% gradually.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “04.1\_BreatheLight” and double click “BreatheLight.py”.

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**



#### 04.1\_BreatheLight

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The left sidebar displays a file tree with 'boot.py' and 'BreatheLight.py'. The main editor window contains the following Python code:

```
from machine import Pin,PWM
import time

pwm =PWM(Pin(4),1000)
try:
    while True:
        for i in range(0,1023):
            pwm.duty(i)
            time.sleep_ms(1)

        for i in range(0,1023):
            pwm.duty(1023-i)
            time.sleep_ms(1)
except:
    pwm.deinit()
```

The shell window at the bottom shows the MicroPython environment:

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
```

Click “Run current script”, and you’ll see that LED is turned from ON to OFF and then back from OFF to ON gradually like breathing.



The following is the program code:

```
1 from machine import Pin, PWM  
2 import time  
3  
4 pwm =PWM(Pin(4), 1000)  
5 try:  
6     while True:  
7         for i in range(0, 1023):  
8             pwm.duty(i)  
9             time.sleep_ms(1)  
10  
11         for i in range(0, 1023):  
12             pwm.duty(1023-i)  
13             time.sleep_ms(1)  
14 except:  
15     pwm.deinit()
```

The way that the ESP8266 PWM pins output is different from traditionally controllers. It can change frequency and duty cycle by configuring PWM's parameters at the initialization stage. Define GPIO4's output frequency as 1000Hz, and assign them to PWM.

```
4     pwm =PWM(Pin(4), 1000)
```

The range of duty cycle is 0-1023, so we use the first for loop to control PWM to change the duty cycle value, making PWM output 0% -100%; Use the second for loop to make PWM output 100%-0%.

```
7     for i in range(0, 1023):  
8         pwm.duty(i)  
9         time.sleep_ms(1)  
10  
11     for i in range(0, 1023):  
12         pwm.duty(1023-i)  
13         time.sleep_ms(1)
```

Each time PWM is used, the hardware Timer will be turned ON to cooperate it. Therefore, after each use of PWM, deinit() needs to be called to turned OFF the timer. Otherwise, the PWM may fail to work next time.

```
15     pwm.deinit()
```

Note: PWM can be enabled on all pins except pin (16). All channels have a frequency that ranges from 1 to 1000 (measured in Hz). Duty cycle is between 0 and 1023 inclusive.

## Reference

### Class `PWM(pin, freq)`

Before each use of PWM module, please add the statement “**from machine import PWM**” to the top of the python file.

**pin**: PWM can be enabled on all pins except pin (16), such as Pin(0)、Pin(2)….

**freq**: Output frequency, with the range of 0-1000 Hz

**duty**: Duty cycle, with the range of 0-1023.

**PWM.init(freq, duty)**: Initialize PWM, parameters are the same as above.

**PWM.freq([freq\_val])**: When there is no parameter, the function obtains and returns PWM frequency; When parameters are set, the function is used to set PWM frequency and returns nothing.

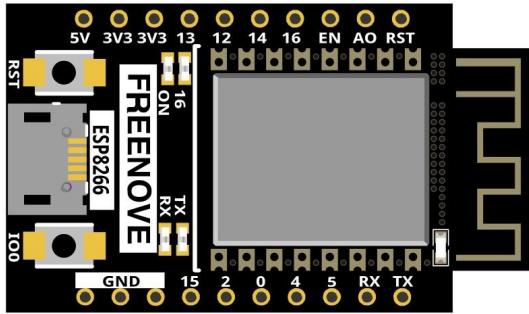
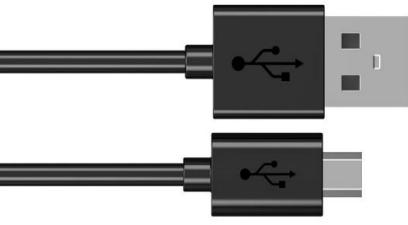
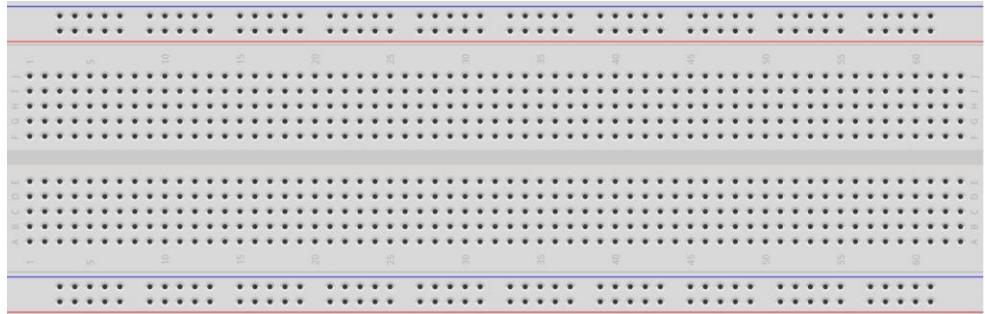
**PWM.duty([duty\_val])**: When there is no parameter, the function obtains and returns PWM duty cycle; When parameters are set, the function is used to set PWM duty cycle.

**PWM.deinit()**: Turn OFF PWM.

## Project 4.2 Meteor Flowing Light

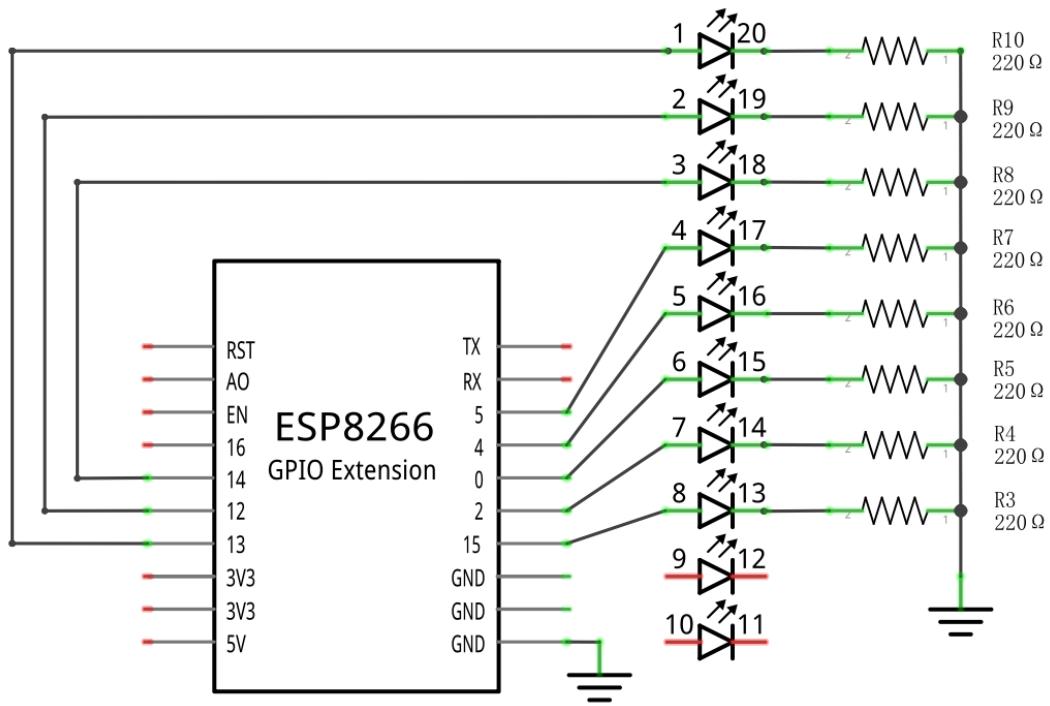
After learning about PWM, we can use it to control LED Bar Graph and realize a cooler Flowing Light.

### Component List

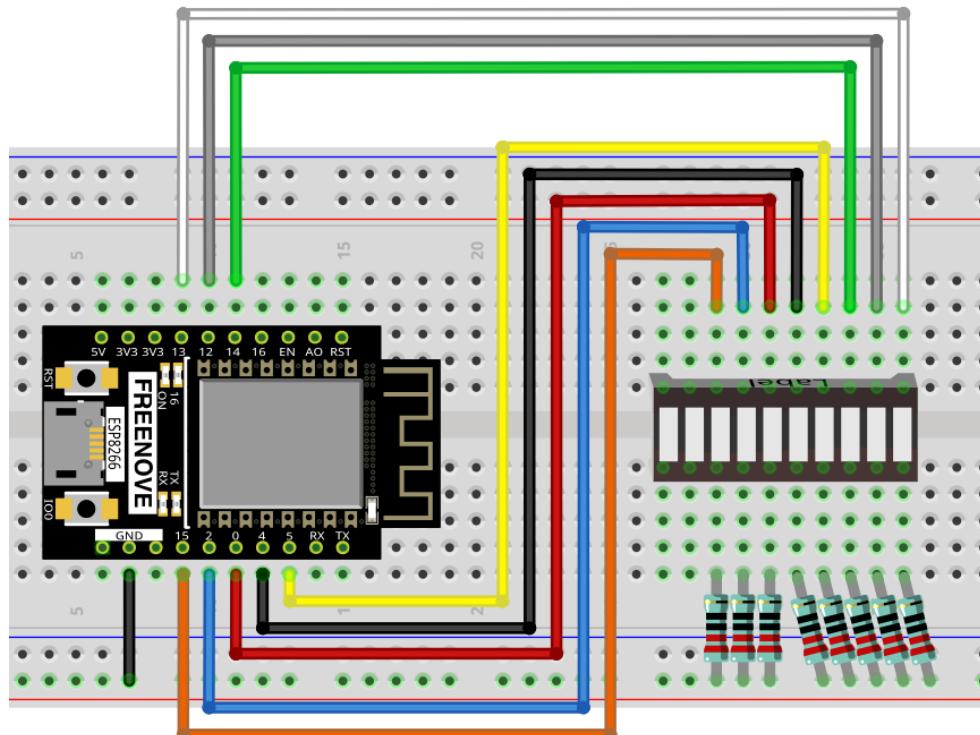
ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
		
Jumper wire M/M x9	LED bar graph x1	Resistor 220Ω x8
		

# Circuit

## Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



If LEDbar doesn't work, try to rotate LEDbar for 180°. The label is random.

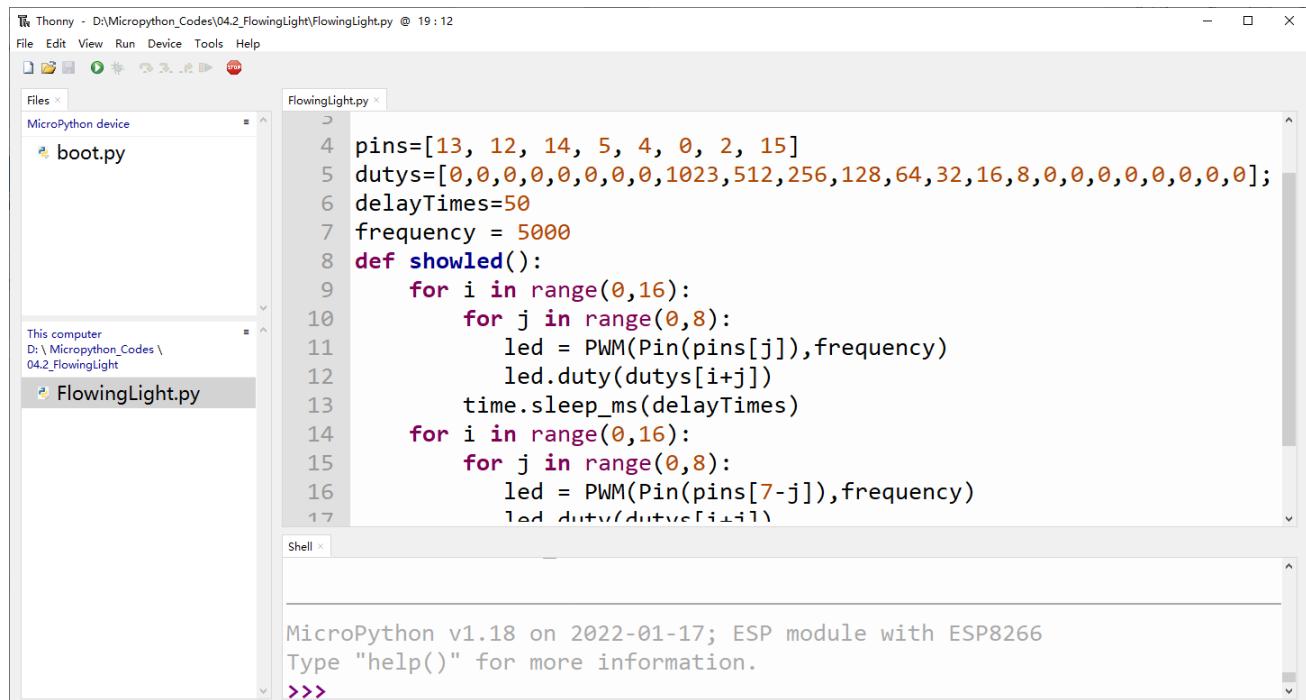
Any concerns?  support@freenove.com

## Code

Flowing Light with tail was implemented with PWM.

Open "Thonny", click "This computer" → "D:" → "Micropython\_Codes" → "04.2\_FlowingLight". Select "pwm.py", right click to select "Upload to /", wait for "pwm.py" to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click "FlowingLight.py"

### 04.2\_FlowingLight



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The left sidebar lists files: boot.py, FlowingLight.py (which is selected), and a folder structure for This computer and D:\Micropython\_Codes\04.2\_FlowingLight. The main code editor window displays the following Python script:

```
4 pins=[13, 12, 14, 5, 4, 0, 2, 15]
5 dutys=[0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1023,512,256,128,64,32,16,8,0,0,0,0,0,0,0];
6 delayTimes=50
7 frequency = 5000
8 def showled():
9     for i in range(0,16):
10         for j in range(0,8):
11             led = PWM(Pin(pins[j]),frequency)
12             led.duty(dutys[i+j])
13             time.sleep_ms(delayTimes)
14     for i in range(0,16):
15         for j in range(0,8):
16             led = PWM(Pin(pins[7-j]),frequency)
17             led.duty(dutys[i+j])
```

The bottom shell window shows the MicroPython prompt:

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>
```

Click "Run current script", and LED Bar Graph will gradually light up and out from left to right, then light up and out from right to left.



The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM
2  import time
3  pins=[13, 12, 14, 5, 4, 0, 2, 15]
4  dutys=[0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1023,512,256,128,64,32,16,8,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0];
5  delayTimes=50
6  frequency = 1000
7  def showled():
8      for i in range(0,16):
9          for j in range(0,8):
10             led = PWM(Pin(pins[j]),frequency)
11             led.duty(dutys[i+j])
12             time.sleep_ms(delayTimes)
13         for i in range(0,16):
14             for j in range(0,8):
15                 led = PWM(Pin(pins[7-j]),frequency)
16                 led.duty(dutys[i+j])
17                 time.sleep_ms(delayTimes)
18     while True:
19         showled()

```

Import the object myPWM from pwm.py and set corresponding pins for PWM channel.

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM
2
3  pins=[13, 12, 14, 5, 4, 0, 2, 15]

```

First we defined 8 GPIO, 8 PWM channels, and 24 pulse width values.

```

3  pins=[13, 12, 14, 5, 4, 0, 2, 15]
4  dutys=[0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1023,512,256,128,64,32,16,8,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0];

```

Set the PWM pin[j] and duty cycle [i+j].

```

10    led = PWM(Pin(pins[j]),frequency)
11    led.duty(dutys[i+j])

```

In the code, a nesting of two for loops are used to achieve this effect.

```

8     for i in range(0, 16):
9         for j in range(0, 8):
10            led = PWM(Pin(pins[j]), frequency)
11            led.duty(dutys[i+j])
12            time.sleep_ms(delayTimes)
13        for i in range(0, 16):
14            for j in range(0, 8):
15                led = PWM(Pin(pins[7-j]), frequency)
16                led.duty(dutys[i+j])
17                time.sleep_ms(delayTimes)

```

In the main function, a nested for loop is used to control the pulse width of the PWM. Every time i in the first for loop increases by 1, the LED Bar Graph will move one grid, and gradually change according to the value in the array dutys. As shown in the following table, the value in the second row is the value of the array dutys, and the 8 green grids in each row below represent the 8 LEDs on the LED Bar Graph. Each time i increases by 1, the value of the LED Bar Graph will move to the right by one grid, and when it reaches the end, it will move from the end to the starting point, achieving the desired effect.

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2
d	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		1	5	2	1	6	3	1	8	0	0	0	0
i									0	1	5	2	4	2	6					
	2	2	2	2	2	2	2		2	2	6	8								
	3	3	3	3	3	3	3		3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3				
0																				
1																				
...																				
14																				
15																				
16																				

#### How to import a custom python module

Each Python file, as long as it's stored on the file system of ESP8266, is a module. To import a custom module, the module file needs to be located in the MicroPython environment variable path or in the same path as the currently running program.

First, customize a python module "custom.py". Create a new py file and name it "custom.py". Write code to it and save it to ESP8266.





Second, import custom module "custom" to main.py

The screenshot shows a code editor interface with two tabs: 'main.py' and 'custom.py'. The 'main.py' tab is active, displaying the following code:

```
1 import custom
2 import time
3 while True:
4     custom.rand()
5     time.sleep(1)
```

Annotations with orange arrows point to specific parts of the code:

- An arrow points to the first line ('import custom') with the text 'Import custom module'.
- An arrow points to the fourth line ('custom.rand()') with the text 'Call function rand() of custom module'.

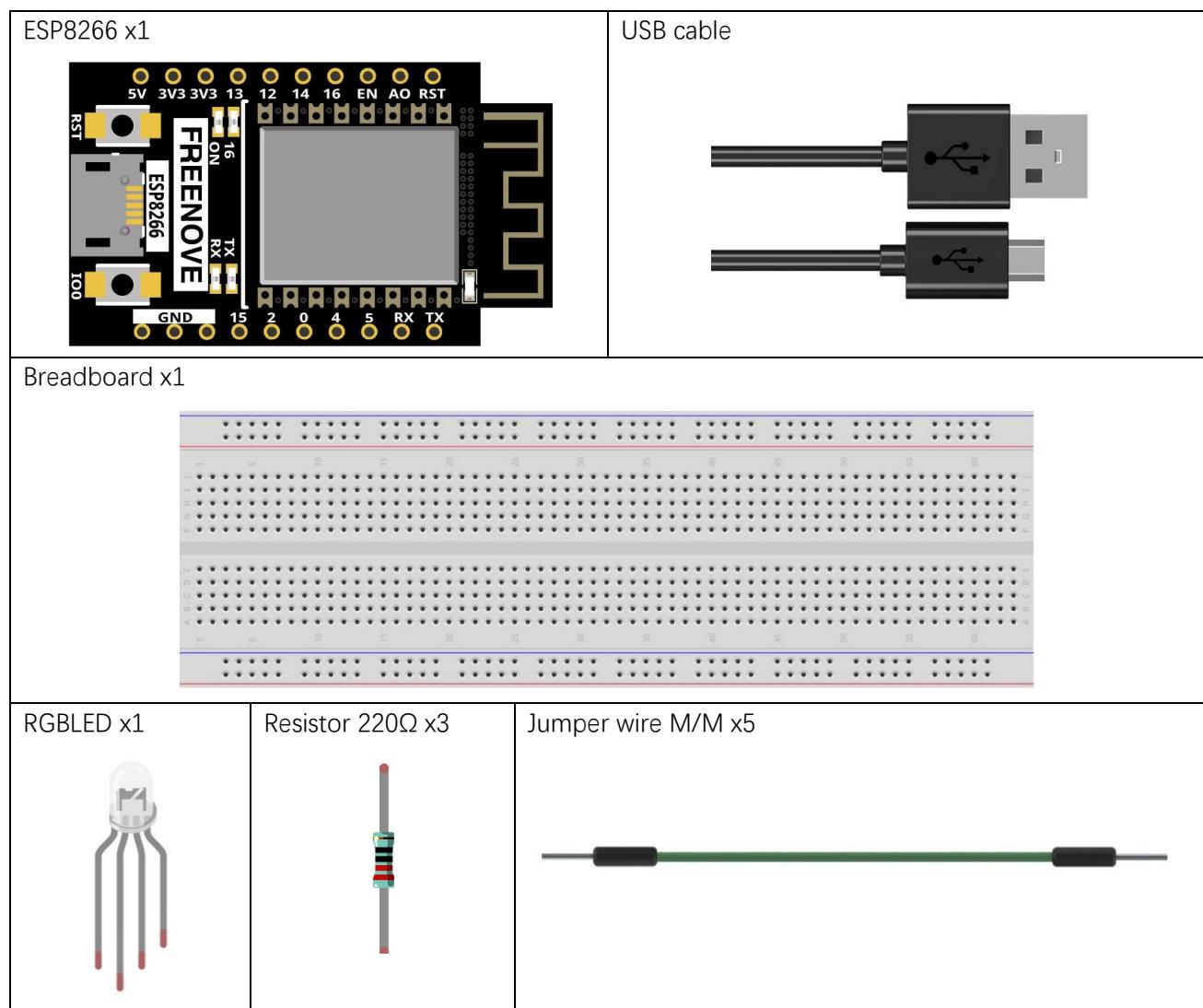
## Chapter 5 RGBLED

In this chapter, we will learn how to control a RGBLED. It can emit different colors of light. Next, we will use RGBLED to make a multicolored light.

## Project 5.1 Random Color Light

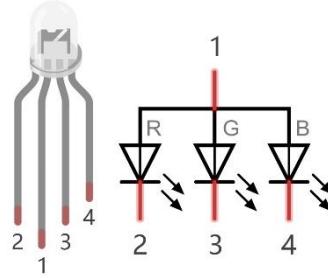
In this project, we will make a multicolored LED. And we can control RGBLED to switch different colors automatically.

## Component List

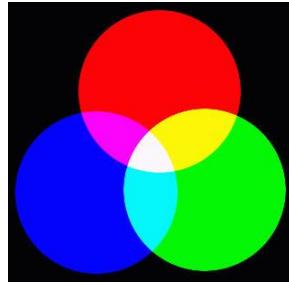


## Related knowledge

RGB LED has integrated 3 LEDs that can respectively emit red, green and blue light. And it has 4 pins. The long pin (1) is the common port, that is, 3 LED's positive or negative port. The RGB LED with common positive port and its symbol is shown below. We can make RGB LED emit various colors of light by controlling these 3 LEDs to emit light with different brightness,



Red, green, and blue light are known as three primary colors. When you combine these three primary-color lights with different brightness, it can produce almost all kinds of visible lights. Computer screens, single pixel of cell phone screen, neon, and etc. are working under this principle.

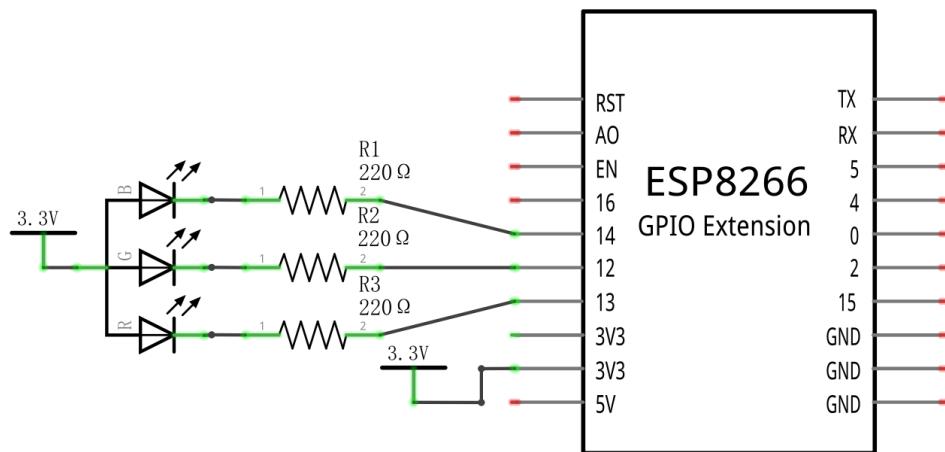


RGB

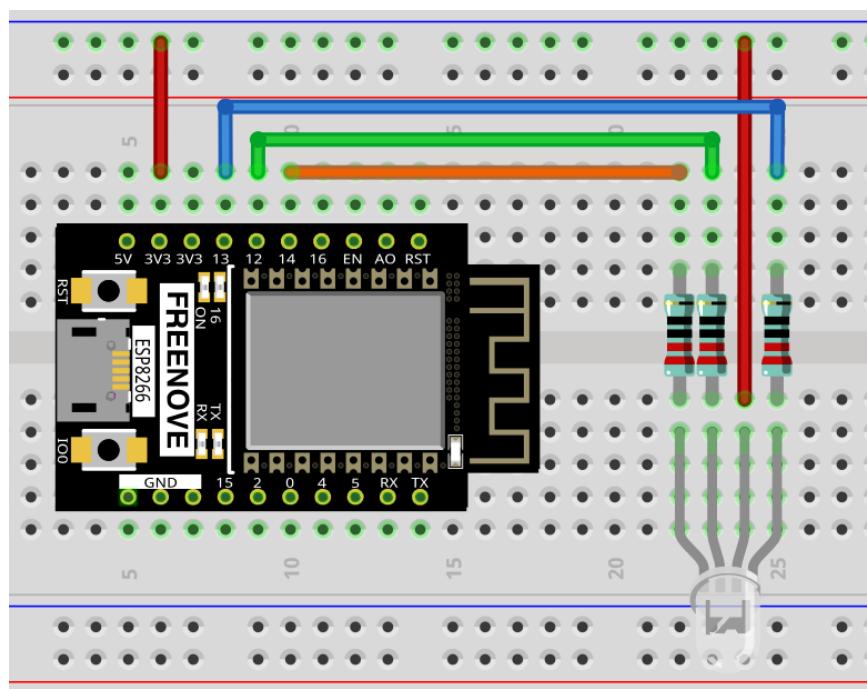
If we use three 10-bit PWM to control the RGBLED, in theory, we can create  $2^{10} * 2^{10} * 2^{10} = 1,073,741,824$ (1 billion) colors through different combinations.

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



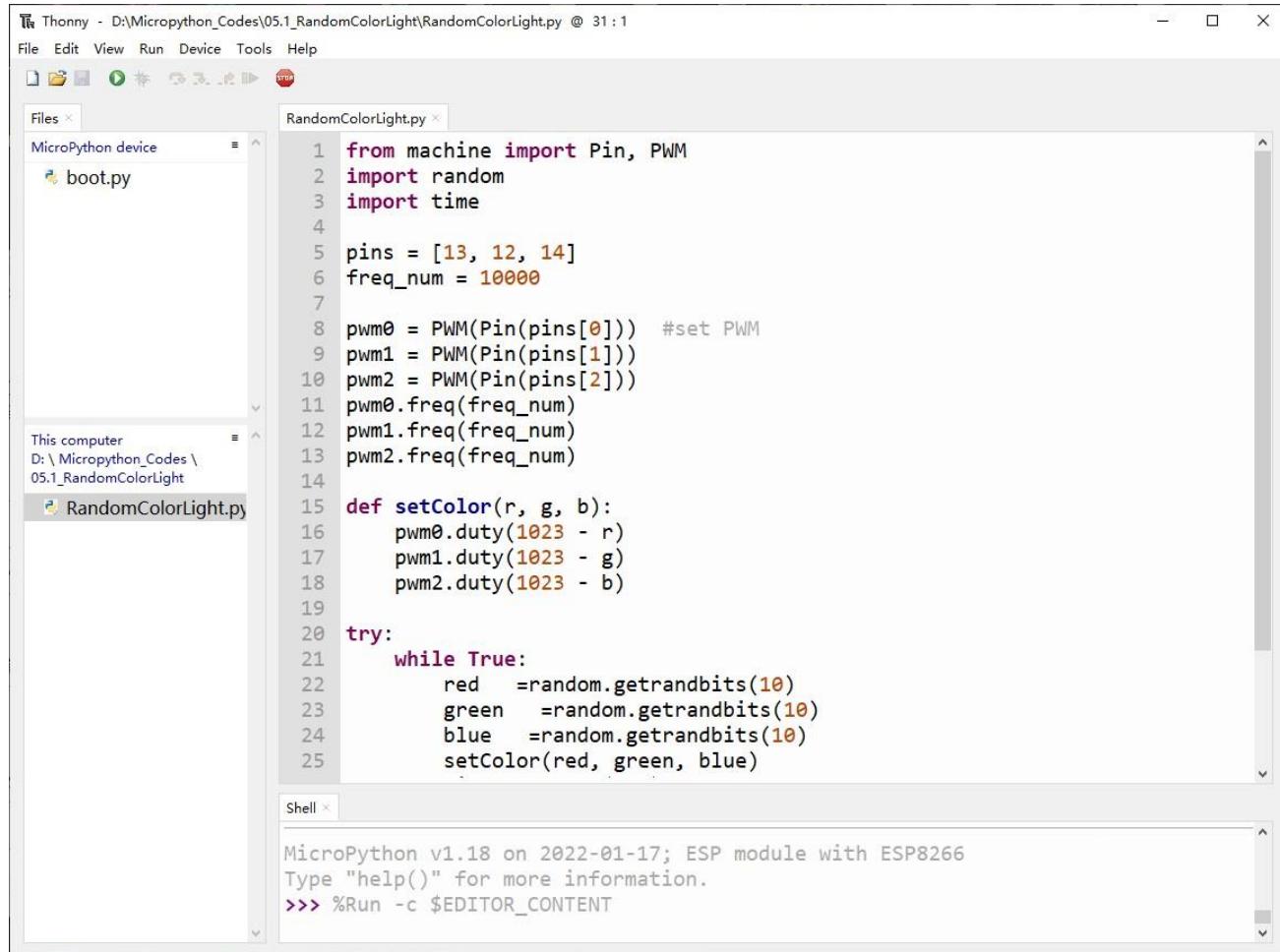
## Code

We need to create three PWM channels and use random duty cycle to make random RGBLED color.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “05.1\_RandomColorLight” and double click “RandomColorLight.py”.

### 05.1\_RandomColorLight



```

from machine import Pin, PWM
import random
import time

pins = [13, 12, 14]
freq_num = 10000

pwm0 = PWM(Pin(pins[0])) #set PWM
pwm1 = PWM(Pin(pins[1]))
pwm2 = PWM(Pin(pins[2]))
pwm0.freq(freq_num)
pwm1.freq(freq_num)
pwm2.freq(freq_num)

def setColor(r, g, b):
    pwm0.duty(1023 - r)
    pwm1.duty(1023 - g)
    pwm2.duty(1023 - b)

try:
    while True:
        red = random.getrandbits(10)
        green = random.getrandbits(10)
        blue = random.getrandbits(10)
        setColor(red, green, blue)

```

Click “Run current script”, RGBLED begins to display random colors.

If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

The following is the program code:

```
1 from machine import Pin, PWM
2 import random
3 import time
4
5 pins=[13, 12, 14]
6 freq_num = 1000
7
8 pwm0 = PWM(Pin(pins[0])) #set PWM
9 pwm1 = PWM(Pin(pins[1]))
10 pwm2 = PWM(Pin(pins[2]))
11 pwm0.freq(freq_num)
12 pwm1.freq(freq_num)
13 pwm2.freq(freq_num)
14
15 def setColor(r, g, b):
16     pwm0.duty(1023-r)
17     pwm1.duty(1023-g)
18     pwm2.duty(1023-b)
19
20 try:
21     while True:
22         red = random.getrandbits(10)
23         green = random.getrandbits(10)
24         blue = random.getrandbits(10)
25         setColor(red, green, blue)
26         time.sleep_ms(200)
27     except:
28         pwm0.deinit()
29         pwm1.deinit()
30         pwm2.deinit()
```

Import Pin, PWM and Random Function modules.

```
1 from machine import Pin, PWM
2 import random
3 import time
```

Configure ouput mode of GPIO13, GPIO12 and GPIO14 as PWM output and PWM frequency as 1000Hz

```
5 pins=[13, 12, 14]
6 freq_num = 1000
7 pwm0 = PWM(Pin(pins[0])) #set PWM
8 pwm1 = PWM(Pin(pins[1]))
9 pwm2 = PWM(Pin(pins[2]))
10 pwm0.freq(freq_num)
11 pwm1.freq(freq_num)
12 pwm2.freq(freq_num)
```



Define a function to set the color of RGBLED.

```
15 def setColor(r, g, b):
16     pwm0.duty(1023-r)
17     pwm1.duty(1023-g)
18     pwm2.duty(1023-b)
```

Call random function getrandbits(size) to generates an integer with 10 random bits and assign the value to red. size = 10, it generates an integer in the range of 0 to 0b1111111111

```
22     red =random.getrandbits(10)
```

Obtain 3 random number every 200 milliseconds and call function setColor to make RGBLED display dazzling colors.

```
17     while True:
18         red =random.getrandbits(10)
19         green =random.getrandbits(10)
20         blue =random.getrandbits(10)
21         setColor(red, green, blue)
22         time.sleep_ms(200)
```

#### Reference

##### Class random

Before each use of the module **random**, please add the statement “**import random**” to the top of Python file.

**randint(start, end)**: Randomly generates an integer between the value of start and end.

**start**: Starting value in the specified range, which would be included in the range.

**end**: Ending value in the specified range, which would be included in the range.

**random()**: Randomly generates a floating point number between 0 and 1.

**random.uniform(start, end)**: Randomly generates a floating point number between the value of start and end

**start**: Starting value in the specified range, which would be included in the range.

**end**: Ending value in the specified range, which would be included in the range.

**random.getrandbits(size)**: Generates an integer with **size** random bits

For example:

size = 4, it generates an integer in the range of 0 to 0b1111

size = 8, it generates an integer in the range of 0 to 0b11111111

**random.randrange(start, end, step)**: Randomly generates a positive integer in the range from start to end and increment to step.

**start**: Starting value in the specified range, which would be included in the range

**end**: Ending value in the specified range, which would be included in the range.

**step**: An integer specifying the incrementation.

**random.seed(sed)**: Specifies a random seed, usually being applied in conjunction with other random number generators

**sed**: Random seed, a starting point in generating random numbers.

**random.choice(obj)**: Randomly generates an element from the object obj.

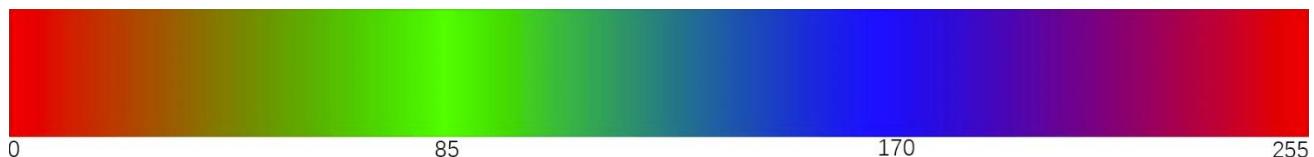
**obj**: list of elements

## Project 5.2 Gradient Color Light

In the previous project, we have mastered the usage of RGBLED, but the random color display is rather stiff. This project will realize a fashionable Light with soft color changes.

Component list, the circuit is exactly the same as the project random color light.

Using a color model, the color changes from 0 to 255 as shown below.



In this code, the color model will be implemented and RGBLED will change colors along the model.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “05.2\_GradientColorLight” and double click “GradientColorLight.py”.

### 05.2\_GradientColorLight

```

Thonny - D:\Micropython_Codes\05.2_GradientColorLight\GradientColorLight.py @ 31 : 3
File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
Files MicroPython device
boot.py
GradientColorLight.py
This computer
D:\Micropython_Codes\05.2_GradientColorLight
GradientColorLight.py

GradientColorLight.py
17     pwm2.duty(blue)
18
19 def wheel(pos):
20     global red,green,blue
21     WheelPos=pos%1023
22     print(WheelPos)
23     if WheelPos<341:
24         red=1023-WheelPos*3
25         green=WheelPos*3
26         blue=0
27
28     elif WheelPos>=341 and WheelPos<682:
29         WheelPos -= 341:
Shell >>>
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM
2  import time
3
4  pins=[14, 12, 13];
5
6  pwm0=PWM(Pin(pins[0]), 1000)
7  pwm1=PWM(Pin(pins[1]), 1000)
8  pwm2=PWM(Pin(pins[2]), 1000)
9
10 red=0           #red

```



```

11 green=0           #green
12 blue=0          #blue
13
14 def setColor():
15     pwm0.duty(red)
16     pwm1.duty(green)
17     pwm2.duty(blue)
18
19 def wheel(pos):
20     global red, green, blue
21     WheelPos=pos%1023
22     print(WheelPos)
23     if WheelPos<341:
24         red=1023-WheelPos*3
25         green=WheelPos*3
26         blue=0
27
28     elif WheelPos>=341 and WheelPos<682:
29         WheelPos -= 341;
30         red=0
31         green=1023-WheelPos*3
32         blue=WheelPos*3
33     else :
34         WheelPos -= 682;
35         red=WheelPos*3
36         green=0
37         blue=1023-WheelPos*3
38
39 try:
40     while True:
41         for i in range(0, 1023):
42             wheel(i)
43             setColor()
44             time.sleep_ms(15)
45     except:
46         pwm0.deinit()
47         pwm1.deinit()
48         pwm2.deinit()

```

The function `wheel()` is a color selection method of the color model introduced earlier. The value range of the parameter `pos` is 0-1023. The function will return a data containing the duty cycle values of 3 pins.

```

19 def wheel(pos):
20     global red, green, blue
21     WheelPos=pos%1023
22     print(WheelPos)

```

```
23     if WheelPos<341:  
24         red=1023-WheelPos*3  
25         green=WheelPos*3  
26         blue=0  
27  
28     elif WheelPos>=341 and WheelPos<682:  
29         WheelPos -= 341;  
30         red=0  
31         green=1023-WheelPos*3  
32         blue=WheelPos*3  
33     else :  
34         WheelPos -= 682;  
35         red=WheelPos*3  
36         green=0  
37         blue=1023-WheelPos*3
```



# Chapter 6 NeoPixel

This chapter will help you learn to use a more convenient RGBLED lamp, which requires only one GPIO control and can be connected in infinite series in theory. Each LED can be controlled independently.

## Project 6.1 NeoPixel

Learn the basic usage of NeoPixel and use it to flash red, green, blue and white.

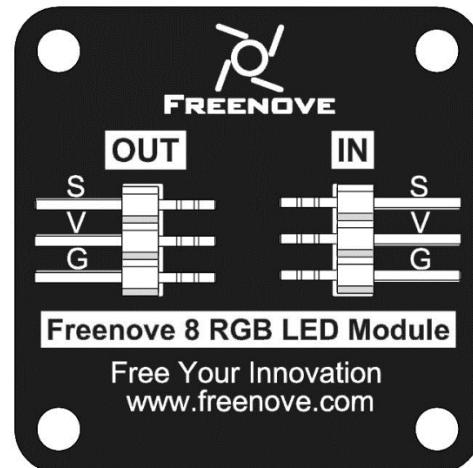
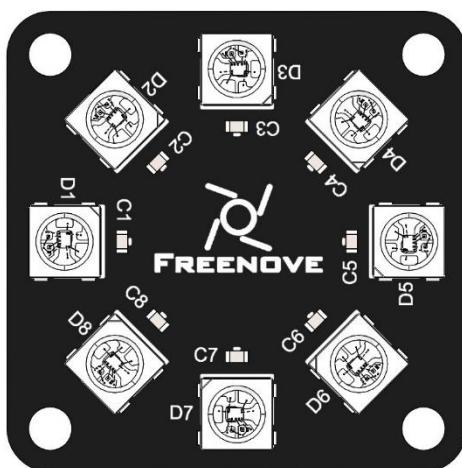
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
Breadboard x1	
Freenove 8 RGB LED Module x1	Jumper wire F/M x4

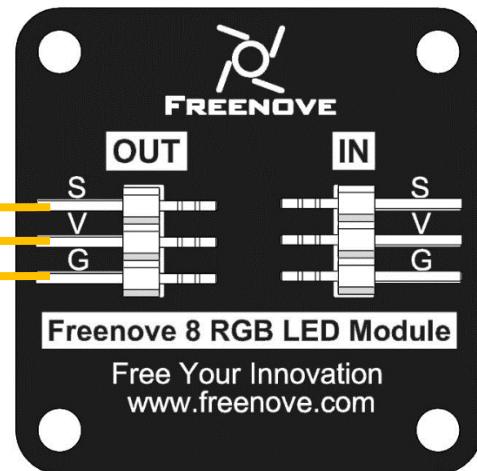
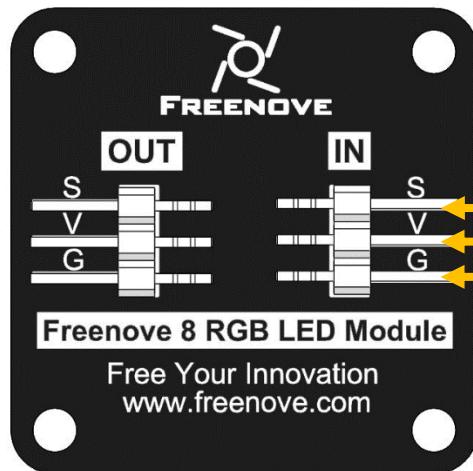
## Related knowledge

### Freenove 8 RGB LED Module

The Freenove 8 RGB LED Module is as below. You can use only one data pin to control eight LEDs on the module. As shown below:



And you can also control many modules at the same time. Just connect OUT pin of one module to IN pin of another module. In this way, you can use one data pin to control 8, 16, 32 ... LEDs.

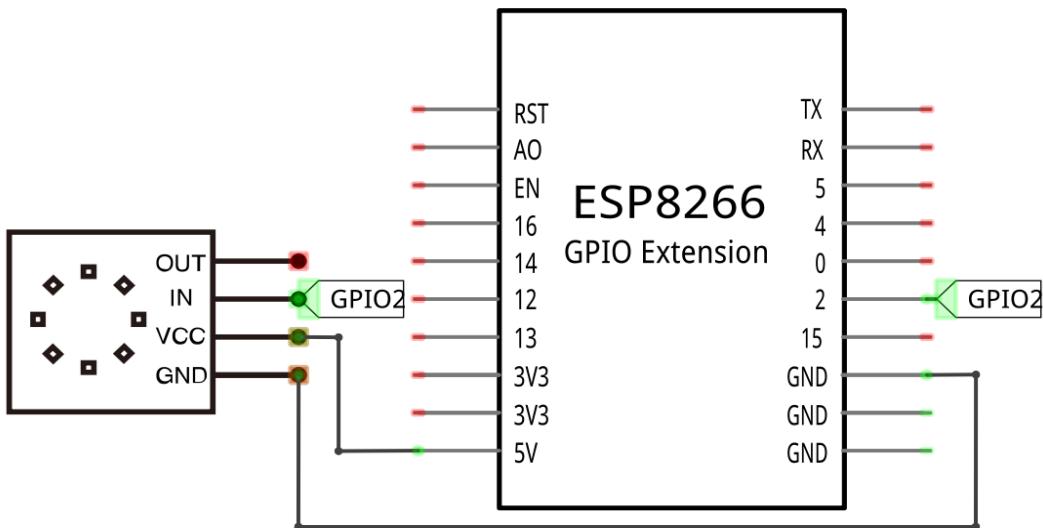


### Pin description:

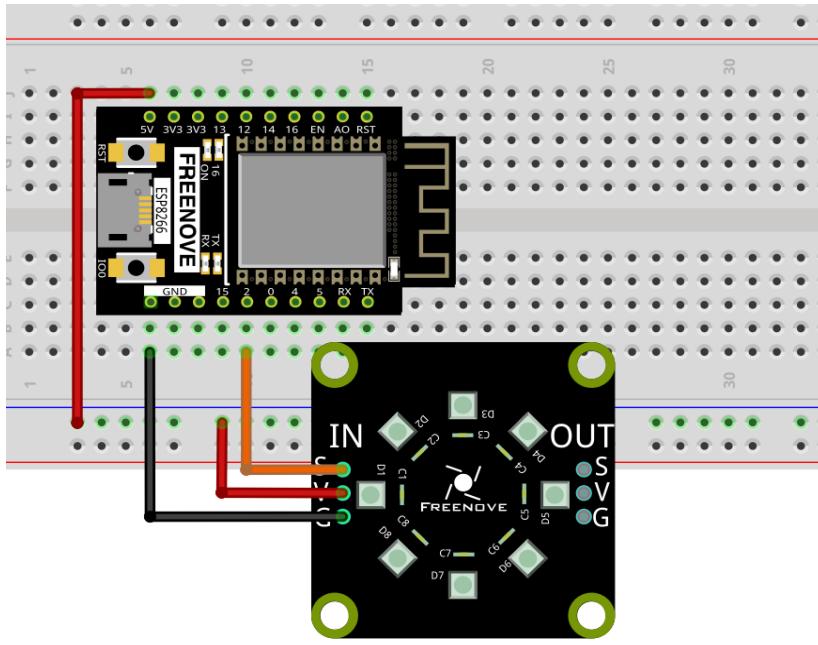
(IN)		(OUT)	
symbol	Function	symbol	Function
S	Input control signal	S	Output control signal
V	Power supply pin, +3.5V~5.5V	V	Power supply pin, +3.5V~5.5V
G	GND	G	GND

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “06.1\_Neopixel” and double click “Neopixel.py”.

### 06.1\_Neopixel



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The left sidebar lists files: boot.py and Neopixel.py. The main area displays the code for Neopixel.py:

```

11     [0,0,brightness],           #blue
12     [brightness,brightness,brightness], #white
13     [0,0,0]]                      #close
14
15 while True:
16     for i in range(0,5):
17         for j in range(0,8):
18             np[j]=colors[i]
19             np.write()
20             time.sleep_ms(50)
21             time.sleep_ms(500)
22             time.sleep_ms(500)

```

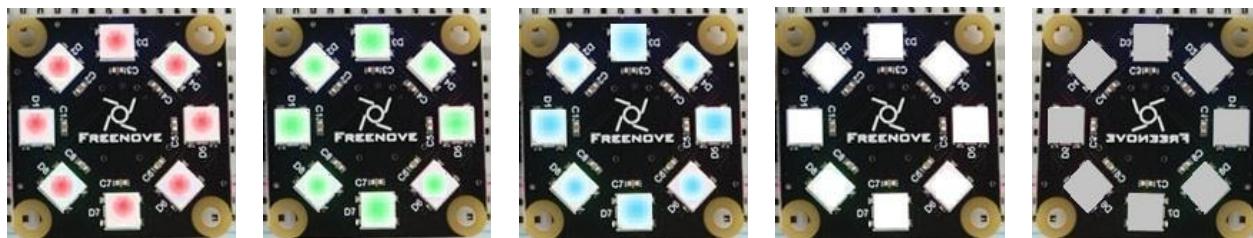
The terminal window at the bottom shows the MicroPython environment:

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

```

Click “Run current script”, and Neopixel begins to light up in red, green, blue, white and black.





The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin
2  import neopixel
3  import time
4  pin = Pin(2, Pin.OUT)
5  np = neopixel.NeoPixel(pin, 8)

6
7  #brightness :0~255
8  brightness=10
9  colors=[[brightness, 0, 0],           #red
10    [0, brightness, 0],               #green
11    [0, 0, brightness],            #blue
12    [brightness, brightness, brightness], #white
13    [0, 0, 0]]                      #close

14
15 while True:
16     for i in range(0, 5):
17         for j in range(0, 8):
18             np[j]=colors[i]
19             np.write()
20             time.sleep_ms(50)
21             time.sleep_ms(500)
22             time.sleep_ms(500)

```

Import Pin, neopixel and time modules.

```

1  from machine import Pin
2  import neopixel
3  import time

```

Define the number of pin and LEDs connected to neopixel.

```

4  pin = Pin(2, Pin.OUT)
5  np = neopixel.NeoPixel(pin, 8)

```

Define the brightness of neopixel's LED and an array to store color.

```

7  #brightness :0~255
8  brightness=10
9  colors=[[brightness, 0, 0],           #red
10    [0, brightness, 0],               #green
11    [0, 0, brightness],            #blue
12    [brightness, brightness, brightness], #white
13    [0, 0, 0]]                      #close

```

Assign the color data to the array np and call function write() to send np array data to neopixel module.

```

18      np[j]=colors[i]
19      np.write()

```

Nest two for loops to make the module repeatedly display five states of red, green, blue, white and OFF.

```
15 while True:  
16     for i in range(0, 5):  
17         for j in range(0, 8):  
18             np[j]=colors[i]  
19             np.write()  
20             time.sleep_ms(50)  
21             time.sleep_ms(500)  
22             time.sleep_ms(500)
```

#### Reference

##### Class neopixel

Before each usr of **neopixel** module, please add the statement “**import neopixel**” to the top of Python file.

**NeoPixel(pin, n)**: Define the number of output pins and LEDs of neopixel module

**pin**: Output pins

**n**: The number of LEDs.

**NeoPixel.write()**: Write data to LEDs.

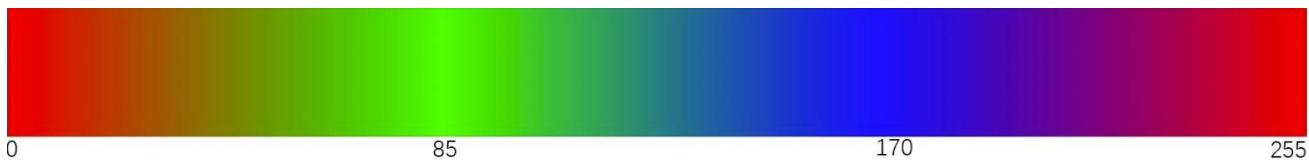


## Project 6.2 Rainbow Light

In the previous project, we have mastered the usage of NeoPixel. This project will realize a slightly complicated Rainbow Light. The component list and the circuit are exactly the same as the project fashionable Light.

### Code

Continue to use the following color model to equalize the color distribution of the 8 leds and gradually change.



Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “06.2\_Rainbow\_light” and then double click “Rainbow\_light.py”.

#### 06.2\_Rainbow\_light

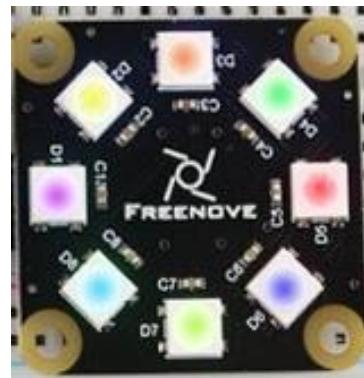
```

15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
if WheelPos<85:
    red=(255-WheelPos*3)
    green=(WheelPos*3)
    blue=0
elif WheelPos>=85 and WheelPos<170:
    WheelPos -= 85;
    red=0
    green=(255-WheelPos*3)
    blue=(WheelPos*3)
else :
    WheelPos -= 170;
    red=(WheelPos*3)

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.  
=>>> %Run -c \$EDITOR\_CONTENT

Click “Run current script”, and the Freenove 8 RGB LED Strip displays different colors and the color changes gradually.



The following is the program code:

```
1  from machine import Pin
2  import neopixel
3  import time
4  pin = Pin(2, Pin.OUT)
5  np = neopixel.NeoPixel(pin, 8)
6
7  brightness=0.1      #brightness: 0 ~ 1.0
8  red=0               #red
9  green=0              #green
10 blue=0               #blue
11
12 def wheel(pos):
13     global red,green,blue
14     WheelPos=pos%255
15     if WheelPos<85:
16         red=(255-WheelPos*3)
17         green=(WheelPos*3)
18         blue=0
19     elif WheelPos>=85 and WheelPos<170:
20         WheelPos -= 85;
21         red=0
22         green=(255-WheelPos*3)
23         blue=(WheelPos*3)
24     else :
25         WheelPos -= 170;
26         red=(WheelPos*3)
27         green=0
28         blue=(255-WheelPos*3)
29
30 while True:
```

```

31     for i in range(0, 255) :
32         for j in range(0, 8) :
33             wheel(i+j*255//8)
34             np[j]=(int(red*brightness), int(green*brightness), int(blue*brightness))
35             np.write()
36             time.sleep_ms(5)

```

Define a wheel() function to process the color data of neopixel module.

```

12 def wheel(pos) :
13     global red, green, blue
14     WheelPos=pos%255
15     if WheelPos<85:
16         red=(255-WheelPos*3)
17         green=(WheelPos*3)
18         blue=0
19     elif WheelPos>=85 and WheelPos<170:
20         WheelPos -= 85;
21         red=0
22         green=(255-WheelPos*3)
23         blue=(WheelPos*3)
24     else :
25         WheelPos -= 170;
26         red=(WheelPos*3)
27         green=0
28         blue=(255-WheelPos*3)

```

Set the color brightness of the module.

7	brightness=0.1                   #brightness: 0 – 1.0
---	---

Use a nesting of two for loops. The first for loop makes the value of i increase from 0 to 255 automatically and the wheel() function processes the value of i into data of the module's three colors; the second for loop writes the color data to the module.

```

31     for i in range(0, 255) :
32         for j in range(0, 8) :
33             wheel(i+j*255//8)
34             np[j]=(int(red*brightness), int(green*brightness), int(blue*brightness))
35             np.write()
36             time.sleep_ms(5)

```

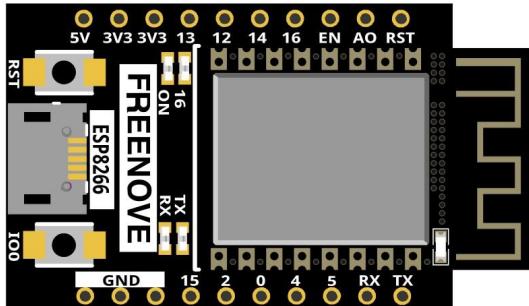
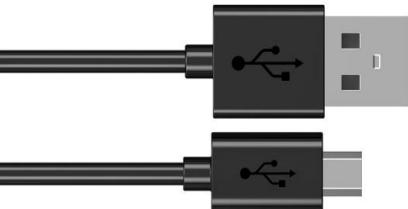
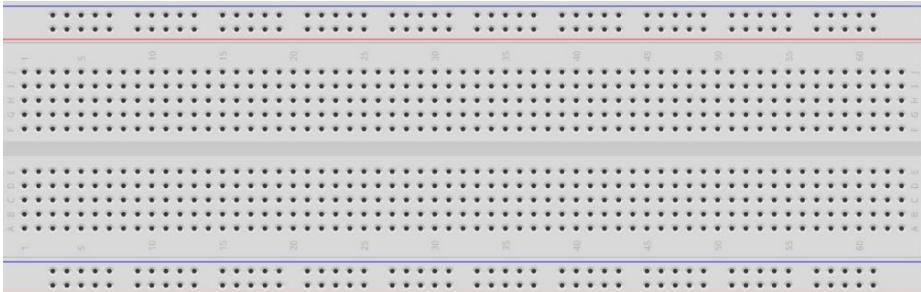
# Chapter 7 Buzzer

In this chapter, we will learn about buzzers and the sounds they make.

## Project 7.1 Doorbell

We will make this kind of doorbell: when the button is pressed, the buzzer sounds; and when the button is released, the buzzer stops sounding.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire M/M x9	
NPN transistor x1 (S8050)	Active buzzer x1
	
Push button x1	Resistor 1kΩ x1
	
Resistor 10kΩ x2	

## Component knowledge

### Buzzer

Buzzer is a sounding component, which is widely used in electronic devices such as calculator, electronic warning clock and alarm. Buzzer has two types: active and passive. Active buzzer has oscillator inside, which will sound as long as it is supplied with power. Passive buzzer requires external oscillator signal (generally use PWM with different frequency) to make a sound.



Active buzzer is easy to use. Generally, it can only make a specific frequency of sound. Passive buzzer requires an external circuit to make a sound, but it can be controlled to make a sound with different frequency. The resonant frequency of the passive buzzer is 2kHz, which means the passive buzzer is loudest when its resonant frequency is 2kHz.

Next, we will use an active buzzer to make a doorbell and a passive buzzer to make an alarm.

### How to identify active and passive buzzer?

1. Usually, there is a label on the surface of active buzzer covering the vocal hole, but this is not an absolute judgment method.
2. Active buzzers are more complex than passive buzzers in their manufacture. There are many circuits and crystal oscillator elements inside active buzzers; all of this is usually protected with a waterproof coating (and a housing) exposing only its pins from the underside. On the other hand, passive buzzers do not have protective coatings on their underside. From the pin holes viewing of a passive buzzer, you can see the circuit board, coils, and a permanent magnet (all or any combination of these components depending on the model).

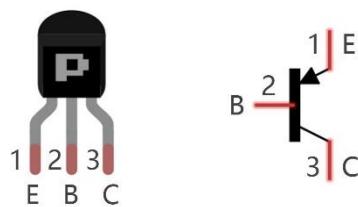


## Transistor

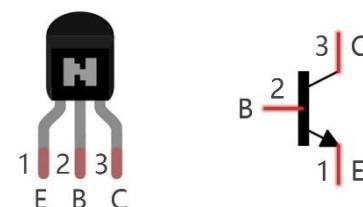
Because the buzzer requires such large current that GPIO of ESP8266 output capability cannot meet the requirement, a transistor of NPN type is needed here to amplify the current.

Transistor, the full name: semiconductor transistor, is a semiconductor device that controls current. Transistor can be used to amplify weak signal, or works as a switch. It has three electrodes(PINs): base (b), collector (c) and emitter (e). When there is current passing between "be", "ce" will allow several-fold current (transistor magnification) pass, at this point, transistor works in the amplifying area. When current between "be" exceeds a certain value, "ce" will not allow current to increase any longer, at this point, transistor works in the saturation area. Transistor has two types as shown below: PNP and NPN,

PNP transistor



NPN transistor

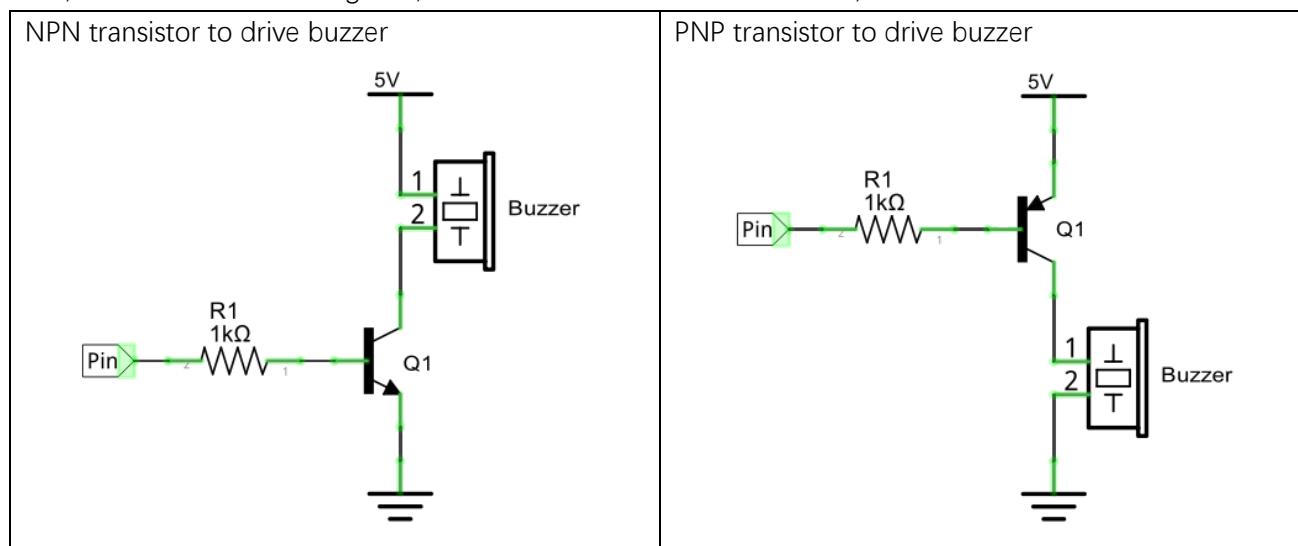


In our kit, the PNP transistor is marked with 8550, and the NPN transistor is marked with 8050.

Based on the transistor's characteristics, it is often used as a switch in digital circuits. As micro-controller's capacity to output current is very weak, we will use transistor to amplify current and drive large-current components.

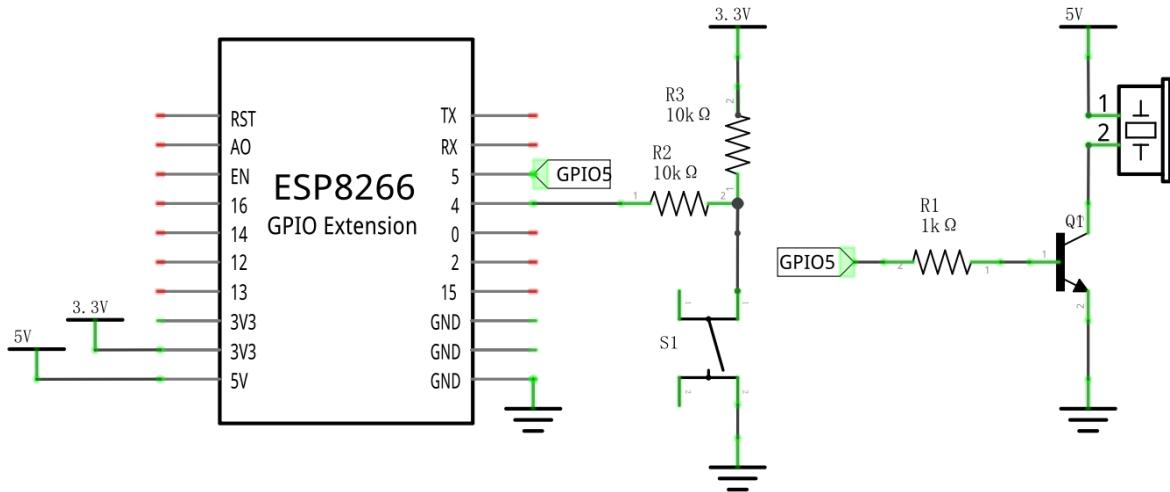
When using NPN transistor to drive buzzer, we often adopt the following method. If GPIO outputs high level, current will flow through R1, the transistor will get conducted, and the buzzer will sound. If GPIO outputs low level, no current flows through R1, the transistor will not be conducted, and buzzer will not sound.

When using PNP transistor to drive buzzer, we often adopt the following method. If GPIO outputs low level, current will flow through R1, the transistor will get conducted, and the buzzer will sound. If GPIO outputs high level, no current flows through R1, the transistor will not be conducted, and buzzer will not sound.

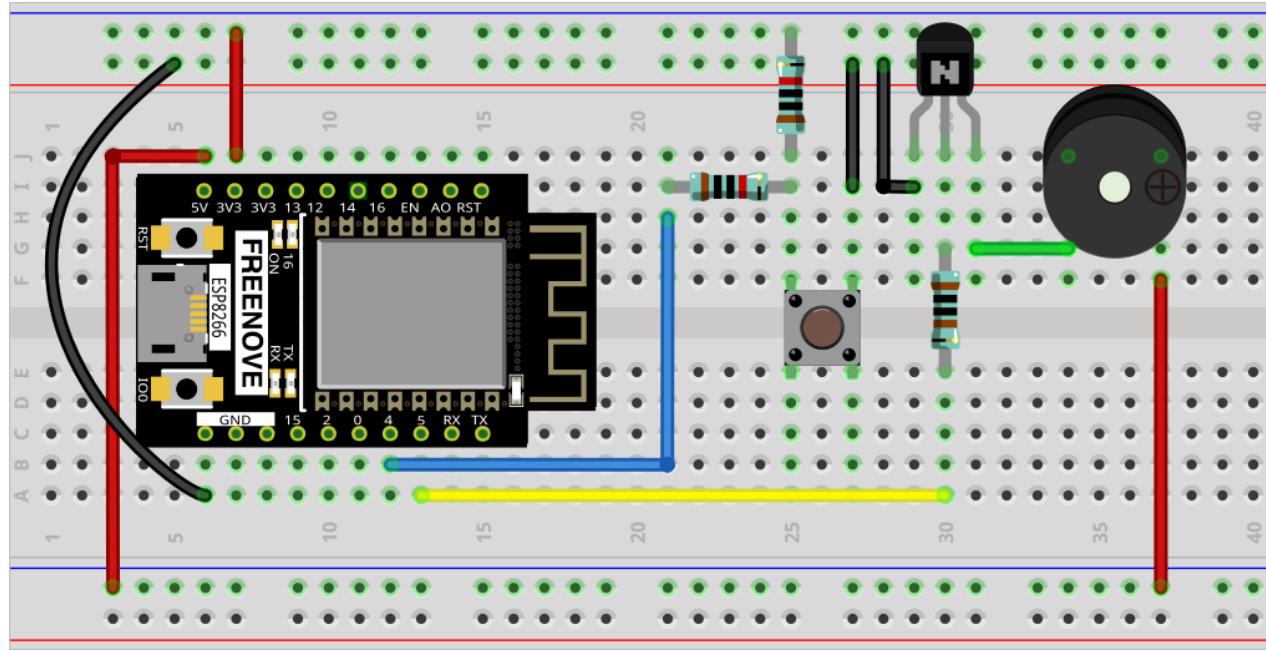


## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



Note: in this circuit, the power supply for buzzer is 5V, and pull-up resistor of the button connected to the power 3.3V. The buzzer can work when connected to power 3.3V, but it will reduce the loudness.

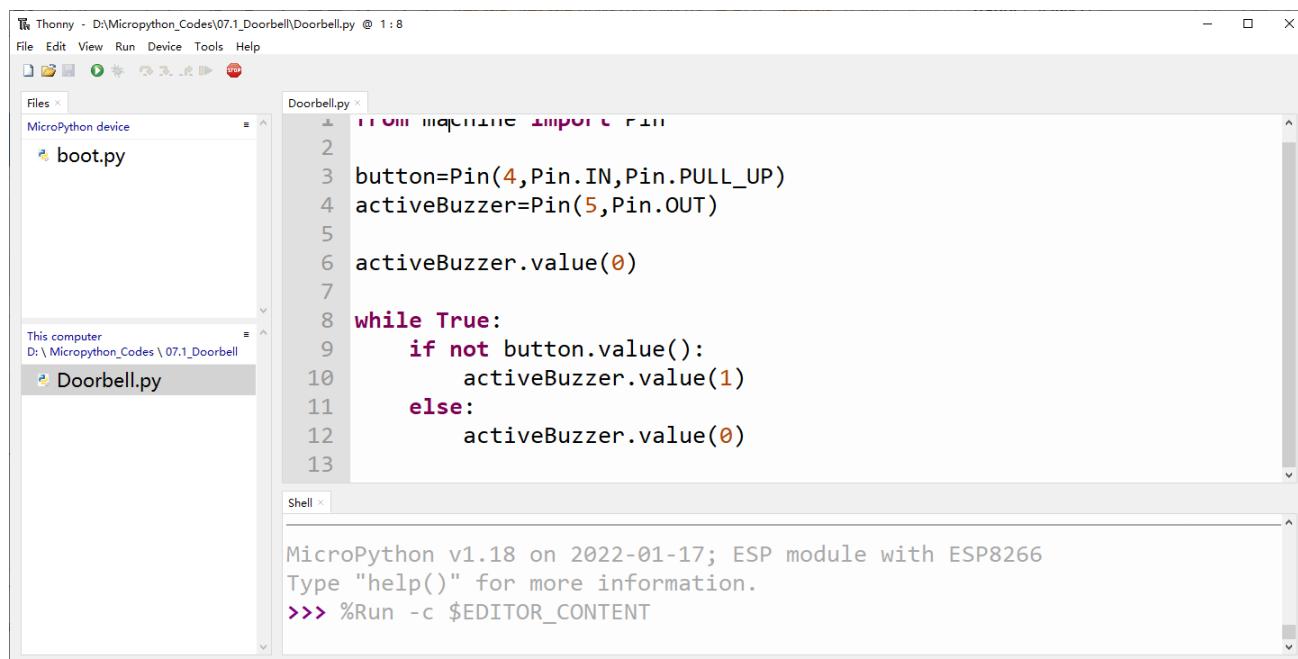
## Code

In this project, a buzzer will be controlled by a push button switch. When the button switch is pressed, the buzzer sounds and when the button is released, the buzzer stops. It is analogous to our earlier project that controlled an LED ON and OFF.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “07.1\_Doorbell” and double click “Doorbell.py”.

### 07.1\_Doorbell



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for file operations like Open, Save, and Run. The left sidebar has a 'Files' tab showing 'MicroPython device' with files 'boot.py' and 'Doorbell.py'. The main workspace has a code editor titled 'Doorbell.py' containing the following Python code:

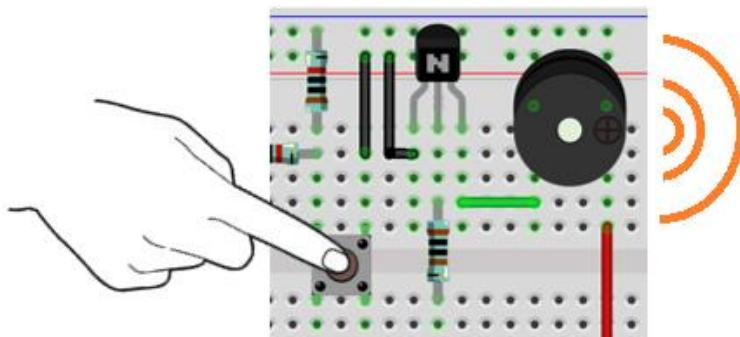
```
1  from machine import Pin
2
3  button=Pin(4,Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)
4  activeBuzzer=Pin(5,Pin.OUT)
5
6  activeBuzzer.value(0)
7
8  while True:
9      if not button.value():
10          activeBuzzer.value(1)
11      else:
12          activeBuzzer.value(0)
```

Below the code editor is a 'Shell' tab displaying MicroPython v1.18 output:

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
```



Click “Run current script”, press the push button switch and the buzzer will sound. Release the push button switch and the buzzer will stop.



The following is the program code:

```
1 from machine import Pin  
2  
3 button=Pin(4, Pin.IN, Pin.PULL_UP)  
4 activeBuzzer=Pin(5, Pin.OUT)  
5  
6 activeBuzzer.value(0)  
7  
8 while True:  
9     if not button.value():  
10         activeBuzzer.value(1)  
11     else:  
12         activeBuzzer.value(0)
```

The code is logically the same as using button to control LED.

## Project 7.2 Alertor

Next, we will use a passive buzzer to make an alarm.

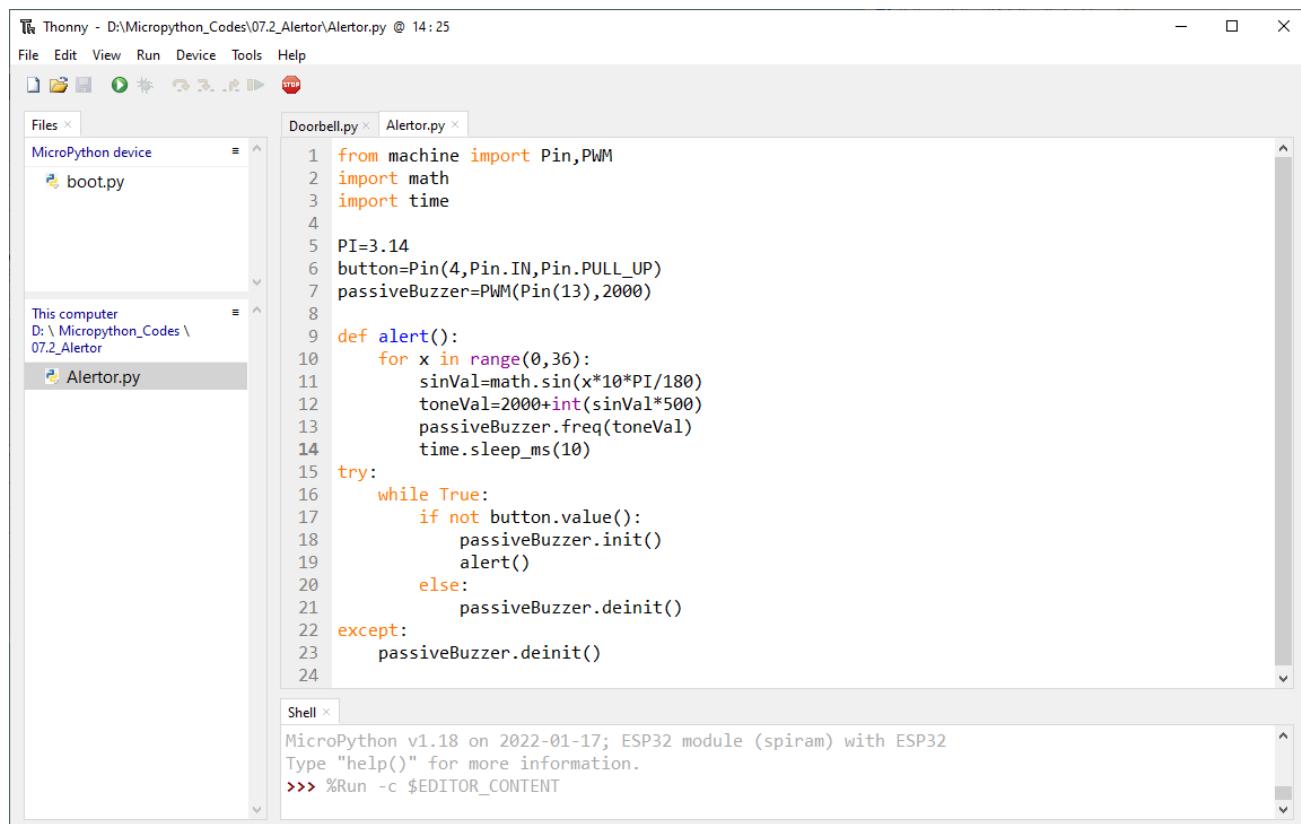
Component list and the circuit part is similar to last section. In the Doorbell circuit only the **active buzzer** needs to be **replaced** with a **passive buzzer**.

### Code

In this project, the buzzer alarm is controlled by the button. Press the button, then buzzer sounds. If you release the button, the buzzer will stop sounding. In the logic, it is the same as using button to control LED. In the control method, passive buzzer requires PWM of certain frequency to sound.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “07.2\_Alertor”, and double click “Alertor.py”.

#### 07.2\_Alertor



```

from machine import Pin,PWM
import math
import time

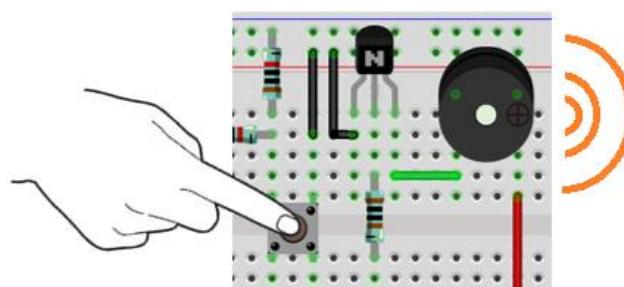
PI=3.14
button=Pin(4,Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)
passiveBuzzer=PWM(Pin(13),2000)

def alert():
    for x in range(0,36):
        sinVal=math.sin(x*10*PI/180)
        toneVal=2000+int(sinVal*500)
        passiveBuzzer.freq(toneVal)
        time.sleep_ms(10)

try:
    while True:
        if not button.value():
            passiveBuzzer.init()
            alert()
        else:
            passiveBuzzer.deinit()
except:
    passiveBuzzer.deinit()

```

Click “Run current script”, press the button, then alarm sounds. And when the button is release, the alarm will stop sounding.



Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com



The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM
2  import math
3  import time
4
5  PI=3.14
6  button=Pin(4, Pin.IN, Pin.PULL_UP)
7  passiveBuzzer=PWM(Pin(5), 1000)
8
9  def alert():
10     for x in range(0, 36):
11         sinVal=math.sin(x*10*PI/180)
12         toneVal=500+int(sinVal*500)
13         passiveBuzzer.duty(1000)
14         passiveBuzzer.freq(toneVal)
15         time.sleep_ms(10)
16     try:
17         while True:
18             if not button.value():
19                 passiveBuzzer.init()
20                 alert()
21             else:
22                 passiveBuzzer.duty(0)
23                 passiveBuzzer.deinit()
24     except:
25         passiveBuzzer.deinit()
```

Import PWM, Pin, math and time modules.

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM
2  import math
3  import time
```

Define the pins of the button and passive buzzer.

```

5  PI=3.14
6  button=Pin(4, Pin.IN, Pin.PULL_UP)
7  passiveBuzzer=PWM(Pin(5), 1000)
```

Call sin function of math module to generate the frequency data of the passive buzzer.

```

9  def alert():
10     for x in range(0, 36):
11         sinVal=math.sin(x*10*PI/180)
12         toneVal=500+int(sinVal*500)
13         passiveBuzzer.duty(1000)
14         passiveBuzzer.freq(toneVal)
15         time.sleep_ms(10)
```

When not using PWM, please turn it OFF in time.

```
22         passiveBuzzer.duty(0)
```

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

23

passiveBuzzer.deinit()



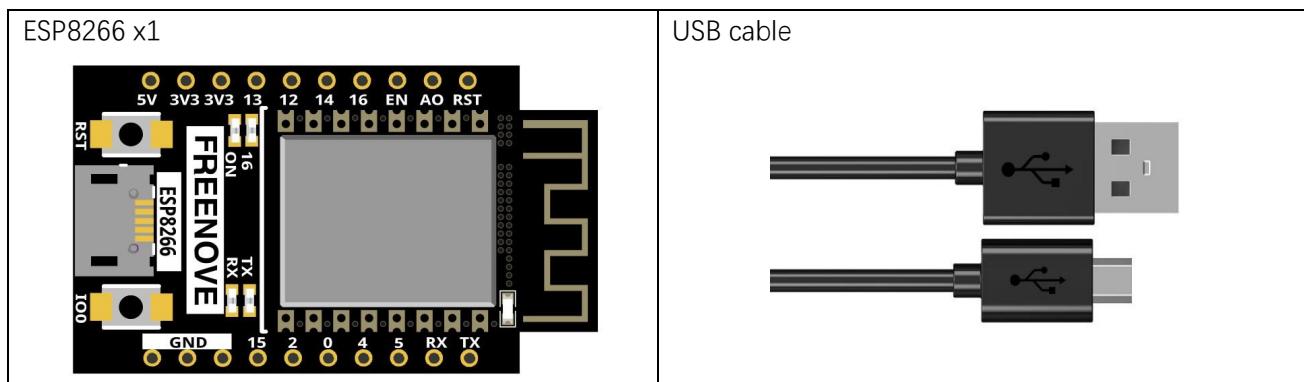
# Chapter 8 Serial Communication

Serial Communication is a means of Communication between different devices/devices. This section describes ESP8266's Serial Communication.

## Project 8.1 Serial Print

This project uses ESP8266's serial communicator to send data to the computer and print it on the serial monitor.

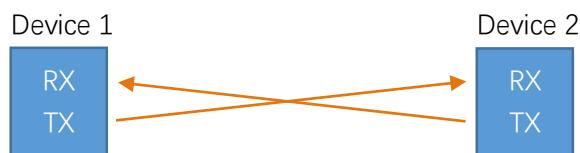
### Component List



## Related knowledge

### Serial communication

Serial communication generally refers to the Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART), which is commonly used in electronic circuit communication. It has two communication lines, one is responsible for sending data (TX line) and the other for receiving data (RX line). The serial communication connections two devices use is as follows:



Before serial communication starts, the baud rate of both sides must be the same. Communication between devices can work only if the same baud rate is used. The baud rates commonly used is 9600 and 115200.

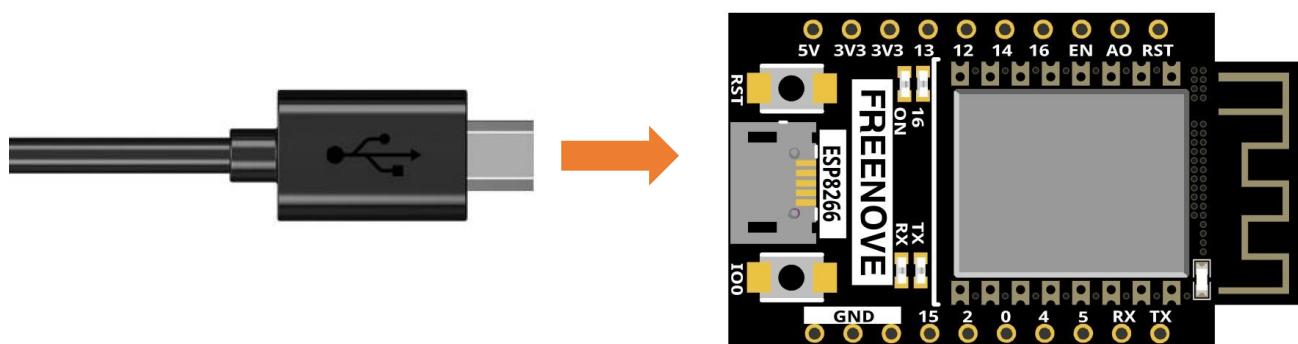
### Serial port on ESP8266

Freenove ESP8266 has integrated USB to serial transfer, so it could communicate with computer connecting to USB cable.



## Circuit

Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer with USB cable.

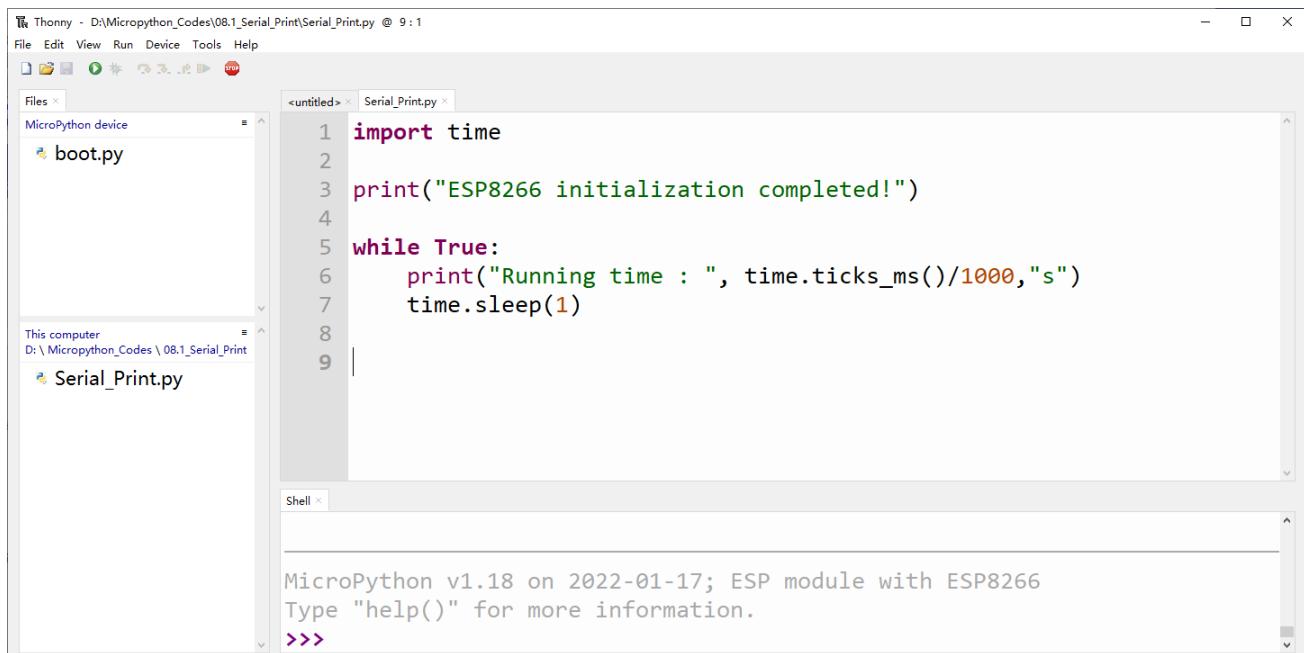


## Code

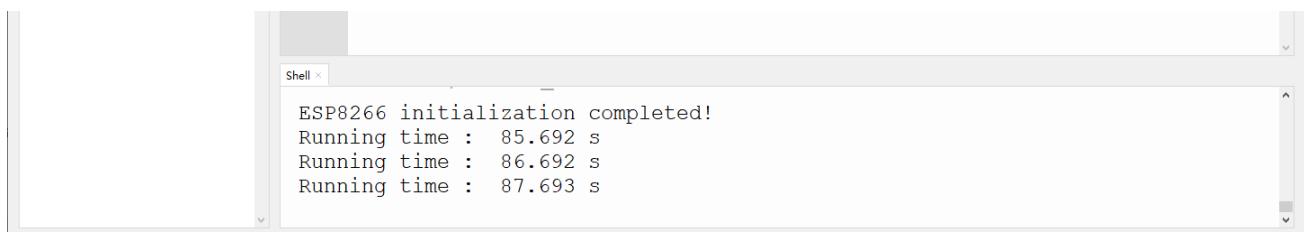
Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D.” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “08.1\_Serial\_Print” and double “Serial\_Print.py”.

### 08.1\_Serial\_Print



Click “Run current script” and observe the changes of “Shell”, which will display the time when ESP8266 is powered on once per second.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2
3 print("ESP8266 initialization completed!")
4
5 while True:
6     print("Running time : ", time.ticks_ms()/1000, "s")
7     time.sleep(1)

```

## Reference

### Class UART

Before each use of **UART** module, please add the statement “**from machine import UART**” to the top of python file.

**UART(id, baudrate, bits, parity, rx, tx, stop, timeout)**: Define serial ports and configure parameters for them.

**id**: Serial Number. The available serial port number is 1 or 2

**baudrate**: Baud rate

**bits**: The number of each character.

**parity**: Check even or odd, with 0 for even checking and 1 for odd checking.

**rx, tx**: UAPT's reading and writing pins

Pin(0)、Pin(2)、Pin(4)、Pin(5)、Pin(9)、Pin(10)、Pin(12~19)、Pin(21~23)、Pin(25)、Pin(26)、  
Pin(34~36)、Pin(39)

Note: Pin(1) and Pin(3) are occupied and not recommend to be used as tx,rx.

**stop**: The number of stop bits, and the stop bit is 1 or 2.

**timeout**: timeout period (Unit: millisecond)

$0 < \text{timeout} \leq 0x7FFF\ FFFF$  (decimal:  $0 < \text{timeout} \leq 2147483647$ )

**UART.init(baudrate, bits, parity, stop, tx, rx, rts, cts)**): Initialize serial ports

**tx**: writing pins of uart

**rx**: reading pins of uart

**rts**: rts pins of uart

**cts**: cts pins of uart

**UART.read(nbytes)**: Read nbytes bytes

**UART.read()**: Read data

**UART.write(buf)**: Write byte buffer to UART bus

**UART.readline()**: Read a line of data, ending with a newline character.

**UART.readinto(buf)**: Read and write data into buffer.

**UART.readinto(buf, nbytes)**: Read and write data into buffer.

**UART.any()**: Determine whether there is data in serial ports. If yes, return the number of bytes; Otherwise, return 0.



## Project 8.2 Serial Read and Write

From last section, we use Serial port on Freenove ESP8266 to send data to a computer, now we will use that to receive data from computer.

Component and Circuit are the same as in the previous project.

### Code

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “08.2\_Serial\_Read\_and\_Write” and double click “Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py”.

#### 08.2\_Serial\_Read\_and\_Write

```

print(str("\nESP8266 initialization completed!\n"))
+ str("Please input some characters,\n")
+ str("select \"Newline\" below and click send button. \n")
while True:
    print("inputString: ",input())

```

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The left sidebar shows a file tree with a MicroPython device and a folder named "08.2\_Serial\_Read\_and\_Write" containing a file named "Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py". The main window has three tabs: "untitled", "Serial\_Print.py", and "Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py". The "Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py" tab contains the provided Python code. Below the tabs is a "Shell" window displaying the output of the script: "ESP8266 initialization completed!", "Please input some characters,", and "select \"Newline\" below and click send button.".

Click “Run current script” and ESP8266 will print out data at “Shell” and wait for users to enter any messages. Press Enter to end the input, and “Shell” will print out data that the user entered. If you want to use other serial ports, you can use other python files in the same directory.

```

inputString:
inputString:
ABCDEF
inputString: ABCDEF

```

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The left sidebar shows a file tree with a MicroPython device and a folder named "08.2\_Serial\_Read\_and\_Write" containing a file named "Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py". The main window has three tabs: "untitled", "Serial\_Print.py", and "Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py". The "Serial\_Read\_and\_Write.py" tab contains the provided Python code. Below the tabs is a "Shell" window displaying the output of the script: "inputString:", "inputString:", "ABCDEF", and "inputString: ABCDEF".

The following is the program code:

```
1 print(str("\nESP8266 initialization completed!\n"))
2     + str("Please input some characters, \n")
3     + str("select \"Newline\" below and click send button. \n"))
4 while True:
5     print("inputString: ", input())
```

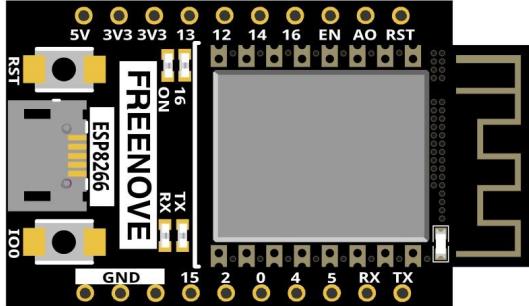
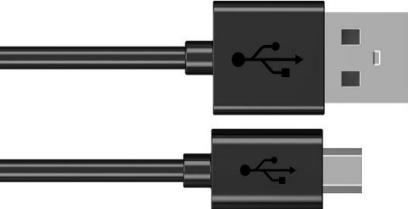
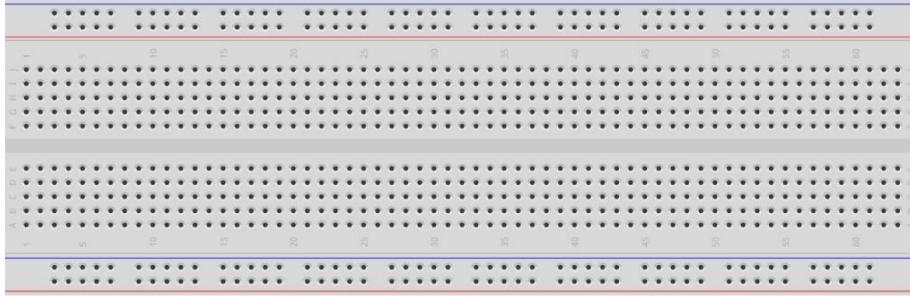
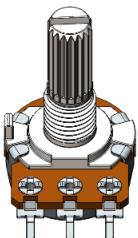
# Chapter 9 ADC Converter

We have learned how to control the brightness of LED through PWM and understood that PWM is not the real analog before. In this chapter, we will learn how to read analog, convert it into digital. That is, ADC.

## Project 9.1 Read the Voltage of Potentiometer

In this project, ADC is used to convert analog signals into digital signals. Control chip on the control board has integrated this function. Now let us try to use this function to convert analog signals into digital signals.

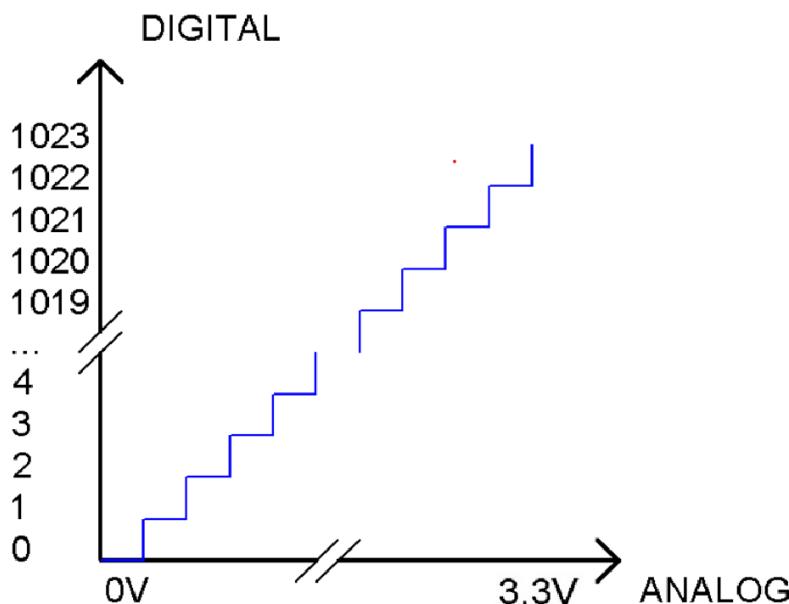
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
	
Rotary potentiometer x1	Jumper wire M/M x3
	

## Related knowledge

### ADC

An ADC is an electronic integrated circuit used to convert analog signals such as voltages to digital or binary form consisting of 1s and 0s. The range of our ADC on ESP8266 is 10 bits, that means the resolution is  $2^{10}=1024$ , and it represents a range (at 3.3V) will be divided equally to 1024 parts. The range of analog values corresponds to ADC values. So the more bits the ADC has, the denser the partition of analog will be and the greater the precision of the resulting conversion.



Subsection 1: the analog in rang of 0V---3.3/1023 V corresponds to digital 0;

Subsection 2: the analog in rang of 3.3/1023 V---2\*3.3 /1023V corresponds to digital 1;

...

The following analog will be divided accordingly.

The conversion formula is as follows:

$$ADC\ Value = \frac{\text{Analog\ Voltage}}{3.3} * 1023$$

### ADC on ESP8266

ESP8266 has one digital analog converters with successive approximations of 10-bit accuracy, and a total of 1 pins can be used to measure analog signals. GPIO analog pin definition are shown in the following table. Note that the input voltage on the ADC pins of the ESP8266 module must be between 0V and 1.0V. For the ESP8266 development board designed by us, its input voltage range has been sampled by resistors. The ADC input voltage of the development board is 0V to 3.3V. Do not exceed this voltage range when you use the ADC function. Exceeding this voltage range can cause permanent damage to your hardware!

#### Pin number in ESP8266

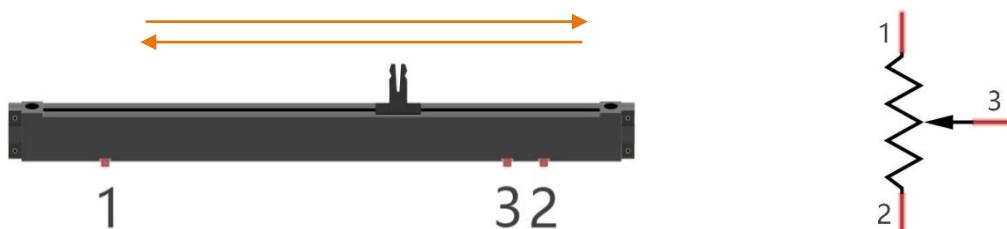
A0

The analog pin number is also defined in ESP8266's code base. For example, you can use A0 in your code.

## Component knowledge

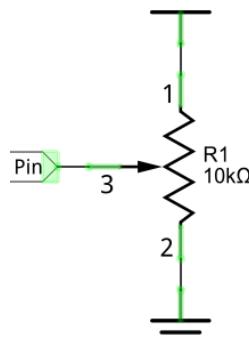
### Potentiometer

Potentiometer is a resistive element with three Terminal parts. Unlike the resistors that we have used thus far in our project which have a fixed resistance value, the resistance value of a potentiometer can be adjusted. A potentiometer is often made up by a resistive substance (a wire or carbon element) and movable contact brush. When the brush moves along the resistor element, there will be a change in the resistance of the potentiometer's output side (3) (or change in the voltage of the circuit that is a part). The illustration below represents a linear sliding potentiometer and its electronic symbol on the right.



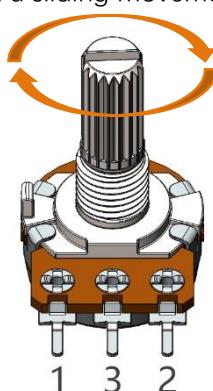
What between potentiometer pin 1 and pin 2 is the resistor body, and pins 3 is connected to brush. When brush moves from pin 1 to pin 2, the resistance between pin 1 and pin 3 will increase up to body resistance linearly, and the resistance between pin 2 and pin 3 will decrease down to 0 linearly.

In the circuit. The both sides of resistance body are often connected to the positive and negative electrode of the power. When you slide the brush pin 3, you can get a certain voltage in the range of the power supply.



### Rotary potentiometer

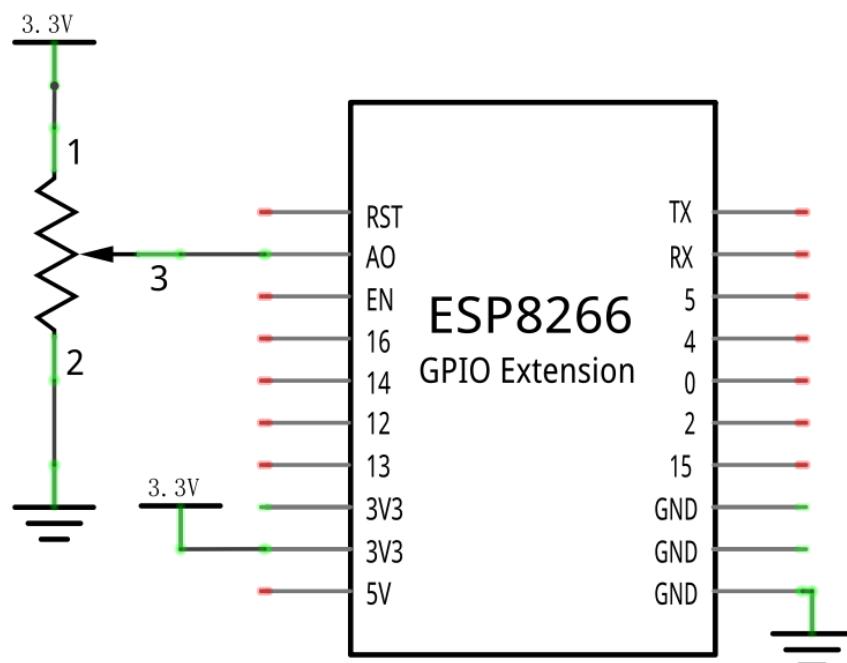
Rotary potentiometers and linear potentiometers have the same function; the only difference being the physical action being a rotational rather than a sliding movement.



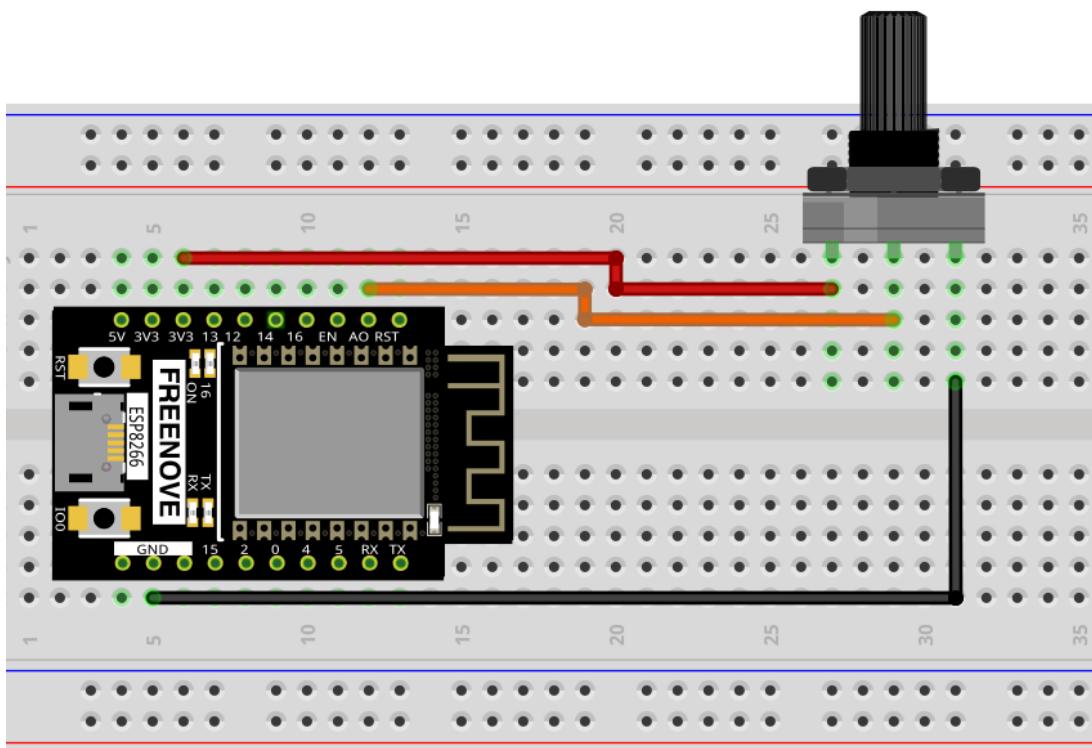
## Circuit

Please note that the voltage range of the ADC is 0V to 3.3V. Exceeding this voltage range may cause permanent damage to your hardware!

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “09.1\_AnalogRead” and then click “AnalogRead.py”.

### 09.1\_AnalogRead

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The code editor window displays the following Python script:

```

from machine import ADC, Pin
import time

adc = ADC(0)

try:
    while True:
        adcValue = adc.read()
        voltage = adcValue / 1024.0 * 3.3
        print("ADC Value:", adcValue, "Voltage:", voltage, "V")
        time.sleep(0.1)
except:
    pass

```

The shell window below shows the MicroPython environment and the output of the script:

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

Click “Run current script” and observe the message printed in “Shell”.

The screenshot shows the Thonny Shell window displaying the output of the script. The output consists of multiple lines of text, each showing an ADC value and its corresponding voltage conversion:

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
ADC Value: 1024 Voltage: 3.3 V
ADC Value: 1018 Voltage: 3.28066 V
ADC Value: 958 Voltage: 3.0873 V
ADC Value: 885 Voltage: 2.85205 V
ADC Value: 812 Voltage: 2.6168 V
ADC Value: 734 Voltage: 2.36543 V
ADC Value: 638 Voltage: 2.05605 V
ADC Value: 534 Voltage: 1.7209 V
ADC Value: 445 Voltage: 1.43408 V
ADC Value: 354 Voltage: 1.14082 V
ADC Value: 334 Voltage: 1.07637 V
ADC Value: 278 Voltage: 0.895898 V

```

"Shell" prints ADC value and the output voltage of potentiometer and other information. From the code, we get the ADC value of pin A0, then convert it into voltage value.

Turn the rotary potentiometer shaft, and you can see the voltage change.

The following is the code:

```

1  from machine import ADC, Pin
2  import time
3
4  adc = ADC(0)
5  try:
6      while True:
7          adcValue = adc.read()
8          voltage = adcValue / 1024.0 * 3.3
9          print("ADC Value:", adcValue, "Voltage:", voltage, "V")
10         time.sleep(0.1)
11     except:
12         pass

```

Import Pin, ADC and DAC modules.

```

1  from machine import ADC, Pin, DAC
2  import time

```

Read ADC value once every 100 millisecods, and "Shell" prints ADC value and the output voltage of potentiometer and other information.

```

7      adcValue = adc.read()
8      voltage = adcValue / 1024.0 * 3.3
9      print("ADC Value:", adcValue, "Voltage:", voltage, "V")
10     time.sleep(0.1)

```

## Reference

### Class ADC

Before each use of ACD module, please add the statement "**from machine import ADC**" to the top of the python file.

**machine.ADC(pin)**: Create an ADC object associated with the given pin.

**pin**: Available pins are: ADC0.

**ADC.read()**: Read ADC and return the value.

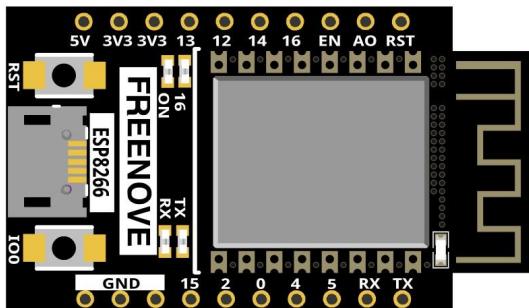
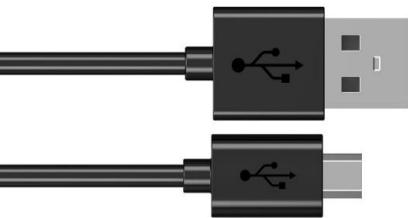
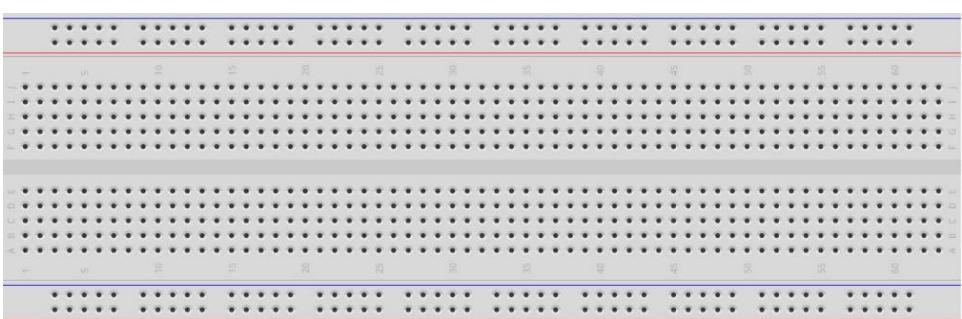
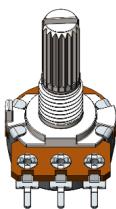
# Chapter 10 Potentiometer & LED

In the previous section, we have finished reading ADC value and converting it into voltage. Now, we will try to use potentiometer to control the brightness of LED.

## Project 10.1 Soft Light

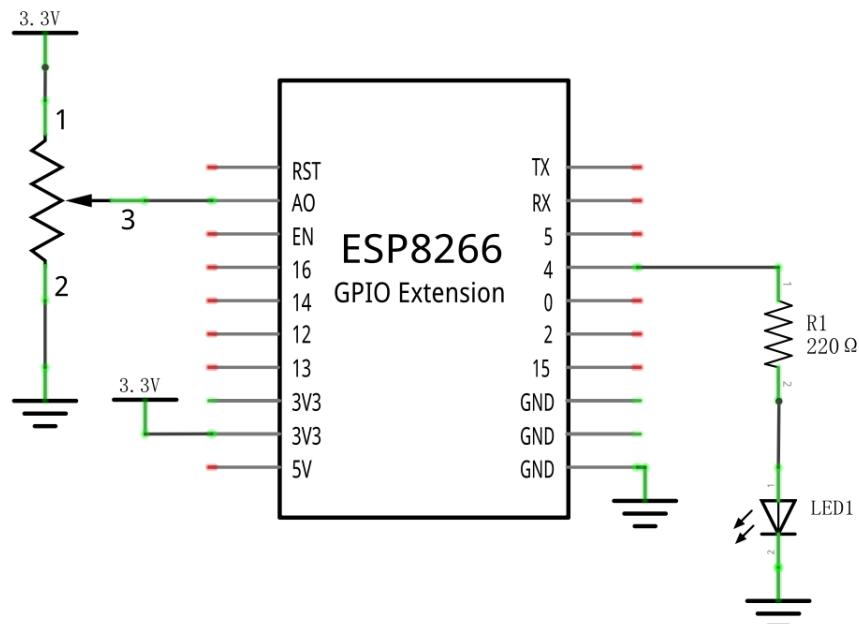
In this project, we will make a soft light. We will use an ADC Module to read ADC values of a potentiometer and map it to duty cycle of the PWM used to control the brightness of a LED. Then you can change the brightness of a LED by adjusting the potentiometer.

### Component List

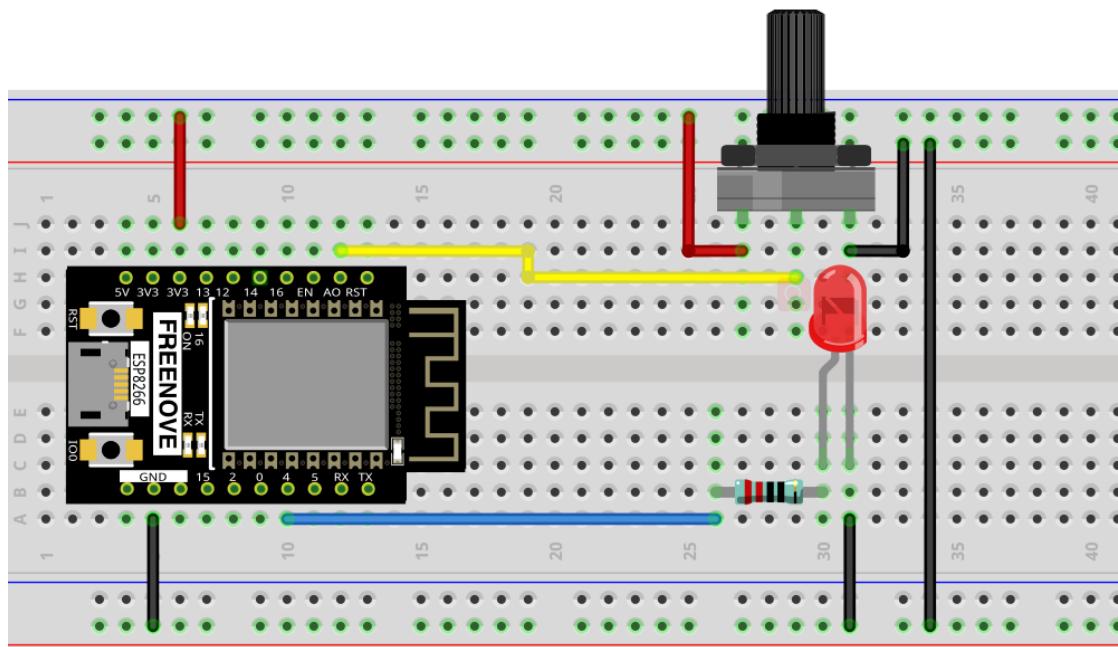
ESP8266 x1	USB cable		
			
Breadboard x1			
			
Rotary potentiometer x1	Resistor 220Ω x1	LED x1	Jumper wire M/M x8
			

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

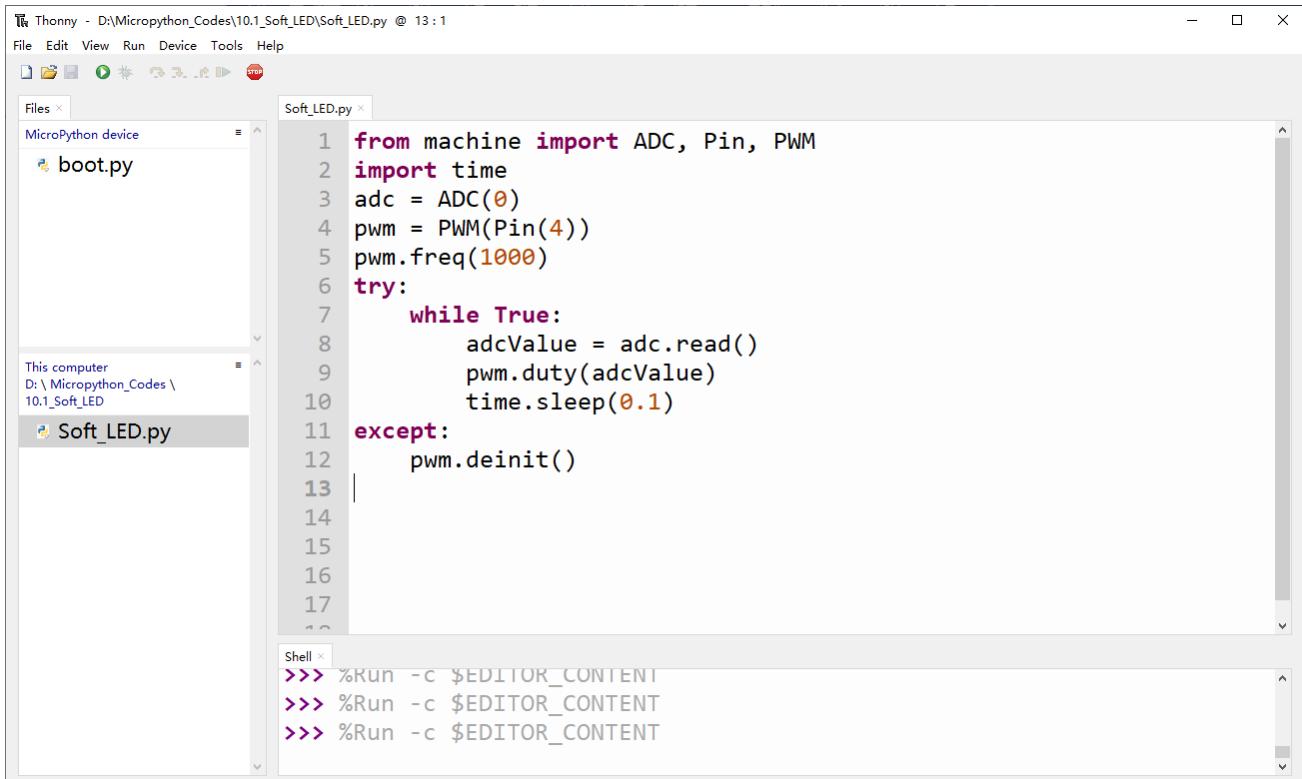


## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “10.1\_Soft\_LED” and double click “Soft\_LED.py”.

### 10.1\_Soft\_LED



Click “Run current script”. Rotate the handle of potentiometer and the brightness of LED will change correspondingly.

The following is the code:

```

1  from machine import ADC, Pin, PWM
2  import time
3  adc = ADC(0)
4  pwm = PWM(Pin(4))
5  pwm.freq(1000)
6  try:
7      while True:
8          adcValue = adc.read()
9          pwm.duty(adcValue)
10         time.sleep(0.1)
11     except:
12         pwm.deinit()

```

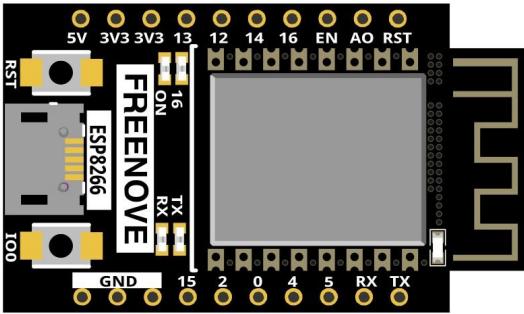
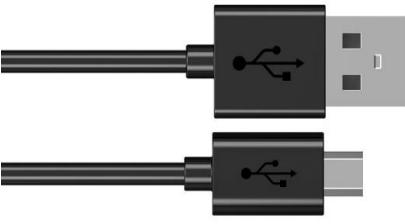
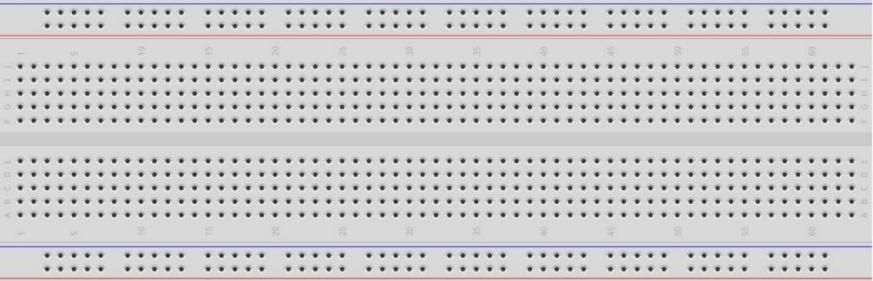
In the code, read the ADC value of potentiometer and map it to the duty cycle of PWM to control LED brightness.

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

## Project 10.2 Color Light

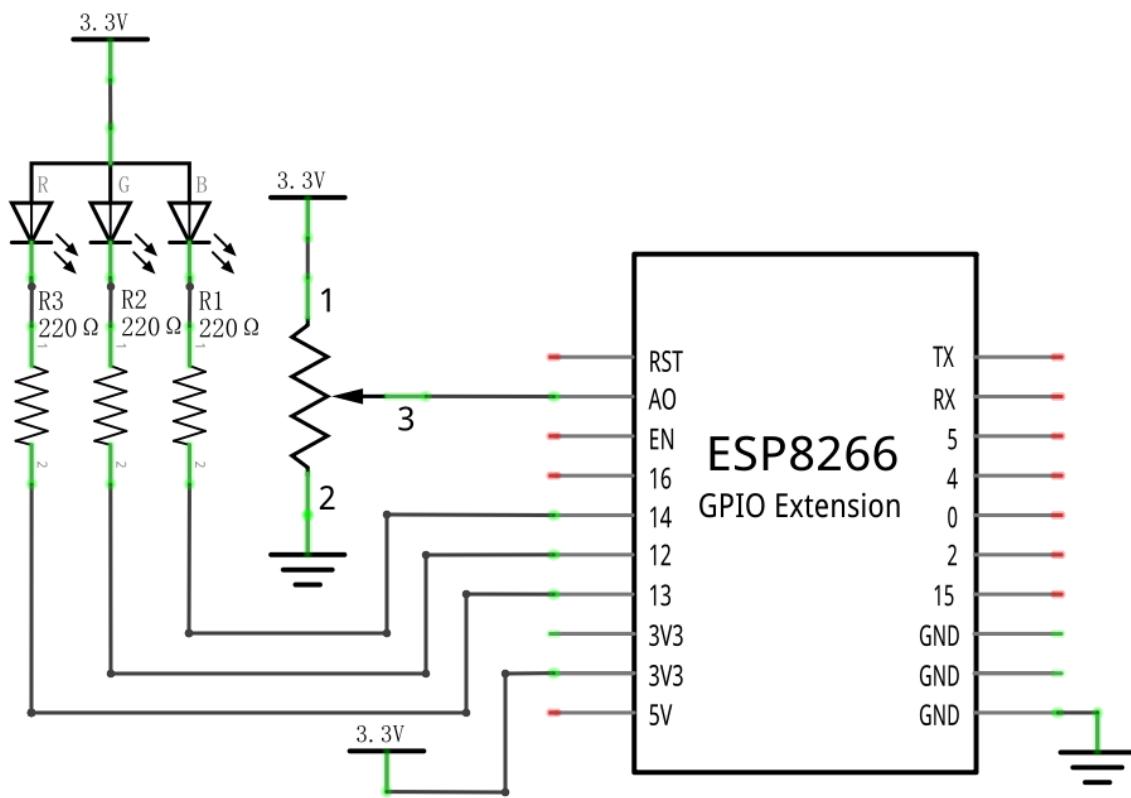
In this project, a potentiometer is used to control the RGB LED. The RGB LED is bright red when the potentiometer is near the midpoint, green when the potentiometer rotates to the "left" and blue when the potentiometer rotates to the "right".

### Component List

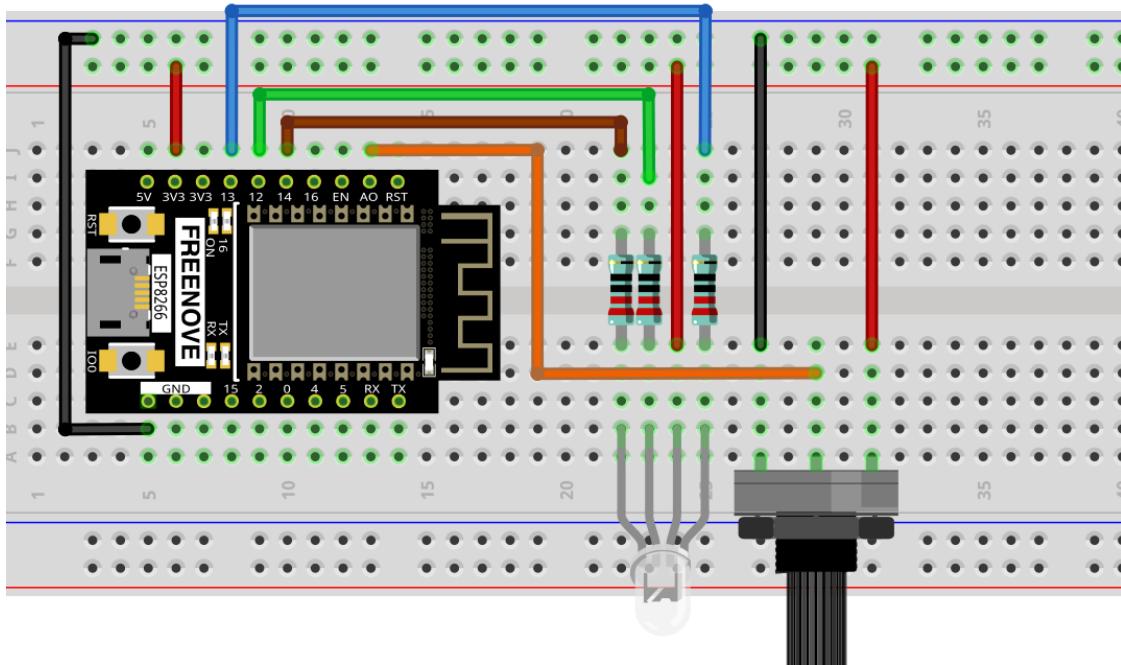
ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
	
Rotary potentiometer x1	Resistor 220Ω x3
	
RGBLED x1	Jumper wire M/M x9
	

# Circuit

## Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

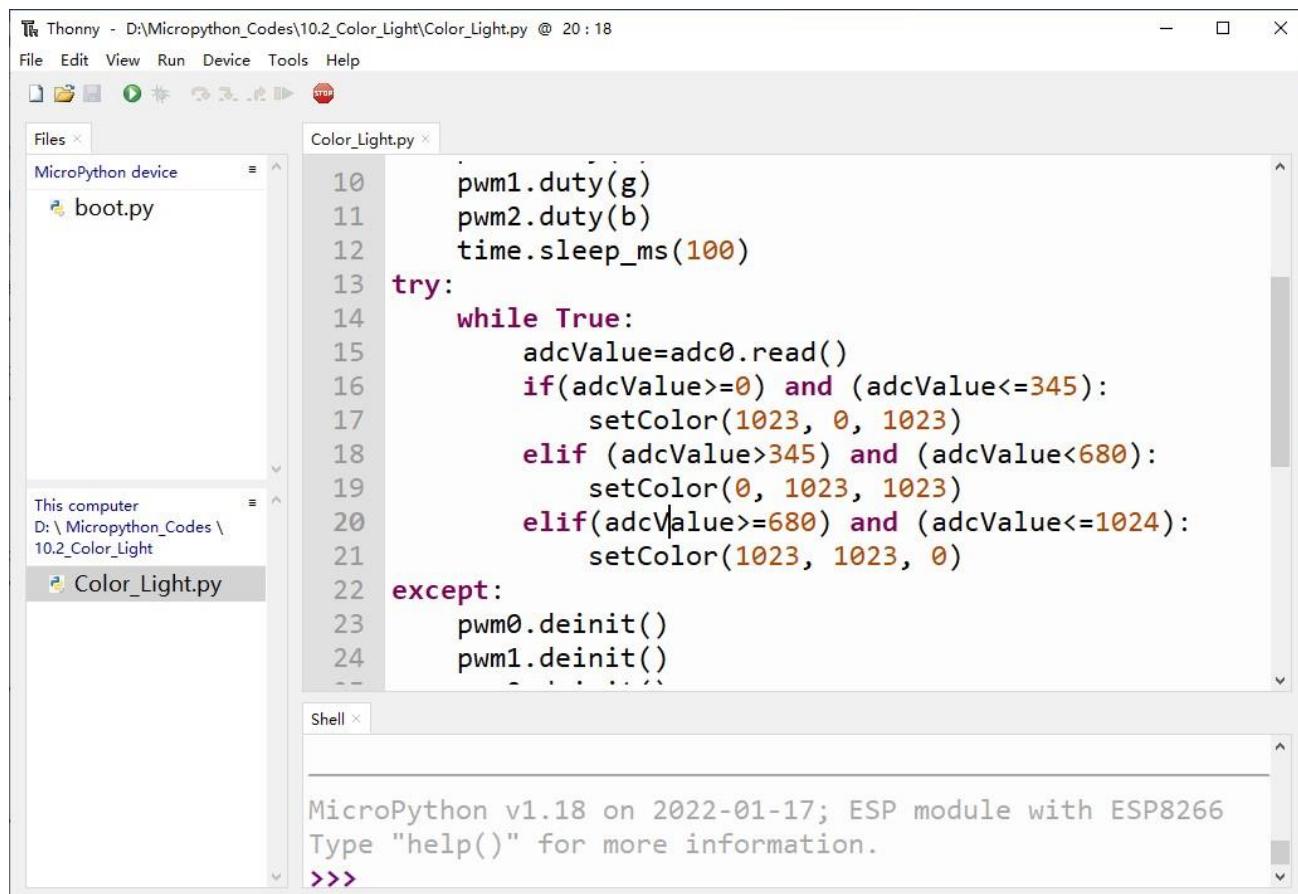


Any concerns?  support@freenove.com

## Code

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “10.2\_Color\_Light” and double click “Color\_Light.py”.

### 10.2\_Color\_Light



```

10     pwm1.duty(g)
11     pwm2.duty(b)
12     time.sleep_ms(100)
13 try:
14     while True:
15         adcValue=adc0.read()
16         if(adcValue>=0) and (adcValue<=345):
17             setColor(1023, 0, 1023)
18         elif (adcValue>345) and (adcValue<680):
19             setColor(0, 1023, 1023)
20         elif(adcValue>=680) and (adcValue<=1024):
21             setColor(1023, 1023, 0)
22     except:
23         pwm0.deinit()
24         pwm1.deinit()

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.  
>>>

Download the code to ESP8266, rotate the potentiometers, then the color of RGB LED will change.

The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM, ADC
2  import time
3
4  pwm0=PWM(Pin(13, Pin.OUT), 1000)
5  pwm1=PWM(Pin(14, Pin.OUT), 1000)
6  pwm2=PWM(Pin(12, Pin.OUT), 1000)
7  adc0=ADC(0)
8  def setColor(r, g, b):
9      pwm0.duty(r)
10     pwm1.duty(g)
11     pwm2.duty(b)
12     time.sleep_ms(100)
13 try:

```

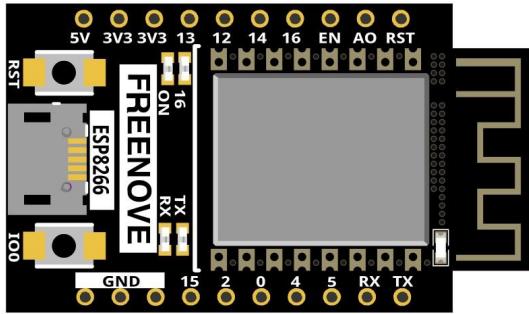
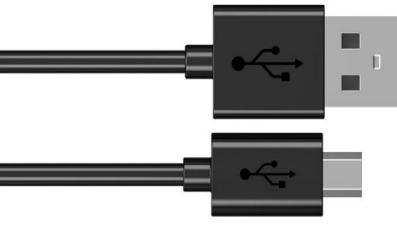
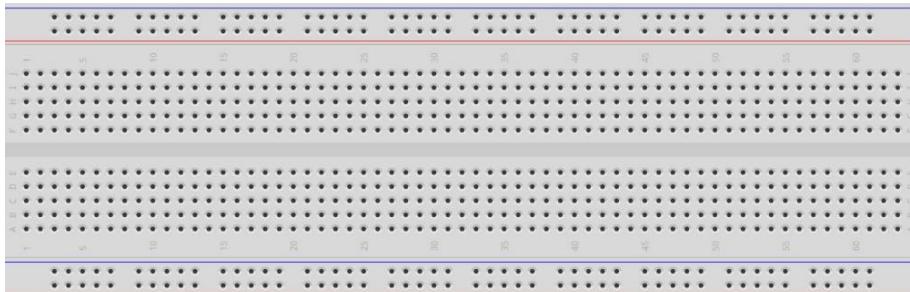
```
14     while True:  
15         adcValue=adc0.read()  
16         if(adcValue>=0) and (adcValue<=345):  
17             setColor(1023, 0, 1023)  
18         elif (adcValue>345) and (adcValue<680):  
19             setColor(0, 1023, 1023)  
20         elif(adcValue>=680) and (adcValue<=1024):  
21             setColor(1023, 1023, 0)  
22     except:  
23         pwm0.deinit()  
24         pwm1.deinit()  
25         pwm2.deinit()
```

In the code, you can read the potentiometer ADC value, judge the range of ADC value, to control the RGB LED color.

## Project 10.3 Soft Rainbow Light

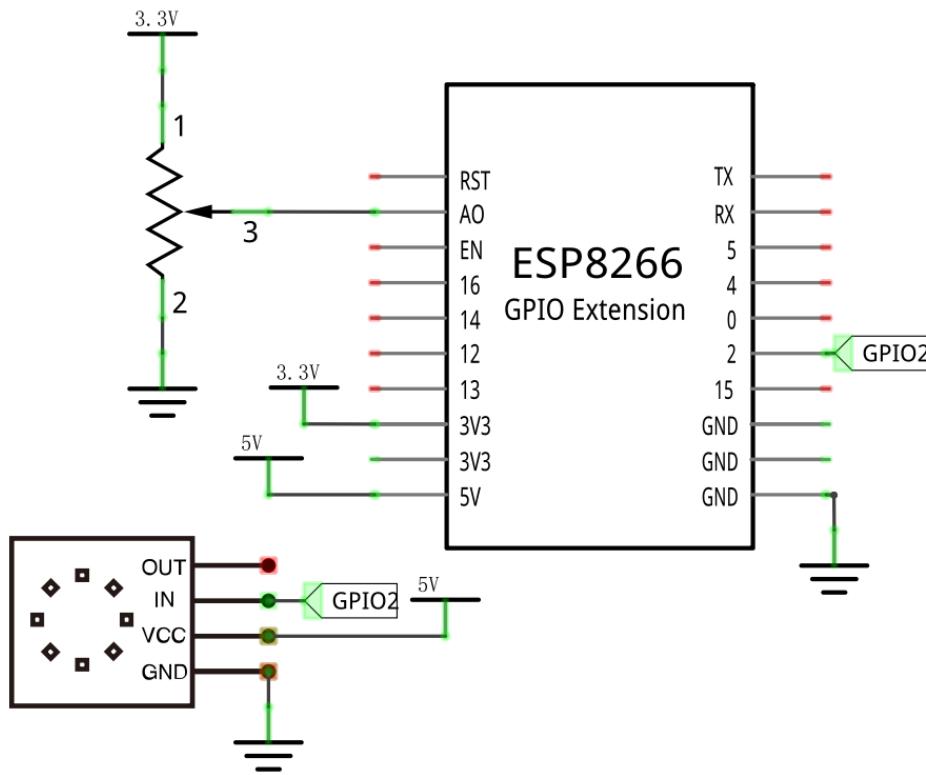
In this project, we use a potentiometer to control Freenove 8 RGBLED Module.

### Component List

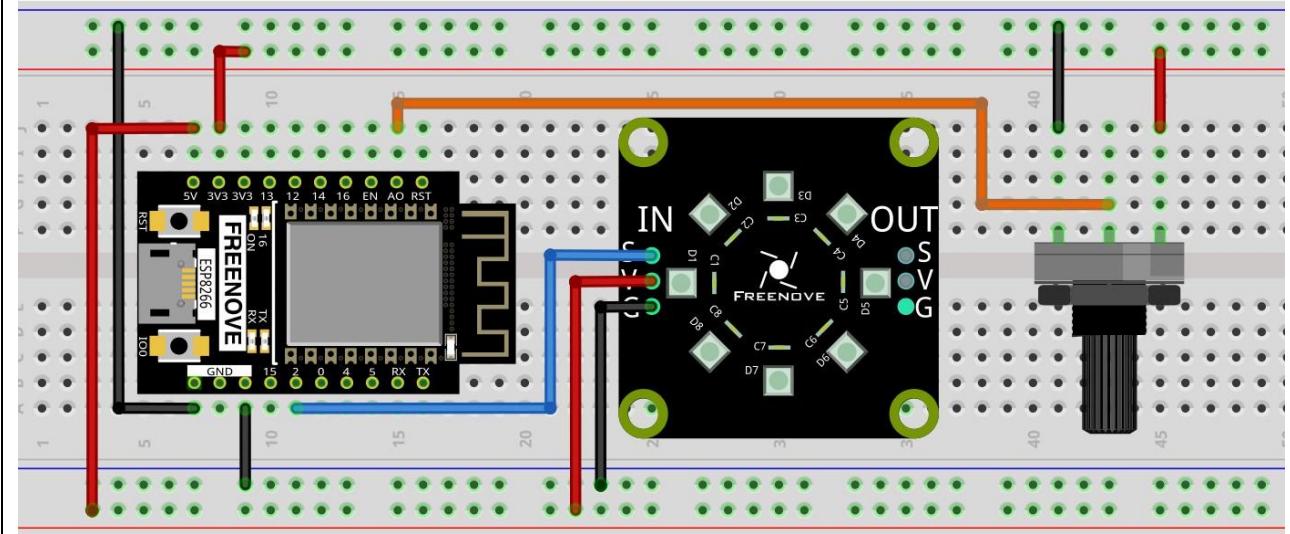
ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Freenove 8 RGB LED Module x1	Rotary potentiometer x1 Jumper wire F/M x3 Jumper wire M/M x7

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

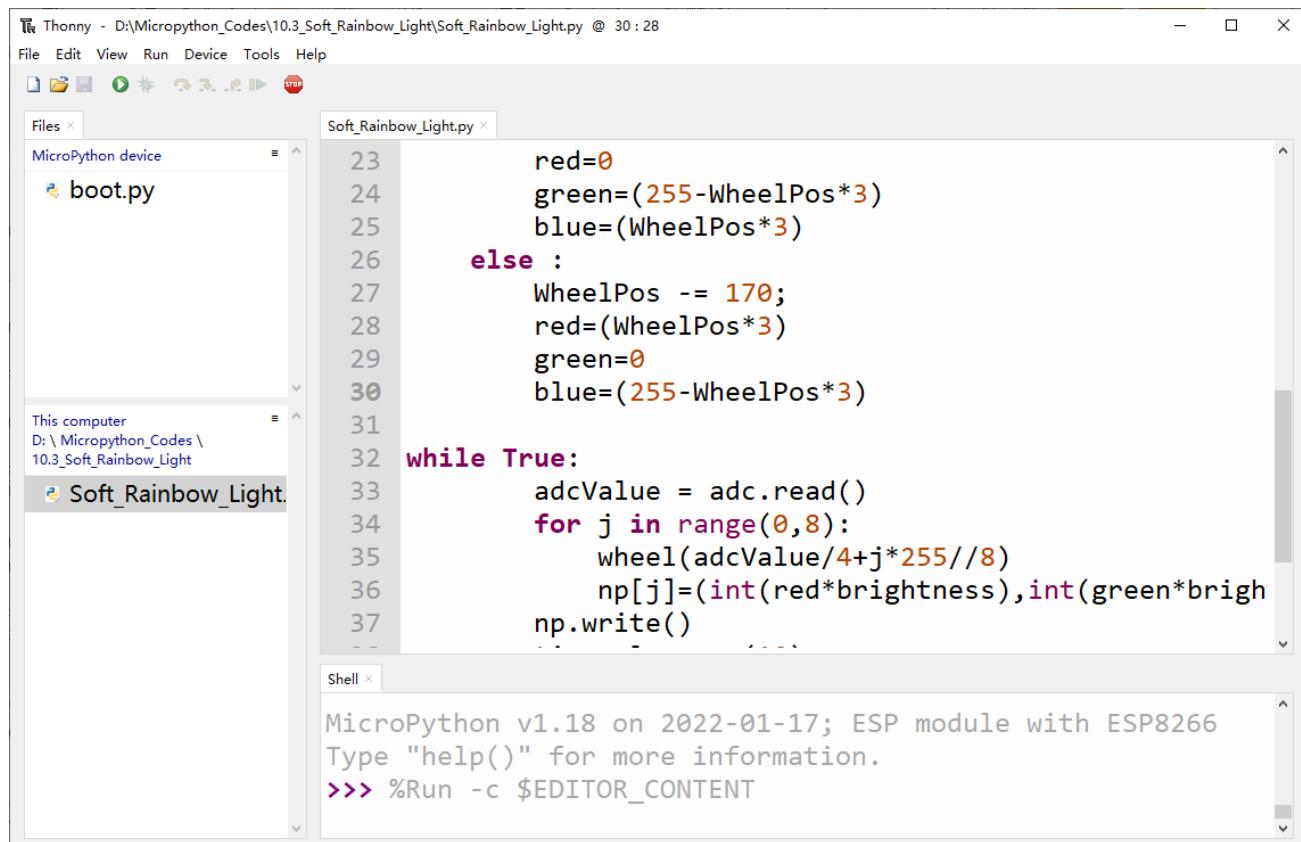


Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## Code

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “10.3\_Soft\_Rainbow\_Light” and double click “Soft\_Rainbow\_Light.py”.

### 10.3\_Soft\_Rainbow\_Light



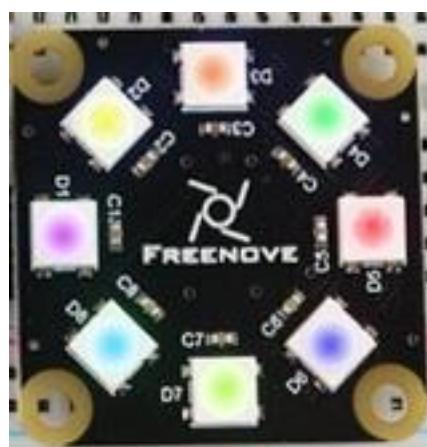
The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The left sidebar shows a file tree with 'MicroPython device' expanded, showing 'boot.py' and 'Soft\_Rainbow\_Light.py'. The main code editor window displays the following Python script:

```
23     red=0
24     green=(255-WheelPos*3)
25     blue=(WheelPos*3)
26 else :
27     WheelPos -= 170;
28     red=(WheelPos*3)
29     green=0
30     blue=(255-WheelPos*3)
31
32 while True:
33     adcValue = adc.read()
34     for j in range(0,8):
35         wheel((adcValue/4+j*255//8))
36         np[j]=(int(red*brightness),int(green*bright
37         np.write()
```

The bottom shell window shows the MicroPython environment:

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
```

Click “Run current script”. Rotate the handle of potentiometer and the color of the lights will change.



If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



The following is the program code:

```
1  from machine import Pin,ADC
2  import neopixel
3  import time
4
5  np = neopixel.NeoPixel(Pin(2, Pin.OUT), 8)
6
7  brightness=0.1      #brightbess
8  red=0               #red
9  green=0              #green
10 blue=0               #blue
11
12 adc0=ADC(0)
13
14 def wheel(pos):
15     global red,green,blue
16     WheelPos=pos%255
17     if WheelPos<85:
18         red=(255-WheelPos*3)
19         green=(WheelPos*3)
20         blue=0
21     elif WheelPos>=85 and WheelPos<170:
22         WheelPos -= 85;
23         red=0
24         green=(255-WheelPos*3)
25         blue=(WheelPos*3)
26     else :
27         WheelPos -= 170;
28         red=(WheelPos*3)
29         green=0
30         blue=(255-WheelPos*3)
31
32 while True:
33     adcValue = adc.read()
34     for j in range(0,8):
35         wheel(adcValue/4+j*255//8)
36         np[j]=(int(red*brightness), int(green*brightness), int(blue*brightness))
37         np.write()
38         time.sleep_ms(10)
```

The logic of the code is basically the same as the previous project [Rainbow Light](#). The difference is that in this code, the starting point of the color is controlled by the potentiometer.

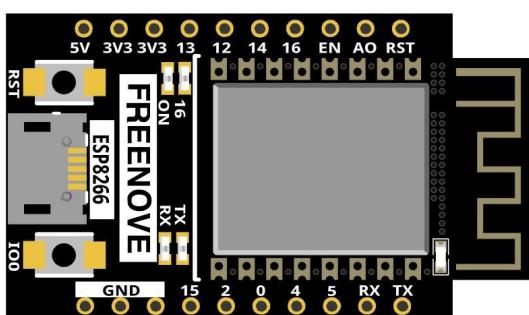
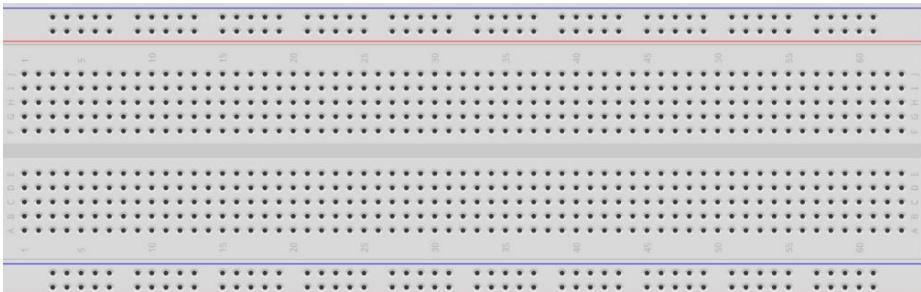
# Chapter 11 Photoresistor & LED

In this chapter, we will learn how to use photoresistor.

## Project 11.1 NightLamp

A Photoresistor is very sensitive to the amount of light present. We can take advantage of the characteristic to make a nightlight with the following function: when the ambient light is less (darker environment) the LED will automatically become brighter to compensate and when the ambient light is greater (brighter environment) the LED will automatically dim to compensate.

### Component List

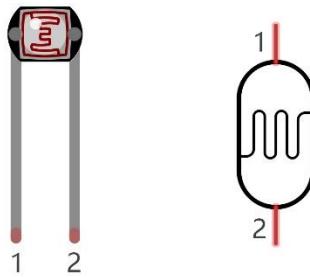
ESP8266 x1		USB cable
Breadboard x1		
Photoresistor x1	Resistor 220Ω x1      10KΩ x1	LED x1 Jumper wire M/M x7



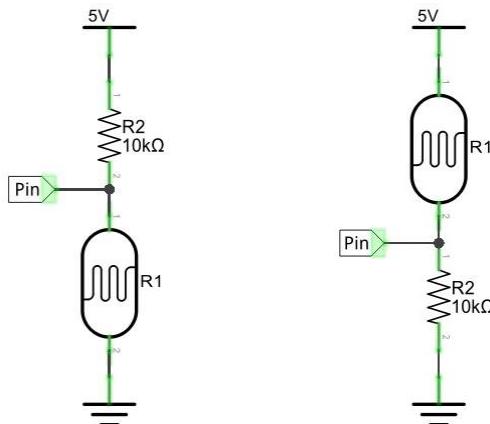
## Component knowledge

### Photoresistor

Photoresistor is simply a light sensitive resistor. It is an active component that decreases resistance with respect to receiving luminosity (light) on the component's light sensitive surface. Photoresistor's resistance value will change in proportion to the ambient light detected. With this characteristic, we can use a Photoresistor to detect light intensity. The Photoresistor and its electronic symbol are as follows.



The circuit below is used to detect the change of a Photoresistor's resistance value:

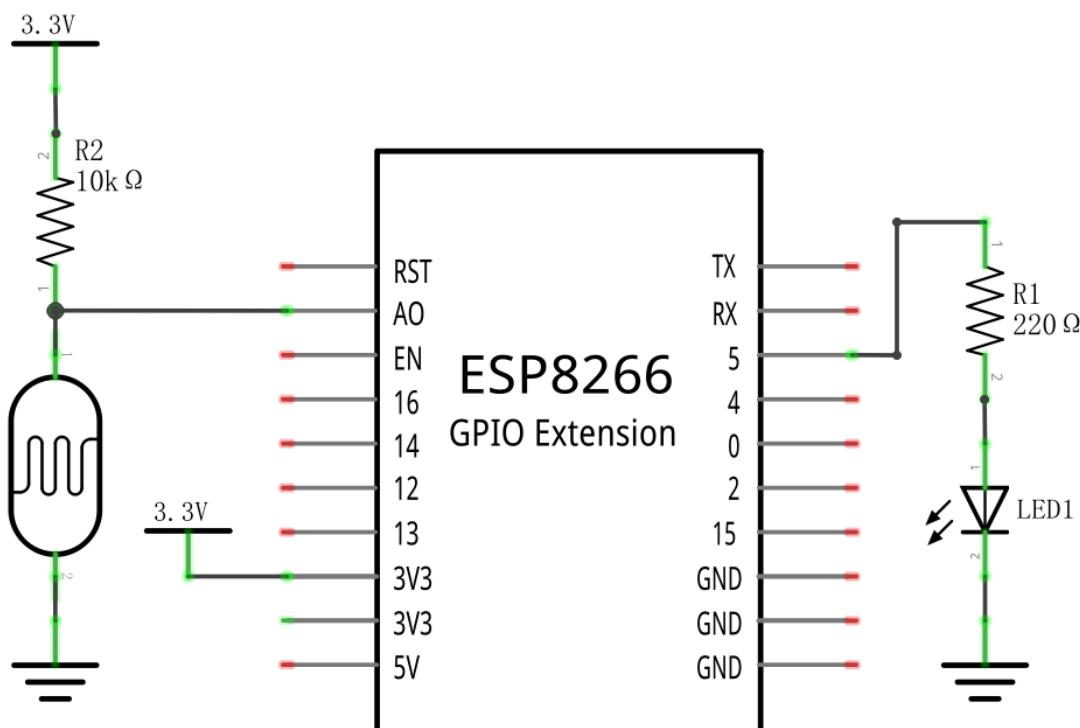


In the above circuit, when a Photoresistor's resistance value changes due to a change in light intensity, the voltage between the Photoresistor and Resistor R1 will also change. Therefore, the intensity of the light can be obtained by measuring this voltage.

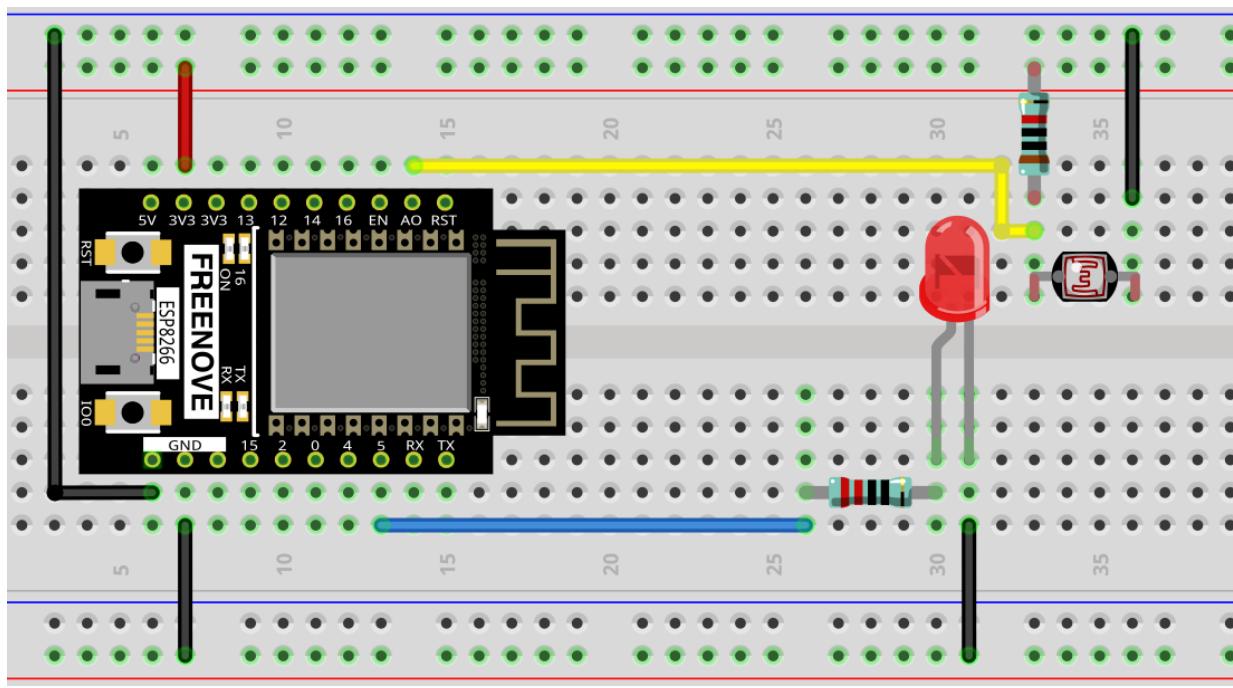
## Circuit

The circuit of this project is similar to SoftLight. The only difference is that the input signal is changed from a potentiometer to a combination of a photoresistor and a resistor.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

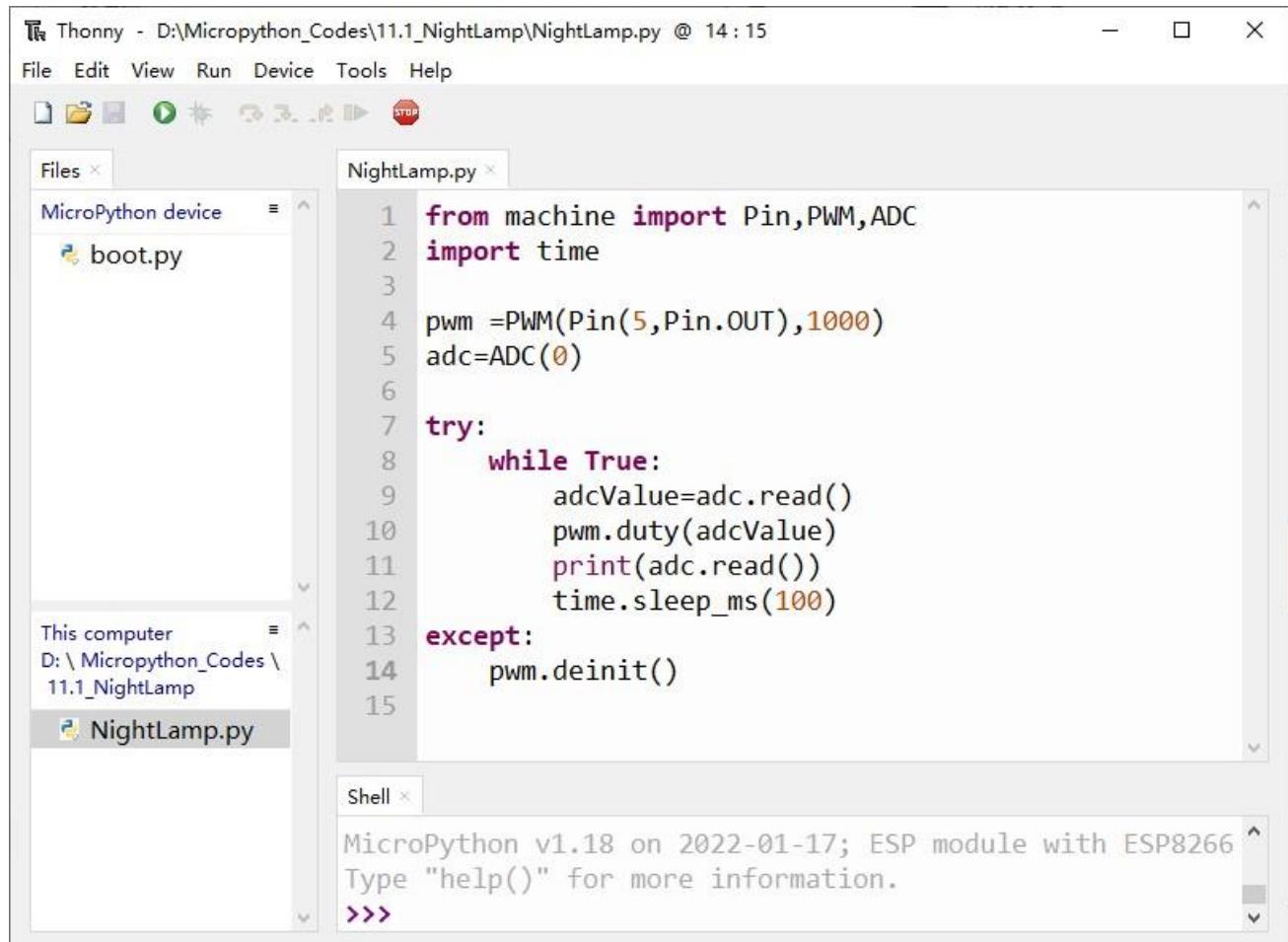


## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Codes of this project is logically the same as the project [Soft Light](#).

### 11.1\_Nightlamp



Click “Run current script”. Cover the photoresistor with your hands or illuminate it with lights, the brightness of LEDs will change.

The following is the program code:

```

1 from machine import Pin,PWM,ADC
2 import time
3
4 pwm =PWM(Pin(5,Pin.OUT),1000)
5 adc=ADC(0)
6 try:
7     while True:
8         adcValue=adc.read()
9         pwm.duty(adcValue)
10        print(adc.read())

```

```
11     time.sleep_ms(100)
12 except:
13     pwm.deinit()
```

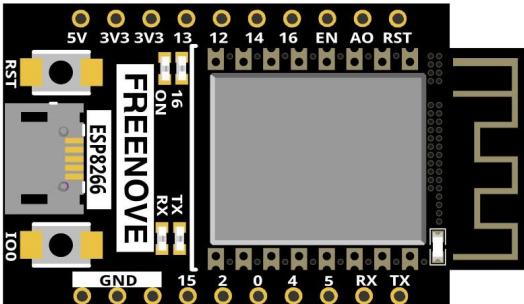
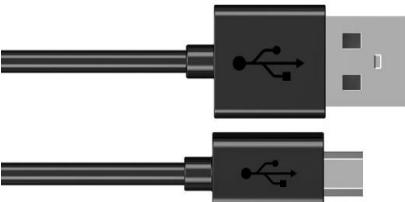
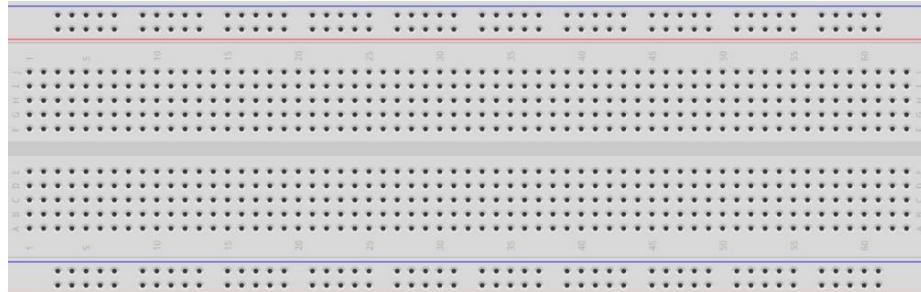
# Chapter 12 Thermistor

In this chapter, we will learn about Thermistors which are another kind of Resistor

## Project 12.1 Thermometer

A Thermistor is a type of Resistor whose resistance value is dependent on temperature and changes in temperature. Therefore, we can take advantage of this characteristic to make a Thermometer.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
Thermistor x1	Resistor 1kΩ x1	Jumper wire M/M x4
		

## Component knowledge

### Thermistor

A Thermistor is a temperature sensitive resistor. When it senses a change in temperature, the resistance of the Thermistor will change. We can take advantage of this characteristic by using a Thermistor to detect temperature intensity. A Thermistor and its electronic symbol are shown below.



The relationship between resistance value and temperature of a thermistor is:

$$R_t = R * \text{EXP} \left[ B * \left( \frac{1}{T_2} - \frac{1}{T_1} \right) \right]$$

Where:

$R_t$  is the thermistor resistance under  $T_2$  temperature;

$R$  is the nominal resistance of thermistor under  $T_1$  temperature;

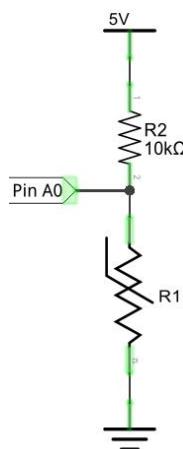
**EXP[n]** is nth power of e;

**B** is for thermal index;

$T_1, T_2$  is Kelvin temperature (absolute temperature). Kelvin temperature=273.15 + Celsius temperature.

For the parameters of the Thermistor, we use:  $B=3950$ ,  $R=10k$ ,  $T_1=25$ .

The circuit connection method of the Thermistor is similar to photoresistor, as the following:



We can use the value measured by the ADC converter to obtain the resistance value of Thermistor, and then we can use the formula to obtain the temperature value.

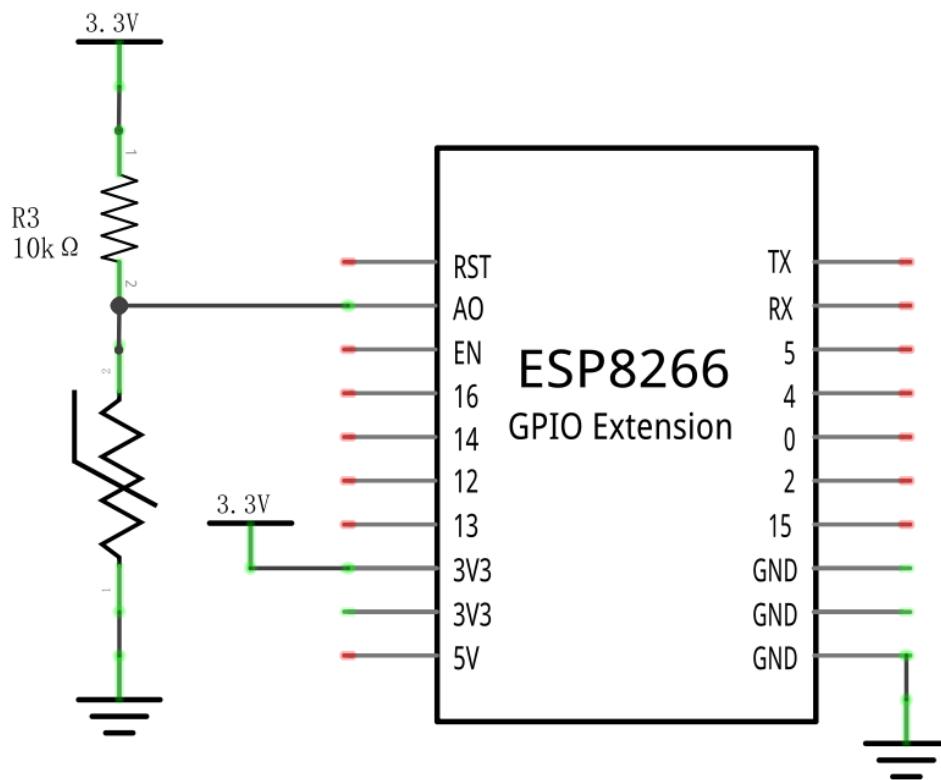
Therefore, the temperature formula can be derived as:

$$T_2 = 1 / \left( \frac{1}{T_1} + \ln \left( \frac{R_t}{R} \right) / B \right)$$

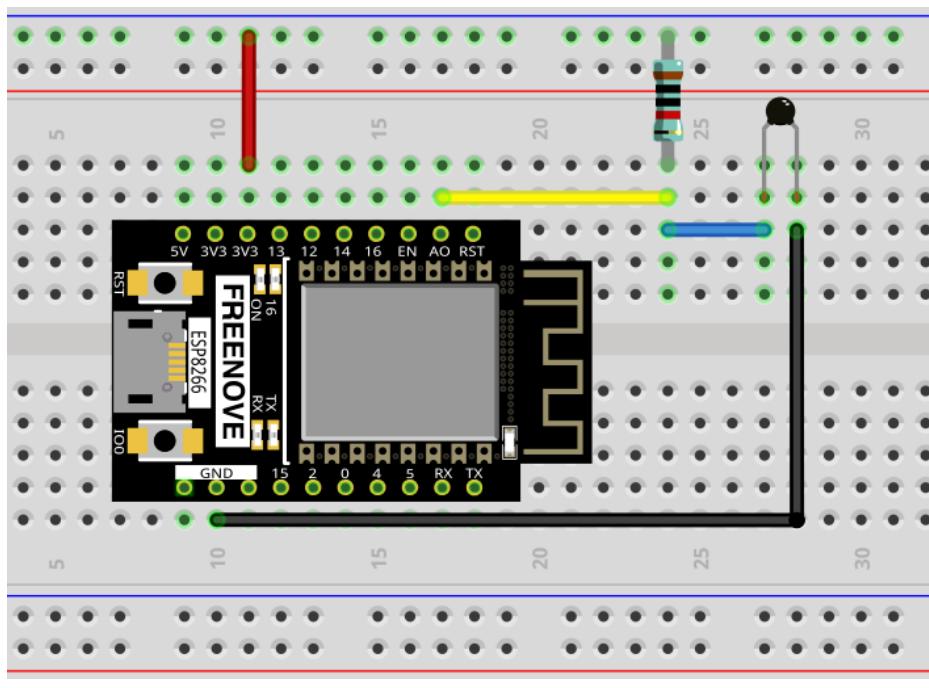
# Circuit

The circuit of this project is similar to the one in the previous chapter. The only difference is that the Photoresistor is replaced by a Thermistor.

## Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



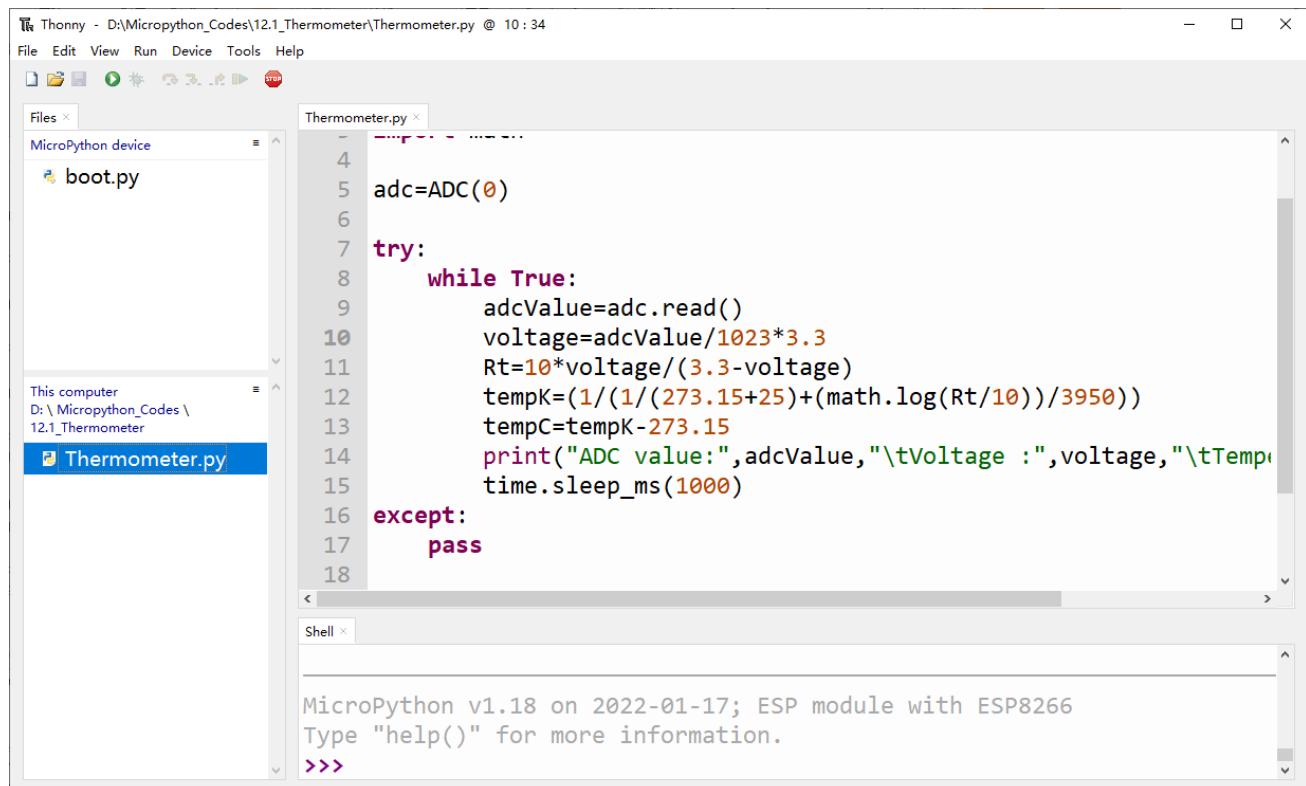
Any concerns?  support@freenove.com

## Code

Move the program folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “D:/Micropython\_Codes”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “12.1\_Thermometer” and double click “Thermometer.py”.

### 12.1\_Thermometer



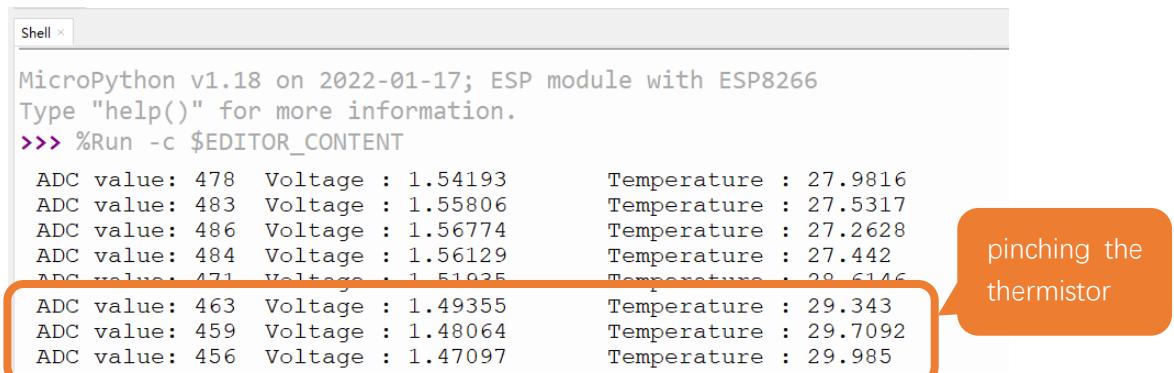
```

Thonny - D:\Micropython_Codes\12.1_Thermometer\Thermometer.py @ 10 : 34
File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
Files x Thermometer.py x
MicroPython device
boot.py
This computer
D:\Micropython_Codes\12.1_Thermometer
Thermometer.py
4
5     adc=ADC(0)
6
7 try:
8     while True:
9         adcValue=adc.read()
10        voltage=adcValue/1023*3.3
11        Rt=10*voltage/(3.3-voltage)
12        tempK=(1/(1/(273.15+25)+(math.log(Rt/10))/3950))
13        tempC=tempK-273.15
14        print("ADC value:",adcValue,"Voltage :",voltage,"Temperature : ",tempC)
15        time.sleep_ms(1000)
16    except:
17        pass
18
Shell x
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

Click “Run current script” and “Shell” will constantly display the current ADC value, voltage value and temperature value. Try to “pinch” the thermistor (without touching the leads) with your index finger and thumb for a brief time, you should see that the temperature value increases.

If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



```

Shell x
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
ADC value: 478  Voltage : 1.54193      Temperature : 27.9816
ADC value: 483  Voltage : 1.55806      Temperature : 27.5317
ADC value: 486  Voltage : 1.56774      Temperature : 27.2628
ADC value: 484  Voltage : 1.56129      Temperature : 27.442
ADC value: 471  Voltage : 1.51935      Temperature : 29.6146
ADC value: 463  Voltage : 1.49355      Temperature : 29.343
ADC value: 459  Voltage : 1.48064      Temperature : 29.7092
ADC value: 456  Voltage : 1.47097      Temperature : 29.985

```

pinching the thermistor



The following is the code:

```
1  from machine import Pin,ADC
2  import time
3  import math
4
5  adc=ADC(0)
6
7  try:
8      while True:
9          adcValue=adc.read()
10         voltage=adcValue/1023*3.3
11         Rt=10*voltage/(3.3-voltage)
12         tempK=(1/(1/(273.15+25)+(math.log(Rt/10))/3950))
13         tempC=tempK-273.15
14         print("ADC value:",adcValue,"\\tVoltage :",voltage,"\\tTemperature :",tempC);
15         time.sleep_ms(1000)
16     except:
17         pass
```

In the code, the ADC value of ADC module A0 port is read, and then it calculates the voltage and the resistance of Thermistor according to Ohms Law. Finally, it calculates the temperature sensed by the Thermistor, according to the formula.

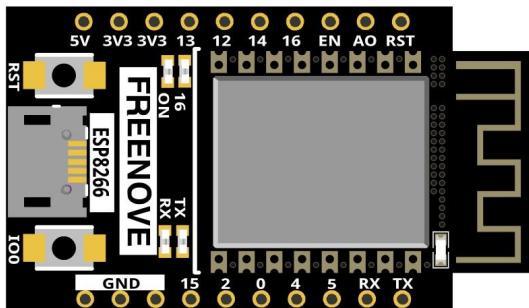
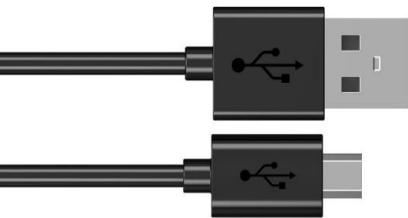
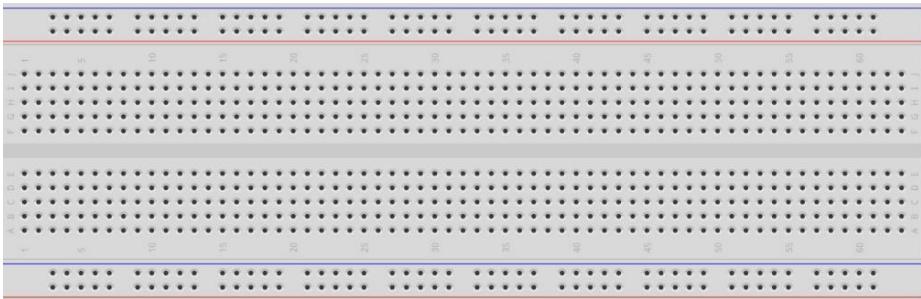
# Chapter 13 74HC595 & LED Bar Graph

We have used LED Bar Graph to make a flowing water light, in which 10 GPIO ports of ESP8266 is occupied. More GPIO ports mean that more peripherals can be connected to ESP8266, so GPIO resource is very precious. Can we make flowing water light with less GPIO? In this chapter, we will learn a component, 74HC595, which can achieve the target.

## Project 13.1 Flowing Water Light

Now let's learn how to use the 74HC595 IC Chip to make a flowing water light using less GPIO.

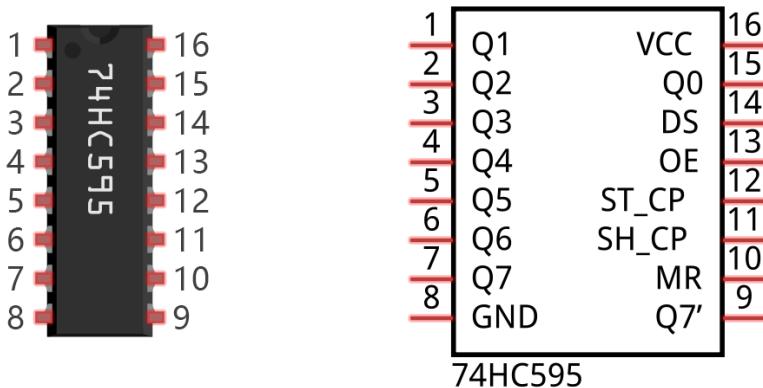
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable		
			
Breadboard x1			
			
74HC595 x1	LED Bar Graph x1	Resistor 220Ω x8	Jumper wire M/M x17
			

## Related knowledge

### 74HC595

A 74HC595 chip is used to convert serial data into parallel data. A 74HC595 chip can convert the serial data of one byte into 8 bits, and send its corresponding level to each of the 8 ports correspondingly. With this characteristic, the 74HC595 chip can be used to expand the IO ports of an ESP8266. At least 3 ports are required to control the 8 ports of the 74HC595 chip.



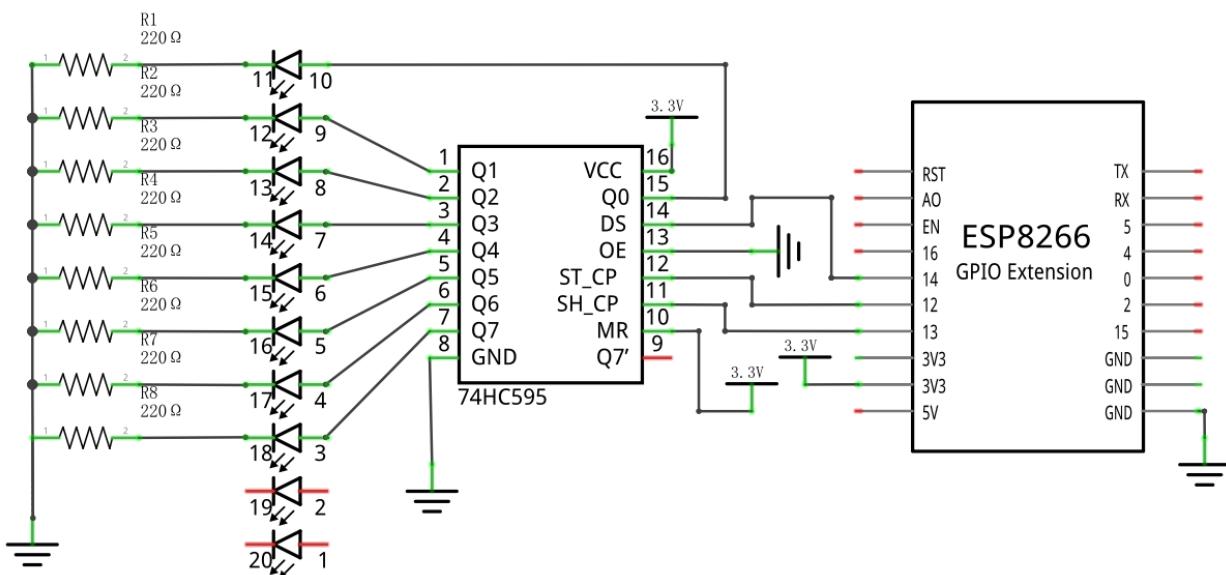
The ports of the 74HC595 chip are described as follows:

Pin name	GPIO number	Description
Q0-Q7	15, 1-7	Parallel data output
VCC	16	The positive electrode of power supply, the voltage is 2~6V
GND	8	The negative electrode of power supply
DS	14	Serial data Input
OE	13	Enable output, When this pin is in high level, Q0-Q7 is in high resistance state When this pin is in low level, Q0-Q7 is in output mode
ST_CP	12	Parallel Update Output: when its electrical level is rising, it will update the parallel data output.
SH_CP	11	Serial shift clock: when its electrical level is rising, serial data input register will do a shift.
MR	10	Remove shift register: When this pin is in low level, the content in shift register will be cleared.
Q7'	9	Serial data output: it can be connected to more 74HC595 in series.

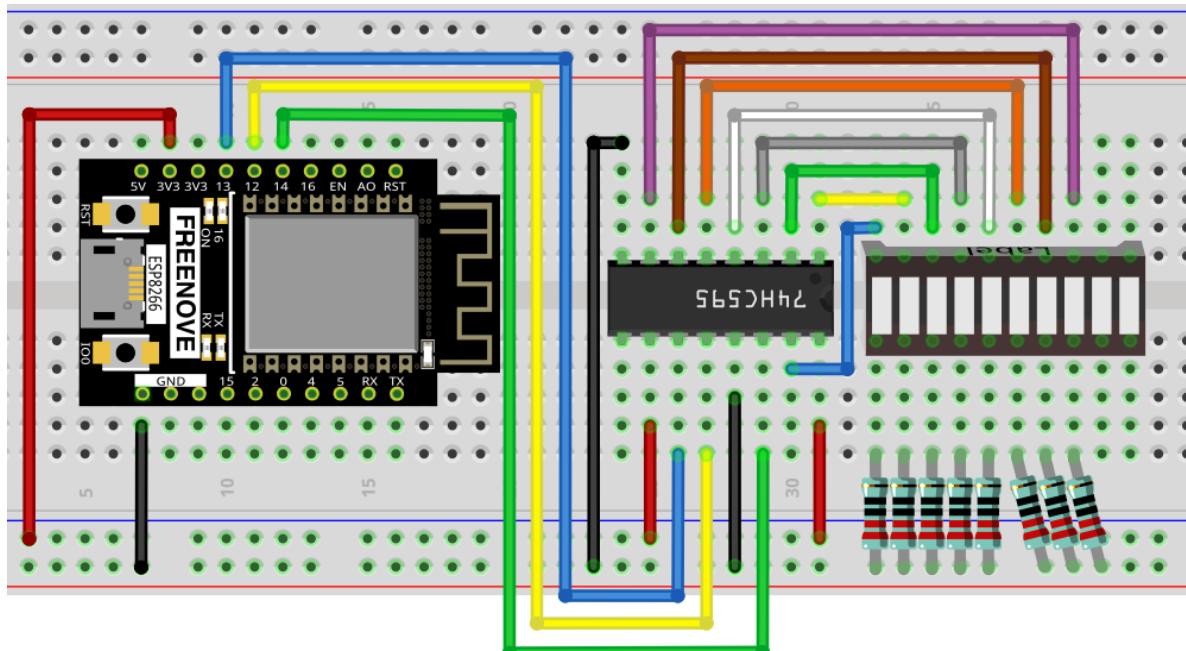
For more detail, please refer to the datasheet on the 74HC595 chip.

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

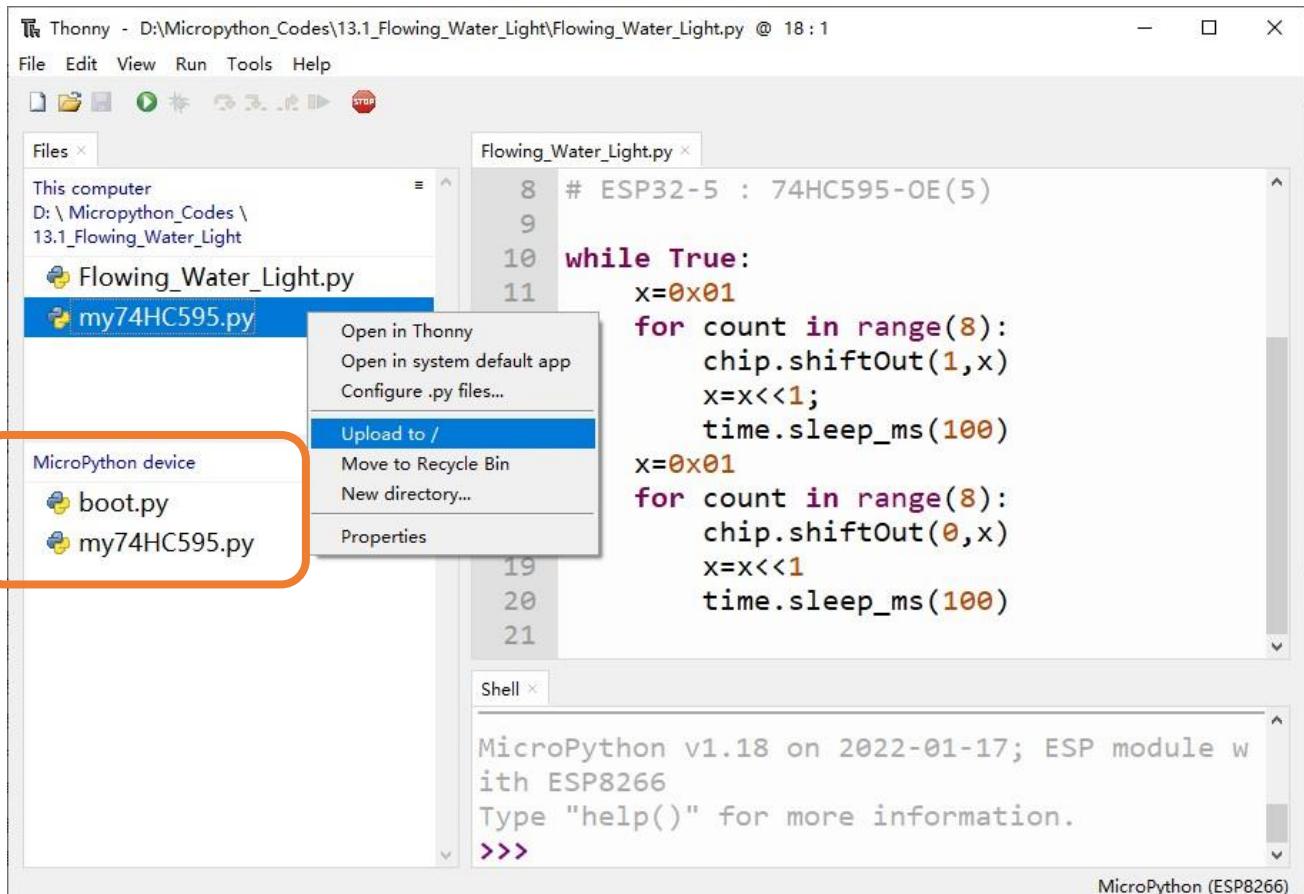
In this project, we will make a flowing water light with a 74HC595 chip to learn about its functions.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “13.1\_Flowing\_Water\_Light”.

Select “my74HC595.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “my74HC595.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Flowing\_Water\_Light.py”.

### 13.1\_Flowing\_Water\_Light



Click “Run current script” and you will see that Bar Graph LED starts with the flowing water pattern flashing from left to right and then back from right to left. If it displays nothing, maybe the LED Bar is connected upside down, please unplug it and then re-plug it reversely.

If you have any concerns, please contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3
4 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)
# ESP8266-14: 74HC595-DS (14)
# ESP8266-12: 74HC595-STCP (12)
# ESP8266-13: 74HC595-SHCP (11)
5
6
7
8
9 while True:
10     x=0x01
11     for count in range(8):
12         chip.shiftOut(1, x) #High bit is sent first
13         x=x<<1
14         time.sleep_ms(100)
15     x=0x01
16     for count in range(8):
17         chip.shiftOut(0, x) #Low bit is sent first
18         x=x<<1
19         time.sleep_ms(100)

```

Import time and my74HC595 modules.

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595

```

Assign pins for ESP8266 to connect to 74HC595.

```

4 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)

```

The first for loop makes LED Bar display separately from left to right while the second for loop make it display separately from right to left.

```

10    x=0x01
11    for count in range(8):
12        chip.shiftOut(1, x) #High bit is sent first
13        x=x<<1
14        time.sleep_ms(100)
15    x=0x01
16    for count in range(8):
17        chip.shiftOut(0, x) #Low bit is sent first
18        x=x<<1
19        time.sleep_ms(100)

```



## Reference

### Class Chip74HC595

Before each use of the object **Chip74HC595**, make sure my74HC595.py has been uploaded to "/" of ESP8266, and then add the statement "**from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595**" to the top of the python file.

**Chip74HC595()**:An object. By default, 74HC595's DS pin is connected to Pin(14) of ESP8266, ST\_CP pin is connected to ESP8266's Pin(12) and OE pin is connected to ESP's Pin(5). If you need to modify the pins, just do the following operations.

**chip=Chip74HC595()** or **chip=Chip74HC595(14,12,13,5)**

**shiftOut(direction, data)**: Write data to 74HC595.

**direction**: 1/0. "1" presents that high-order byte will be sent first while "0" presents that low-order byte will be sent first.

**data**: The content that is sent, which is one-byte data.

**clear()**: Clear the latch data of 74HC595.

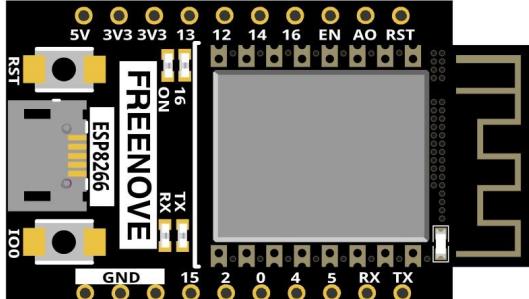
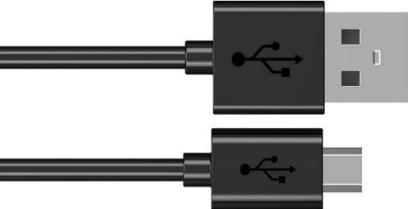
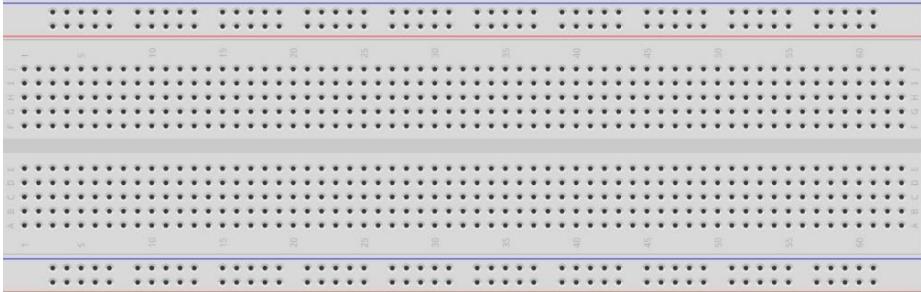
# Chapter 14 74HC595 & 7-Segment Display.

In this chapter, we will introduce the 7-Segment Display.

## Project 14.1 7-Segment Display.

We will use 74HC595 to control 7-segment display and make it display hexadecimal character "0-F".

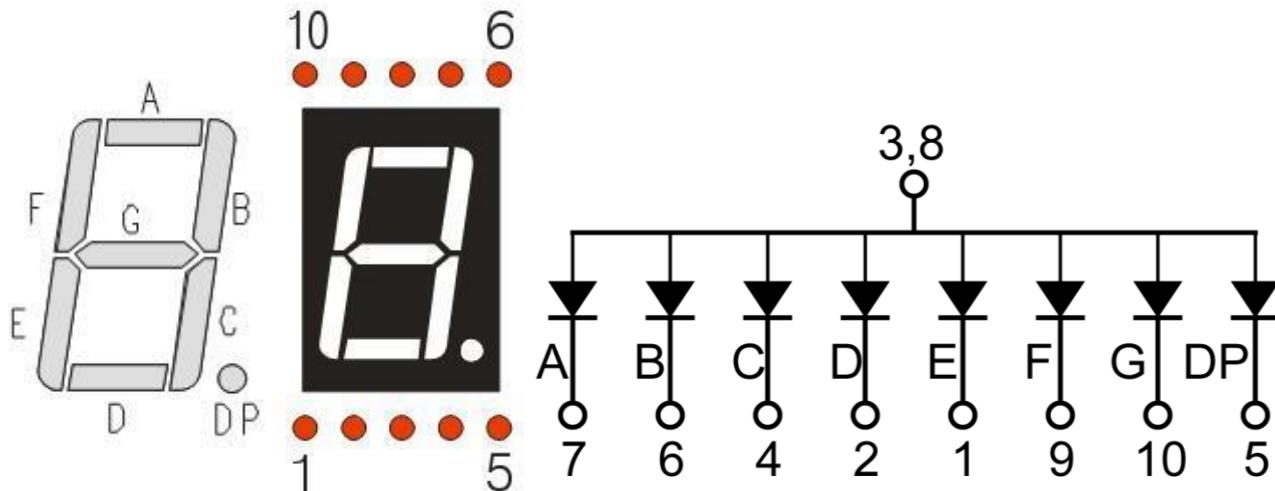
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable		
			
Breadboard x1			
			
74HC595 x1	7-segment display x1	Resistor 220Ω x8	Jumper wire M/M x19
			

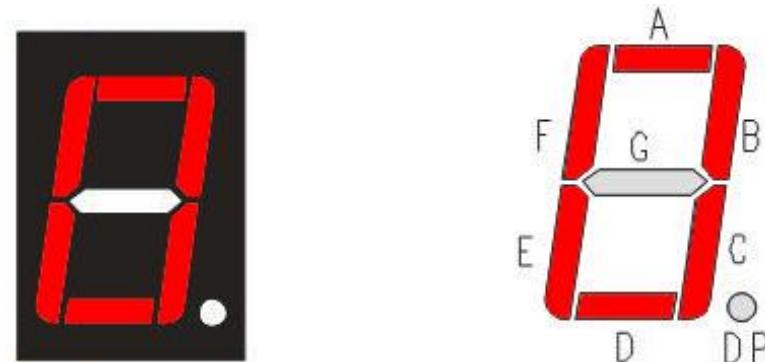
## Component knowledge

### 7-segment display

A 7-Segment Display is a digital electronic display device. There is a figure "8" and a decimal point represented, which consists of 8 LEDs. The LEDs have a Common Anode and individual Cathodes. Its internal structure and pin designation diagram is shown below:



As we can see in the above circuit diagram, we can control the state of each LED separately. Also, by combining LEDs with different states of ON and OFF, we can display different characters (Numbers and Letters). For example, to display a "0": we need to turn ON LED segments A, B, C, D, E and F, and turn OFF LED segments G and DP.



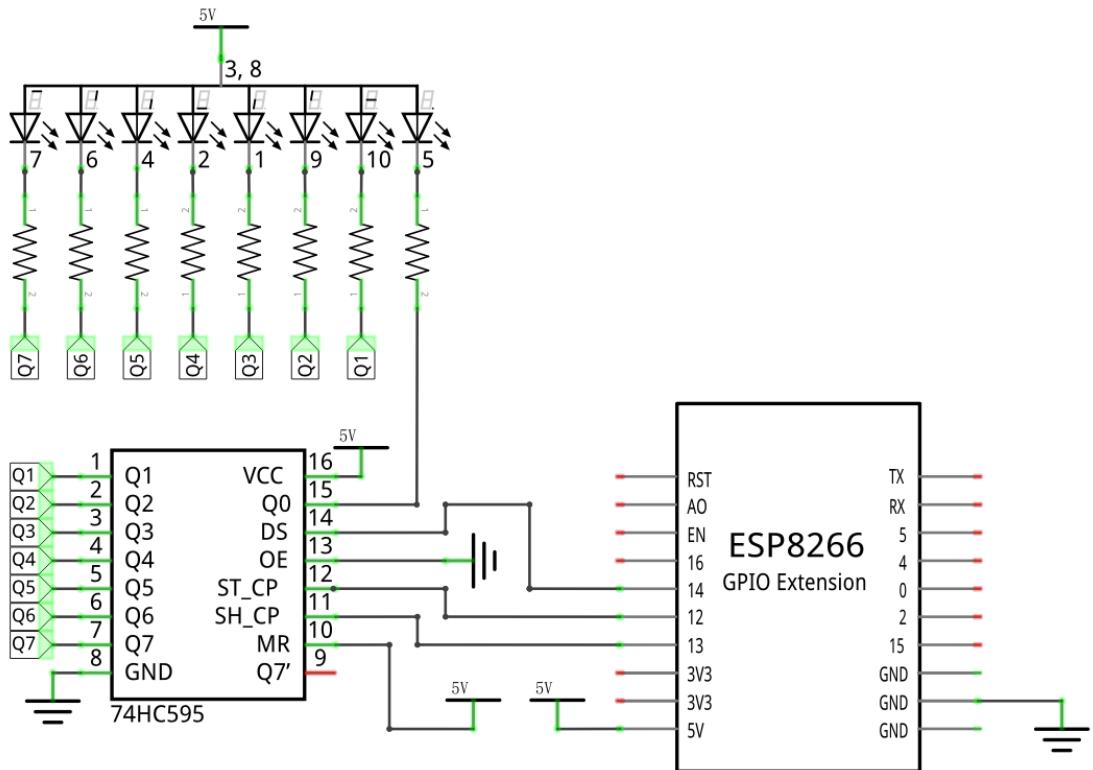
In this project, we will use a 7-Segment Display with a Common Anode. Therefore, when there is an input low level to an LED segment the LED will turn ON. Defining segment "A" as the lowest level and segment "DP" as the highest level, from high to low would look like this: "DP", "G", "F", "E", "D", "C", "B", "A". Character "0" corresponds to the code:  $1100\ 0000_2 = 0xc0$ .

For detailed code values, please refer to the following table (common anode).

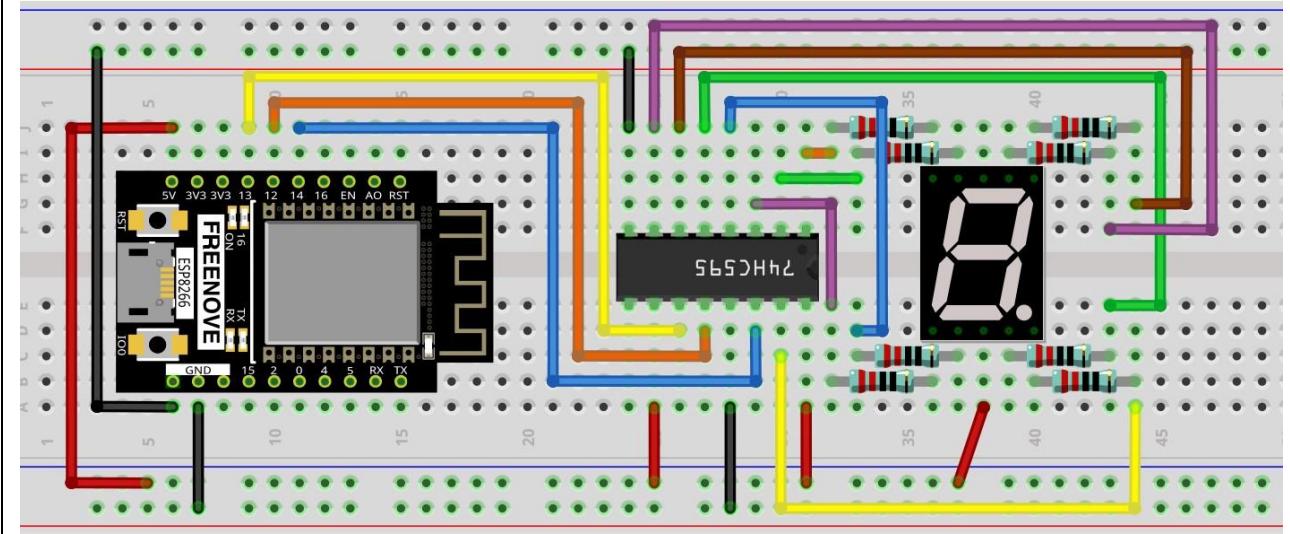
CHAR	DP	G	F	E	D	C	B	A	Hex	ASCII
0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0xc0	1100 0000
1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0xf9	1111 1001
2	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0xa4	1010 0100
3	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0xb0	1011 0000
4	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0x99	1001 1001
5	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0x92	1001 0010
6	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0x82	1000 0010
7	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0xf8	1111 1000
8	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0x80	1000 0000
9	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0x90	1001 0000
A	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0x88	1000 1000
B	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0x83	1000 0011
C	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0xc6	1100 0110
D	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0xa1	1010 0001
E	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0x86	1000 0110
F	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0x8e	1000 1110

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## Code

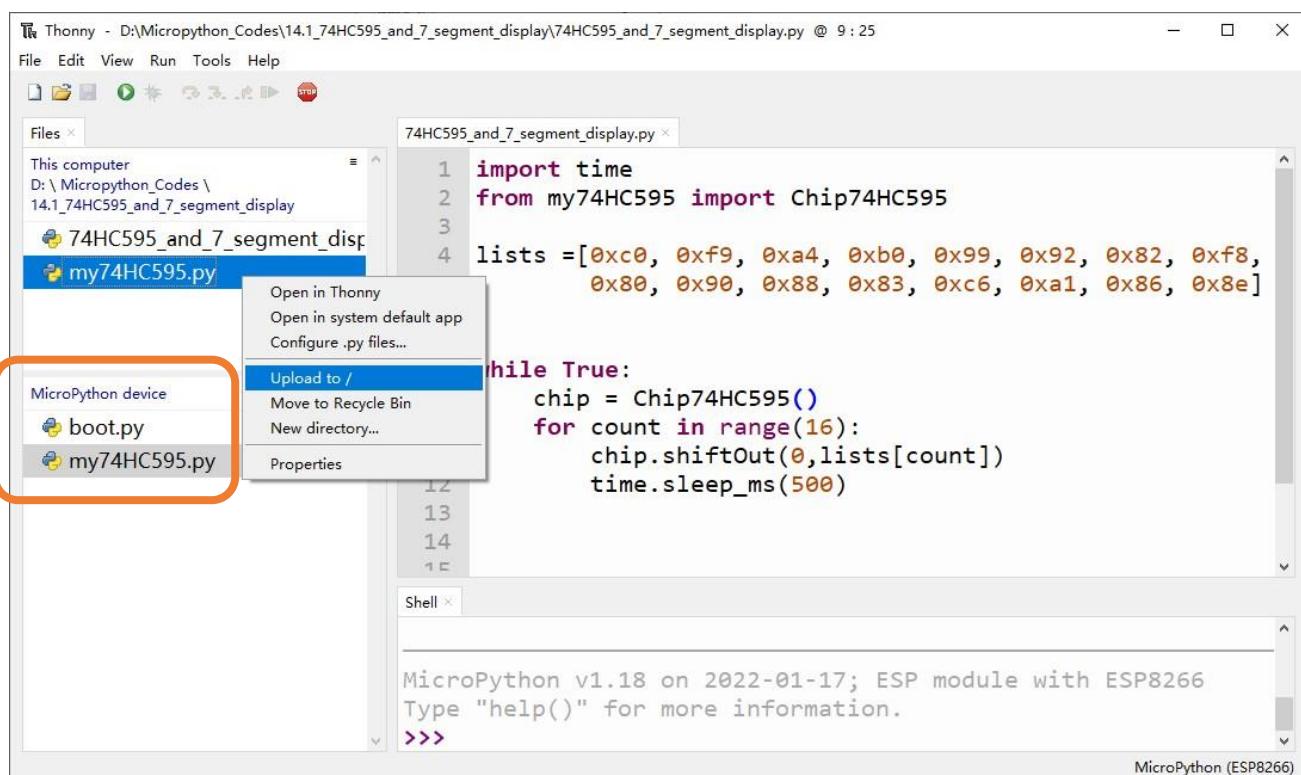
In this section, the 74HC595 is used in the same way as in the previous section, but with different values transferred. We can learn how to master the digital display by sending the code value of "0" - "F".

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

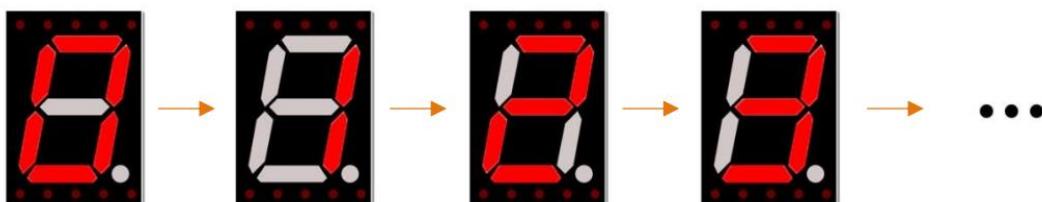
Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “14.1\_74HC595\_and\_7\_segment\_display”.

Select “my74HC595.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “my74HC595.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “74HC595\_and\_7\_segment\_display.py”.

### 14.1\_74HC595\_and\_7\_segment\_display



Click “Run current script”, and you'll see a 1-bit, 7-segment display displaying 0-f in a loop.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3
4 lists =[0xc0, 0xf9, 0xa4, 0xb0, 0x99, 0x92, 0x82, 0xf8,
5         0x80, 0x90, 0x88, 0x83, 0xc6, 0xa1, 0x86, 0x8e]
6
7 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)
8 try:
9     while True:
10        for count in range(16):
11            chip.shiftOut(0, lists[count])
12            time.sleep_ms(500)
13    except:
14        pass

```

Import time and my74HC595 modules.

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595

```

Put the encoding "0" - "F" into the list.

```

4 lists =[0xc0, 0xf9, 0xa4, 0xb0, 0x99, 0x92, 0x82, 0xf8,
5         0x80, 0x90, 0x88, 0x83, 0xc6, 0xa1, 0x86, 0x8e]

```

Define an object, whose pins applies default configuration, to drive 74HC595.

```

7 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)

```

Send data of digital tube to 74HC595 chip.

```

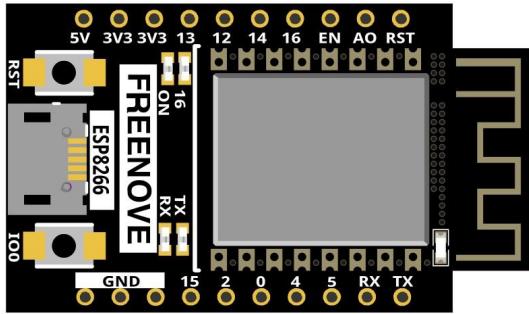
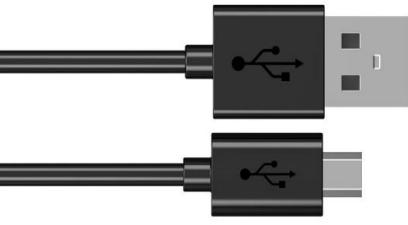
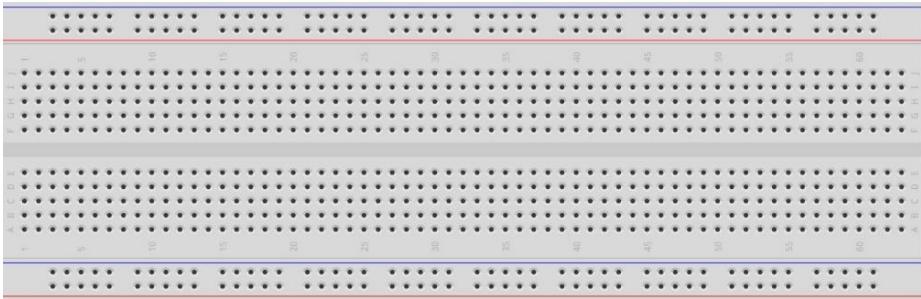
11 chip.shiftOut(0, lists[count])

```

## Project 14.2 4-Digit 7-Segment Display

Now, let's try to control a more-digit 7-segment display.

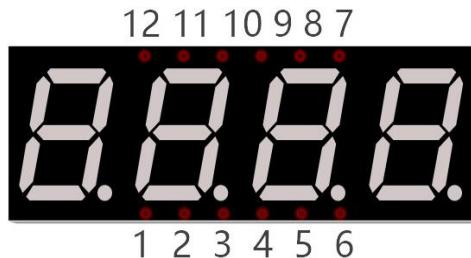
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
74HC595 x1	7-segment display x1
	
Resistor 220Ω x8	Jumper wire M/M x21

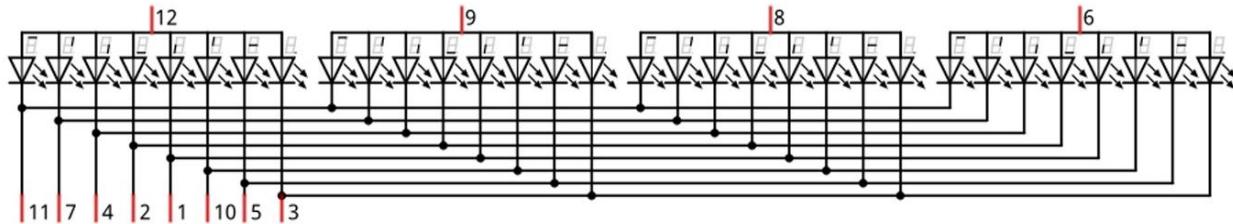
## Component knowledge

### 4 Digit 7-Segment Display

A 4 Digit 7-segment display integrates four 7-Segment Displays into one module, therefore it can display more characters. All of the LEDs contained have a Common Anode and individual Cathodes. Its internal structure and pin designation diagram is shown below:



The internal electronic circuit is shown below, and all 8 LED cathode pins of each 7-Segment Display are connected together.

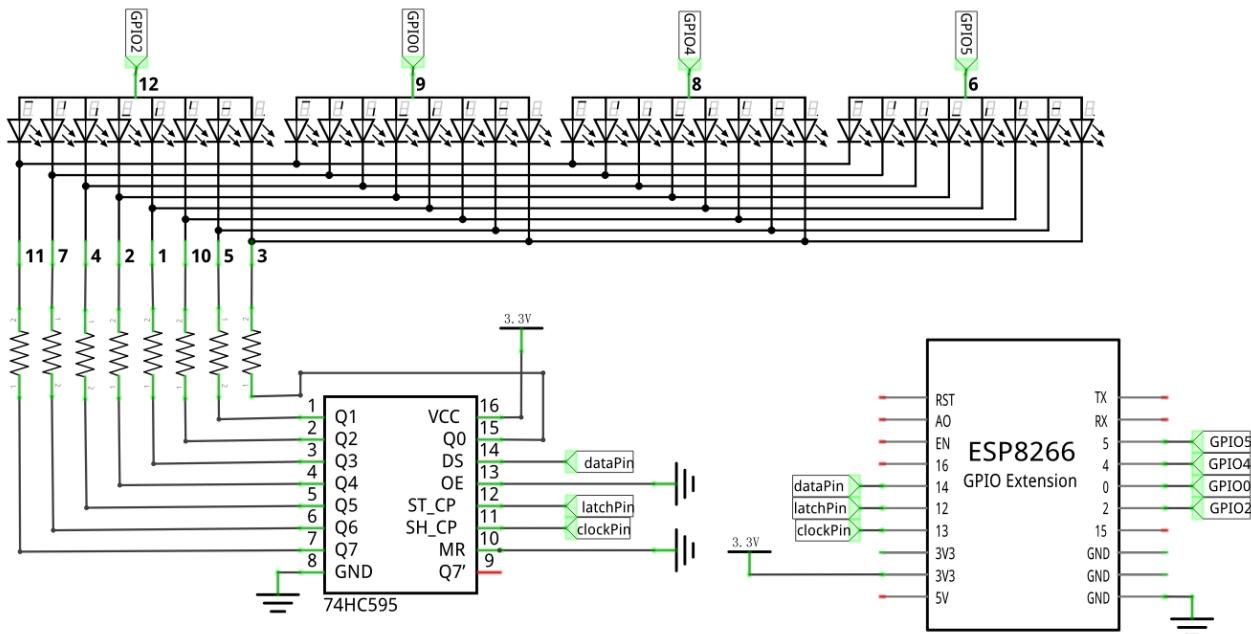


Display method of 4 Digit 7-segment display is similar to 1 Digit 7-segment display. The difference between them is that the 4-Digit displays each Digit visibly in turn, one by one and not together. We need to first send high level to the common end of the first Digit Display, and send low level to the remaining three common ends, and then send content to 8 LED cathode pins of the first Digit Display. At this time, the first 7-Segment Display will show visible content and the remaining three will be OFF.

Similarly, the second, third and fourth 7-Segment Displays will show visible content in turn by scanning the display. Although the four number characters are displayed in turn separately, this process is so fast that it is imperceptible to the naked eye. This is due to the principle of optical afterglow effect and the vision persistence effect in human sight. This is how we can see all 4 number characters at the same time. However, if each number character is displayed for a longer period, you will be able to see that the number characters are displayed separately.

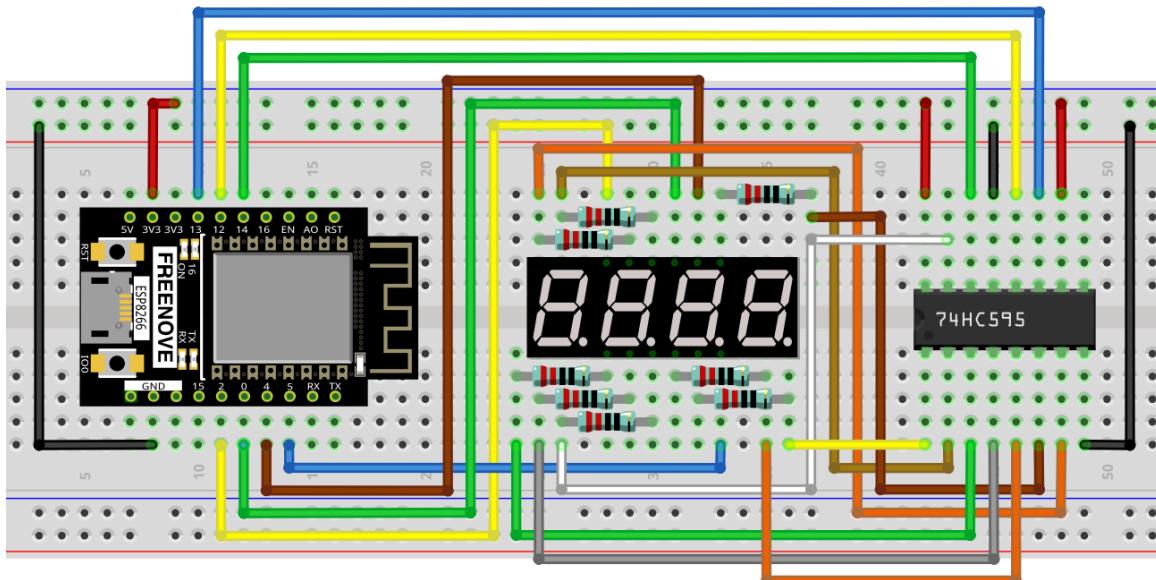
## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Q0-Q7 connecting in inverted sequence

Hardware connection:

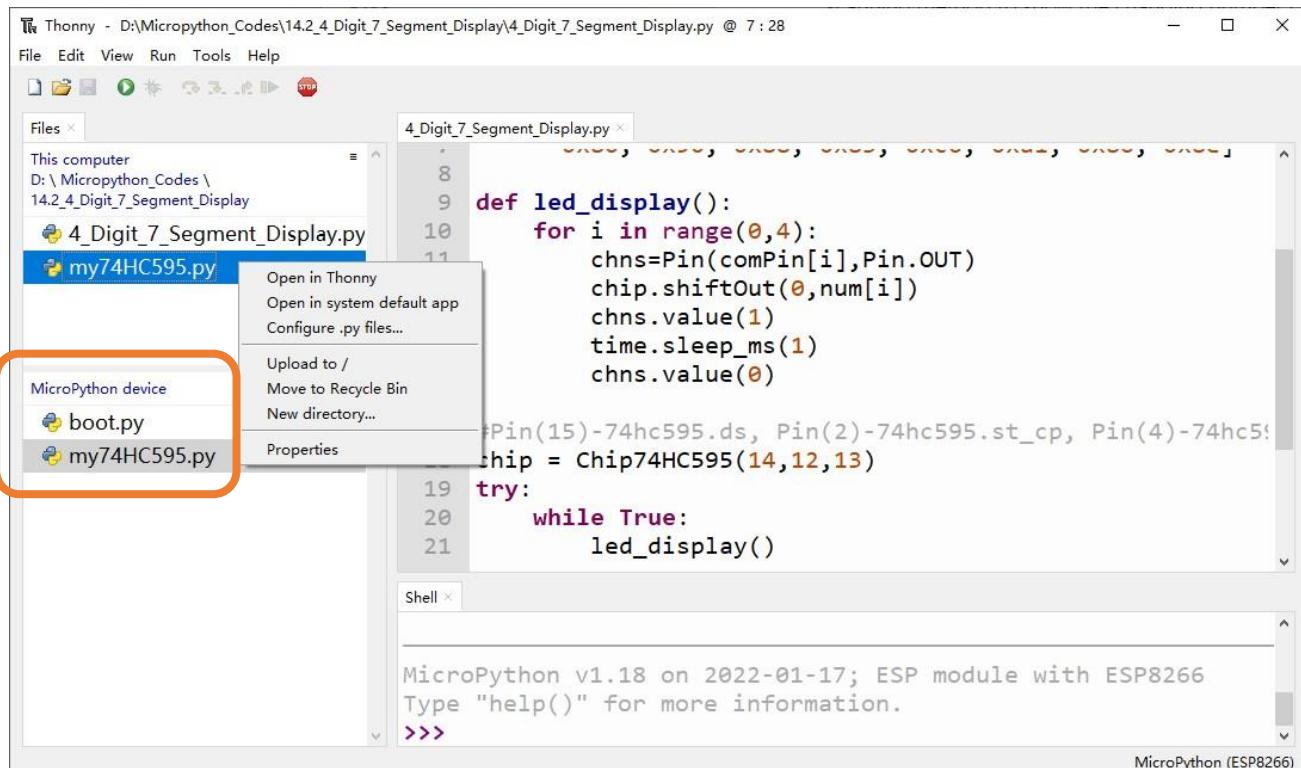


## Code

In this code, we use the 74HC595 IC Chip to control the 4-Digit 7-Segment Display, and use the dynamic scanning method to show the changing number characters.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “14.2\_4\_Digit\_7\_Segment\_Display”. Select “my74HC595.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “my74HC595.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and double click “4\_Digit\_7\_Segment\_Display.py”.

### 14.2\_4\_Digit\_7\_Segment\_Display



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The left sidebar displays files in the current directory: '4\_Digit\_7\_Segment\_Display' and 'my74HC595.py'. A context menu is open over 'my74HC595.py', with the 'Upload to /' option highlighted. The main window shows the code for '4\_Digit\_7\_Segment\_Display.py'.

```

def led_display():
    for i in range(0,4):
        chns=Pin(comPin[i],Pin.OUT)
        chip.shiftOut(0,num[i])
        chns.value(1)
        time.sleep_ms(1)
        chns.value(0)

#Pin(15)-74hc595.ds, Pin(2)-74hc595.st_cp, Pin(4)-74hc595.cs
chip = Chip74HC595(14,12,13)
try:
    while True:
        led_display()

```

The shell at the bottom shows the MicroPython version and a prompt:

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.  
>>>

Click “Run current script”, and the Nixie tube display as shown in the image below.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3 from machine import Pin
4
5 comPin = [2, 0, 4, 5];
6 num = [0xc0, 0xf9, 0xa4, 0xb0, 0x99, 0x92, 0x82, 0xf8,
7         0x80, 0x90, 0x88, 0x83, 0xc6, 0xa1, 0x86, 0x8e]
8
9 def led_display():
10     for i in range(0, 4):
11         chns=Pin(comPin[i],Pin.OUT)
12         chip.shiftOut(0, num[i])
13         chns.value(1)
14         time.sleep_ms(1)
15         chns.value(0)
16
17 #Pin(15)-74hc595.ds, Pin(2)-74hc595.st_cp, Pin(4)-74hc595.sh_cp
18 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)
19 try:
20     while True:
21         led_display()
22 except:
23     pass

```

Import time, my74HC595 and Pin modules.

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3 from machine import Pin

```

Define common anode pins for digital tubes and request a list to put character encodings in it.

```

5 comPin = [2, 0, 4, 5];
6 num = [0xc0, 0xf9, 0xa4, 0xb0, 0x99, 0x92, 0x82, 0xf8,
7         0x80, 0x90, 0x88, 0x83, 0xc6, 0xa1, 0x86, 0x8e]

```

Request an object to drive 74HC595 and associate pins with it.

```
18 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)
```

Make the digital tube display "0123".

```

9 def led_display():
10     for i in range(0, 4):
11         chns=Pin(comPin[i],Pin.OUT)
12         chip.shiftOut(0, num[i])
13         chns.value(1)
14         time.sleep_ms(1)
15         chns.value(0)

```

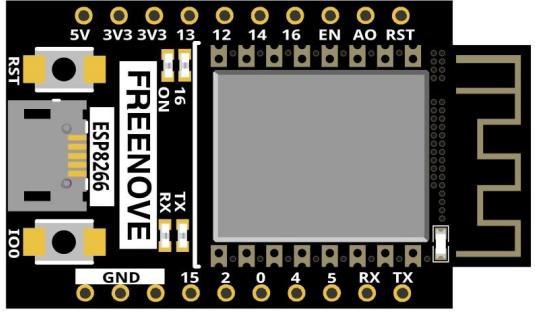
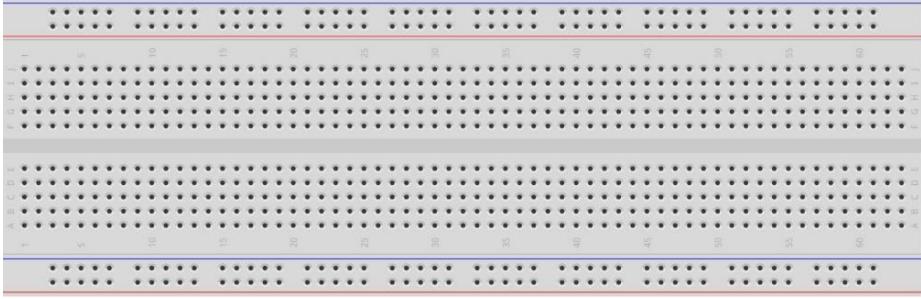
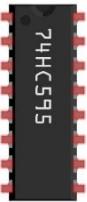
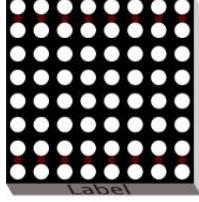
# Chapter 15 74HC595 & LED Matrix

Thus far we have learned how to use the 74HC595 IC Chip to control the Bar Graph LED and the 7-Segment Display. We will now use 74HC595 IC Chips to control an LED Matrix.

## Project 15.1 LED Matrix

In this project, we will use two 74HC595 IC chips to control a monochrome (one color) (8X8) LED Matrix to make it display both simple graphics and characters.

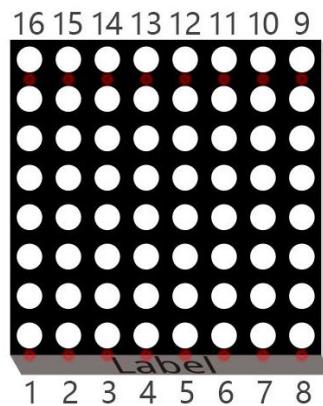
### Component List

ESP8266 x1		USB cable
Breadboard x1		
74HC595 x2	8*8 LEDMatrix x1	Resistor 220Ω x8
		
		Jumper wire M/M

## Component knowledge

### LED matrix

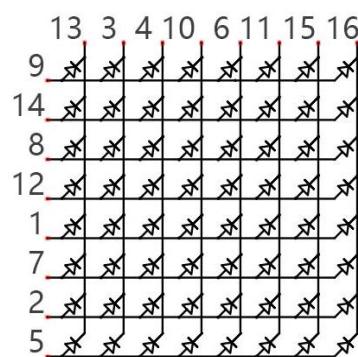
A LED Matrix is a rectangular display module that consists of a uniform grid of LEDs. The following is an 8X8 monochrome (one color) LED Matrix containing 64 LEDs (8 rows by 8 columns).



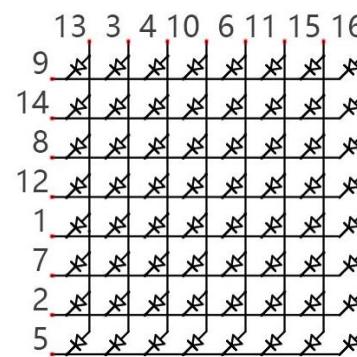
In order to facilitate the operation and reduce the number of ports required to drive this component, the Positive Poles of the LEDs in each row and Negative Poles of the LEDs in each column are respectively connected together inside the LED Matrix module, which is called a Common Anode. There is another arrangement type. Negative Poles of the LEDs in each row and the Positive Poles of the LEDs in each column are respectively connected together, which is called a Common Cathode.

The LED Matrix that we use in this project is a Common Anode LED Matrix.

Connection mode of common anode

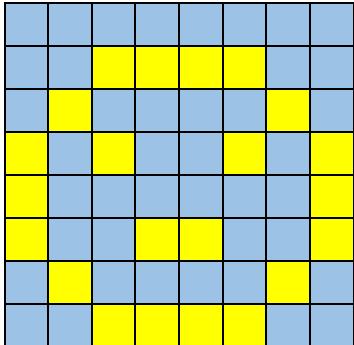


Connection mode of common cathode





Here is how a Common Anode LED Matrix works. First, choose 16 ports on ESP8266 board to connect to the 16 ports of LED Matrix. Configure one port in columns for low level, which makes that column the selected port. Then configure the eight port in the row to display content in the selected column. Add a delay value and then select the next column that outputs the corresponding content. This kind of operation by column is called Scan. If you want to display the following image of a smiling face, you can display it in 8 columns, and each column is represented by one byte.



1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0

Column	Binary	Hexadecimal
1	0001 1100	0x1c
2	0010 0010	0x22
3	0101 0001	0x51
4	0100 0101	0x45
5	0100 0101	0x45
6	0101 0001	0x51
7	0010 0010	0x22
8	0001 1100	0x1c

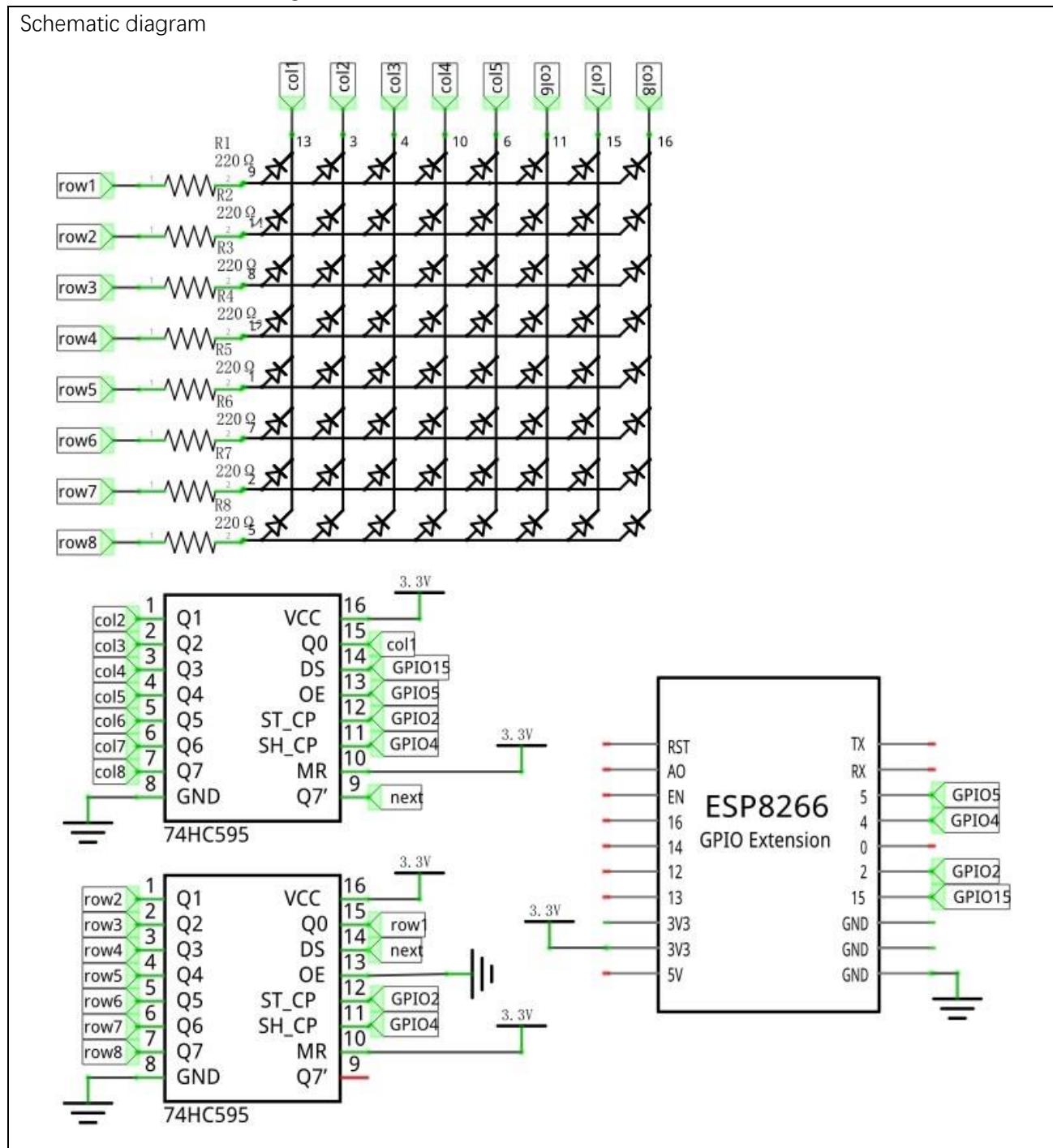
To begin, display the first column, then turn off the first column and display the second column. (and so on) .... turn off the seventh column and display the 8th column, and then start the process over from the first column again like the control of LED Bar Graph project. The whole process will be repeated rapidly in a loop. Due to the principle of optical afterglow effect and the vision persistence effect in human sight, we will see a picture of a smiling face directly rather than individual columns of LEDs turned ON one column at a time (although in fact this is the reality we cannot perceive).

Then, to save the number of GPIO, we use a 74HC595. When the first column is turned ON, set the lights that need to be displayed in the first column to "1", otherwise to "0", as shown in the above example, where the value of the first column is 0x1c. This value is sent to 74HC595 to control the display of the first column of the LEDMatrix. Following the above idea, turn OFF the display of the first column, then turn ON the second column, and then send the value of the second column to 74HC595 ..... Until each column is displayed, the LEDMatrix is displayed again from the first column.

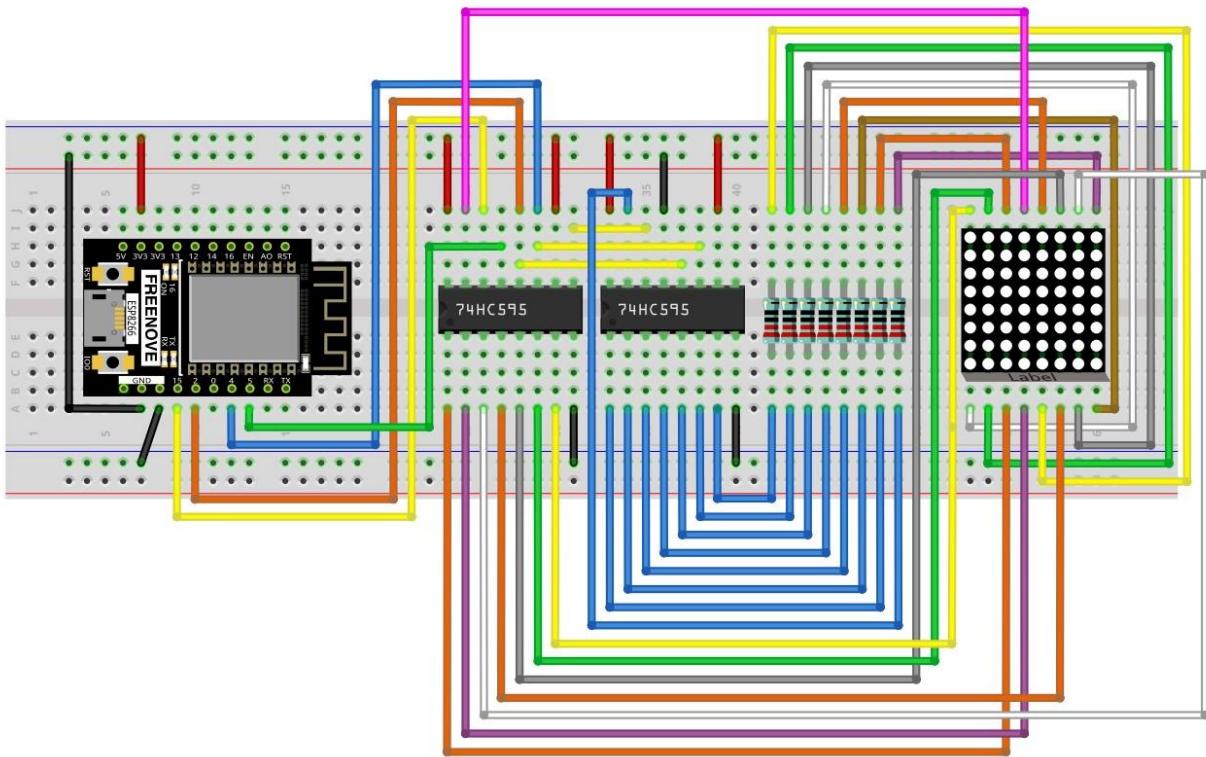
## Circuit

In circuit of this project, the power pin of the 74HC595 IC Chip is connected to 3.3V. It can also be connected to 5V to make LED Matrix brighter.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection:



## Code

The following code will make LEDMatrix display a smiling face, and then display scrolling character "0-F". Open "Thonny", click "This computer" → "D:" → "Micropython\_Codes" → "Micropython\_Codes".Select "HC595.py", right click your mouse to select "Upload to /", wait for "HC595.py" to be uploaded to ESP8266 and double click "LED\_Matrix.py".

## 15.1\_LED\_Matrix

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface with the following details:

- Title Bar:** Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\15.1\_LED\_Matrix\LED\_Matrix.py @ 26 : 32
- File Menu:** File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
- Toolbar:** Standard file operations like Open, Save, Run, Stop.
- Left Sidebar (Files):**
  - MicroPython device: boot.py, my74HC595.py
  - This computer: D:\ Micropython\_Codes\15.1\_LED\_Matrix, LED\_Matrix.py, mv74HC595.nv
- Right Sidebar (Shell):**

```
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>
```
- Main Editor:**

```
1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3
4 smilingFace=[0x1C, 0x22, 0x51, 0x45, 0x45, 0x51, 0x22, 0x1C]#^_^#
5 numdata = [
6     0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, # " "
7     0x00, 0x00, 0x3E, 0x41, 0x41, 0x3E, 0x00, 0x00, # "0"
8     0x00, 0x00, 0x21, 0x7F, 0x01, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, # "1"
9     0x00, 0x00, 0x23, 0x45, 0x49, 0x31, 0x00, 0x00, # "2"
10    0x00, 0x00, 0x22, 0x49, 0x49, 0x36, 0x00, 0x00, # "3"
11    0x00, 0x00, 0x0E, 0x32, 0x7F, 0x02, 0x00, 0x00, # "4"
12    0x00, 0x00, 0x79, 0x49, 0x49, 0x46, 0x00, 0x00, # "5"
13    0x00, 0x00, 0x3E, 0x49, 0x49, 0x26, 0x00, 0x00, # "6"
14    0x00, 0x00, 0x60, 0x47, 0x48, 0x70, 0x00, 0x00, # "7"
15    0x00, 0x00, 0x36, 0x49, 0x49, 0x36, 0x00, 0x00, # "8"
16    0x00, 0x00, 0x32, 0x49, 0x49, 0x3E, 0x00, 0x00, # "9"
17    0x00, 0x00, 0x3F, 0x44, 0x44, 0x3F, 0x00, 0x00, # "A"
18    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x49, 0x49, 0x36, 0x00, 0x00, # "B"
19    0x00, 0x00, 0x3E, 0x41, 0x41, 0x22, 0x00, 0x00, # "C"
20    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x41, 0x41, 0x3E, 0x00, 0x00, # "D"
21    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x49, 0x49, 0x41, 0x00, 0x00, # "E"
22    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x48, 0x48, 0x40, 0x00, 0x00, # "F"
23    0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00] # " "
24
25
26 chip = Chip74HC595(15, 2, 4, 5)
27 try:
28     while True:
29         #smilingFace
30         for i in range(100):
```

Click “Run current script”, and the LED Matrix display a smiling face, and then display characters “0 to F” scrolling in a loop on the LED Matrix.

The following is the program code:

```
1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3
4 smilingFace=[0x1C, 0x22, 0x51, 0x45, 0x45, 0x51, 0x22, 0x1C]#^_^#
5 numdata = [
6     0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, # " "
7     0x00, 0x00, 0x3E, 0x41, 0x41, 0x3E, 0x00, 0x00, # "0"
8     0x00, 0x00, 0x21, 0x7F, 0x01, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, # "1"
9     0x00, 0x00, 0x23, 0x45, 0x49, 0x31, 0x00, 0x00, # "2"
10    0x00, 0x00, 0x22, 0x49, 0x49, 0x36, 0x00, 0x00, # "3"
11    0x00, 0x00, 0x0E, 0x32, 0x7F, 0x02, 0x00, 0x00, # "4"
12    0x00, 0x00, 0x79, 0x49, 0x49, 0x46, 0x00, 0x00, # "5"
13    0x00, 0x00, 0x3E, 0x49, 0x49, 0x26, 0x00, 0x00, # "6"
14    0x00, 0x00, 0x60, 0x47, 0x48, 0x70, 0x00, 0x00, # "7"
15    0x00, 0x00, 0x36, 0x49, 0x49, 0x36, 0x00, 0x00, # "8"
16    0x00, 0x00, 0x32, 0x49, 0x49, 0x3E, 0x00, 0x00, # "9"
17    0x00, 0x00, 0x3F, 0x44, 0x44, 0x3F, 0x00, 0x00, # "A"
18    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x49, 0x49, 0x36, 0x00, 0x00, # "B"
19    0x00, 0x00, 0x3E, 0x41, 0x41, 0x22, 0x00, 0x00, # "C"
20    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x41, 0x41, 0x3E, 0x00, 0x00, # "D"
21    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x49, 0x49, 0x41, 0x00, 0x00, # "E"
22    0x00, 0x00, 0x7F, 0x48, 0x48, 0x40, 0x00, 0x00, # "F"
23    0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, # " "
24 ]
25
26 chip = Chip74HC595(15, 2, 4, 5)
27 try:
28     while True:
29         #smilingFace
30         for j in range(30):
31             cols = 0x01
32             for i in range(8):
33                 chip.disable()
34                 chip.shiftOut(1, smilingFace[i])
35                 chip.shiftOut(0, ~cols)
36                 cols <= 1
37                 chip.enable()
38                 time.sleep_us(50)
39         #numdata
40         for i in range(136):
41             for _ in range(3):
42                 cols = 0x01
43                 for j in range(i, 8+i):
```

```

44         chip.disable()
45         chip.shiftOut(1, numdata[j])
46         chip.shiftOut(0, ~cols)
47         cols <= 1
48         chip.enable()
49         time.sleep_us(50)
50     except:
51         pass

```

Import time and my 74HC595 modules.

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595

```

Use a nesting of two for loops to display a smiling face.

```

30     for j in range(100):
31         cols = 0x01
32         for i in range(8):
33             chip.disable()
34             chip.shiftOut(1, smilingFace[i])
35             chip.shiftOut(0, ~cols)
36             cols <= 1
37             chip.enable()
38             time.sleep_us(500)

```

Use a nesting of three for loops to display "0"-“F”.

```

40     for i in range(136):
41         for _ in range(5):
42             cols = 0x01
43             for j in range(i, 8+i):
44                 chip.disable()
45                 chip.shiftOut(1, numdata[j])
46                 chip.shiftOut(0, ~cols)
47                 cols <= 1
48                 chip.enable()
49                 time.sleep_us(500)

```

The amount of pins of ESP8266 is limited, so we need to find ways to save pins. If we use ESP8266's GPIO to control the LEDMatrix instead of 74HC595, we need 16 pins to drive LED matrix. In this example, we use two 74HC595 chips to drive the LED matrix, requiring only three pins, so that we could save the rest of 13 pins.

#### Reference

##### Class HC595

Before each use of HC595, please make sure HC595.py has been uploaded to “/” of ESP8266, and then add the statement “**import HC595**” to the top of the python file.

**Chip74HC595()**: The object to control LEDMatrix.

**chip=Chip74HC595()** or **chip=Chip74HC595(15,2,4,5)**

**set\_bit\_data(data)**: Write data to 74HC595.

**clear()**: Clear the latch data of 74HC595.

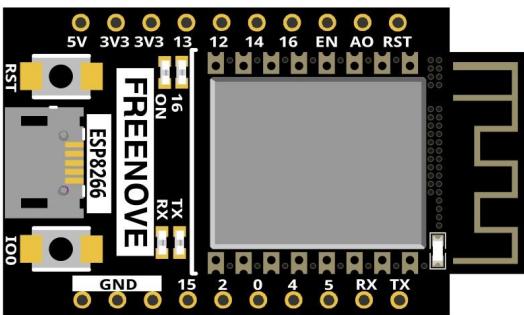
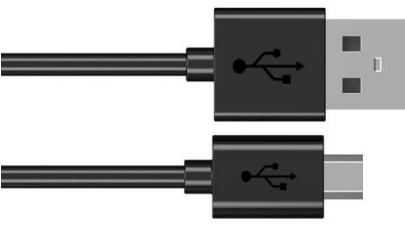
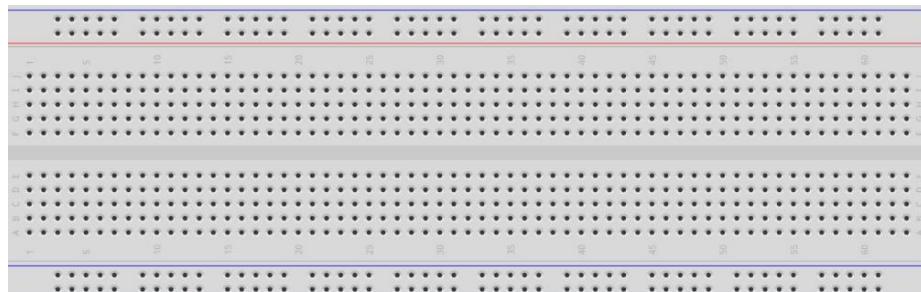
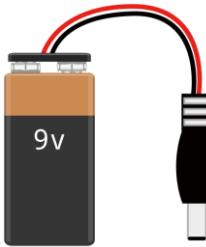
# Chapter 16 Relay & Motor

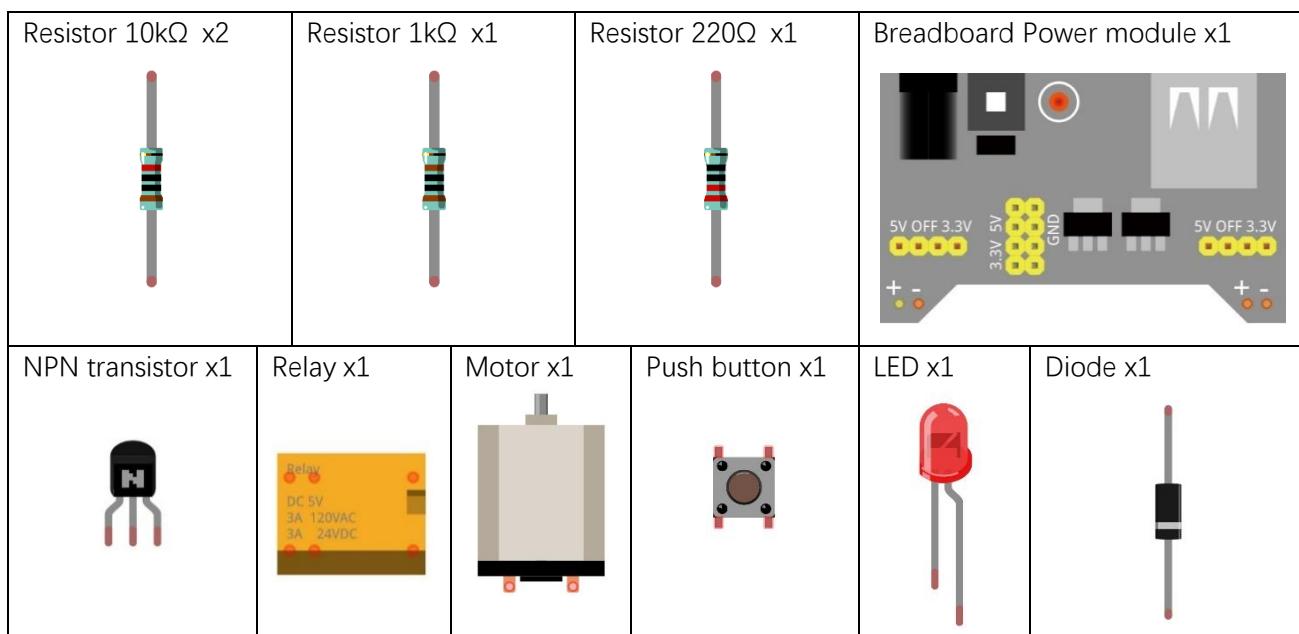
In this chapter, we will learn a kind of special switch module, Relay Module.

## Project 16.1 Relay & Motor

In this project, we will use a Push Button Switch indirectly to control the motor via a Relay.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire M/M x16	9V battery (prepared by yourself) & battery line 

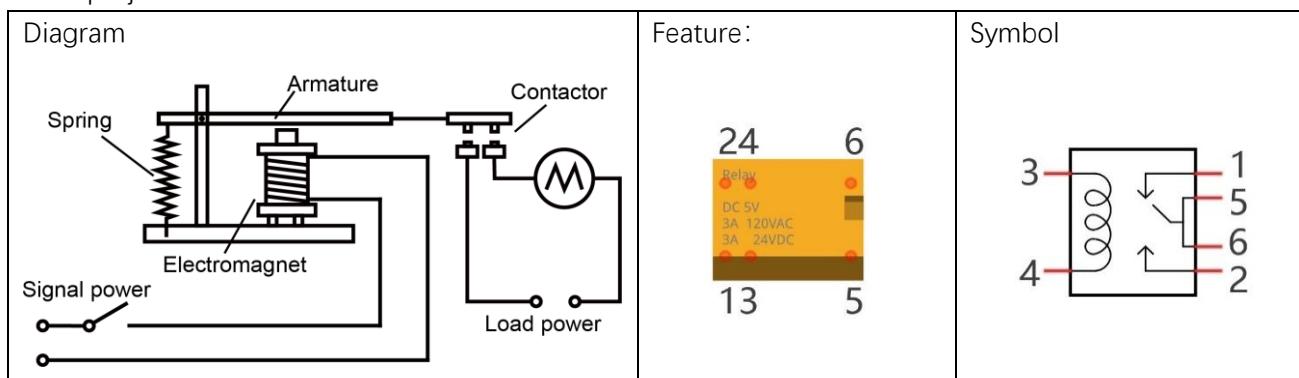


## Component knowledge

### Relay

A relay is a safe switch which can use low power circuit to control high power circuit. It consists of electromagnet and contacts. The electromagnet is controlled by low power circuit and contacts are used in high power circuit. When the electromagnet is energized, it will attract contacts.

The following is a schematic diagram of a common relay and the feature and circuit symbol of a 5V relay used in this project:



Pin 5 and pin 6 are connected to each other inside. When the coil pin 3 and 4 get connected to 5V power supply, pin 1 will be disconnected from pin 5&6 and pin 2 will be connected to pin 5&6. So pin 1 is called close end, pin 2 is called open end.

### Inductor

The symbol of Inductance is “L” and the unit of inductance is the “Henry” (H). Here is an example of how this can be encountered:  $1\text{H}=1000\text{mH}$ ,  $1\text{mH}=1000\mu\text{H}$ .

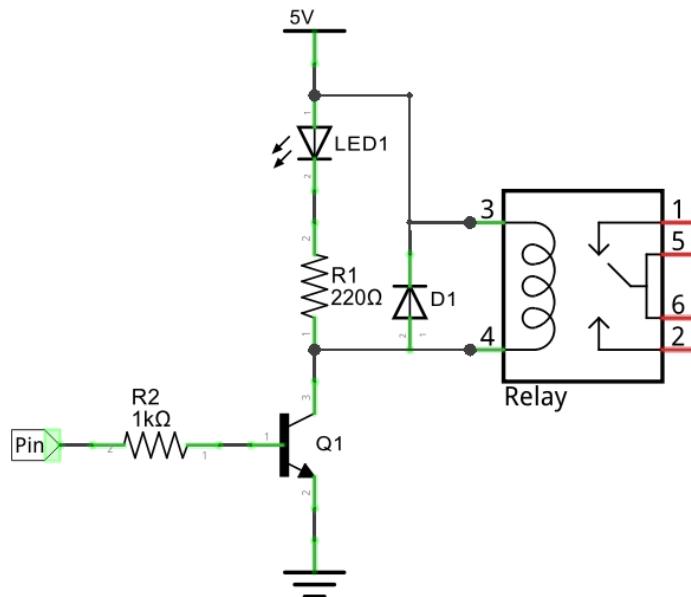
An inductor is an energy storage device that converts electrical energy into magnetic energy. Generally, it consists of winding coil, with a certain amount of inductance. Inductors hinder the change of current passing through it. When the current passing through it increases, it will attempt to hinder the increasing trend of



current; and when the current passing through it decreases, it will attempt to hinder the decreasing trend of current. So the current passing through inductor is not transient.

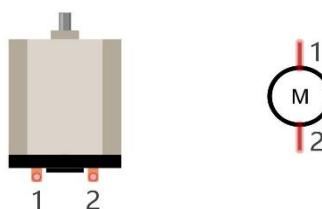


The reference circuit for relay is as follows. The coil of relays can be equivalent to that of inductors, when the transistor disconnects power supply of the relay, the current in the coil of the relay can't stop immediately, causing an impact on power supply. So a parallel diode will get connected to both ends of relay coil pin in reversing direction, then the current will pass through diode, avoiding the impact on power supply.

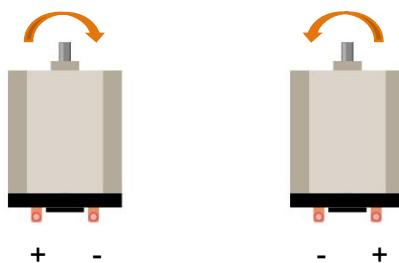


### Motor

A motor is a device that converts electrical energy into mechanical energy. Motor consists of two parts: stator and rotor. When motor works, the stationary part is stator, and the rotating part is rotor. Stator is usually the outer case of motor, and it has terminals to connect to the power. Rotor is usually the shaft of motor, and can drive other mechanical devices to run. Diagram below is a small DC motor with two pins.

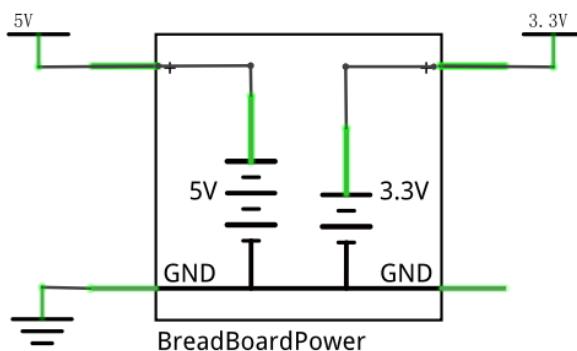
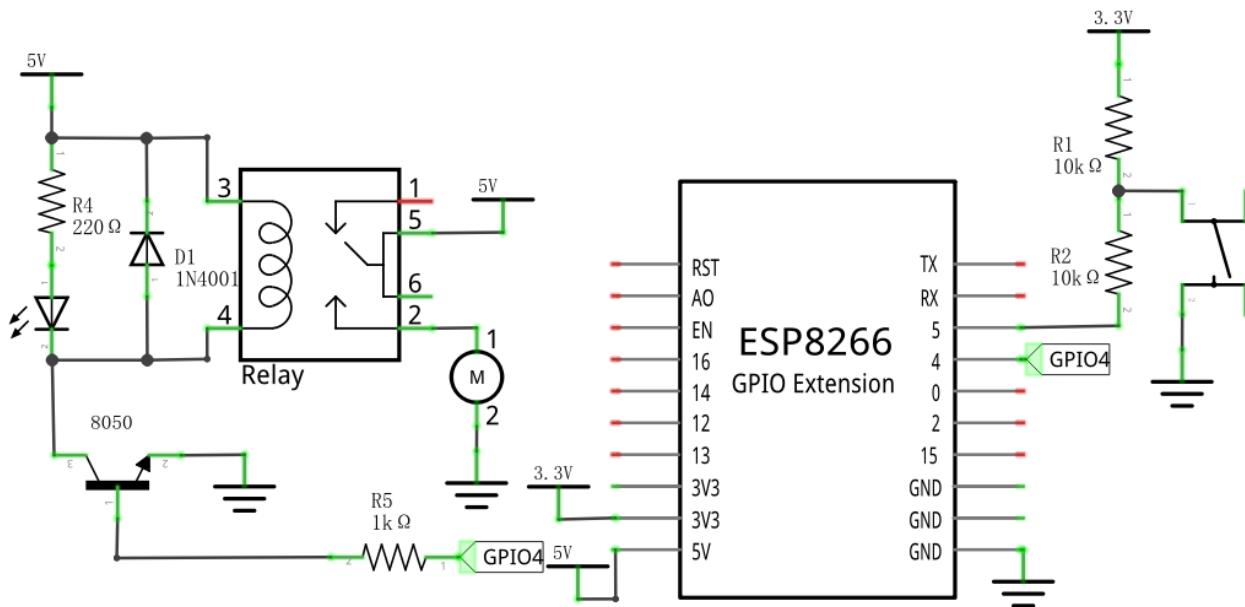


When a motor gets connected to the power supply, it will rotate in one direction. Reverse the polarity of power supply, then the motor rotates in opposite direction.



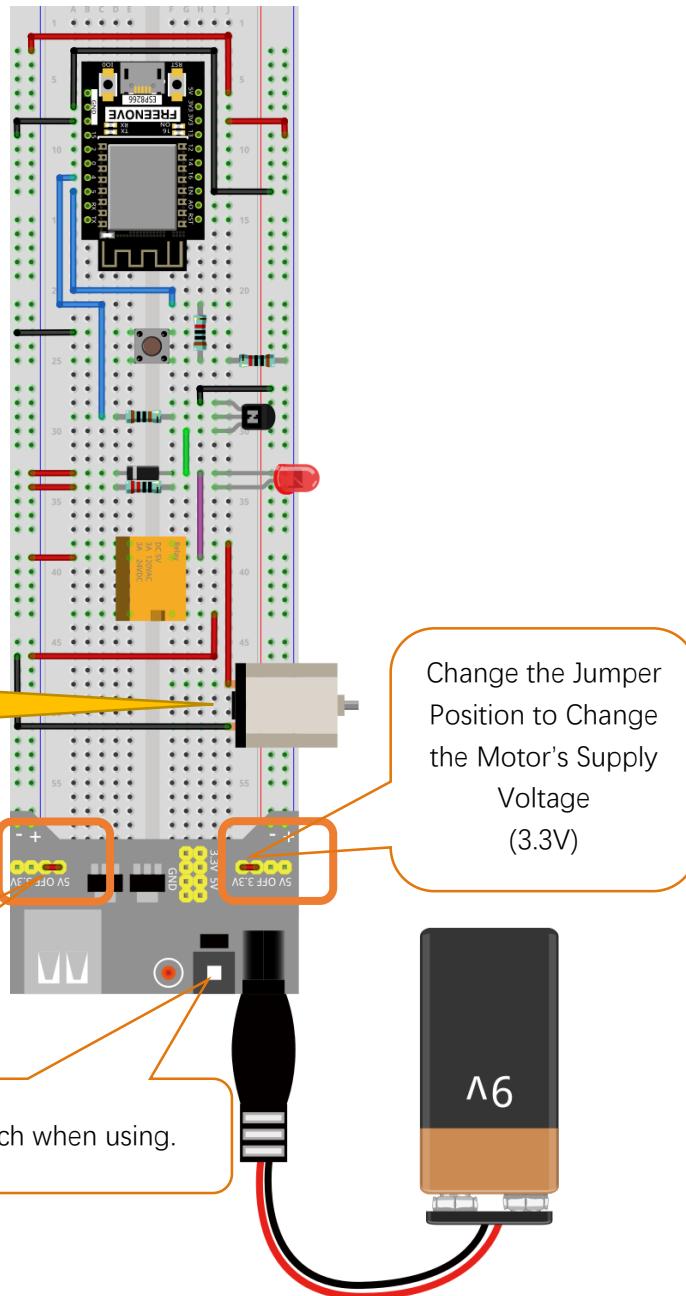
# Circuit

## Schematic diagram



Any concerns?  support@freenove.com

Hardware connection. If you need any support, please free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



Note: the motor circuit uses A large current, about 0.2-0.3A without load. We recommend that you use a 9V battery to power your system.

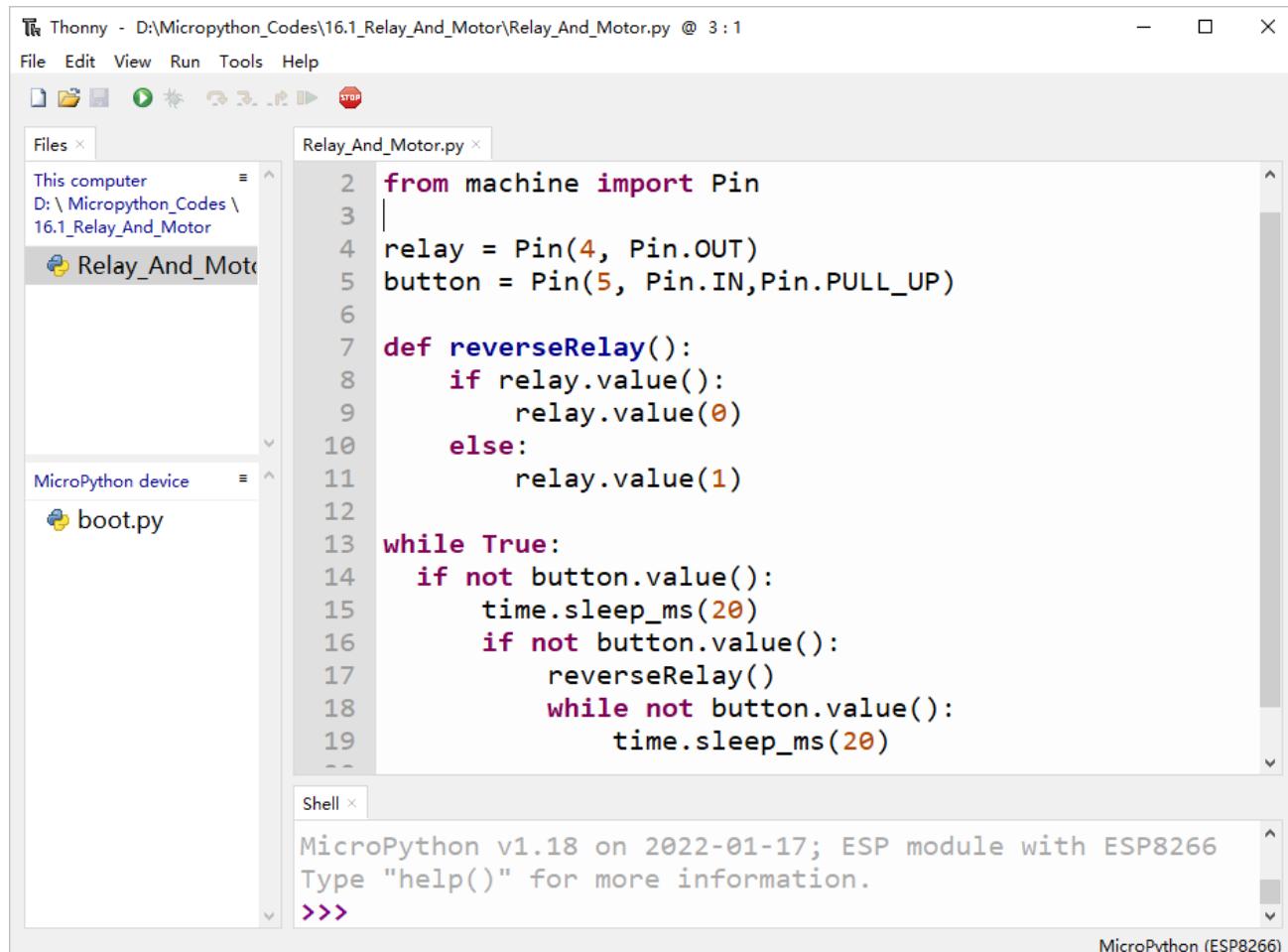
## Code

Use buttons to control the relays and motors.

Move the program folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “D:/Micropython\_Codes”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “16.1\_Relay\_And\_Motor” and double click “Relay\_And\_Motor.py”.

### 16.1\_Relay\_And\_Motor



```

from machine import Pin
relay = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
button = Pin(5, Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)

def reverseRelay():
    if relay.value():
        relay.value(0)
    else:
        relay.value(1)

while True:
    if not button.value():
        time.sleep_ms(20)
        if not button.value():
            reverseRelay()
            while not button.value():
                time.sleep_ms(20)

```

Click “Run current script”. When the DC Motor is connected to a power supply, it will rotate in one direction. If you reverse the polarity of the power supply, the DC Motor will rotate in opposite direction.





The following is the program code:

```
1 import time
2 from machine import Pin
3
4 relay = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
5 button = Pin(5, Pin.IN,Pin.PULL_UP)
6
7 def reverseRelay():
8     if relay.value():
9         relay.value(0)
10    else:
11        relay.value(1)
12
13 while True:
14     if not button.value():
15         time.sleep_ms(20)
16         if not button.value():
17             reverseRelay()
18             while not button.value():
19                 time.sleep_ms(20)
```

This section of code is basically the same as that of project Tablelamp. If you don't understand the program, you can click [here](#) to go back to the Tablelamp and study again.

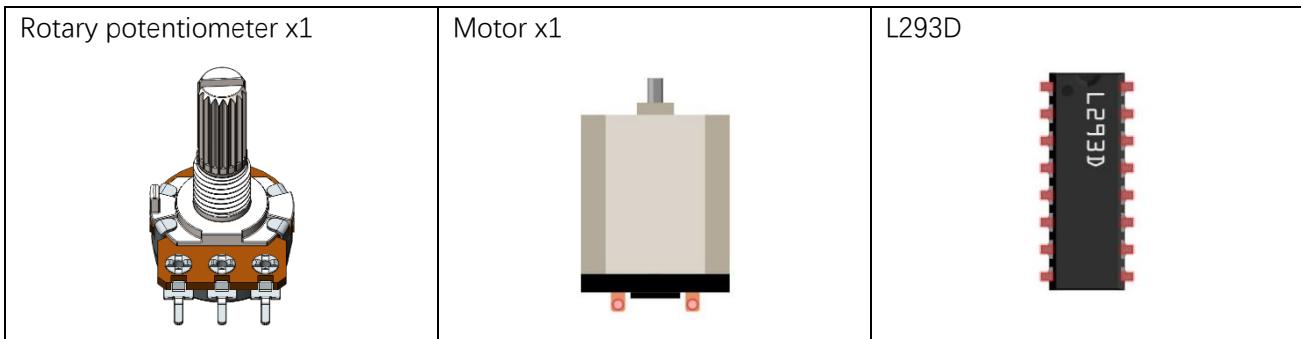
# Chapter 17 Motor & Driver

## Project 17.1 Control Motor with Potentiometer

Control the direction and speed of the motor with a potentiometer.

### Component List

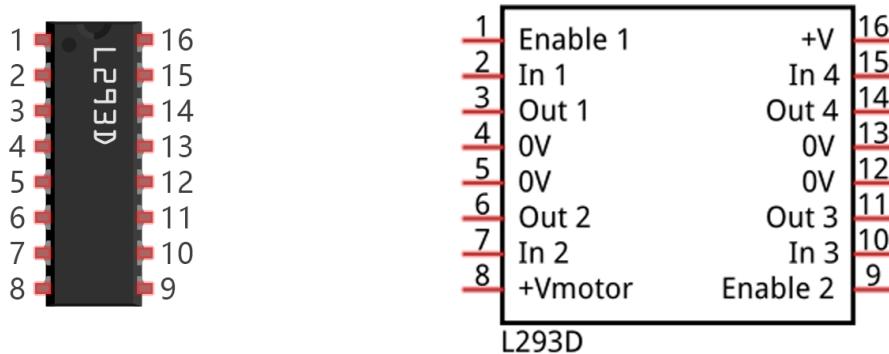
ESP8266 x1 	USB cable 
Breadboard x1 	Breadboard Power module x1 
Jumper wire M/M x12 	9V battery (prepared by yourself) & battery line 



## Component knowledge

### L293D

L293D is an IC Chip (Integrated Circuit Chip) with a 4-channel motor drive. You can drive a Unidirectional DC Motor with 4 ports or a Bi-Directional DC Motor with 2 ports or a Stepper Motor (Stepper Motors are covered later in this Tutorial).



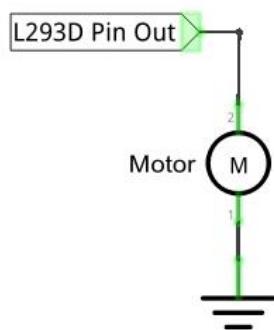
Port description of L293D module is as follows:

Pin name	Pin number	Description
In x	2, 7, 10, 15	Channel x digital signal input pin
Out x	3, 6, 11, 14	Channel x output pin, input high or low level according to In x pin, get connected to +Vmotor or 0V
Enable1	1	Channel 1 and channel 2 enable pin, high level enable
Enable2	9	Channel 3 and channel 4 enable pin, high level enable
0V	4, 5, 12, 13	Power cathode (GND)
+V	16	Positive electrode (VCC) of power supply, supply voltage 3.0~36V
+Vmotor	8	Positive electrode of load power supply, provide power supply for the Out pin x, the supply voltage is +V~36V

For more detail, please refer to the datasheet for this IC Chip.

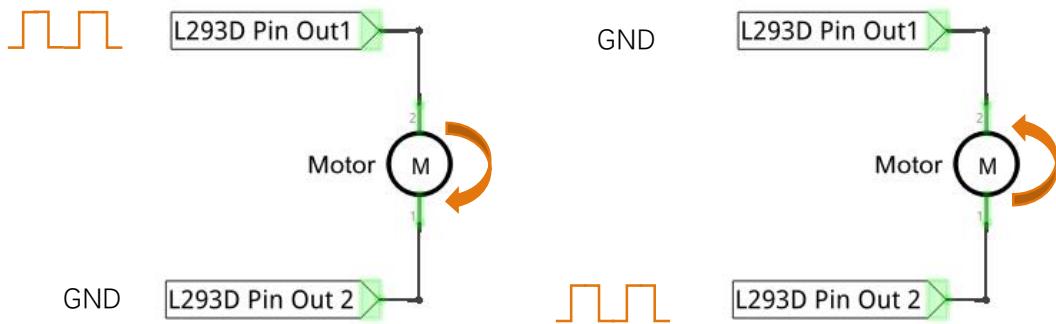
When using L293D to drive DC motor, there are usually two connection options.

The following connection option uses one channel of the L293D, which can control motor speed through the PWM, However the motor then can only rotate in one direction.





The following connection uses two channels of the L293D: one channel outputs the PWM wave, and the other channel connects to GND, therefore you can control the speed of the motor. When these two channel signals are exchanged, not only can they control the speed of motor, but also control the direction of the motor.

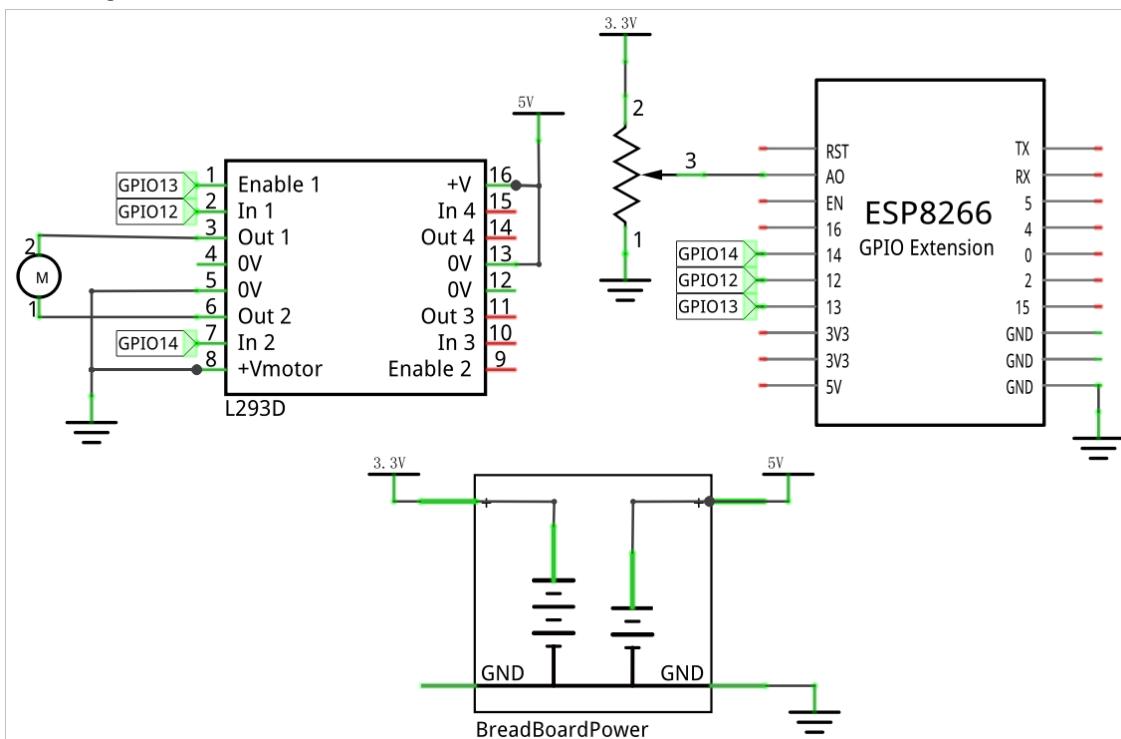


In practical use the motor is usually connected to channels 1 and 2 by outputting different levels to in1 and in2 to control the rotational direction of the motor, and output to the PWM wave to Enable1 port to control the motor's rotational speed. If the motor is connected to channel 3 and 4 by outputting different levels to in3 and in4 to control the motor's rotation direction, and output to the PWM wave to Enable2 pin to control the motor's rotational speed.

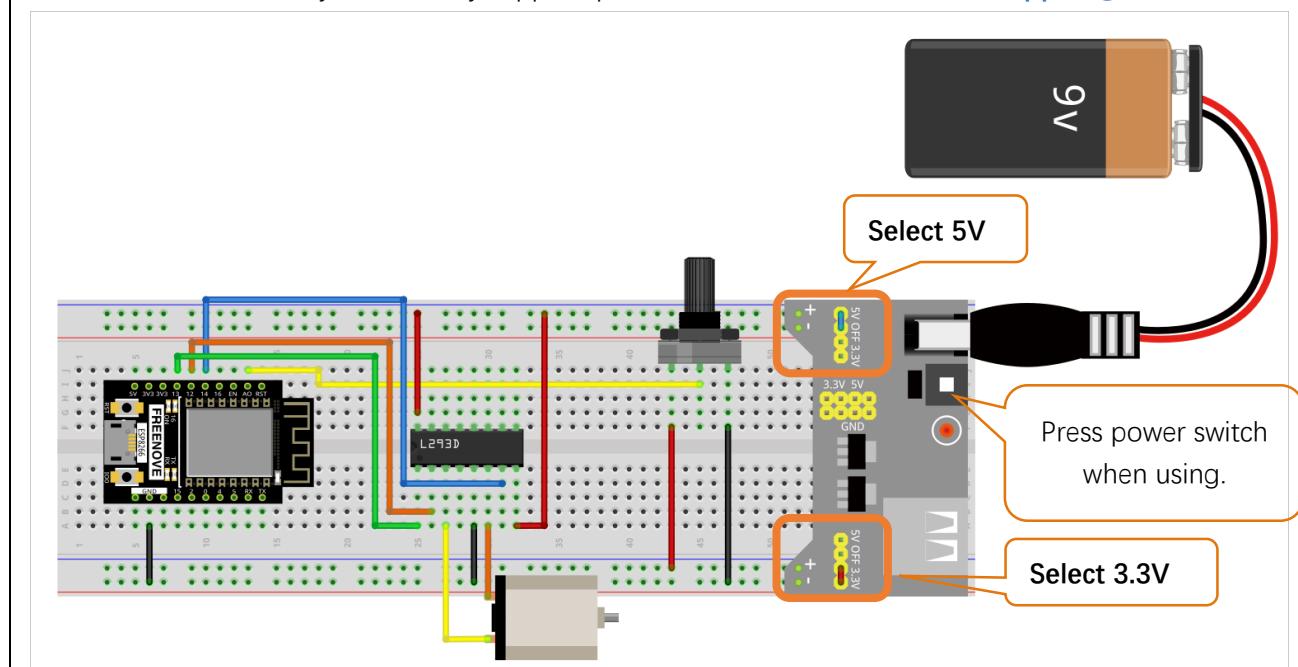
## Circuit

Use caution when connecting this circuit because the DC Motor is a high-power component. **Do not use the power provided by the ESP8266 to power the motor directly, as this may cause permanent damage to your RPi!** The logic circuit can be powered by the ESP8266's power or an external power supply, which should share a common ground with ESP8266.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

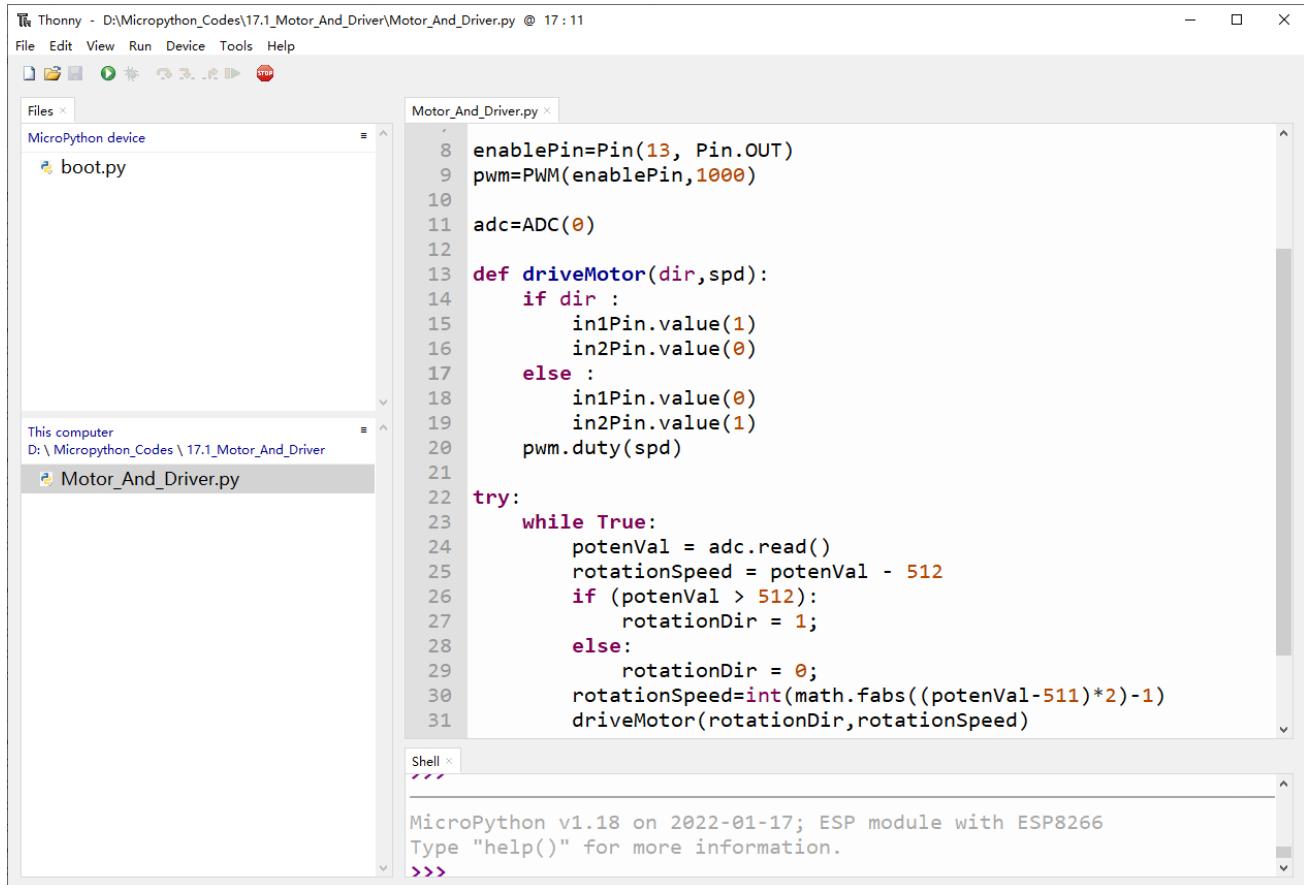


## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “17.1\_Motor\_And\_Driver” and double click “Motor\_And\_Driver.py”.

### 17.1\_Motor\_And\_Driver



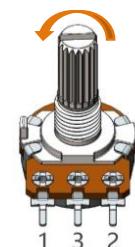
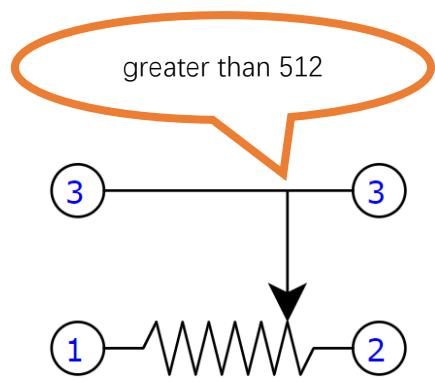
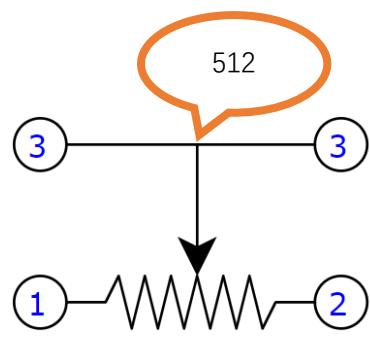
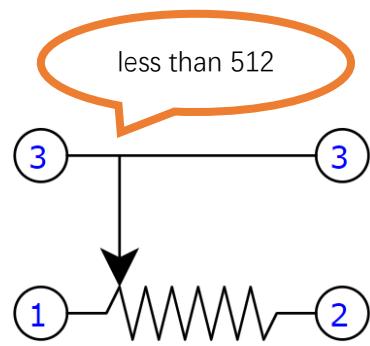
```

8 enablePin=Pin(13, Pin.OUT)
9 pwm=PWM(enablePin,1000)
10
11 adc=ADC(0)
12
13 def driveMotor(dir,spd):
14     if dir :
15         in1Pin.value(1)
16         in2Pin.value(0)
17     else :
18         in1Pin.value(0)
19         in2Pin.value(1)
20     pwm.duty(spd)
21
22 try:
23     while True:
24         potenVal = adc.read()
25         rotationSpeed = potenVal - 512
26         if (potenVal > 512):
27             rotationDir = 1;
28         else:
29             rotationDir = 0;
30         rotationSpeed=int(math.fabs((potenVal-511)*2)-1)
31         driveMotor(rotationDir,rotationSpeed)

```

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The left sidebar shows a file tree with 'boot.py' under 'MicroPython device' and 'Motor\_And\_Driver.py' under 'D:\Micropython\_Codes\17.1\_Motor\_And\_Driver'. The main window displays the Python code for 'Motor\_And\_Driver.py'. The bottom pane is a 'Shell' window showing the MicroPython prompt: 'MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266' and 'Type "help()" for more information.' The code itself reads a potentiometer value, calculates a rotation speed, and drives a motor using PWM.

Click “Run current script”, rotate the potentiometer in one direction and the motor speeds up slowly in one direction. Rotate the potentiometer in the other direction and the motor will slow down to stop. And then rotate it in the original direction to accelerate the motor.





The following is the Code:

```
1  from machine import ADC, Pin, PWM
2  import time
3  import math
4
5  in1Pin=Pin(12, Pin.OUT)
6  in2Pin=Pin(14, Pin.OUT)
7
8  enablePin=Pin(13, Pin.OUT)
9  pwm=PWM(enablePin, 1000)
10 adc=ADC(0)
11
12 def driveMotor(dir, spd):
13     if dir :
14         in1Pin.value(1)
15         in2Pin.value(0)
16     else :
17         in1Pin.value(0)
18         in2Pin.value(1)
19     pwm.duty(spd)
20
21 try:
22     while True:
23         potenVal = adc.read()
24         rotationSpeed = potenVal - 512
25         if (potenVal > 512):
26             rotationDir = 1;
27         else:
28             rotationDir = 0;
29         rotationSpeed=int(math.fabs((potenVal-511)*2)-1)
30         driveMotor(rotationDir, rotationSpeed)
31         time.sleep_ms(10)
32 except:
33     pass
```

The ADC of ESP8266 has a 10-bit accuracy, corresponding to a range from 0 to 1023. In this program, set the number 512 as the midpoint. If the value of ADC is less than 512, make the motor rotate in one direction. If the value of ADC is greater than 512, make the motor rotate in the other direction. Subtract 512 from the ADC value and take the absolute value, and then divide this result by 2 to be the speed of the motor.

```
23     potenVal = adc.read()
24     rotationSpeed = potenVal - 512
25     if (potenVal > 512):
26         rotationDir = 1;
27     else:
28         rotationDir = 0;
29     rotationSpeed=int(math.fabs((potenVal-511)*2)-1)
30     driveMotor(rotationDir, rotationSpeed)
31     time.sleep_ms(10)
```

Initialize pins of L293D chip.

```
5     in1Pin=Pin(12, Pin.OUT)
6     in2Pin=Pin(14, Pin.OUT)
7
8     enablePin=Pin(13, Pin.OUT)
9     pwm=PWM(enablePin, 1000)
```

Initialize ADC pins, set the range of voltage to 0-3.3V and the acquisition width of data to 0-1023.

```
10    adc=ADC(0)
```

Function `driveMotor` is used to control the rotation direction and speed of the motor. The `dir` represents direction while `spd` refers to speed.

```
12    def driveMotor(dir, spd):
13        if dir :
14            in1Pin.value(1)
15            in2Pin.value(0)
16        else :
17            in1Pin.value(0)
18            in2Pin.value(1)
19        pwm.duty(spd)
```

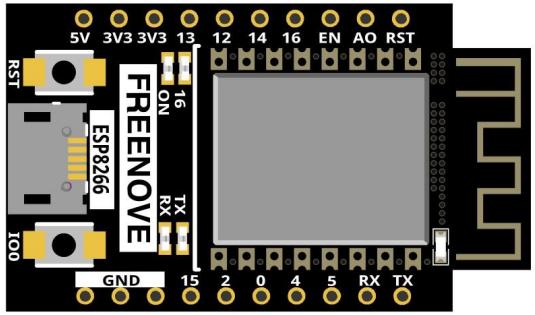
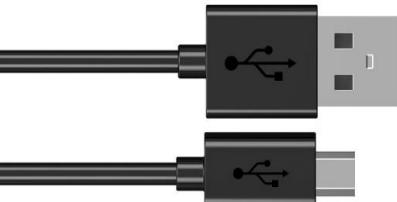
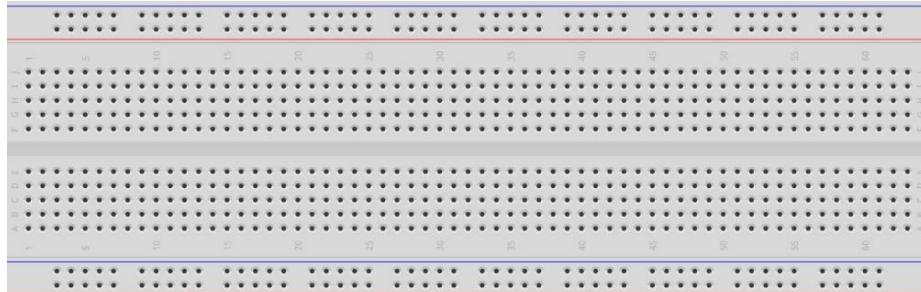
# Chapter 18 Servo

Previously, we learned how to control the speed and rotational direction of a Motor. In this chapter, we will learn about Servos which are a rotary actuator type motor that can be controlled to rotate to specific angles.

## Project 18.1 Servo Sweep

First, we need to learn how to make a Servo rotate.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Servo x1	Jumper wire M/M x5

## Component knowledge

### Servo

Servo is a compact package which consists of a DC Motor, a set of reduction gears to provide torque, a sensor and control circuit board. Most Servos only have a 180-degree range of motion via their "horn". Servos can output higher torque than a simple DC Motor alone and they are widely used to control motion in model cars, model airplanes, robots, etc. Servos have three wire leads which usually terminate to a male or female 3-pin plug. Two leads are for electric power: Positive (2-VCC, Red wire), Negative (3-GND, Brown wire), and the signal line (1-Signal, Orange wire) as represented in the Servo provided in your Kit.



We will use a 50Hz PWM signal with a duty cycle in a certain range to drive the Servo. The time interval of 0.5ms-2.5ms of PWM single cycle high level corresponds to the Servo angle 0 degrees - 180 degree linearly. Part of the corresponding values are as follows:

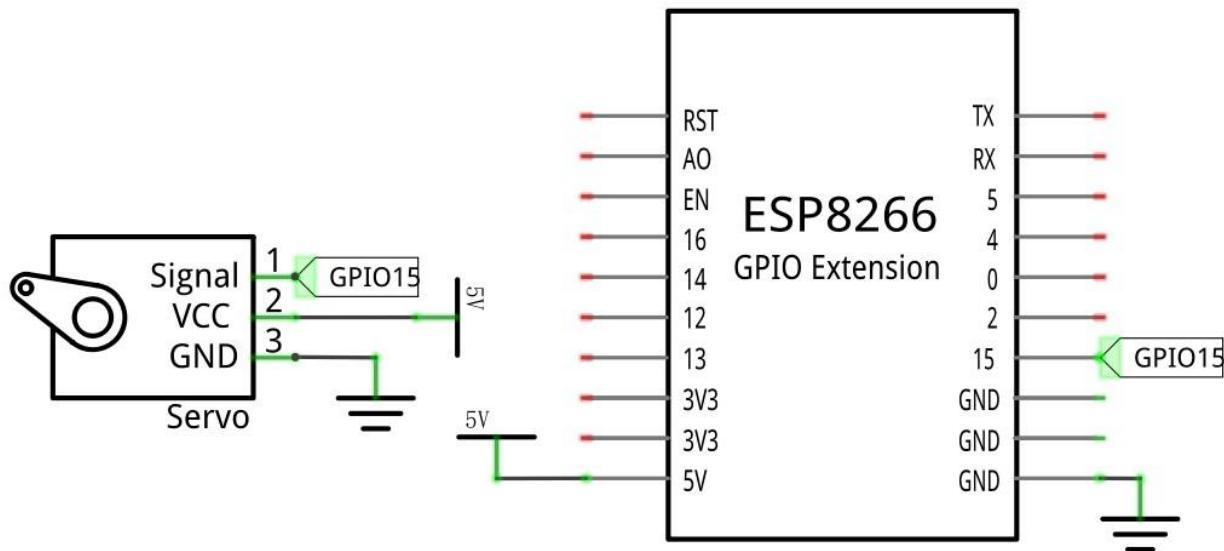
High level time	Servo angle
0.5ms	0 degree
1ms	45 degree
1.5ms	0 degree
2ms	45 degree
2.5ms	180 degree

When you change the Servo signal value, the Servo will rotate to the designated angle.

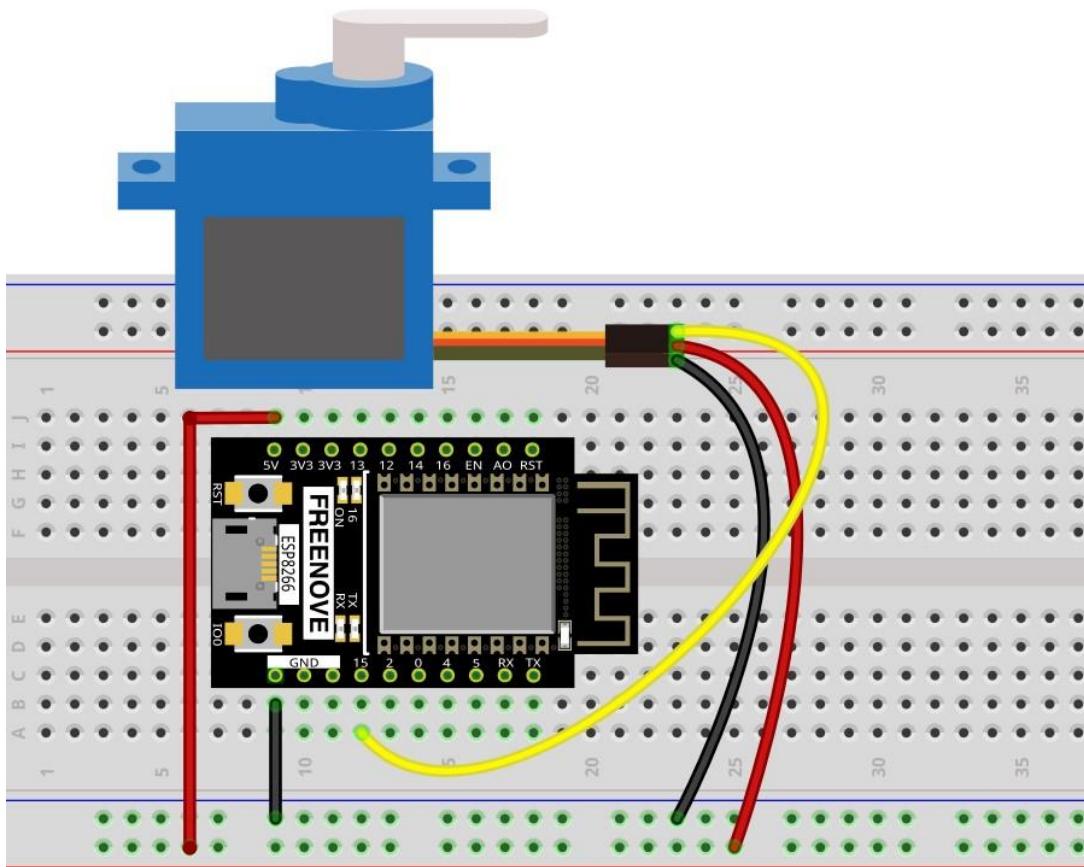
## Circuit

Use caution when supplying power to the Servo, it should be 5V. Make sure you do not make any errors when connecting the Servo to the power supply.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



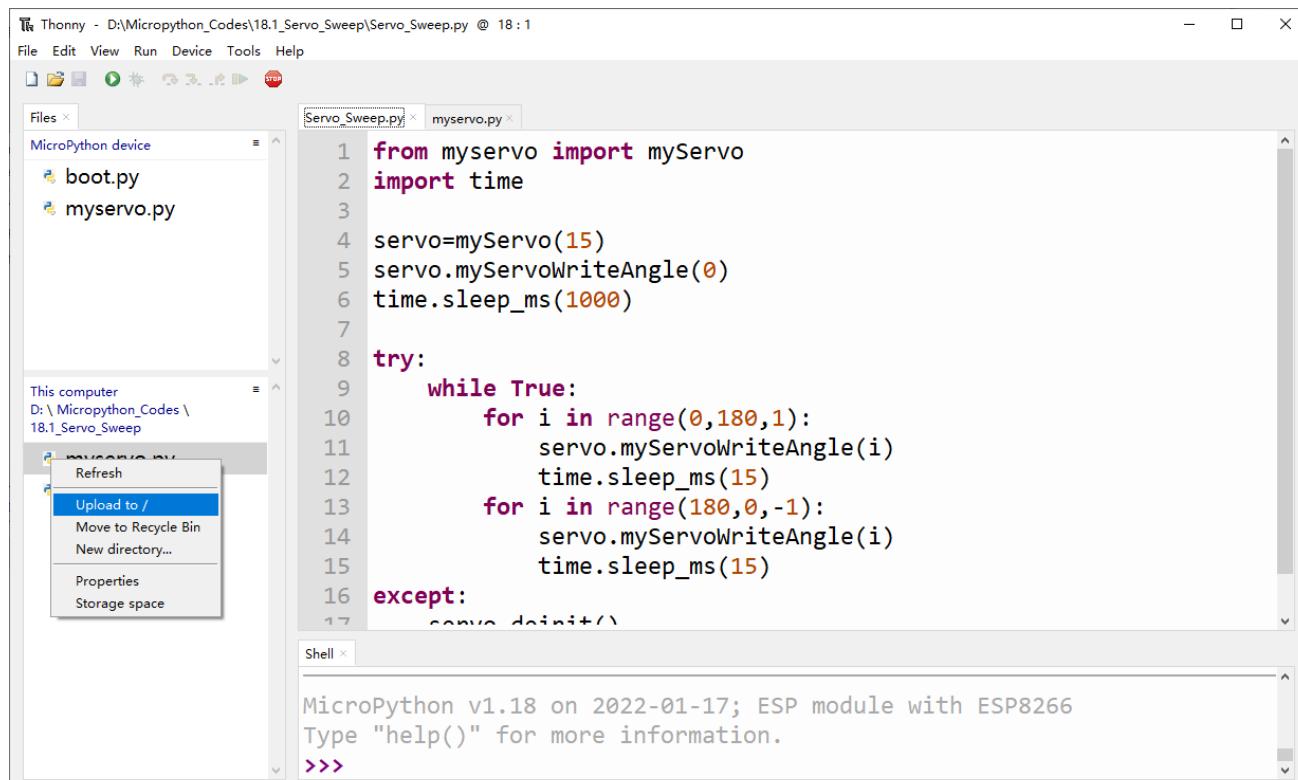
Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “18.1\_Servo\_Sweep”. Select “myservo.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “myservo.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Servo\_Sweep.py”.

### 18.1\_Servo\_Sweep



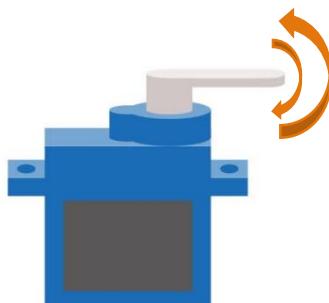
The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The title bar says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\18.1\_Servo\_Sweep\Servo\_Sweep.py @ 18 : 1". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The toolbar has icons for file operations like Open, Save, and Run. The left sidebar shows a "Files" tree with "MicroPython device" expanded, showing files "boot.py" and "myservo.py". Below it, "This computer" shows a folder "D:\ Micropython\_Codes\18.1\_Servo\_Sweep". A context menu is open over this folder with options: "Upload to /" (highlighted in blue), "Move to Recycle Bin", and "New directory...". Other options like "Properties" and "Storage space" are also visible. The main code editor window contains the following Python code:

```

1 from myservo import myServo
2 import time
3
4 servo=myServo(15)
5 servo.myServoWriteAngle(0)
6 time.sleep_ms(1000)
7
8 try:
9     while True:
10         for i in range(0,180,1):
11             servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
12             time.sleep_ms(15)
13         for i in range(180,0,-1):
14             servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
15             time.sleep_ms(15)
16     except:
17         servo.stop()
    
```

The bottom shell window shows the MicroPython prompt: "MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266" and "Type "help()" for more information." The shell prompt is ">>>".

Click “Run current script”, the Servo will rotate from 0 degrees to 180 degrees and then reverse the direction to make it rotate from 180 degrees to 0 degrees and repeat these actions in an endless loop.



The following is the program code:

```

1  from myservo import myServo
2  import time
3
4  servo=myServo(15)
5  servo.myServoWriteAngle(0)
6  time.sleep_ms(1000)
7
8  try:
9      while True:
10         for i in range(0, 180, 1):
11             servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
12             time.sleep_ms(15)
13         for i in range(180, 0, -1):
14             servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
15             time.sleep_ms(15)
16     except:
17         servo.deinit()

```

Import myservo module.

```
1  from myservo import myServo
```

Initialize pins of the servo and set the starting point of the servo to 0 degree.

```

4  servo=myServo(15)
5  servo.myServoWriteAngle(0)
6  time.sleep_ms(1000)

```

Control the servo to rotate to a specified angle within the range of 0-180 degrees.

```
11  servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
```

Use two for loops. The first one controls the servo to rotate from 0 degree to 180 degrees while the other controls it to rotate back from 180 degrees to 0 degree.

```

10     for i in range(0, 180, 1):
11         servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
12         time.sleep_ms(15)
13     for i in range(180, 0, -1):
14         servo.myServoWriteAngle(i)
15         time.sleep_ms(15)

```

## Reference

```
class myServo
```

Before each use of **myServo**, please make sure myservo.py has been uploaded to “/” of ESP8266, and then add the statement “**from myservo import myServo**” to the top of the python file.

**myServo ()**: The object that controls the servo, with the default pin Pin(15), default frequency 50Hz and default duty cycle 512.

**myServoWriteDuty(duty)**: The function that writes duty cycle to control the servo.

**duty**: Range from 26 to 128, with 26 corresponding to the servo's 0 degree and 128 corresponding to 180 degrees.

**myServoWriteAngle(pos)**: Function that writes angle value to control the servo.

**pos**: Ranging from 0-180, corresponding the 0-180 degrees of the servo.

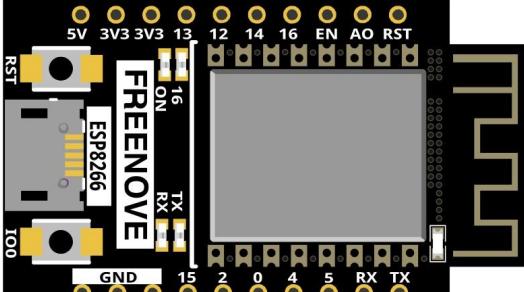
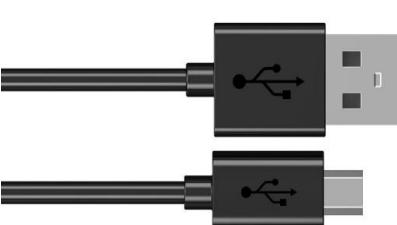
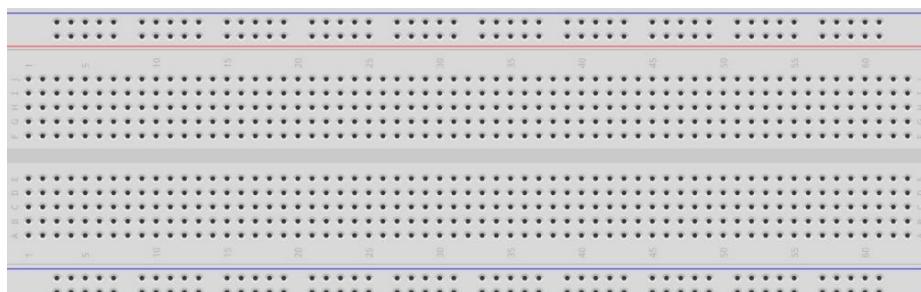
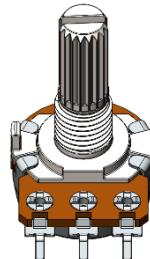
**myServoWriteTime(us)**: Writes time to control the servo.

**us**: Range from 500-2500, with 500 corresponding to the servo's 0 degree and 2500 corresponding to 180 degrees.

## Project 18.2 Servo Knop

Use a potentiometer to control the servo motor to rotate at any angle.

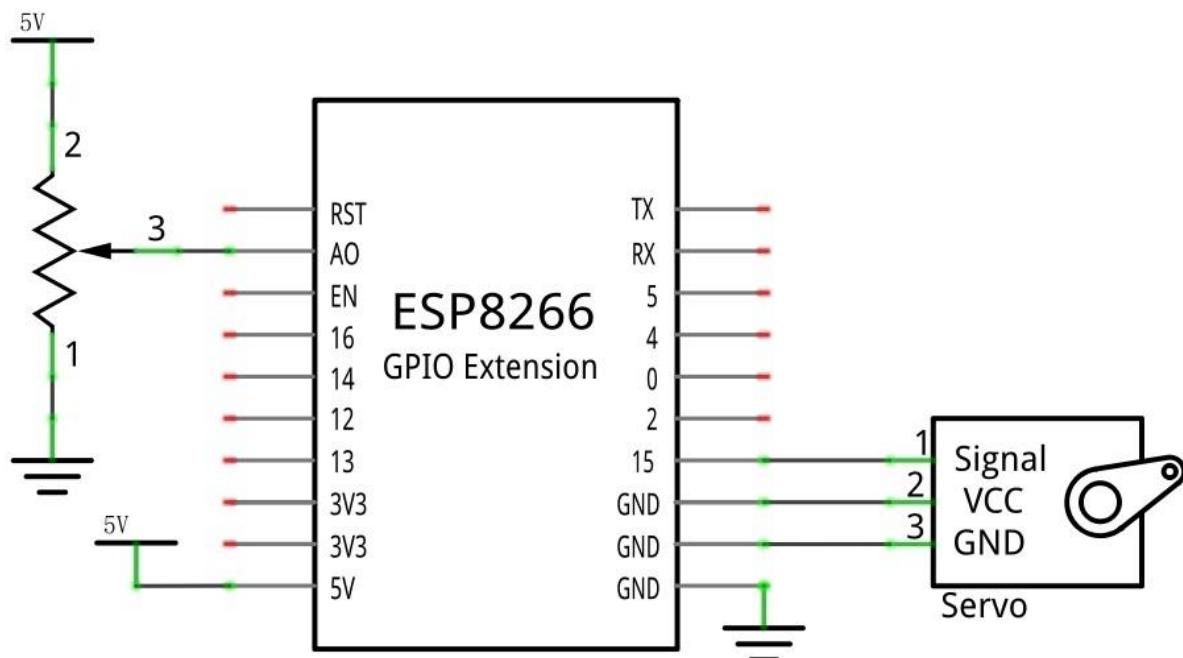
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
		
Servo x1	Jumper wire M/M x10	Rotary potentiometer x1
		

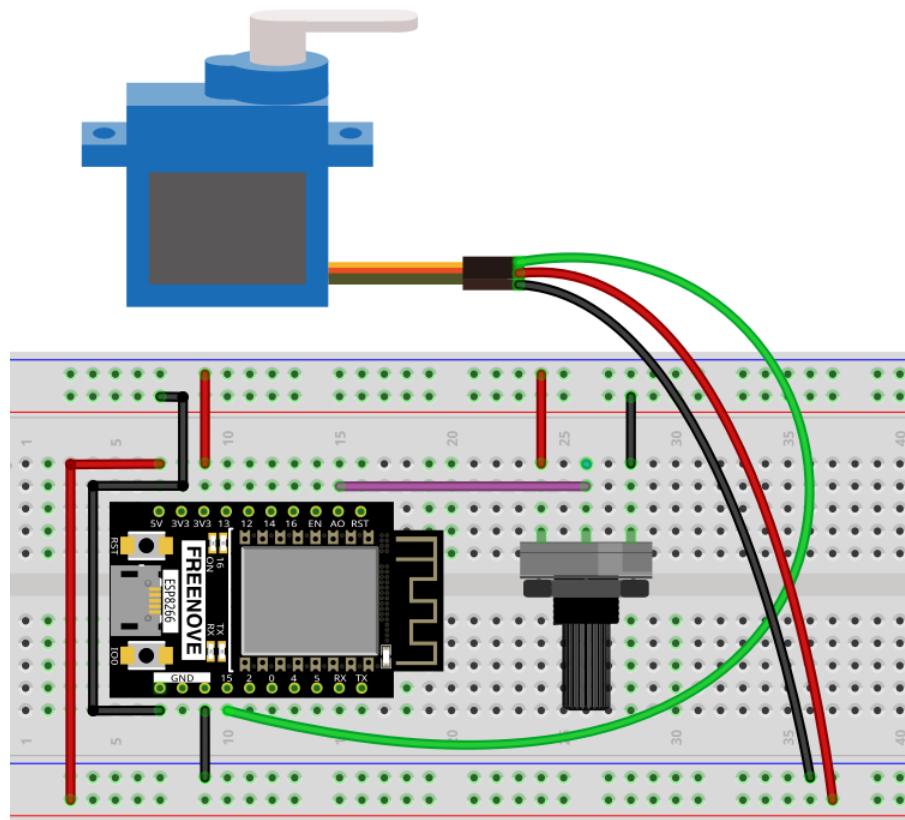
## Circuit

Use caution when supplying power to the Servo, it should be 5V. Make sure you do not make any errors when connecting the Servo to the power supply.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



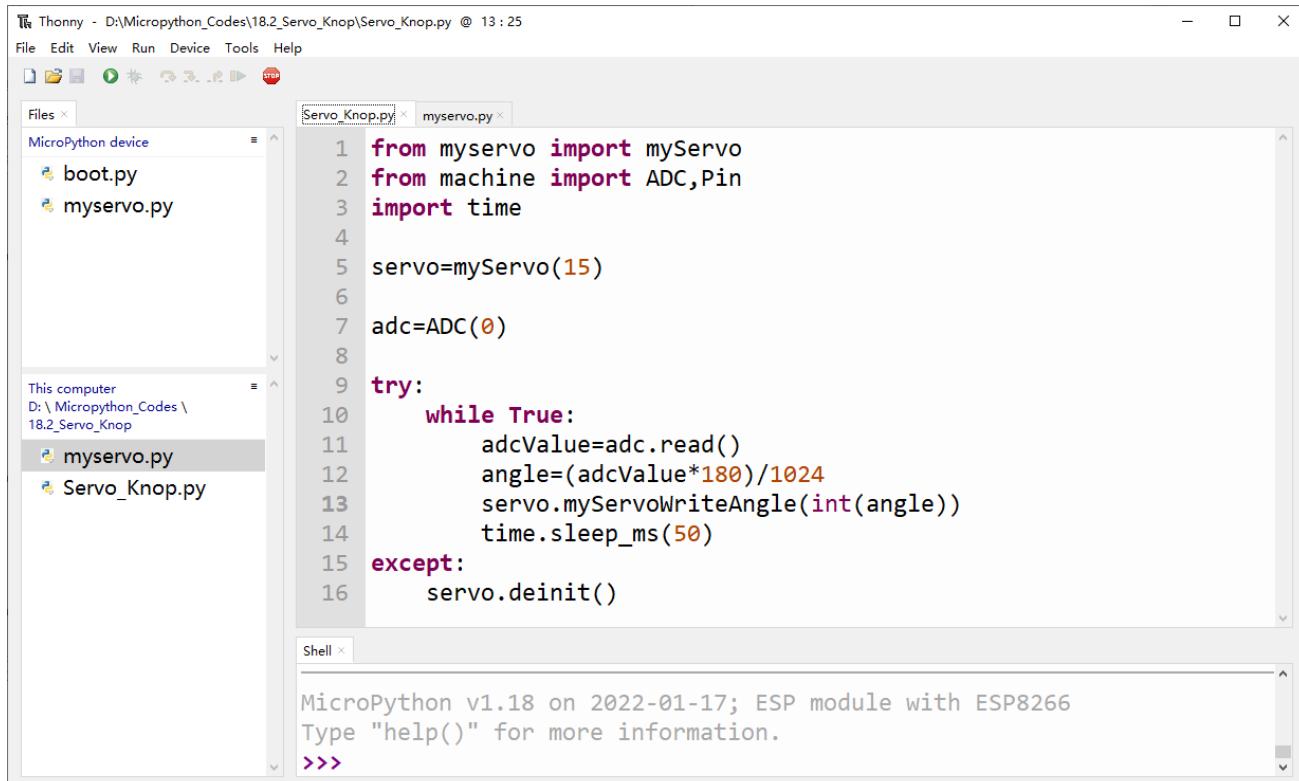
Any concerns? [✉ support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “18.2\_Servo\_Knop”. Select “myservo.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “myservo.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Servo\_Knop.py”.

### 18.2\_Servo\_Knop



```

from myservo import myServo
from machine import ADC,Pin
import time

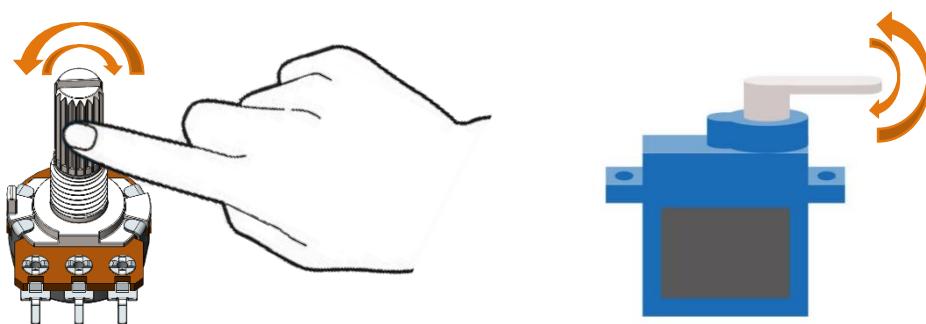
servo=myServo(15)

adc=ADC(0)

try:
    while True:
        adcValue=adc.read()
        angle=(adcValue*180)/1024
        servo.myServoWriteAngle(int(angle))
        time.sleep_ms(50)
except:
    servo.deinit()

```

Click “Run current script”, twist the potentiometer back and forth, and the servo motor rotates accordingly.



The following is the program code:

```
1  from myservo import myServo
2  from machine import ADC, Pin
3  import time
4
5  servo=myServo(15)
6
7  adc=ADC(0)
8
9  try:
10     while True:
11         adcValue=adc.read()
12         angle=(adcValue*180)/1024
13         servo.myServoWriteAngle(int(angle))
14         time.sleep_ms(50)
15     except:
16         servo.deinit()
```

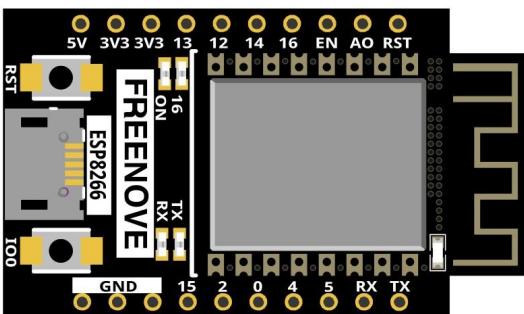
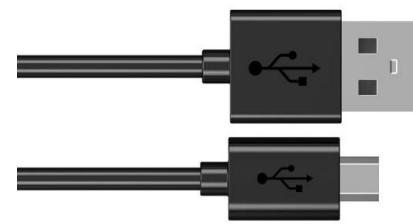
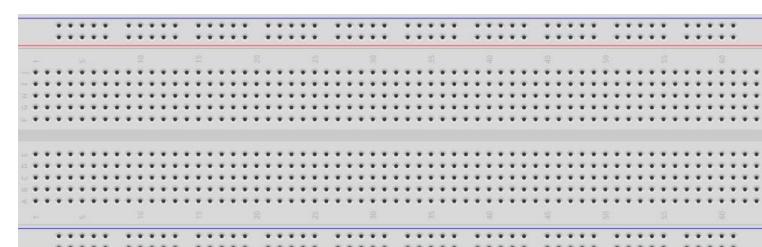
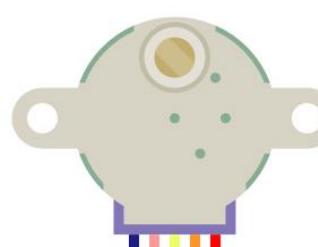
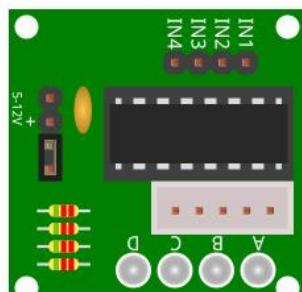
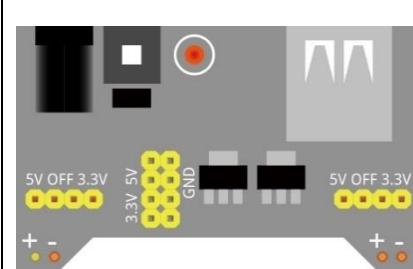
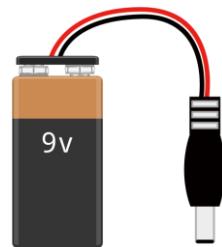
In this project, we will use ADC0 of ESP8266 to read the ADC value of the rotary potentiometer and then convert it to the angle value required by the servo and control the servo to rotate to the corresponding angle.

# Chapter 19 Stepper Motor

In this project, we will learn how to drive a Stepper Motor, and understand its working principle.

## Project 19.1 Stepping Motor

### Component List

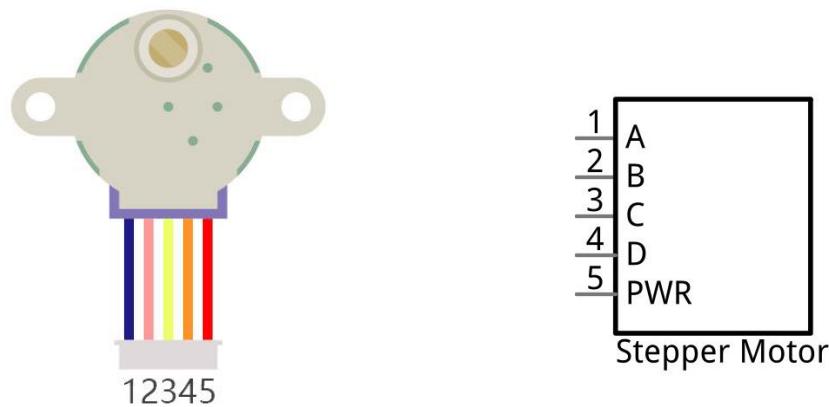
ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
		
Stepping Motor x1	ULN2003 Stepper motorDriver x1	Jumper wire F/M x8
		
Breadboard Power module x1	9V battery (prepared by yourself) & battery line	
		

Any concerns? [✉ support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

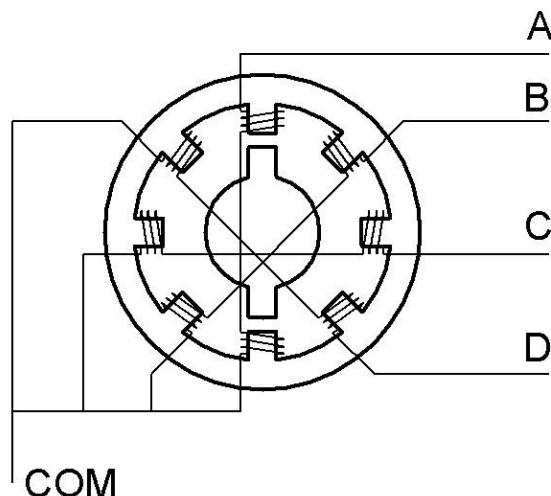
## Component knowledge

### Stepper Motor x1

Stepper Motors are an open-loop control device, which converts an electronic pulse signal into angular displacement or linear displacement. In a non-overload condition, the speed of the motor and the location of the stops depend only on the pulse signal frequency as well as the number of pulses and are not affected by changes in load as with a DC Motor. A small Four-Phase Deceleration Stepper Motor is shown here:

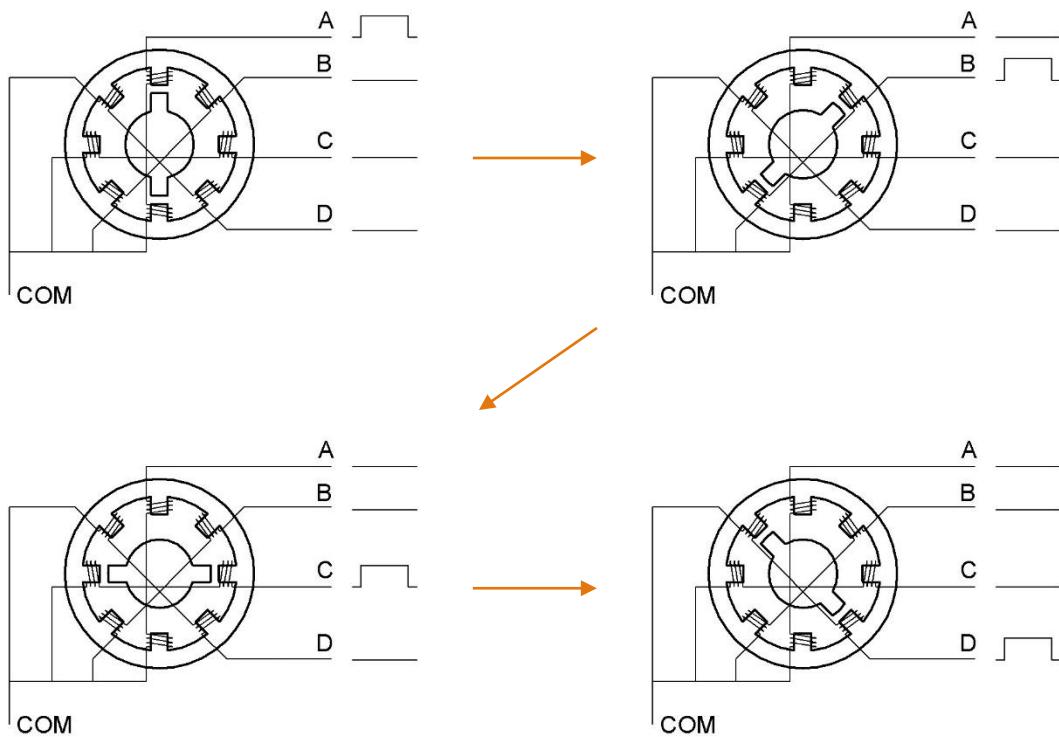


The electronic schematic diagram of a Four-Phase Stepper Motor is shown below:



The outside case or housing of the Stepper Motor is the Stator and inside the Stator is the Rotor. There are a specific number of individual coils, usually an integer multiple of the number of phases the motor has, when the Stator is powered ON, an electromagnetic field will be formed to attract a corresponding convex diagonal groove or indentation in the Rotor's surface. The Rotor is usually made of iron or a permanent magnet. Therefore, the Stepper Motor can be driven by powering the coils on the Stator in an ordered sequence (producing a series of "steps" or stepped movements).

A common driving process is as follows:



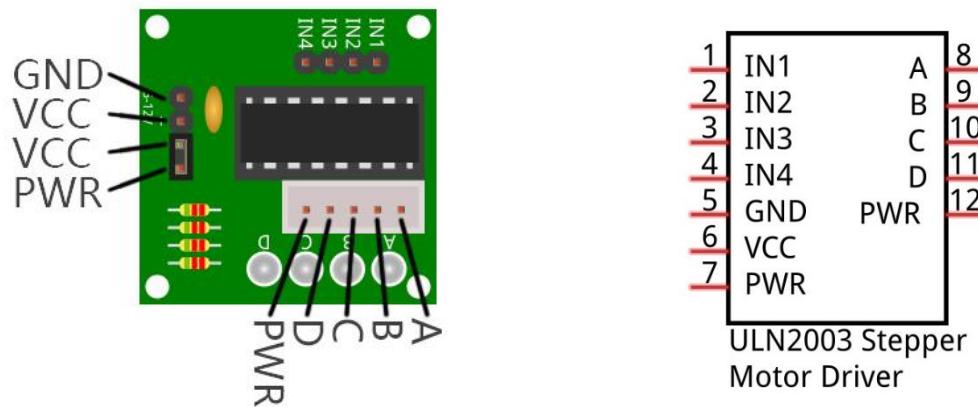
In the course above, the stepping motor rotates a certain angle once, which is called a step. By controlling the number of rotation steps, you can control the stepping motor rotation angle. By controlling the time between two steps, you can control the stepping motor rotation speed. When rotating clockwise, the order of coil powered on is: A→B→C→D→A→…… . And the rotor will rotate in accordance with the order, step by step down, called four steps four pats. If the coils is powered on in the reverse order, D→C→B→A→D→… , the rotor will rotate in anti-clockwise direction.

There are other methods to control Stepper Motors, such as: connect A phase, then connect A B phase, the stator will be located in the center of A B, which is called a half-step. This method can improve the stability of the Stepper Motor and reduces noise. The sequence of powering the coils looks like this: A→ AB→B →BC→C →CD→D→DA→A→……, the rotor will rotate in accordance to this sequence at a half-step at a time, called four-steps, eight-part. Conversely, if the coils are powered ON in the reverse order the Stepper Motor will rotate in the opposite direction.

The stator in the Stepper Motor we have supplied has 32 magnetic poles. Therefore, to complete one full revolution requires 32 full steps. The rotor (or output shaft) of the Stepper Motor is connected to a speed reduction set of gears and the reduction ratio is 1:64. Therefore, the final output shaft (exiting the Stepper Motor's housing) requires  $32 \times 64 = 2048$  steps to make one full revolution.

### ULN2003 Stepping motor driver

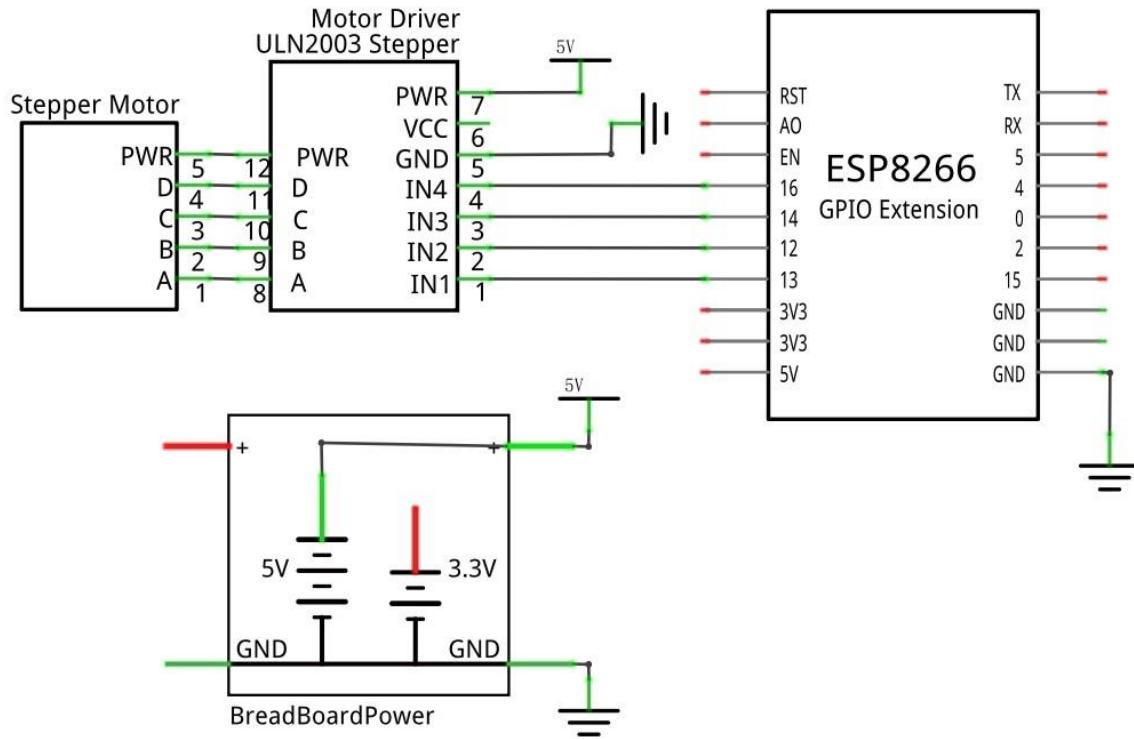
A ULN2003 Stepper Motor Driver is used to convert weak signals into more powerful control signals in order to drive the Stepper Motor. In the illustration below, the input signal IN1-IN4 corresponds to the output signal A-D, and 4 LEDs are integrated into the board to indicate the state of these signals. The PWR interface can be used as a power supply for the Stepper Motor. By default, PWR and VCC are connected.



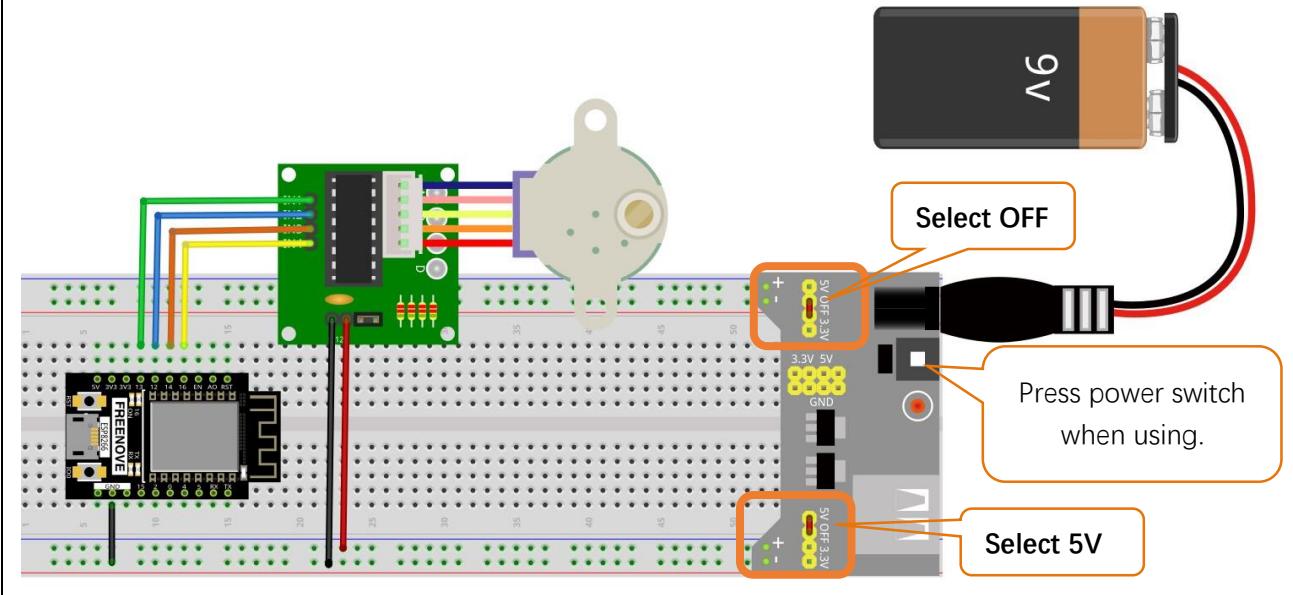
## Circuit

When building the circuit, note that rated voltage of the Stepper Motor is 5V, and we need to use the Breadboard power supply independently. Additionally, the Breadboard power supply needs to share Ground with ESP8266.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

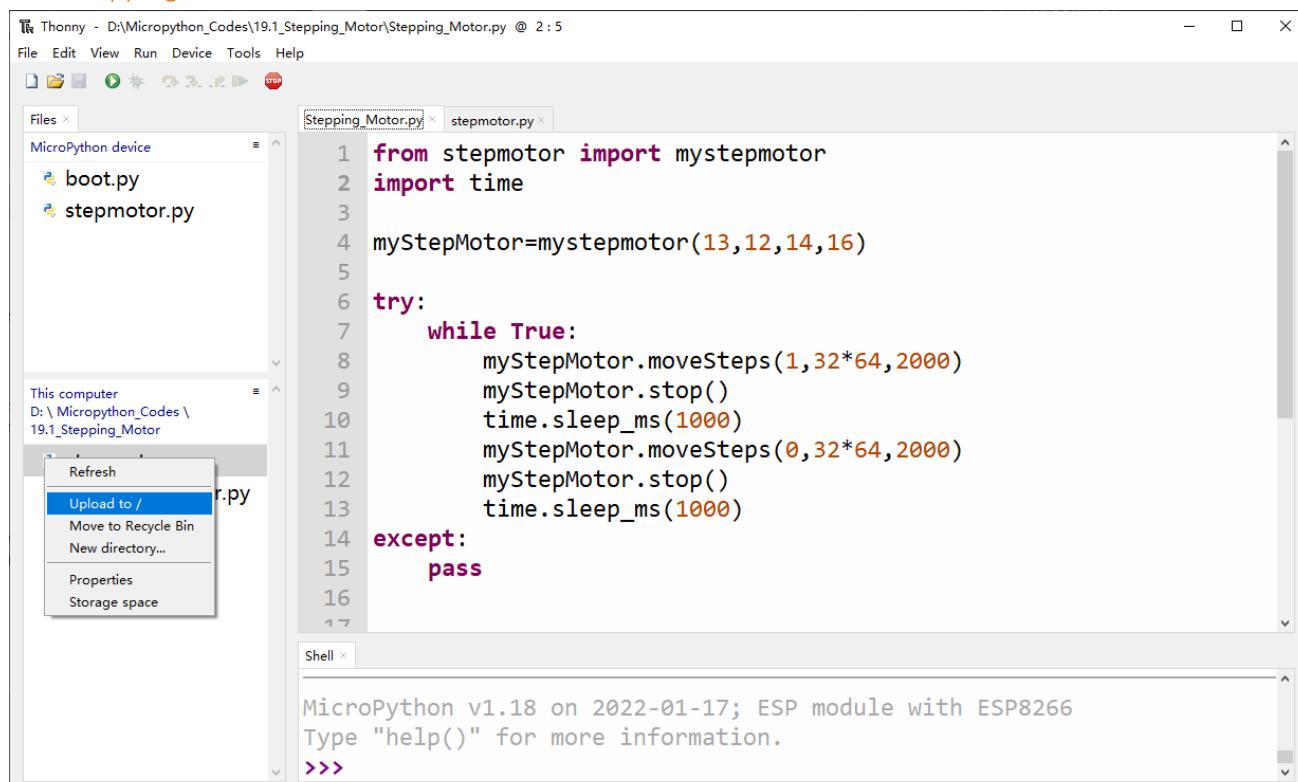
## Code

This code uses the four-step, four-part mode to drive the Stepper Motor in the clockwise and anticlockwise directions.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “19.1\_Stepping\_Motor”. Select “stepmotor.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “myservo.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Stepping\_Motor.py”.

### 19.1\_Stepping\_Motor



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The left sidebar shows a file tree with a MicroPython device section containing boot.py and stepmotor.py, and a This computer section showing D:\ Micropython\_Codes\19.1\_Stepping\_Motor. A context menu is open over stepmotor.py with options Refresh, Upload to / (which is highlighted in blue), Move to Recycle Bin, New directory..., Properties, and Storage space. The main workspace contains two tabs: Stepping\_Motor.py and stepmotor.py. The Stepping\_Motor.py tab displays the following Python code:

```

1 from stepmotor import mystepmotor
2 import time
3
4 myStepMotor=mystepmotor(13,12,14,16)
5
6 try:
7     while True:
8         myStepMotor.moveSteps(1,32*64,2000)
9         myStepMotor.stop()
10        time.sleep_ms(1000)
11        myStepMotor.moveSteps(0,32*64,2000)
12        myStepMotor.stop()
13        time.sleep_ms(1000)
14 except:
15     pass
16

```

The stepmotor.py tab shows the output of the MicroPython interpreter in the Shell:

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

Click “Run current script”, the stepper motor will rotate 360° clockwise and stop for 1s, and then rotate 360° anticlockwise and stop for 1s. And it will repeat this action in an endless loop.





The following is the program code:

```
1 from stepmotor import mystepmotor
2 import time
3
4 myStepMotor=mystepmotor(13, 12, 14, 16)
5
6 try:
7     while True:
8         myStepMotor.moveSteps(1, 32*64, 2000)
9         myStepMotor.stop()
10        time.sleep_ms(1000)
11        myStepMotor.moveSteps(0, 32*64, 2000)
12        myStepMotor.stop()
13        time.sleep_ms(1000)
14 except:
15     pass
```

Import time and stepmotor modules.

```
1 from stepmotor import mystepmotor
2 import time
```

In this project, we define four pins to drive the stepper motor.

```
4 myStepMotor=mystepmotor(13, 12, 14, 16)
```

Call the function moveSteps to control the stepper motor to rotate for 360° and then call function stop() to stop it.

```
8     myStepMotor.moveSteps(1, 32*64, 2000)
9     myStepMotor.stop()
```

Repeatedly control the stepmotor to rotate 360° clockwise and then rotate 360° anti-clockwise.

```
7     while True:
8         myStepMotor.moveSteps(1, 32*64, 2000)
9         myStepMotor.stop()
10        time.sleep_ms(1000)
11        myStepMotor.moveSteps(0, 32*64, 2000)
12        myStepMotor.stop()
13        time.sleep_ms(1000)
```

## Reference

```
class myServo
```

Before each use of the object **mysteppmotor**, please make sure that stepmotor.py has been uploaded to "/" of ESP8266, and then add the statement "**from stepmotor import mysteppmotor**" to the top of the python file.

**mysteppmotor()**: The object to control the stepper motor. The default control pins are Pin(13), Pin(12), Pin(14) and Pin(16).

**moveSteps(direction,steps,us)**: Control the stepper motor to rotate a specified number of steps.

**direction**: The rotation direction of stepper motor.

**Steps**: Rotation steps of the stepper motor.

**us**: Time required by the stepper motor to rotate for one step.

**moveAround(direction,turns,us)**: Control the stepper motor to rotate a specific number of turns.

**Turns**: Number of turns that the stepper motor rotates.

**moveAngle(direction,angles,us)**: Control the stepper motor to rotate a specific angle.

**Angles**: Rotation angles that the stepper motor rotates.

**stop()**: Stop the stepper motor.



# Chapter 20 LCD1602

In this chapter, we will learn about the LCD1602 Display Screen

## Project 20.1 LCD1602

In this section we learn how to use lcd1602 to display something.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
An ESP8266 module with a green PCB. It has several pins labeled: 5V, 3V3, 3V3, 13, RST, ON, 16, TX, RX, GND, 15, 2, 0, 4, 5, RX, TX. The word 'FREENOVE' is printed on the PCB.	Two standard USB cables, one male and one female, used for power and data connection.
Breadboard x1	A breadboard with a grid of 40 columns and 24 rows of holes for component placement.
LCD1602 Module x1	Jumper wire F/M x6

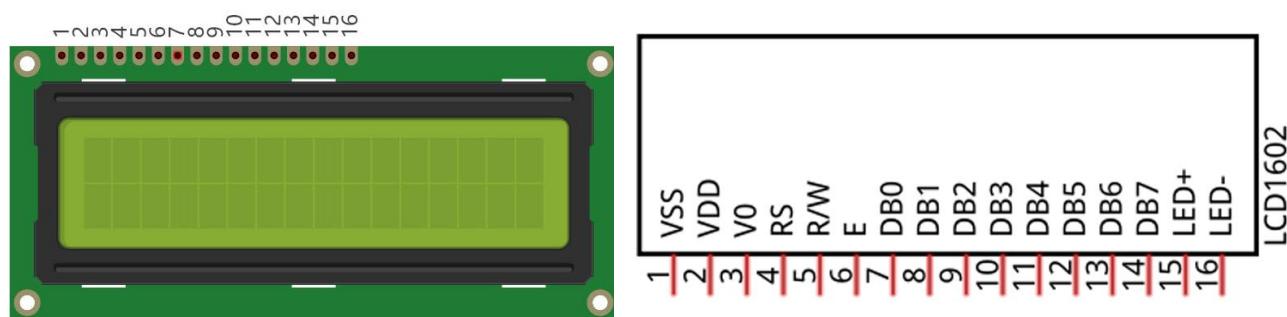
## Component knowledge

### I2C communication

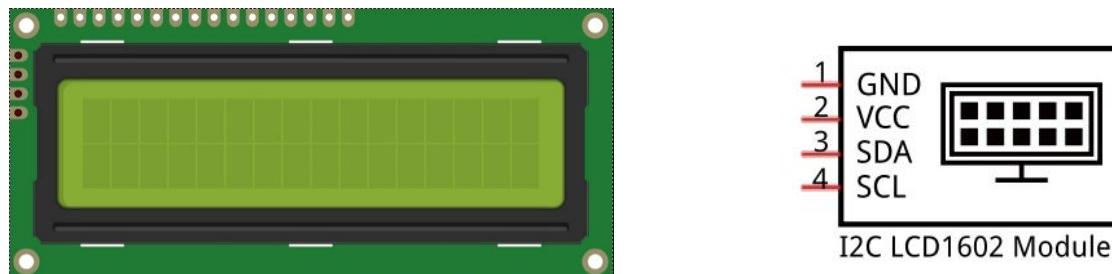
I2C (Inter-Integrated Circuit) is a two-wire serial communication mode, which can be used for the connection of micro controllers and their peripheral equipment. Devices using I2C communication must be connected to the serial data (SDA) line, and serial clock (SCL) line (called I2C bus). Each device has a unique address and can be used as a transmitter or receiver to communicate with devices connected to the bus.

### LCD1602 communication

The LCD1602 Display Screen can display 2 lines of characters in 16 columns. It is capable of displaying numbers, letters, symbols, ASCII code and so on. As shown below is a monochrome LCD1602 Display Screen along with its circuit pin diagram

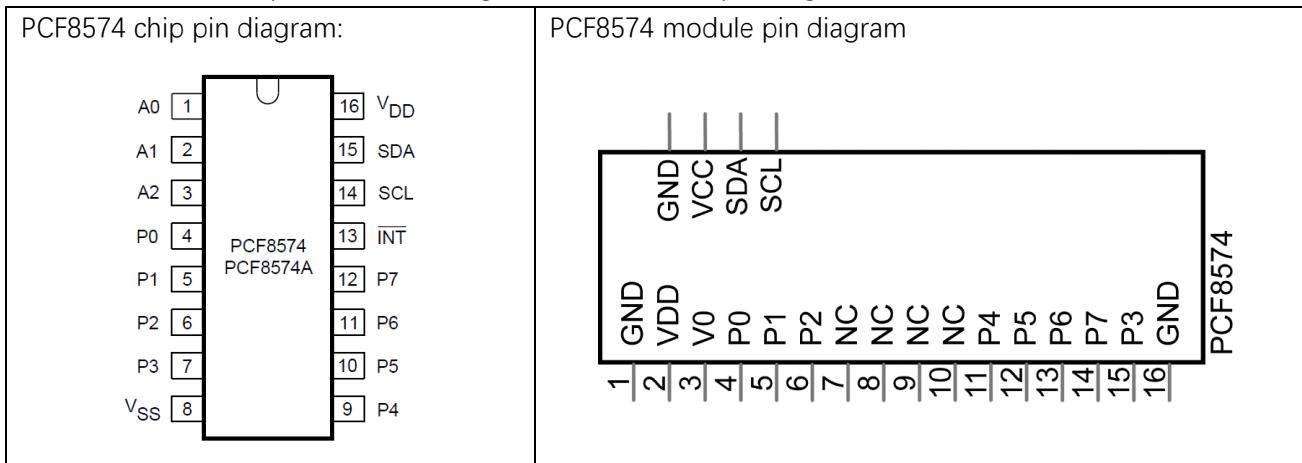


I2C LCD1602 Display Screen integrates an I2C interface, which connects the serial-input & parallel-output module to the LCD1602 Display Screen. This allows us to use only 4 lines to operate the LCD1602.

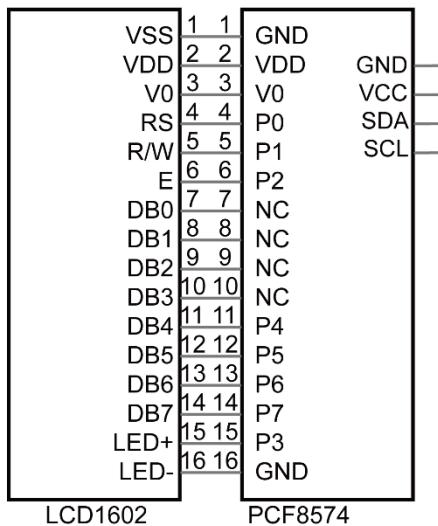


The serial-to-parallel IC chip used in this module is PCF8574T (PCF8574AT), and its default I2C address is 0x27(0x3F).

Below is the PCF8574 pin schematic diagram and the block pin diagram:



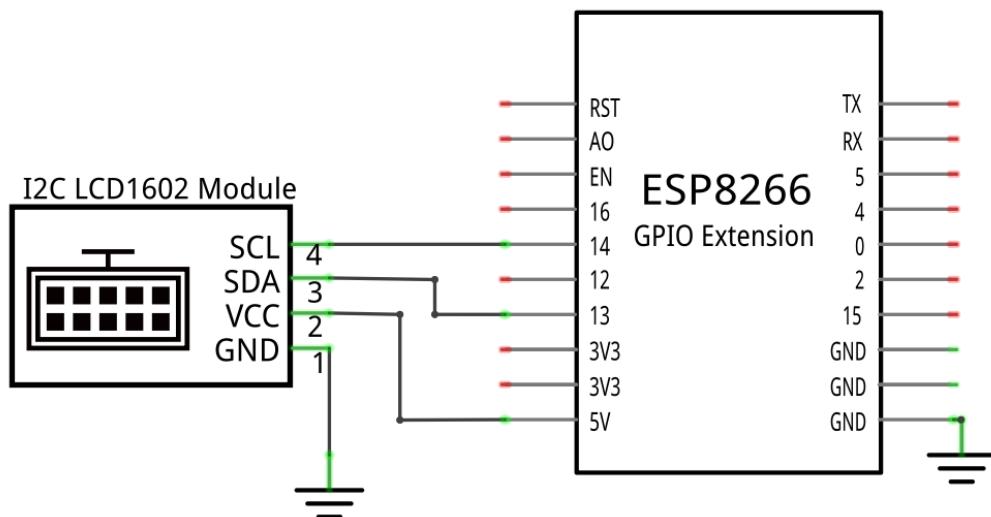
PCF8574 module pin and LCD1602 pin are corresponding to each other and connected with each other:



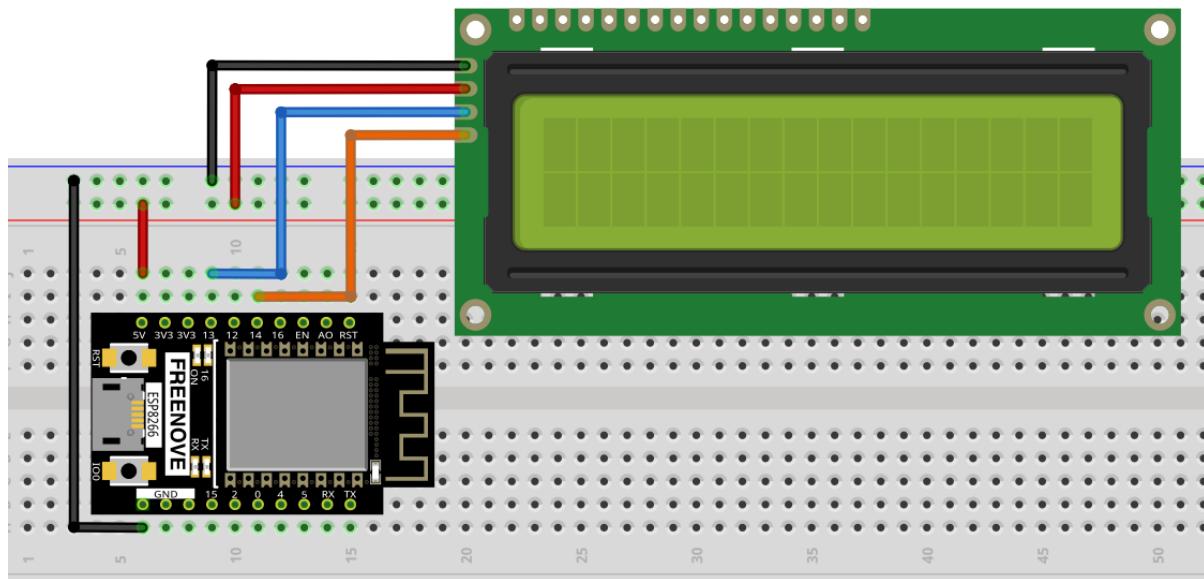
So we only need 4 pins to control the 16 pins of the LCD1602 Display Screen through the I2C interface. In this project, we will use the I2C LCD1602 to display some static characters and dynamic variables.

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

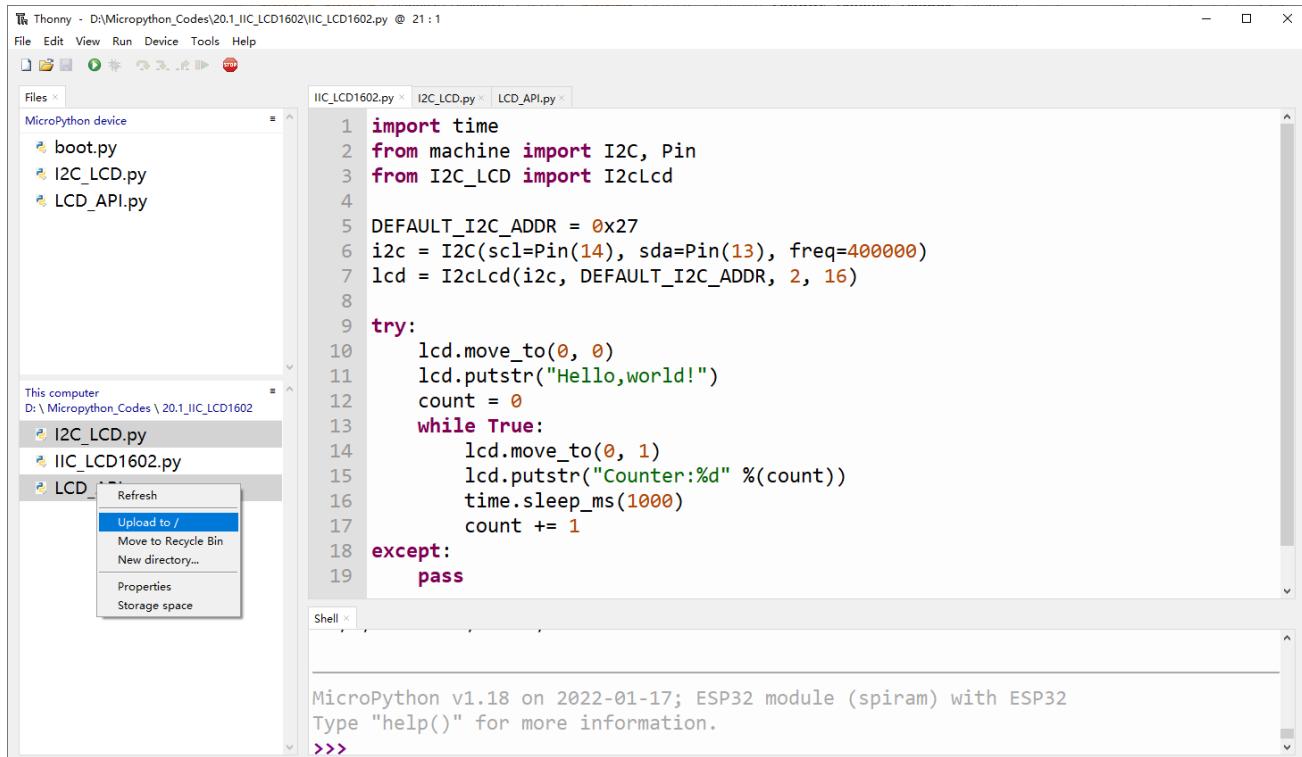


## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “20.1\_I2C\_LCD1602”. Select “I2C\_LCD.py”and “LCD\_API.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “I2C\_LCD.py” and “LCD\_API.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “I2C\_LCD1602.py”.

### 20.1\_I2C\_LCD1602



```

import time
from machine import I2C, Pin
from I2C_LCD import I2cLcd

DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR = 0x27
i2c = I2C(scl=Pin(14), sda=Pin(13), freq=400000)
lcd = I2cLcd(i2c, DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR, 2, 16)

try:
    lcd.move_to(0, 0)
    lcd.putstr("Hello,world!")
    count = 0
    while True:
        lcd.move_to(0, 1)
        lcd.putstr("Counter:%d" %(count))
        time.sleep_ms(1000)
        count += 1
except:
    pass

```

Click “Run current script” and LCD1602 displays some characters.



If you cannot see anything on the display or the display is not clear, try rotating the white knob on back of LCD1602 slowly, which adjusts the contrast, until the screen can display clearly.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from machine import I2C, Pin
3 from I2C_LCD import I2cLcd
4
5 DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR = 0x27
6 i2c = I2C(scl=Pin(14), sda=Pin(13), freq=400000)
7 lcd = I2cLcd(i2c, DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR, 2, 16)
8
9 try:
10     lcd.move_to(0, 0)
11     lcd.putstr("Hello, world!")
12     count = 0
13     while True:
14         lcd.move_to(0, 1)
15         lcd.putstr("Counter:%d" %(count))
16         time.sleep_ms(1000)
17         count += 1
18     except:
19         pass

```

Import time, I2C and I2C\_LCD modules.

```

1 import time
2 from machine import I2C, Pin
3 from I2C_LCD import I2cLcd

```

Instantiate the I2C LCD1602 screen. It should be noted here that if your LCD driver chip uses PCF8574T, set the I2C address to 0x27, and if uses PCF8574AT, set the I2C address to 0x3F.

```
5 DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR = 0x27
```

Initialize I2C pins and associate them with I2CLCD module, and then set the number of rows and columns for LCD1602.

```

6 i2c = I2C(scl=Pin(14), sda=Pin(13), freq=400000)
7 lcd = I2cLcd(i2c, DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR, 2, 16)

```

Move the cursor of LCD1602 to the first row, first column, and print out "Hello, world!"

```

10 lcd.move_to(0, 0)
11 lcd.putstr("Hello, world!")

```



The second line of LCD1602 continuously prints the number of seconds after the ESP8266 program runs.

```
13     while True:  
14         lcd.move_to(0, 1)  
15         lcd.putstr("Counter:%d" %(count))  
16         time.sleep_ms(1000)  
17         count += 1
```

### Reference

#### Class I2cLcd

Before each use of the object **I2cLcd**, please make sure that **I2C\_LCD.py** and **LCD\_API.py** have been uploaded to “/” of ESP8266, and then add the statement “**from I2C\_LCD import I2cLcd**” to the top of the python file.

**clear()**: Clear the LCD1602 screen display.

**show\_cursor()**: Show the cursor of LCD1602.

**hide\_cursor()**: Hide the cursor of LCD1602.

**blink\_cursor\_on()**: Turn on cursor blinking.

**blink\_cursor\_off()**: Turn off cursor blinking.

**display\_on()**: Turn on the display function of LCD1602.

**display\_off()**: Turn on the display function of LCD1602.

**backlight\_on()**: Turn on the backlight of LCD1602.

**backlight\_off()**: Turn on the backlight of LCD1602.

**move\_to(cursor\_x, cursor\_y)**: Move the cursor to a specified position.

**cursor\_x**: Column cursor\_x

**cursor\_y**: Row cursor\_y

**putchar(char)**: Print the character in the bracket on LCD1602

**putstr(string)**: Print the string in the bracket on LCD1602.

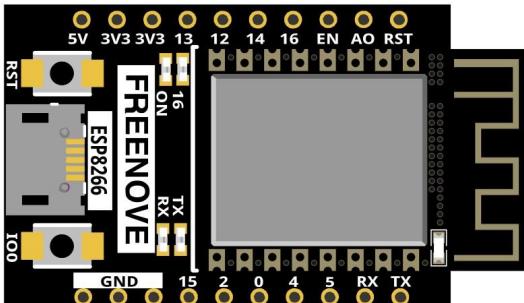
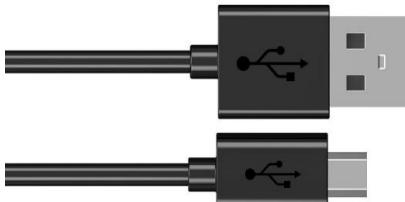
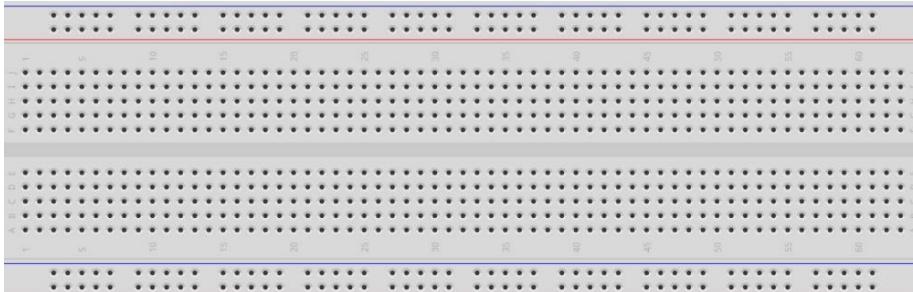
# Chapter 21 Ultrasonic Ranging

In this chapter, we learn a module which use ultrasonic to measure distance, HC SR04.

## Project 21.1 Ultrasonic Ranging

In this project, we use ultrasonic ranging module to measure distance, and print out the data in the terminal.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire F/M x6	HC SR04 x1 

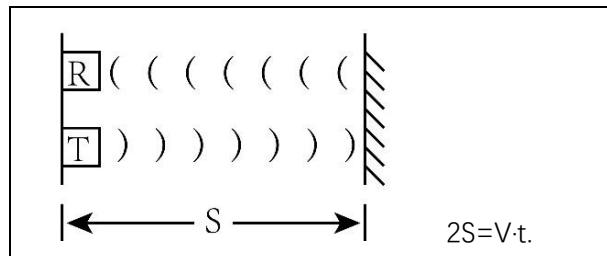
### Component Knowledge

The Ultrasonic Ranging Module uses the principle that ultrasonic waves will reflect when they encounter any

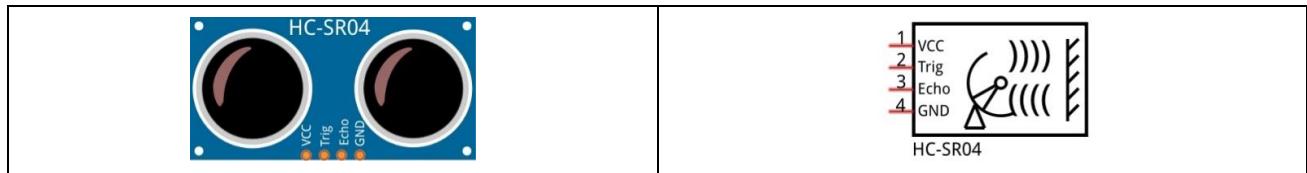
Any concerns? [✉ support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



obstacles. This is possible by counting the time interval between when the ultrasonic wave is transmitted to when the ultrasonic wave reflects back after encountering an obstacle. Time interval counting will end after an ultrasonic wave is received, and the time difference (delta) is the total time of the ultrasonic wave's journey from being transmitted to being received. Because the speed of sound in air is a constant, and is about  $v=340\text{m/s}$ , we can calculate the distance between the Ultrasonic Ranging Module and the obstacle:  $s=vt/2$ .



The HC-SR04 Ultrasonic Ranging Module integrates both an ultrasonic transmitter and a receiver. The transmitter is used to convert electrical signals (electrical energy) into high frequency (beyond human hearing) sound waves (mechanical energy) and the function of the receiver is opposite of this. The picture and the diagram of the HC SR04 Ultrasonic Ranging Module are shown below:



Pin description:

Pin	Description
VCC	power supply pin
Trig	trigger pin
Echo	Echo pin
GND	GND

#### Technical specs:

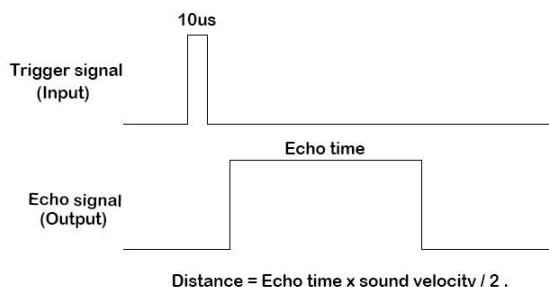
Working voltage: 5V

Working current: 12mA

Minimum measured distance: 2cm

Maximum measured distance: 200cm

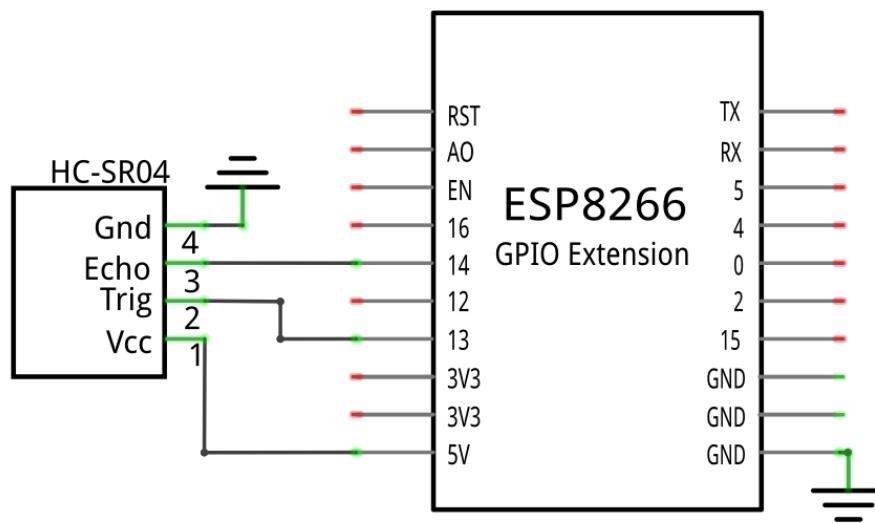
Instructions for Use: output a high-level pulse in Trig pin lasting for least 10us, the module begins to transmit ultrasonic waves. At the same time, the Echo pin is pulled up. When the module receives the returned ultrasonic waves from encountering an obstacle, the Echo pin will be pulled down. The duration of high level in the Echo pin is the total time of the ultrasonic wave from transmitting to receiving,  $s=vt/2$ .



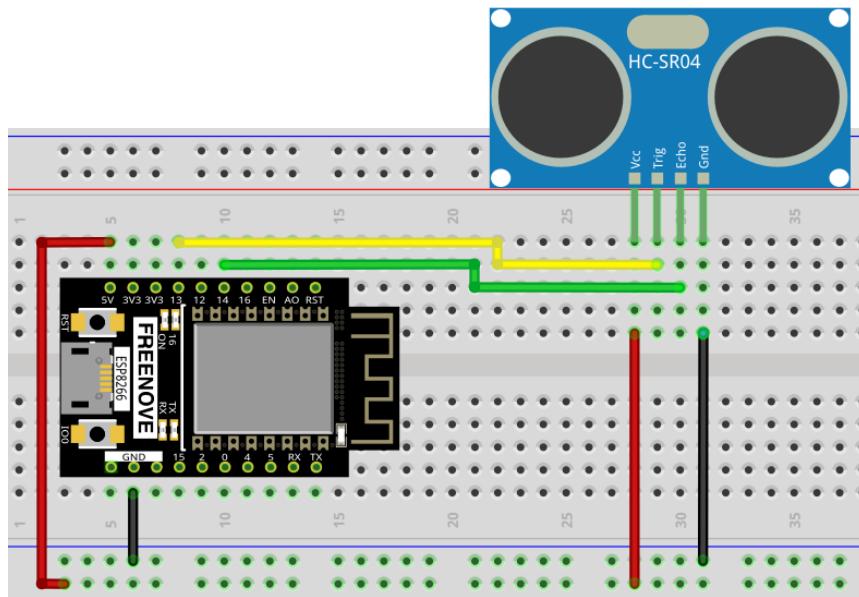
## Circuit

Note that the voltage of ultrasonic module is 5V in the circuit.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “21.1\_Ultrasonic\_Ranging” and double click “Ultrasonic\_Ranging.py”.

## 21.1\_Ultrasonic Ranging

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. The top menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, and Help. The left sidebar shows a file tree with 'boot.py' under 'MicroPython device' and 'Ultrasonic\_Ranging.py' under 'This computer'. The main window has two tabs: 'Ultrasonic\_Ranging.py' (containing Python code) and 'Shell'. The code defines a function 'getSonar()' that measures distance using ultrasonic pins 13 and 14. The shell tab shows the output of running the script, including the current coordinates (X, Y, Z) and the MicroPython version information.

```

from machine import Pin
import time

trigPin=Pin(13,Pin.OUT,0)
echoPin=Pin(14,Pin.IN,0)

soundVelocity=340
distance=0

def getSonar():
    trigPin.value(1)
    time.sleep_us(10)
    trigPin.value(0)
    while not echoPin.value():
        pass
    pingStart=time.ticks_us()
    while echoPin.value():
        pass
    pingStop=time.ticks_us()
    pingTime=time.ticks_diff(pingStop,pingStart)
    distance=pingTime*soundVelocity//2//10000
    return int(distance)

```

X,Y,Z: 4095 , 368 , 1

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32  
Type "help()" for more information.  
>>>

Click “Run current script”, you can use it to measure the distance between the ultrasonic module and the object. As shown in the following figure:

The screenshot shows the MicroPython Shell interface. It displays the MicroPython version (v1.12), the date (2019-12-20), and the ESP32 module information. The shell command '%Run -c \$EDITOR\_CONTENT' is run, followed by a series of 'Distance:' outputs in cm, ranging from 7 to 22.

```

MicroPython v1.12 on 2019-12-20; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

Distance: 14 cm
Distance: 15 cm
Distance: 18 cm
Distance: 21 cm
Distance: 22 cm
Distance: 14 cm
Distance: 9 cm
Distance: 7 cm
Distance: 7 cm
Distance: 12 cm

```

The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin
2  import time
3
4  trigPin=Pin(13,Pin.OUT,0)
5  echoPin=Pin(14,Pin.IN,0)
6
7  soundVelocity=340
8  distance=0
9
10 def getSonar():
11     trigPin.value(1)
12     time.sleep_us(10)
13     trigPin.value(0)
14     while not echoPin.value():
15         pass
16     pingStart=time.ticks_us()
17     while echoPin.value():
18         pass
19     pingStop=time.ticks_us()
20     pingTime=time.ticks_diff(pingStop,pingStart)
21     distance=pingTime*sounVelocity//2//10000
22     return int(distance)
23
24 time.sleep_ms(2000)
25 while True:
26     time.sleep_ms(500)
27     print('Distance: ',getSonar(),'cm')

```

Define the control pins of the ultrasonic ranging module.

```

4  trigPin=Pin(13,Pin.OUT,0)
5  echoPin=Pin(14,Pin.IN,0)

```

Set the speed of sound.

```

7  soundVelocity=340
8  distance=0

```

Subfunction `getSonar()` is used to start the Ultrasonic Module to begin measurements, and return the measured distance in centimeters. In this function, first let `trigPin` send 10us high level to start the Ultrasonic Module. Then use `pulseIn()` to read the Ultrasonic Module and return the duration time of high level. Finally, the measured distance according to the time is calculated.

```

10 def getSonar():
11     trigPin.value(1)
12     time.sleep_us(10)
13     trigPin.value(0)
14     while not echoPin.value():
15         pass

```

```
16 pingStart=time.ticks_us()
17 while echoPin.value():
18     pass
19 pingStop=time.ticks_us()
20 pingTime=time.ticks_diff(pingStop,pingStart)
21 distance=pingTime*soundVelocity//2//10000
22 return int(distance)
```

Delay for 2 seconds and wait for the ultrasonic module to stabilize. Print data obtained from ultrasonic module every 500 milliseconds

```
24 time.sleep_ms(2000)
25 while True:
26     time.sleep_ms(500)
27     print('Distance: ',getSonar(),'cm')
```

## Project 21.2 Ultrasonic Ranging

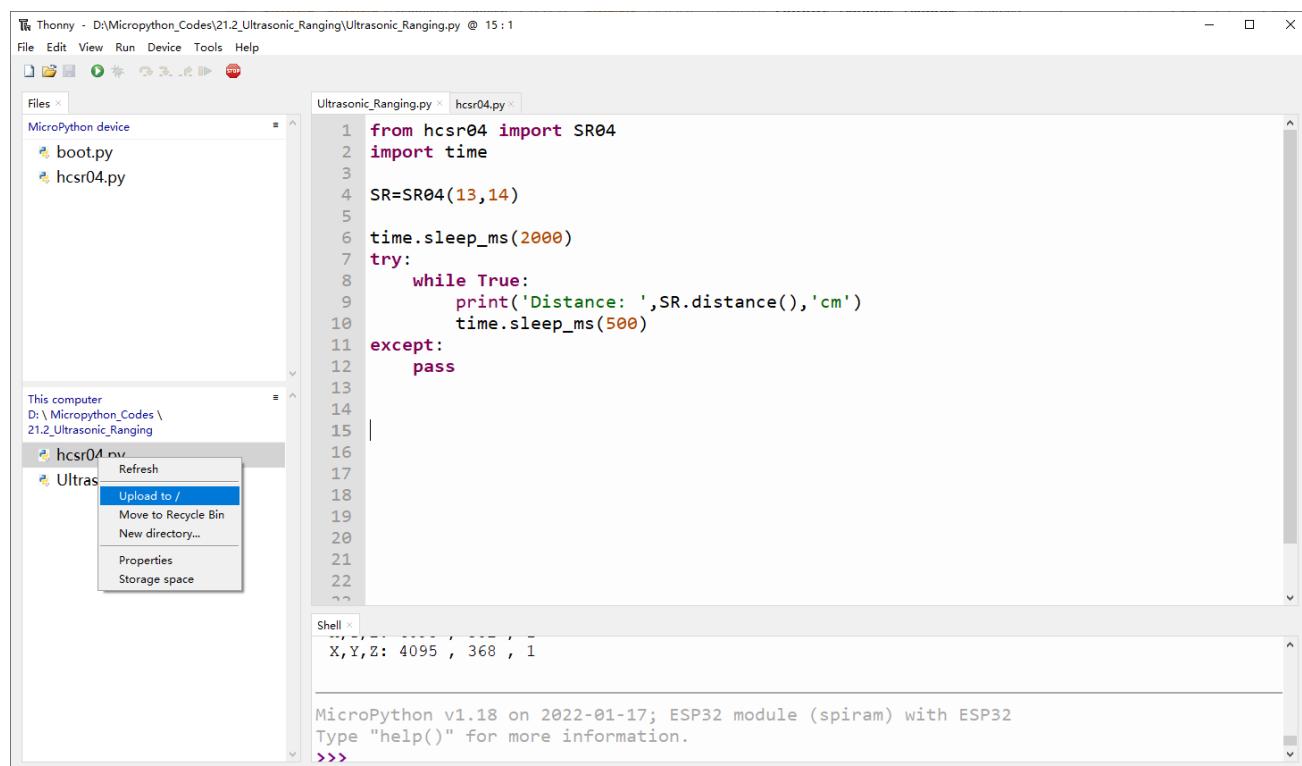
### Component List and Circuit

Component List and Circuit are the same as the previous section.

### Code

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “21.2\_Ultrasonic\_Ranging”. Select “hcsr04.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “hcsr04.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Ultrasonic\_Ranging.py”.

#### 21.2\_Ultrasonic\_Ranging





Click “Run current script”. Use the ultrasonic module to measure distance. As shown in the following figure:

```
Shell ×
Distance: 6.647 cm
Distance: 5.151 cm
Distance: 5.151 cm
Distance: 6.052 cm
Distance: 7.225 cm
Distance: 7.531 cm
Distance: 8.721 cm
Distance: 12.121 cm
Distance: 11.798 cm
Distance: 13.6 cm
Distance: 14.467 cm
Distance: 16.116 cm
Distance: 17.442 cm
Distance: 19.652 cm
Distance: 22.015 cm
```

The following is the program code:

```
1 from hcsr04 import SR04
2 import time
3
4 SR=SR04(13, 14)
5
6 time.sleep_ms(2000)
7 try:
8     while True:
9         print('Distance: ',SR.distance(), 'cm')
10        time.sleep_ms(500)
11    except:
12        pass
```

Import hcsr04 module.

```
1 from hcsr04 import SR04
```

Define an ultrasonic object and associate with the pins.

```
3 SR=SR04(13, 14)
```

Obtain the distance data returned from the ultrasonic ranging module.

```
9 SR.distance()
```

Obtain the ultrasonic data every 500 milliseconds and print them out in “Shell”.

```
8 while True:
9     print('Distance: ',SR.distance(), 'cm')
10    time.sleep_ms(500)
```

## Reference

### Class hcsr04

Before each use of object **SR04**, please add the statement “**from hcsr04 import SR04**” to the top of python file.

**SR04()**: Object of ultrasonic module. By default, trig pin is Pin(13) and echo pinis Pin(14).

**distanceCM()**: Obtain the distance from the ultrasonic to the measured object with the data type being int type, and the unit being cm.

**distanceMM()**: Obtain the distance from the ultrasonic to the measured object with the data type being int type, and the unit being mm.

**distance()**: Obtain the distance from the ultrasonic to the measured object with the data type being float type, and the unit being cm.

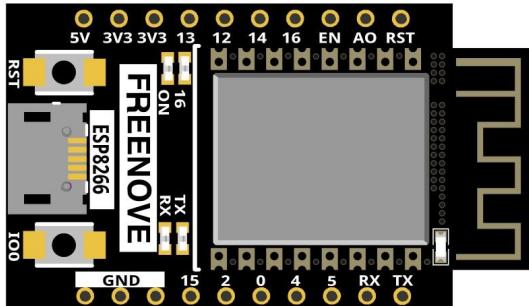
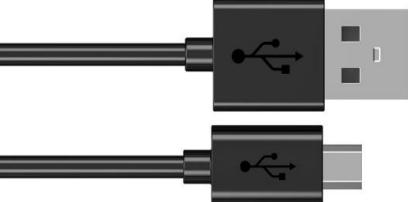
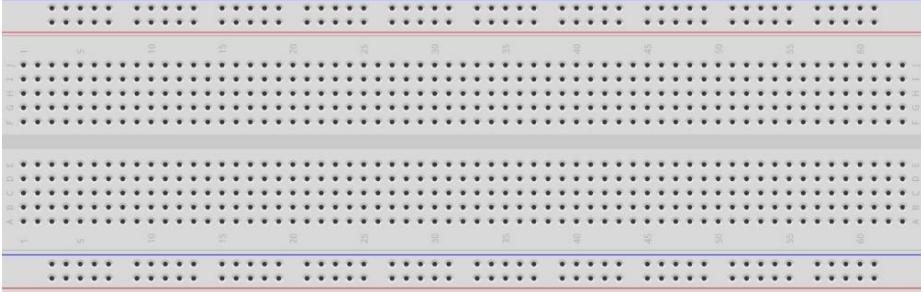
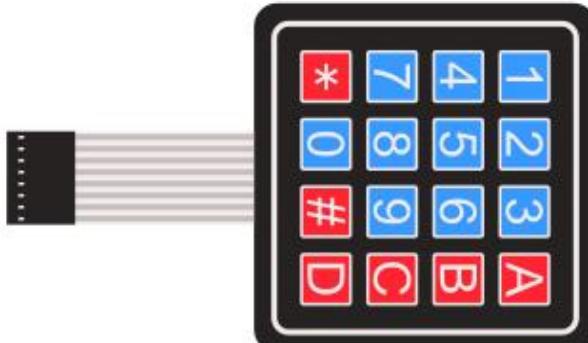
# Chapter 22 Matrix Keypad

Earlier we learned about a single Push Button Switch. In this chapter, we will learn about Matrix Keyboards, which integrates a number of Push Button Switches as Keys for the purposes of Input.

## Project 22.1 Matrix Keypad

In this project, we will attempt to get every key code on the Matrix Keypad to work.

### Component List

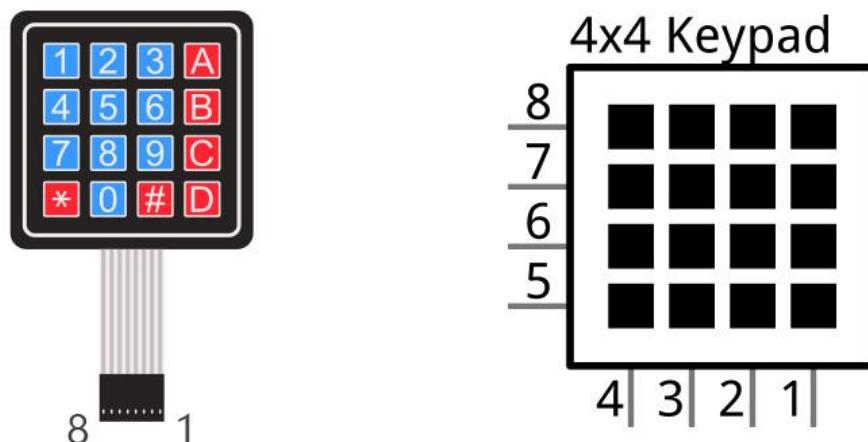
ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire M/M x8	4x4 Matrix Keypad x1
	

Any concerns? [✉ support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

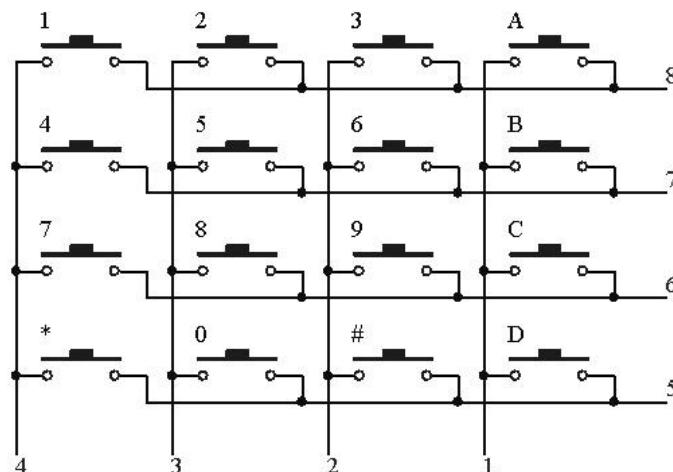
## Component knowledge

### 4x4 Matrix Keypad

A Keypad Matrix is a device that integrates a number of keys in one package. As is shown below, a 4x4 Keypad Matrix integrates 16 keys:



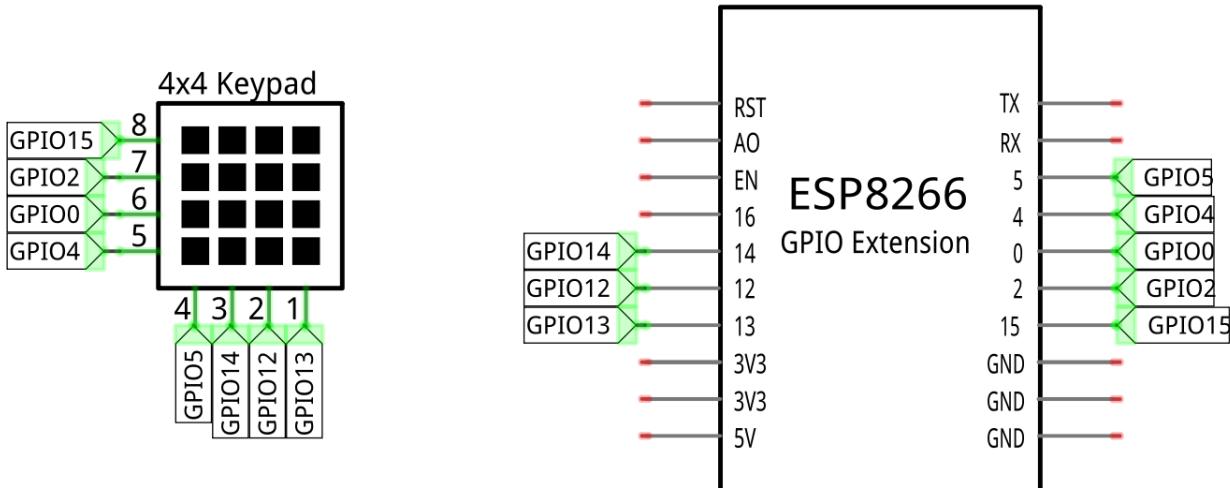
Similar to the integration of an LED Matrix, the 4x4 Keypad Matrix has each row of keys connected with one pin and this is the same for the columns. Such efficient connections reduce the number of processor ports required. The internal circuit of the Keypad Matrix is shown below.



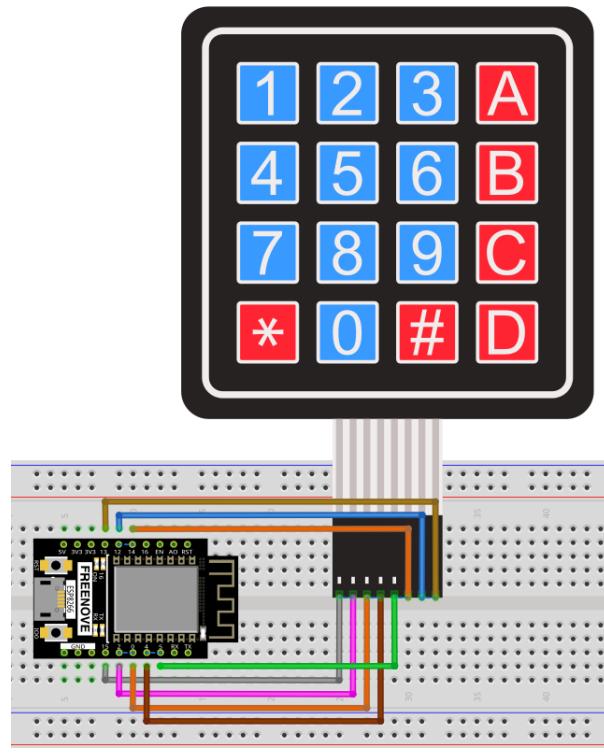
The method of usage is similar to the Matrix LED, by using a row or column scanning method to detect the state of each key's position by column and row. Take column scanning method as an example, send low level to the first 1 column (Pin1), detect level state of row 5, 6, 7, 8 to judge whether the key A, B, C, D are pressed. Then send low level to column 2, 3, 4 in turn to detect whether other keys are pressed. By this means, you can get the state of all of the keys.

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



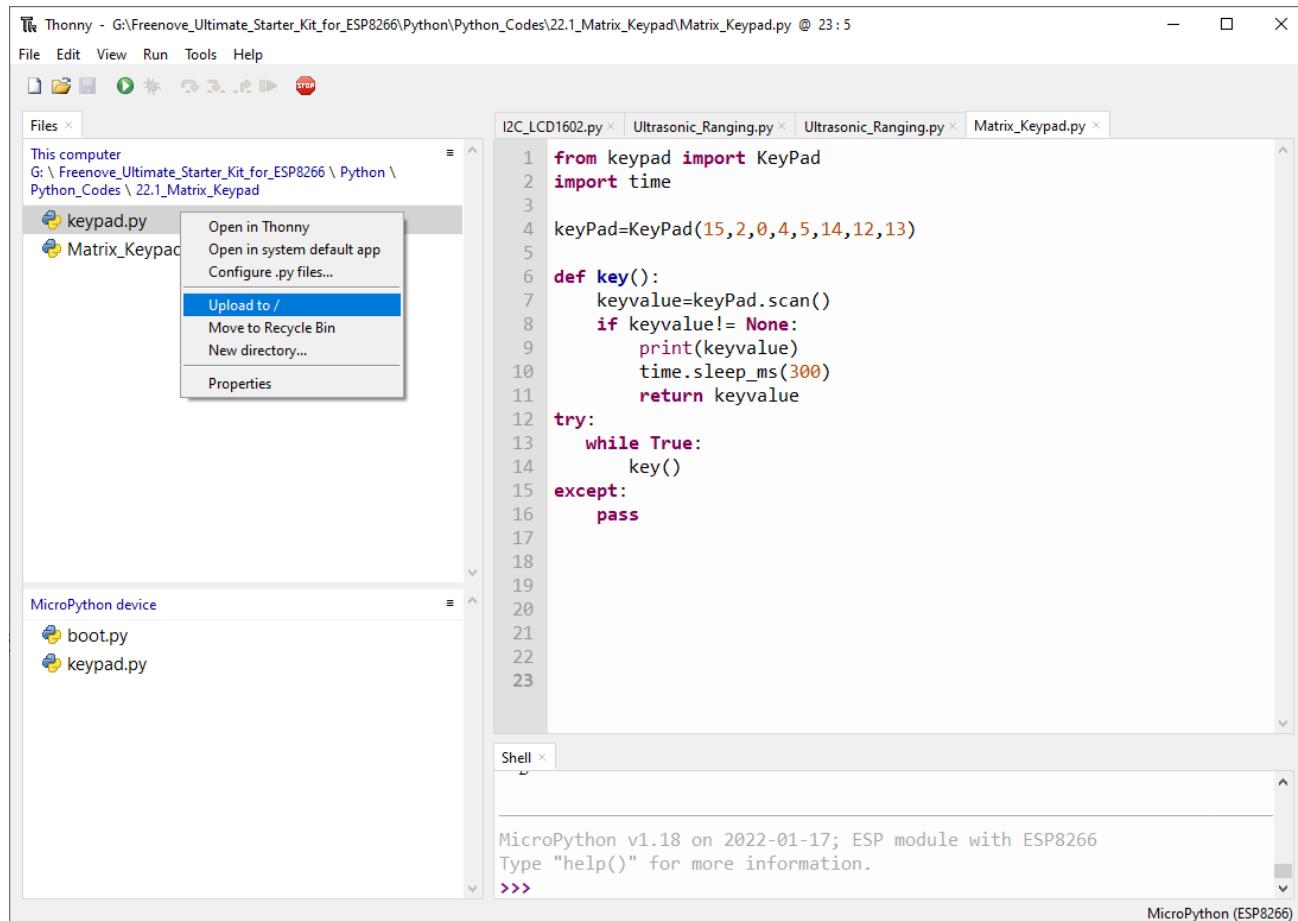
## Code

This code is used to obtain all key codes of the 4x4 Matrix Keypad, when one of the keys is pressed, the key code will be printed out via serial port.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “22.1\_Matrix\_Keypad”. Select “keypad.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “keypad.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Matrix\_Keypad.py”.

### 22.1\_Matrix\_Keypad





Click “Run current script”, push the key board and the key value will be printed in “Shell”. As shown in the illustration below:

```
Shell < 
MicroPython v1.12 on 2019-12-20; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

1
2
3
A
4
5
6
B
7
8
9
C
*
0
#
D
```

The following is the program code:

```
1 from keypad import KeyPad
2 import time
3
4 keyPad=KeyPad(15, 2, 0, 4, 5, 14, 12, 13)
5
6 def key():
7     keyvalue=keyPad.scan()
8     if keyvalue!= None:
9         print(keyvalue)
10    time.sleep_ms(300)
11    return keyvalue
12
13 while True:
14     key()
```

Import keypad module.

```
1 from keypad import KeyPad
```

Associate the keypad module to ESP8266 pins.

```
4 keyPad=KeyPad(15, 2, 0, 4, 5, 14, 12, 13)
```

Call function keypad.scan() of the keypad module. When the keypad module detects that the key is pressed, it returns the value of the pressed key; when no key is pressed, the return value is None.

```
7 keyPad.scan()
```

Call function keyPan.scan() to obtain the value of the pressed key. Once it is obtained, print it out.

```
6 def key():
7     keyvalue=keyPad.scan()
8     if keyvalue!= None:
9         print(keyvalue)
10    time.sleep_ms(300)
11    return keyvalue
```

## Reference

### Class keypad

Before each use of the object **KeyPad**, please make sure **keypad.py** has been uploaded to "/" of ESP8266 and then add the statement "**from keypad import KeyPad**" to the top of python file.

**KeyPad(row1, row2, row3, row4, col1, col2, col3, col4)**: Initialize keypad module and associate its pins with ESP8266.

**scan()**: Non-blocking keypad scan function. If no key is pressed, it returns None; Otherwise, it returns the valued of the pressed key.

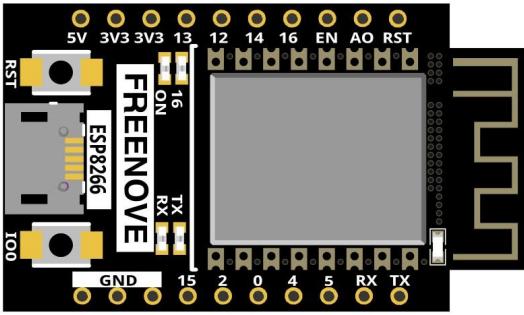
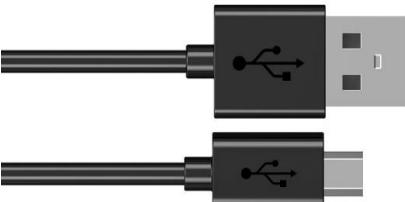
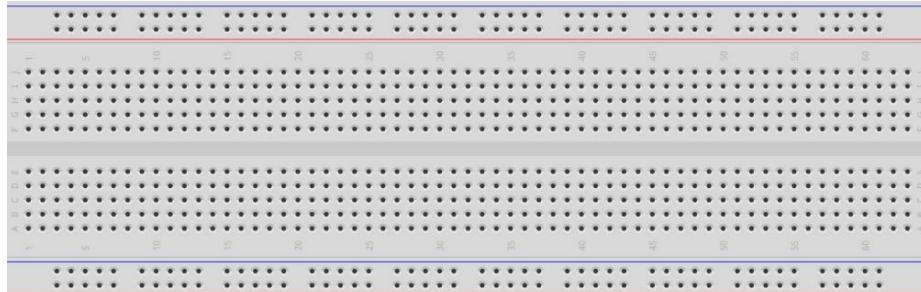
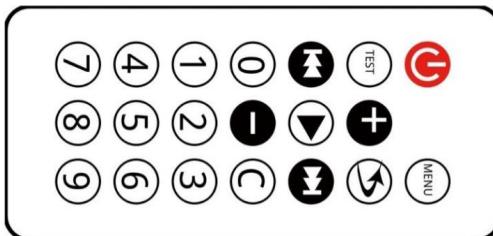
# Chapter 23 Infrared Remote

In this chapter, we'll learn how to use an infrared remote control, and control a LED.

## Project 23.1 Infrared Remote Control

First, we need to understand how infrared remote control works, then get the command sent from infrared remote control.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire M/M x6	Infrared Remote x1 (May need CR2025 battery x1, please check the holder)
	
Infrared Remote x1	Resistor 10kΩ x1

## Component knowledge

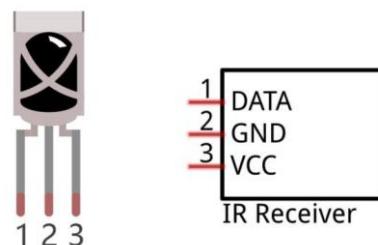
### Infrared Remote

An infrared(IR) remote control is a device with a certain number of buttons. Pressing down different buttons will make the infrared emission tube, which is located in the front of the remote control, send infrared ray with different command. Infrared remote control technology is widely used in electronic products such as TV, air conditioning, etc. Thus making it possible for you to switch TV programs and adjust the temperature of the air conditioning when away from them. The remote control we use is shown below:



### Infrared receiver

An infrared(IR) receiver is a component which can receive the infrared light, so we can use it to detect the signal emitted by the infrared remote control. DATA pin here outputs the received infrared signal.





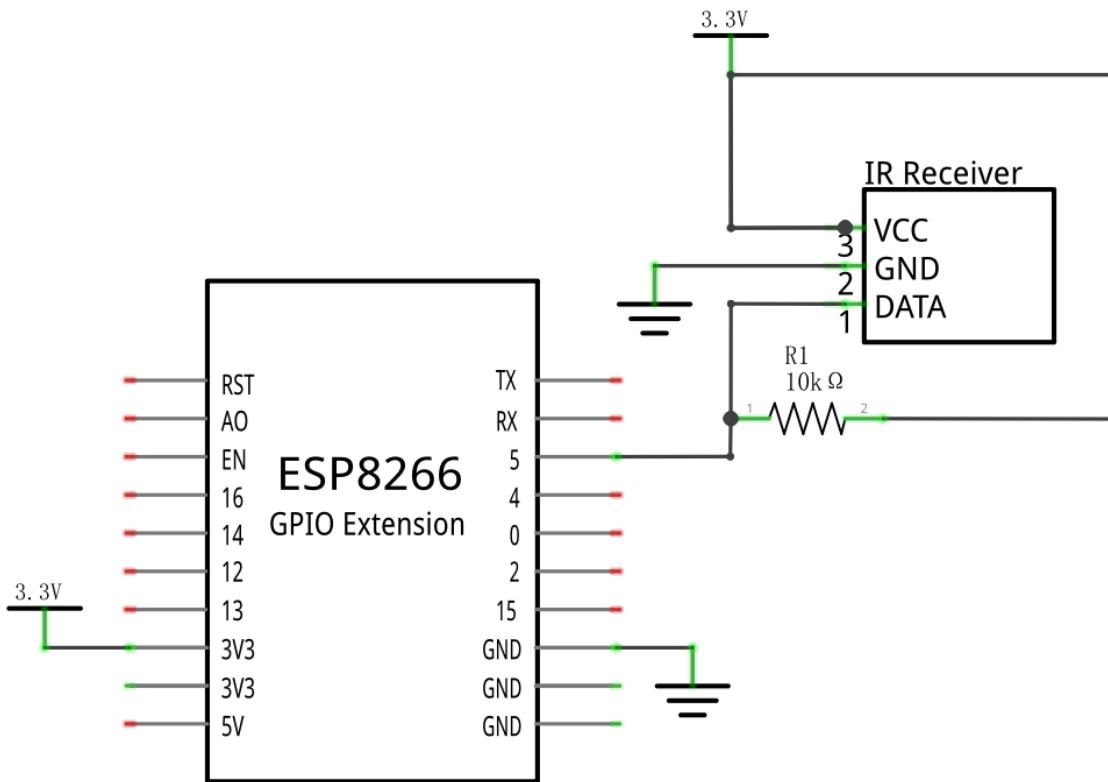
When you use the infrared remote control, the infrared remote control sends a key value to the receiving circuit according to the pressed keys. We can program the ESP8266 to do things like lighting, when a key value is received.

The following is the key value that the receiving circuit will receive when each key of the infrared remote control is pressed.

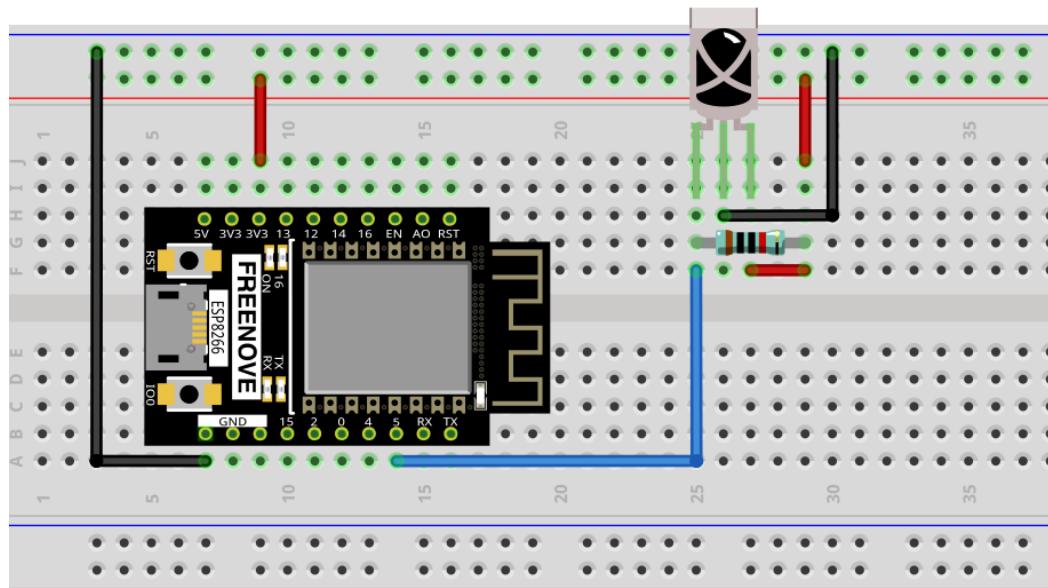
ICON	KEY Value	ICON	KEY Value
	FFA25D		FFB04F
	FFE21D		FF30CF
	FF22DD		FF18E7
	FF02FD		FF7A85
	FFC23D		FF10EF
	FFE01F		FF38C7
	FFA857		FF5AA5
	FF906F		FF42BD
	FF6897		FF4AB5
	FF9867		FF52AD

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

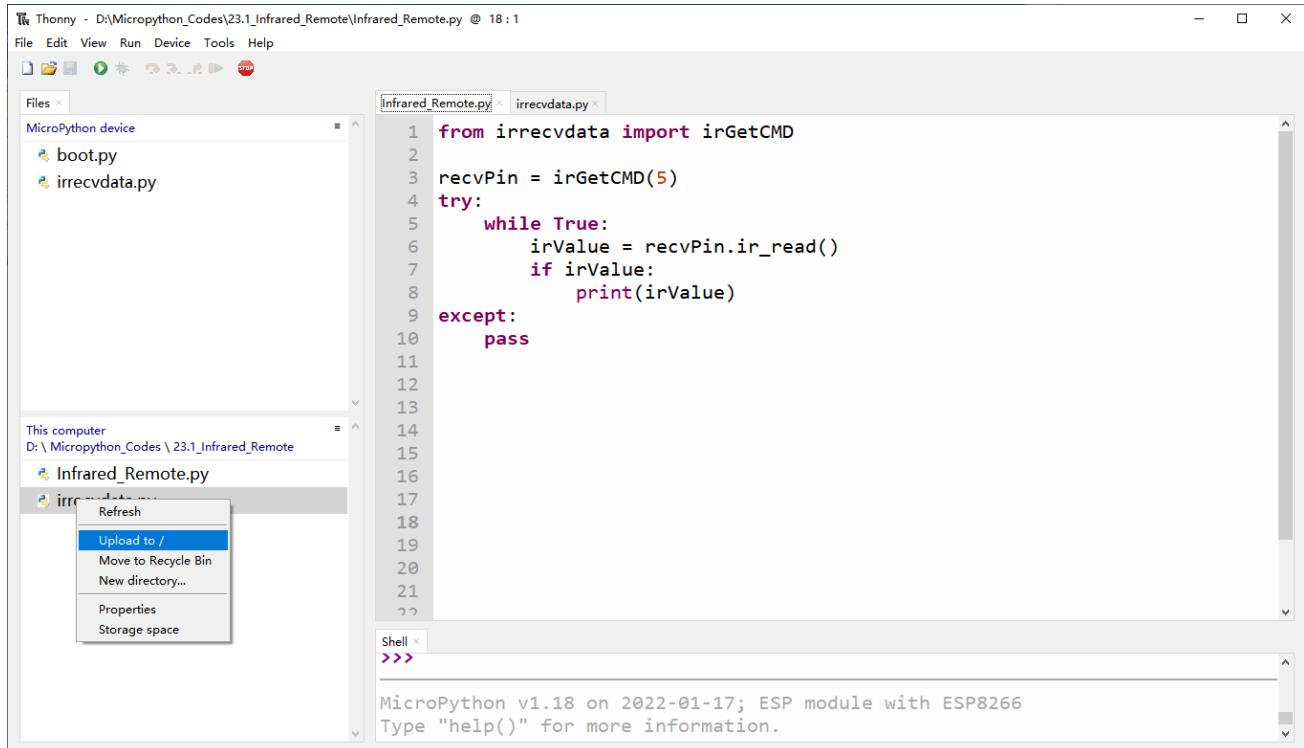


## Code

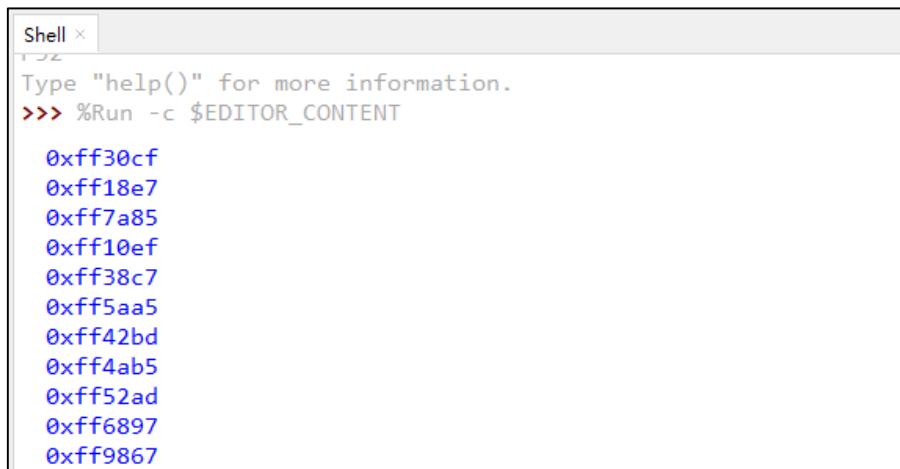
Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “23.1\_Infrared\_Remote”. Select “irrecvdata.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “irrecvdata.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Infrared\_Remote.py”.

### 23.1\_Infrared\_Remote



Click “Run current script”, press the key of the infrared remote and the key value will be printed in “Shell”. As shown in the illustration below:



The following is the program code:

```
1 from irrecvdata import irGetCMD  
2  
3 recvPin = irGetCMD(5)  
4 try:  
5     while True:  
6         irValue = recvPin.ir_read()  
7         if irValue:  
8             print(irValue)  
9     except:  
10        pass
```

Import the infrared decoder.

```
1 from irrecvdata import irGetCMD
```

Associate the infrared decoder with Pin(5).

```
3 recvPin = irGetCMD(5)
```

Call `ir_read()` to read the value of the pressed key and assign it to `IRValue`.

```
6 irValue = recvPin.ir_read()
```

When infrared key value is obtained, print it out in "Shell".

```
5     while True:  
6         irValue = recvPin.ir_read()  
7         if irValue:  
8             print(irValue)
```

## Reference

### Class `irrecvdata`

Before each use of the object `irrecvdata`, please add the statement "`from irrecvdata import irGetCMD`" to the top of the python file.

**irGetCMD():** Object of infrared encoder, which is associated with Pin(15) by default.

**ir\_read():** The function that reads the key value of infrared remote. When the value is read, it will be returned; when no value is obtained, character **None** will be returned.



## Project 23.2 Control LED through Infrared Remote

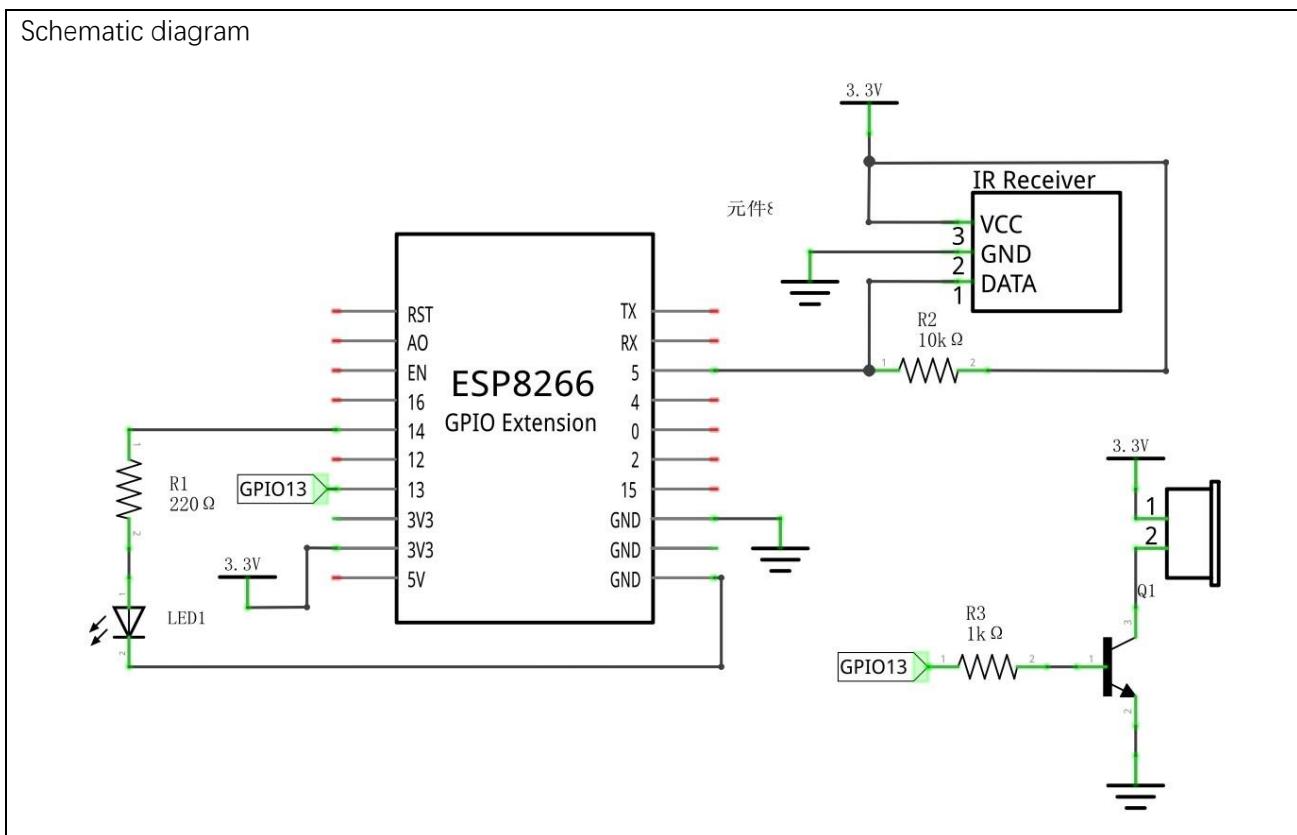
In this project, we will control the brightness of LED lights through an infrared remote control.

### Component List

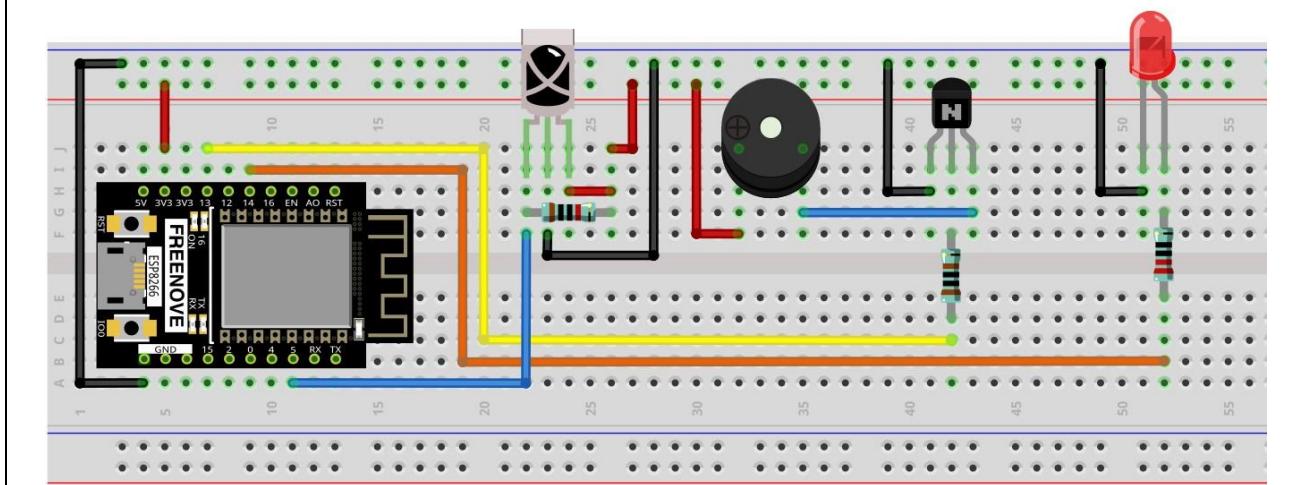
ESP8266 x1	USB cable
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire M/M x12	Infrared Remote x1 (May need CR2025 battery x1, please check the holder)
	Resistor 220Ω x1 
Infrared receiver x1	Resistor 10kΩ x1 



## Circuit



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

The Code controls the brightness of the LED by determining the key value of the infrared received.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “23.2\_Control\_LED\_through\_Infrared\_Remote”. Select “irrecvdata.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “irrecvdata.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Control\_LED\_through\_Infrared\_Remote.py”.

### 23.2\_Control\_LED\_through\_Infrared\_Remote

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. On the left, the file browser displays a directory structure under "This computer" pointing to "D:\Micropython\_Codes\23.2\_Control\_LED\_through\_Infrared\_Remote". Inside this directory are files "boot.py" and "irrecvdata.py". A context menu is open over "irrecvdata.py", with the "Upload to /" option highlighted. The main workspace shows two tabs: "Control\_LED\_through\_Infrared\_Remote.py" and "irrecvdata.py". The "Control\_LED\_through\_Infrared\_Remote.py" tab contains the following Python code:

```
from machine import Pin,PWM
import time
from irrecvdata import irGetCMD

ledPin=PWM(Pin(14,Pin.OUT),10000)
buzzerPin=Pin(13,Pin.OUT)
recvPin = irGetCMD(5)

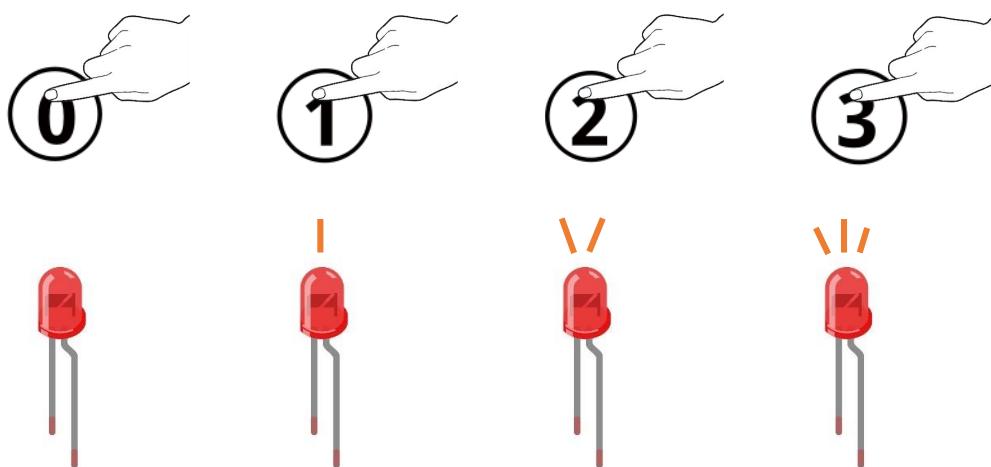
def handleControl(value):
    buzzerPin.value(1)
    time.sleep_ms(100)
    buzzerPin.value(0)

    if value == '0xff6897':    #0
        print('0')
        ledPin.duty(1)
    elif value == '0xff30cf':  #1
        print('1')
        ledPin.duty(100)
    elif value == '0xff18e7':  #2
        print('2')
        ledPin.duty(200)
```

The "Shell" tab at the bottom shows the MicroPython prompt: "MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266" and "Type "help()" for more information." with a ">>>" prompt.

Click “Run current script”. When pressing “0”, “1”, “2”, “3” of the infrared remote control, the buzzer will sound once, and the brightness of the LED light will change correspondingly.

Rendering



The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin, PWM
2  import time
3  from irrecvdata import irGetCMD
4
5  ledPin=PWM(Pin(14,Pin.OUT),10000)
6  buzzerPin=Pin(13,Pin.OUT)
7  recvPin = irGetCMD(5)
8
9  def handleControl(value):
10     buzzerPin.value(1)
11     time.sleep_ms(100)
12     buzzerPin.value(0)
13
14     if value == '0xff6897': #0
15         print('0')
16         ledPin.duty(1)
17     elif value == '0xff30cf': #1
18         print('1')
19         ledPin.duty(100)
20     elif value == '0xff18e7': #2
21         print('2')
22         ledPin.duty(300)
23     elif value == '0xff7a85': #3
24         print('3')
25         ledPin.duty(1000)
26     else:
27         return

```

```

28     try:
29         while True:
30             irValue = recvPin.ir_read()
31             if irValue:
32                 print(irValue)
33                 handleControl(irValue)
34         except:
35             ledPin.deinit()

```

The handleControl() function is used to execute events corresponding to infrared code values. Every time when the function is called, the buzzer sounds once and determines the brightness of the LED based on the infrared key value. If the key value is not "0", "1", "2", "3", the buzzer sounds once, but the brightness of LED will not change.

```

9      def handleControl(value):
10         buzzerPin.value(1)
11         time.sleep_ms(100)
12         buzzerPin.value(0)
13
14         if value == '0xff6897': #0
15             print('0')
16             ledPin.duty(1)
17         elif value == '0xff30cf': #1
18             print('1')
19             ledPin.duty(100)
20         elif value == '0xff18e7': #2
21             print('2')
22             ledPin.duty(300)
23         elif value == '0xff7a85': #3
24             print('3')
25             ledPin.duty(1000)
26         else:
27             return

```

Each time the key value of IR remote is received, function handleControl() will be called to process it.

```

28     try:
29         while True:
30             irValue = recvPin.ir_read()
31             if irValue:
32                 print(irValue)
33                 handleControl(irValue)
34         except:
35             ledPin.deinit()

```

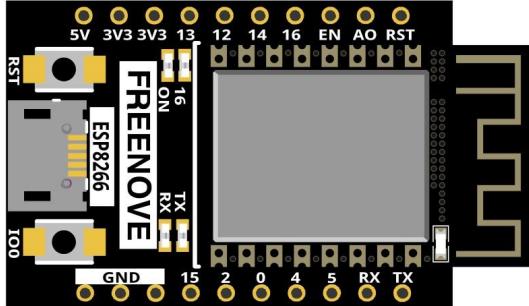
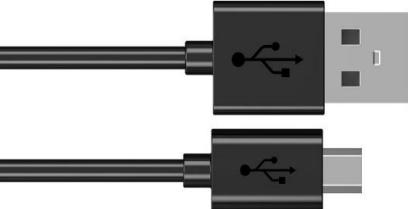
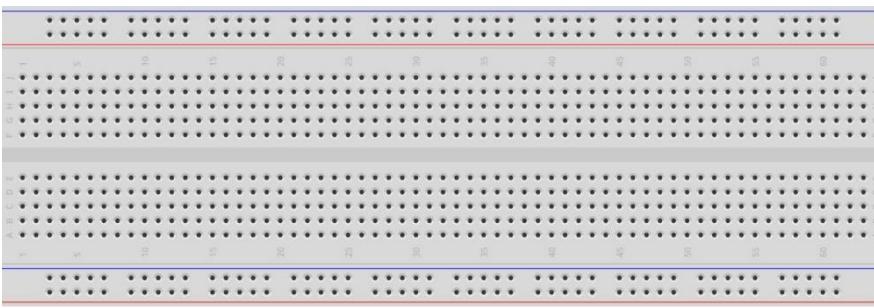
# Chapter 24 Hygrothermograph DHT11

In this chapter, we will learn about a commonly used sensor called a Hygrothermograph DHT11

## Project 24.1 Hygrothermograph

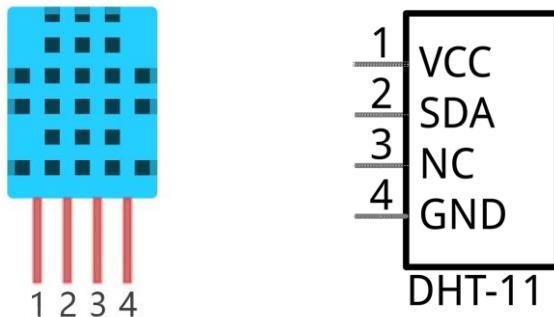
Hygrothermograph is an important tool in our lives to give us data on the temperature and humidity in our environment. In this project, we will use the ESP8266 to read Temperature and Humidity data of the DHT11 Module.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable	
		
Breadboard x1		
Jumper wire M/M x6	DHT11 x1	Resistor 10kΩ x1

## Component knowledge

The Temperature & Humidity Sensor DHT11 is a compound temperature & humidity sensor, and the output digital signal has been calibrated by its manufacturer.



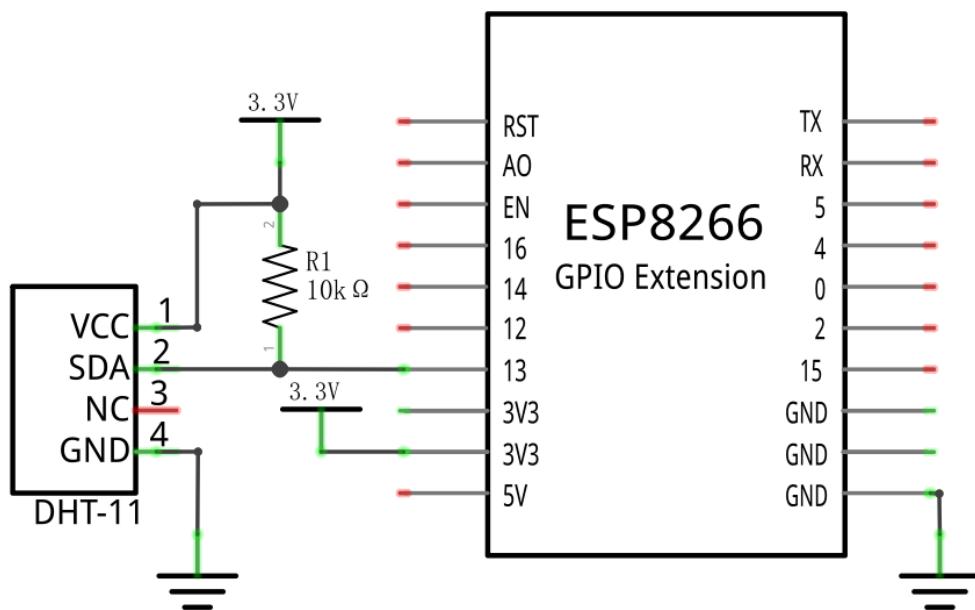
DHT11 uses customized single-line communication protocol, so we can use the library to read data more conveniently.

After being powered up, it will initialize in 1S's time. Its operating voltage is within the range of 3.3V-5.5V. The SDA pin is a data pin, which is used to communicate with other devices.

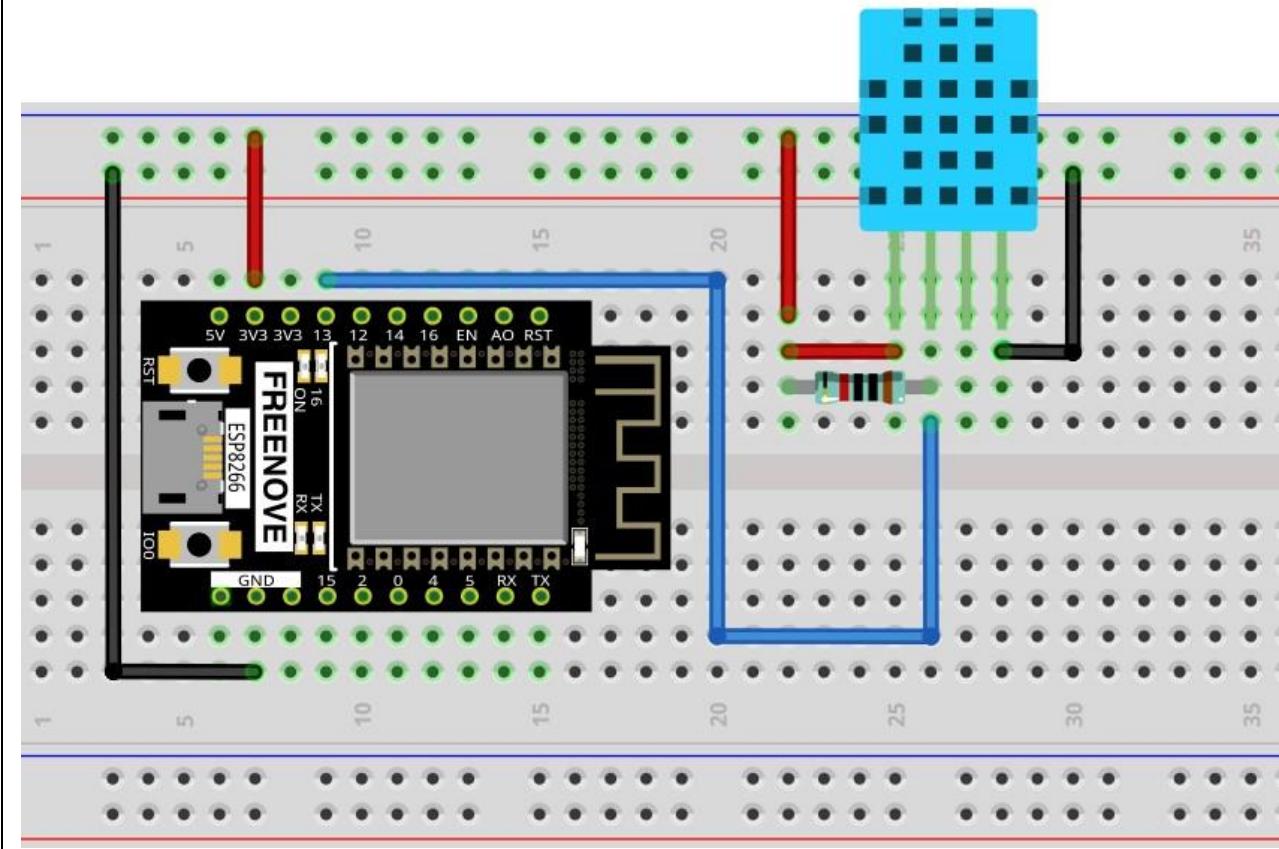
The NC pin (Not Connected Pin) is a type of pin found on various integrated circuit packages. Those pins have no functional purpose to the outside circuit (but may have an unknown functionality during manufacture and test). Those pins should not be connected to any of the circuit connections.

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “24.1\_Hygrothermograph” and double click “Hygrothermograph.py”.

### 24.1\_Hygrothermograph



```

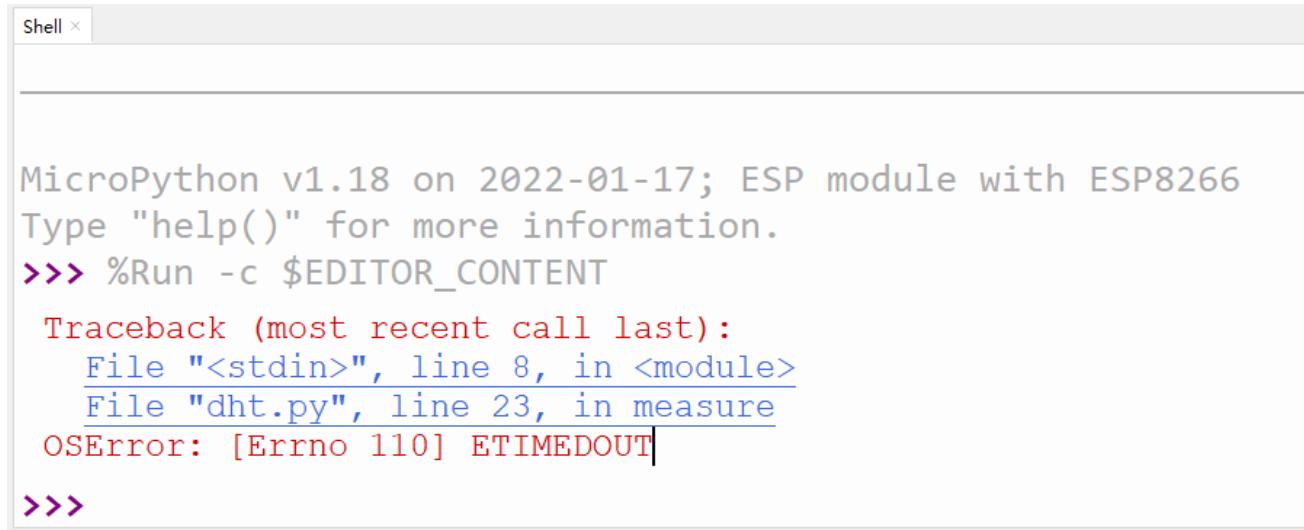
import machine
import time
import dht

DHT = dht.DHT11(machine.Pin(13))

while True:
    DHT.measure()
    print('temperature:', DHT.temperature(), "C", 'humidity:', DHT.humidity(), "%")
    time.sleep_ms(1000)

```

Click “Run current script”. If your DHT11 is connected incorrectly, the following information will be printed in “Shell”.



```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<stdin>", line 8, in <module>
    File "dht.py", line 23, in measure
      OSError: [Errno 110] ETIMEDOUT
>>>

```

Make sure your circuit is correctly connected and you will see the following messages printed in "Shell".

The following is the program code:

```
1 import machine
2
3 import time
4
5 import dht
6
7 DHT = dht.DHT11(machine.Pin(13))
8
9 while True:
10     DHT.measure()
11     print(' temperature:', DHT.temperature(), 'humidity:', DHT.humidity())
12     time.sleep_ms(1000)
```

Import machine, time and dht modules.

```
1 import machine  
2 import time  
3 import dht
```

Associate DHT11 with Pin(13)

```
5 DHT = dht.DHT11(machine.Pin(13))
```

Start DHT11 to measure data once

8 DHT measure()

Call the built-in function of DHT to obtain temperature and humidity data and print them in "Shell"

```
9 print('temperature:', DHT.temperature(), 'humidity:', DHT.humidity())
```

Obtain temperature and humidity data once per second and print them out

```
7 while True:  
8     DHT.measure()  
9     print('temperature:', DHT.temperature(), 'humidity:', DHT.humidity())
```

```
10     time.sleep_ms(1000)
```

### Reference

#### Class dht

Before each use of object **dht**, please add the statement “**import dht**” to the top of python file.

**DHT11()**: Object of DHT11

**DHT12()**: Object of DHT12

**DHT11.measure()**: Start DHT11 to measure temperature and humidity data once.

**DHT11.temperature()**: Return temperature data obtained by DHT11.

**DHT11.humidity()**: Return humidity data obtained by DHT11.

**DHT12.measure()**: Start DHT12 to measure temperature and humidity data once

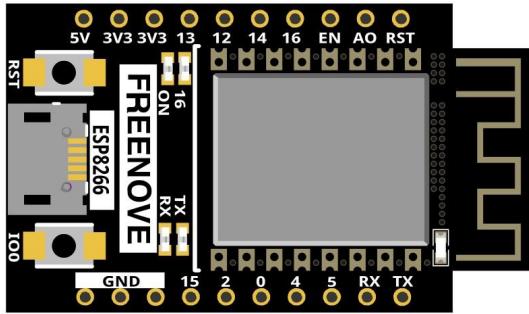
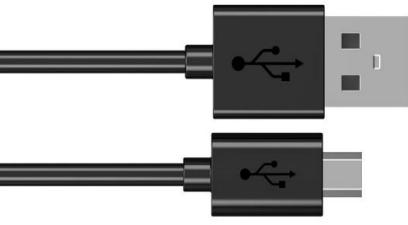
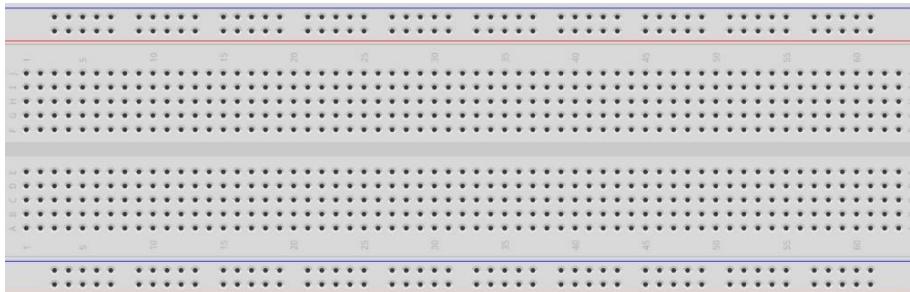
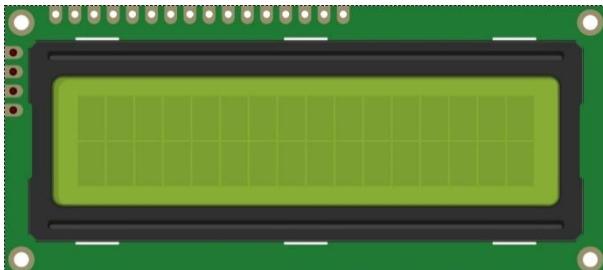
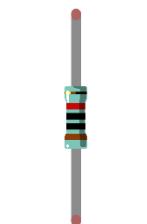
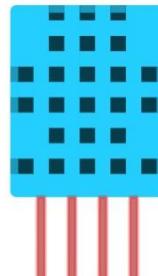
**DHT12.temperature()**: Return temperature data obtained by DHT12.

**DHT12.humidity()**: Return humidity data obtained by DHT12.

## Project 24.2 Hygrothermograph

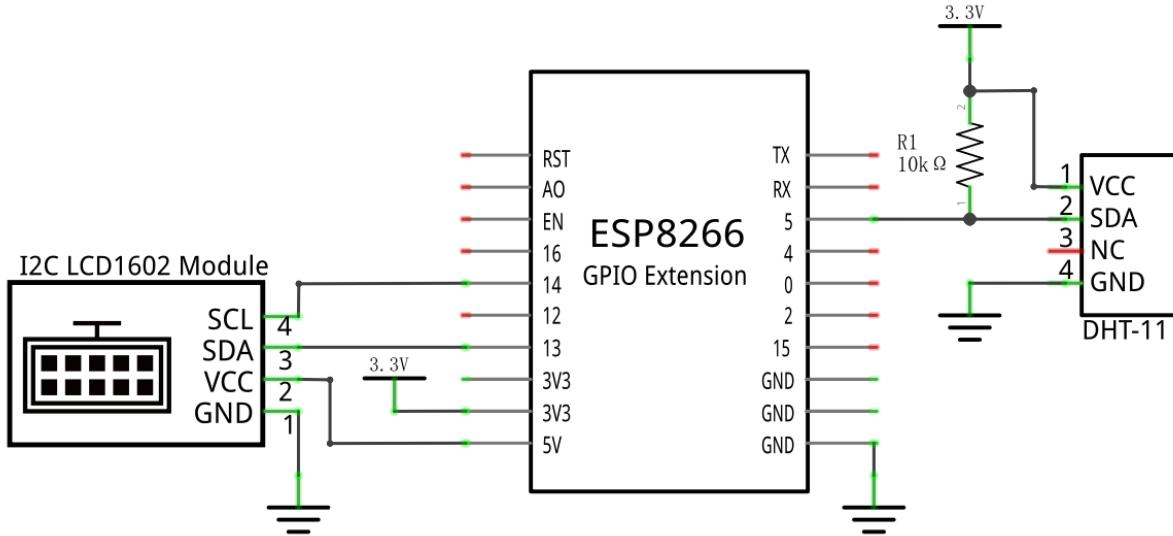
In this project, we use L2C-LCD1602 to display data collected by DHT11.

### Component List

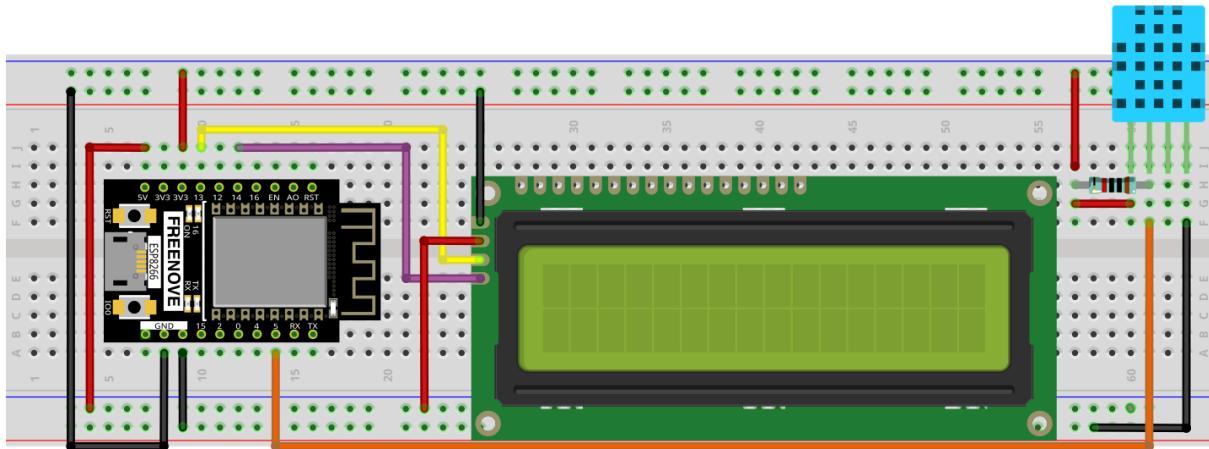
ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
LCD1602 Module x1	Resistor 10kΩ x1
	
Jumper wire F/M x4 Jumper wire M/M x8	DHT11 x1
	

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



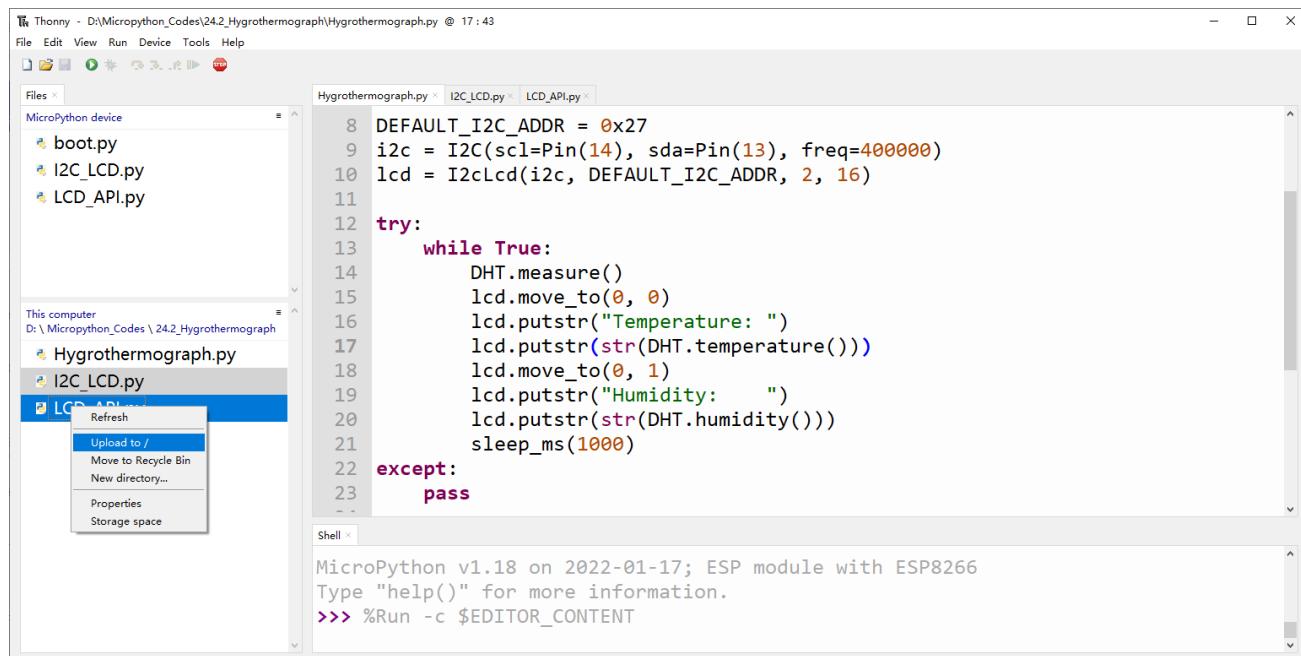
Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → 24.2\_Hygrothermograph”. Select “I2C\_LCD.py” and “LCD\_API.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “I2C\_LCD.py” and “LCD\_API.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “Hygrothermograph.py”.

### 24.2\_Hygrothermograph



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. In the top menu, "File" is selected. In the left sidebar, under "MicroPython device", there are three files: "boot.py", "I2C\_LCD.py", and "LCD\_API.py". Under "This computer", there is a folder "D:\Micropython\_Codes\24.2\_Hygrothermograph" containing "Hygrothermograph.py", "I2C\_LCD.py", and "LCD\_API.py". The "LCD\_API.py" file is currently selected. A context menu is open over "LCD\_API.py", with the "Upload to /" option highlighted. The main code editor window displays the following Python code:

```

8 DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR = 0x27
9 i2c = I2C(scl=Pin(14), sda=Pin(13), freq=400000)
10 lcd = I2cLcd(i2c, DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR, 2, 16)
11
12 try:
13     while True:
14         DHT.measure()
15         lcd.move_to(0, 0)
16         lcd.putstr("Temperature: ")
17         lcd.putstr(str(DHT.temperature()))
18         lcd.move_to(0, 1)
19         lcd.putstr("Humidity: ")
20         lcd.putstr(str(DHT.humidity()))
21         sleep_ms(1000)
22     except:
23         pass

```

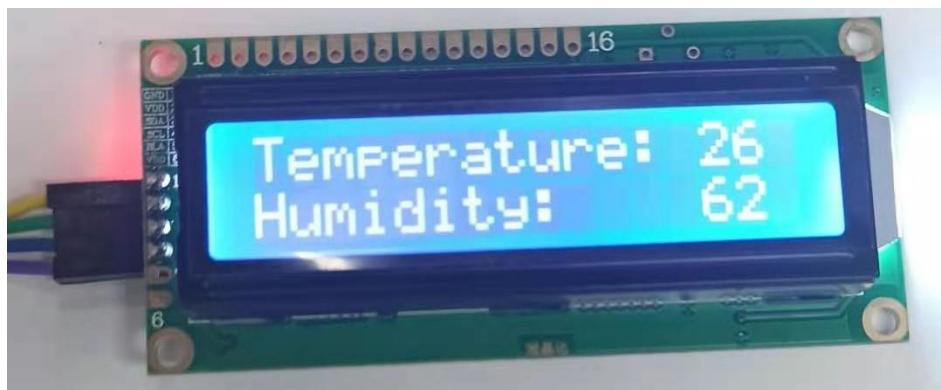
The bottom shell window shows the MicroPython environment:

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

```

Click “Run current script”. The first row of LCD1602 is temperature value and the second row is humidity. Try to “pinch” the DHT11 (without touching the leads) with your index finger and thumb for a brief time, you should see that the displayed value on LCD1602 changes.





The following is the program code:

```

1  from time import sleep_ms
2  from machine import I2C, Pin
3  from I2C_LCD import I2cLcd
4  import dht
5
6  DHT = dht.DHT11(Pin(5))
7  DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR = 0x27
8  i2c = I2C(scl=Pin(14), sda=Pin(13), freq=400000)
9  lcd = I2cLcd(i2c, DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR, 2, 16)
10
11 try:
12     while True:
13         DHT.measure()
14         lcd.move_to(0, 0)
15         lcd.putstr("Temperature: ")
16         lcd.putstr(str(DHT.temperature()))
17         lcd.move_to(0, 1)
18         lcd.putstr("Humidity: ")
19         lcd.putstr(str(DHT.humidity()))
20         sleep_ms(1000)
21 except:
22     pass

```

Import DHT11 and I2C LCD1602 modules.

```

1  from time import sleep_ms
2  from machine import I2C, Pin
3  from I2C_LCD import I2cLcd
4  import dht

```

Assign Pin(5) to DHT11, Pin(13) and Pin(14) to LCD1602.

```

6  DHT = dht.DHT11(Pin(5))
7  DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR = 0x27
8  i2c = I2C(scl=Pin(14), sda=Pin(13), freq=400000)
9  lcd = I2cLcd(i2c, DEFAULT_I2C_ADDR, 2, 16)

```

Obtain data of Hygrothermograph every second and display them on LCD1602. The first line displays temperature and the second line displays humidity.

```

12 while True:
13     DHT.measure()
14     lcd.move_to(0, 0)
15     lcd.putstr("Temperature: ")
16     lcd.putstr(str(DHT.temperature()))
17     lcd.move_to(0, 1)
18     lcd.putstr("Humidity: ")
19     lcd.putstr(str(DHT.humidity()))
20     sleep_ms(1000)

```

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

# Chapter 25 Infrared Motion Sensor

In this chapter, we will learn a widely used sensor, Infrared Motion Sensor.

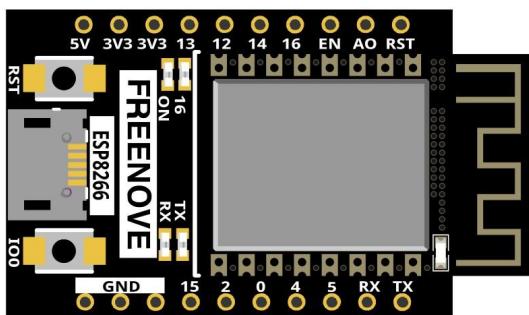
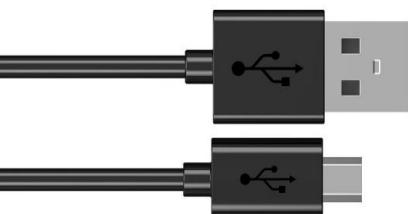
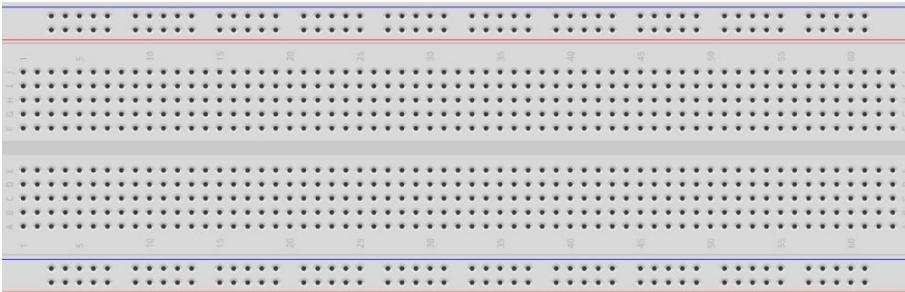
## Project 25.1 Infrared Motion Detector with LED Indicator

In this project, we will make a Motion Detector, with the human body infrared pyroelectric sensors.

When someone is in close proximity to the Motion Detector, it will automatically light up and when there is no one close by, it will be out.

This Infrared Motion Sensor can detect the infrared spectrum (heat signatures) emitted by living humans and animals.

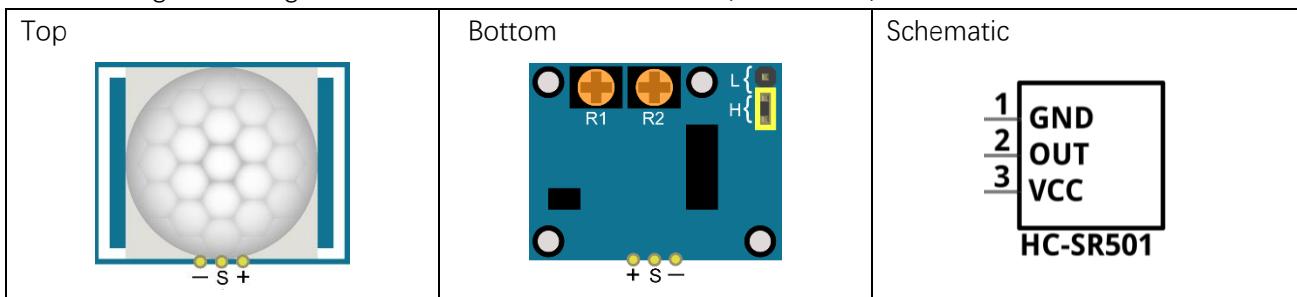
### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable		
			
Breadboard x1			
HC SR501 x1	LED x1	Resistor 220Ω x1	Jumper wire F/M x3 Jumper wire M/M x4



## Component knowledge

The following is the diagram of the infrared Motion sensor (HC SR-501) :



Description:

Working voltage: 5v-20v(DC) Static current: 65uA.

Automatic Trigger. When a living body enters into the active area of sensor, the module will output high level (3.3V). When the body leaves the sensor's active detection area, it will output high level lasting for time period T, then output low level(0V). Delay time T can be adjusted by the potentiometer R1.

According to the position of Jumper wire cap, you can choose non-repeatable trigger mode or repeatable mode.

L: non-repeatable trigger mode. The module output high level after sensing a body, then when the delay time is over, the module will output low level. During high level time, the sensor no longer actively senses bodies.

H: repeatable trigger mode. The distinction from the L mode is that it can sense a body until that body leaves during the period of high level output. After this, it starts to time and output low level after delaying T time.

Induction block time: the induction will stay in block condition and does not induce external signal at lesser time intervals (less than delay time) after outputting high level or low level.

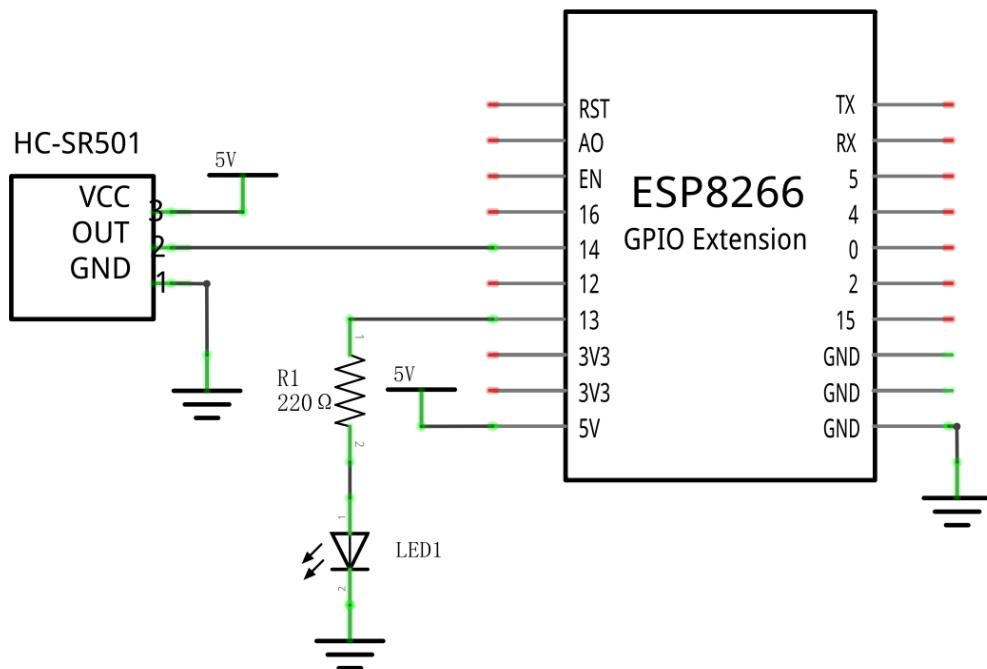
Initialization time: the module needs about 1 minute to initialize after being powered ON. During this period, it will alternately output high or low level.

One characteristic of this sensor is when a body moves close to or moves away from the sensor's dome edge, the sensor will work at high sensitivity. When a body moves close to or moves away from the sensor's dome in a vertical direction, the sensor cannot detect well (please take note of this deficiency). Note: The Sensing Range (distance before a body is detected) is adjusted by the potentiometer.

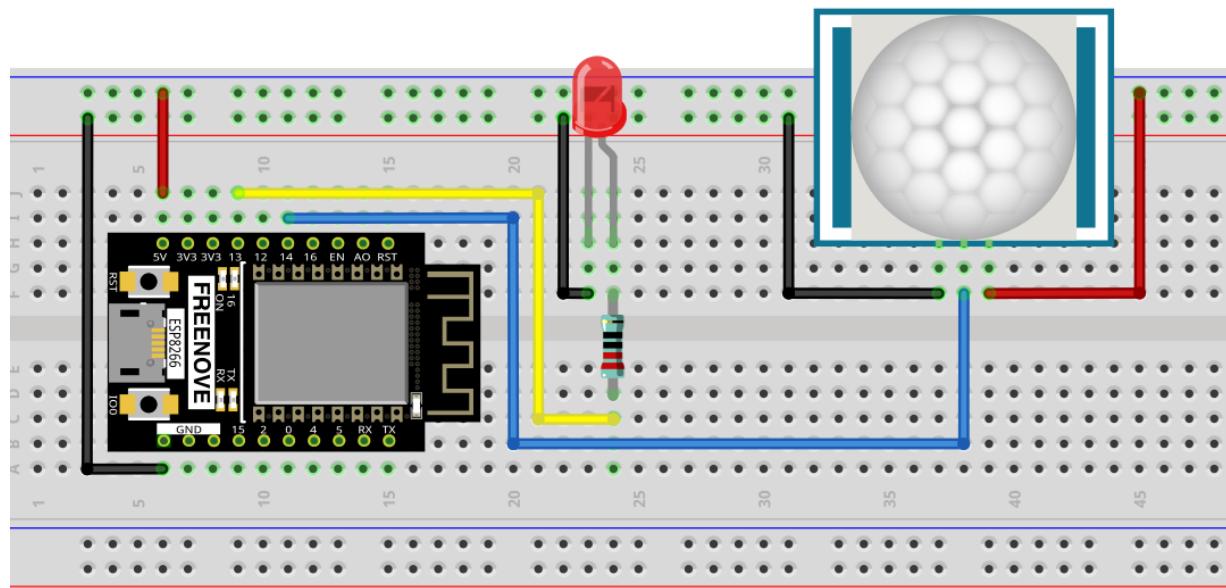
We can regard this sensor as a simple inductive switch when in use.

## Circuit

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



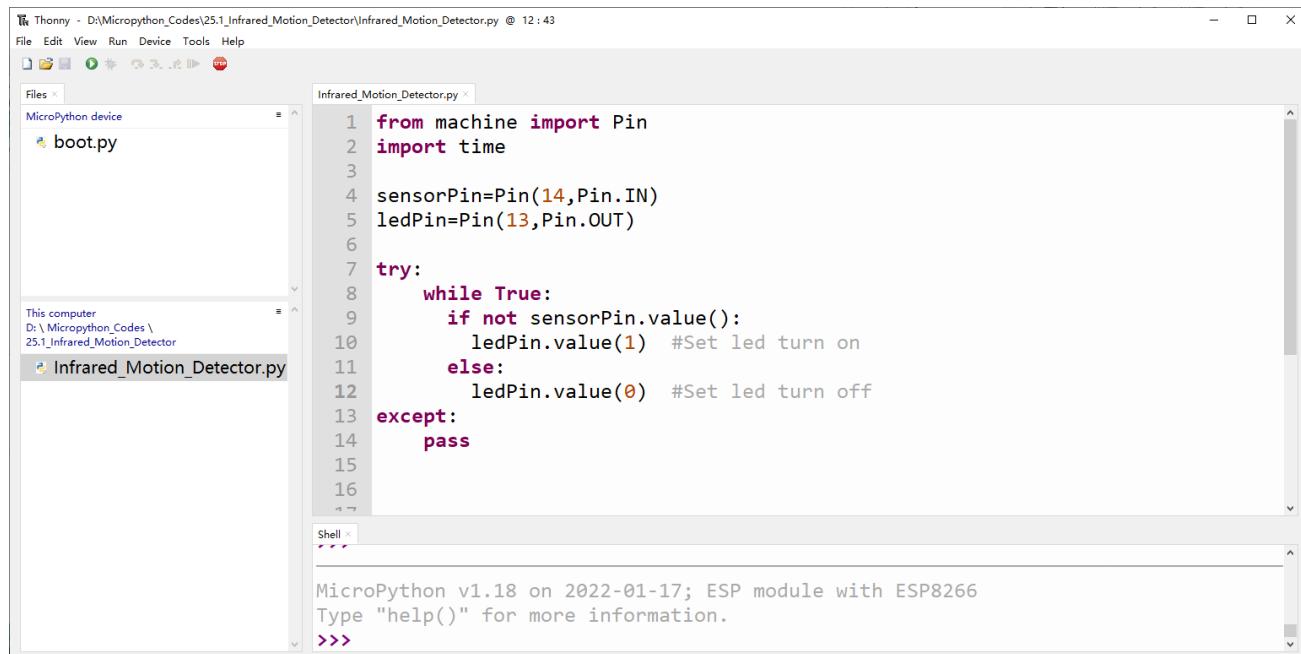
## Code

In this project, we will use an infrared motion sensor to trigger an LED, essentially using the infrared motion sensor as a motion switch. So the code of this project is similar to that of project "[Button & Led](#)". The difference is when infrared motion sensor detects changes, it will output high level; when it detects nothing, it will output low level. When the sensor outputs high level, LED turns ON; Otherwise, LED turns OFF.

Move the program folder "**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**" to disk(D) in advance with the path of "**D:/Micropython\_Codes**".

Open "Thonny", click "This computer" → "D:" → "Micropython\_Codes" → "Infrared\_Motion\_Detector" and then double click "Infrared\_Motion\_Detector.py".

### 25.1\_Infrared\_Motion\_Detector



```

from machine import Pin
import time

sensorPin=Pin(14,Pin.IN)
ledPin=Pin(13,Pin.OUT)

try:
    while True:
        if not sensorPin.value():
            ledPin.value(1) #Set led turn on
        else:
            ledPin.value(0) #Set led turn off
except:
    pass

```

The Shell window shows:

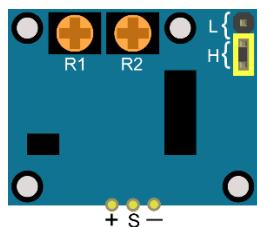
```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

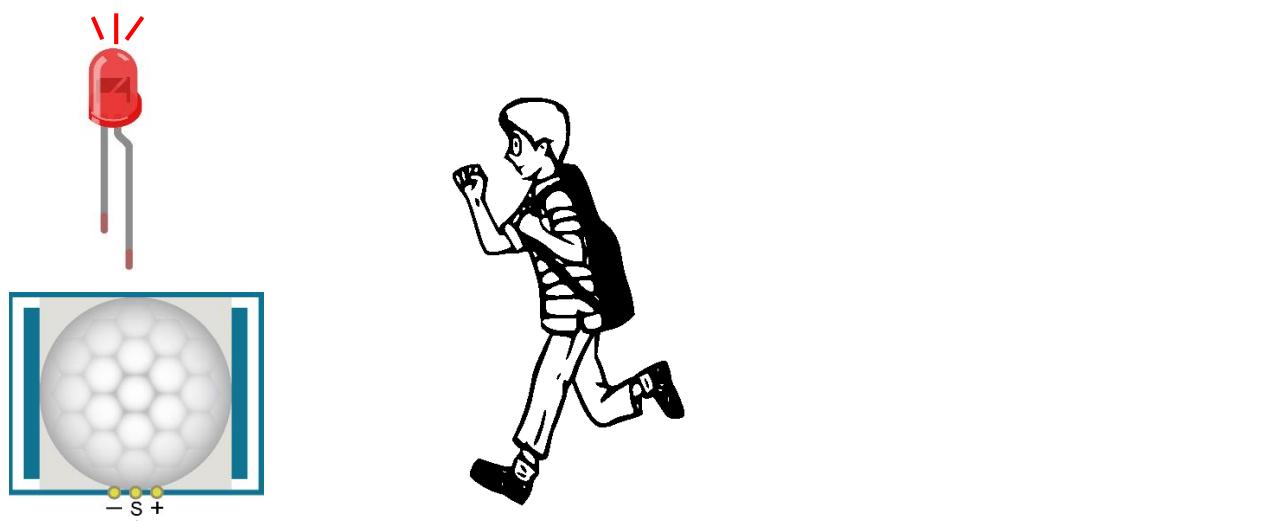
Click "Run current script". Put the sensor on a stationary table and wait for about a minute. Then try to move away from or move closer to the Infrared Motion Sensor and observe whether the LED turns ON or OFF automatically.

You can rotate the potentiometer on the sensor to adjust the detection effect, or use different modes by changing the jumper.



Apart from that, you can also use this sensor to control some other modules to implement different functions by reediting the code, such as the induction lamp, induction door.

#### Move to the Infrared Motion Sensor



#### Move away from the Infrared Motion Sensor



#### Description:

1. You can choose non repeatable trigger modes or repeatable modes.

L: nonrepeatable trigger mode. The module output high level after sensing a body, then when the delay time is over, the module will output low level. During high level time, the sensor no longer actively senses bodies.

H: repeatable trigger mode. The distinction from the L mode is that it can sense a body until that body

leaves. After this, it starts to time and output low level after delaying T time.

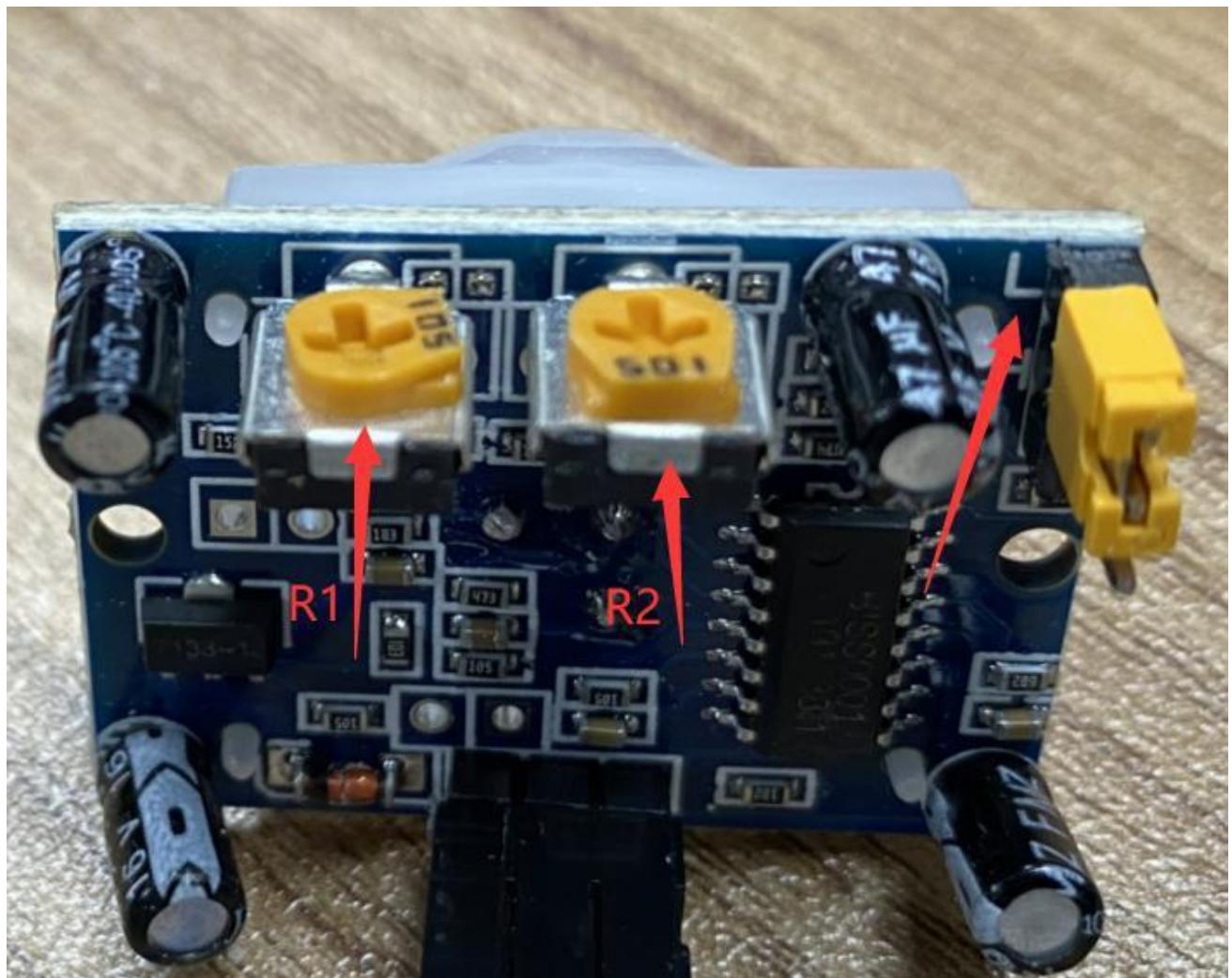
2. R1 is used to adjust HIGH level lasting time when sensor detects human motion , 1.2 s ~ 320 s

3. R2 is used to adjust the maximum distance the sensor can detect, 3~5m.

Here we connect L and adjust R1 and R2 like below to do this project.

Put your hand close and away from the sensor slowly. Observe the LED in previous circuit.

It needs some time between two detections.



# Chapter 26 Attitude Sensor MPU6050

In this chapter, we will learn about a MPU6050 Attitude Sensor which integrates an Accelerometer and Gyroscope.

## Project 26.1 Read a MPU6050 Sensor Module

In this project, we will read Acceleration and Gyroscope Data of the MPU6050 Sensor

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire F/M x6	MPU6050 x1 

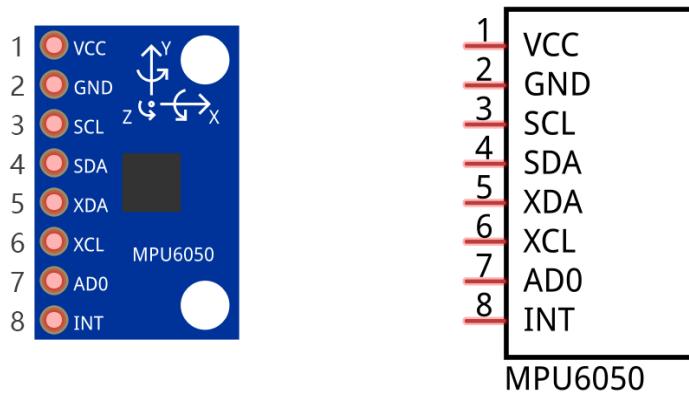


## Component knowledge

### MPU6050

MPU6050 Sensor Module is a complete 6-axis Motion Tracking Device. It combines a 3-axis Gyroscope, a 3-axis Accelerometer and a DMP (Digital Motion Processor) all in a small package. The settings of the Accelerometer and Gyroscope of MPU6050 can be changed. A precision wide range digital temperature sensor is also integrated to compensate data readings for changes in temperature, and temperature values can also be read. The MPU6050 Module follows the I2C communication protocol and the default address is 0x68.

MPU6050 is widely used to assist with balancing vehicles, robots and aircraft, mobile phones and other products which require stability to control stability and attitude or which need to sense same.



The port description of the MPU6050 module is as follows:

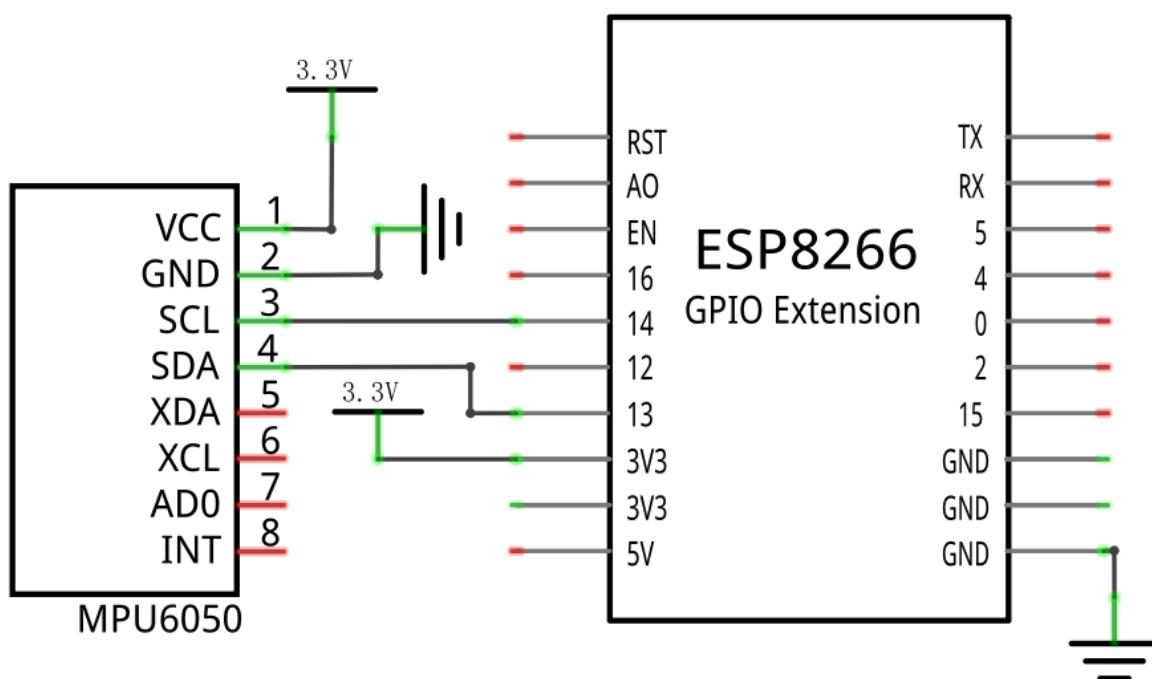
Pin name	Pin number	Description
VCC	1	Positive pole of power supply with voltage 5V
GND	2	Negative pole of power supply
SCL	3	I2C communication clock pin
SDA	4	I2C communication clock pin
XDA	5	I2C host data pin which can be connected to other devices.
XCL	6	I2C host clock pin which can be connected to other devices.
AD0	7	I2C address bit control pin. Low level: the device address is 0x68 High level: the device address is 0x69
INT	8	Output interrupt pin

For more detail, please refer to datasheet.

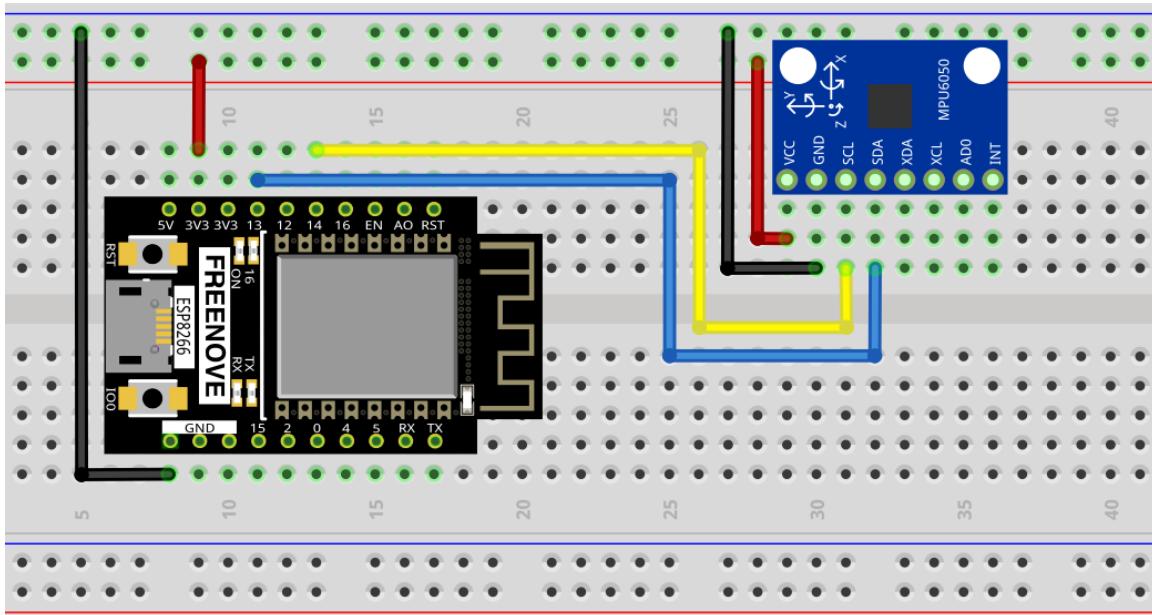
## Circuit

Note that the power supply voltage for MPU6050 module is 5V in the circuit.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

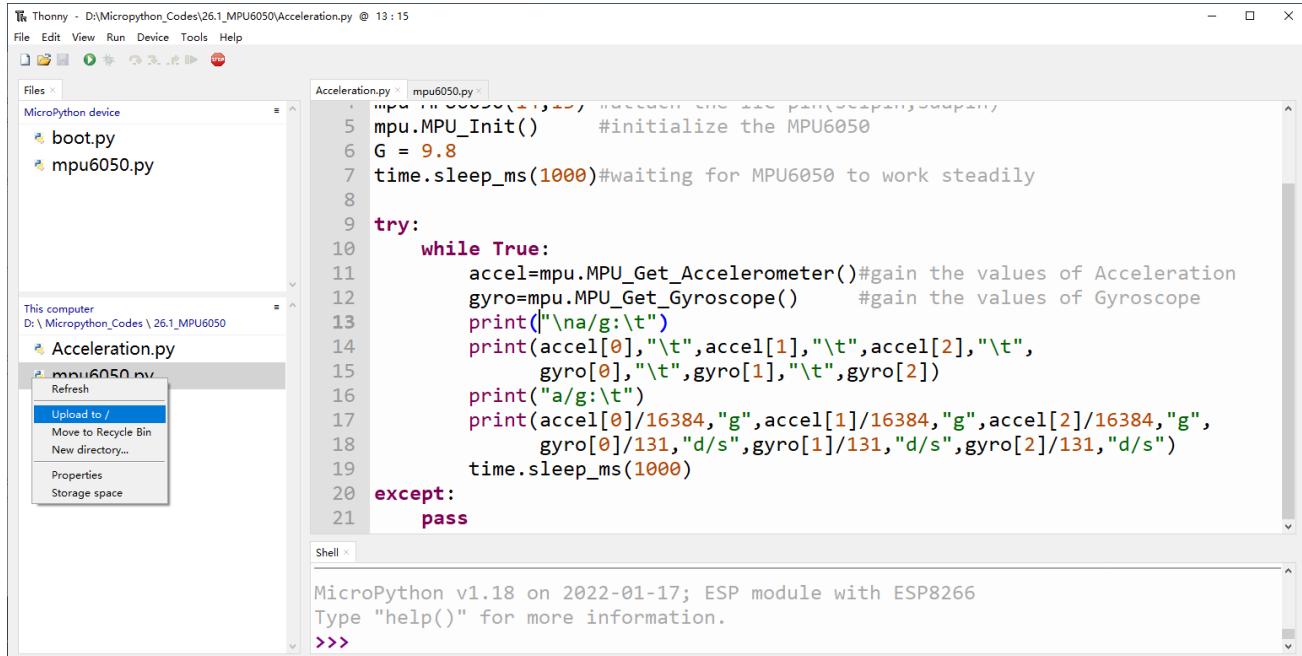


## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “26.1\_MPU6050”. Select “mpu6050.py”, right click your mouse to select “Upload to /”, wait for “mpu6050.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “MPU6050.py”.

### 26.1\_MPU6050



Click “Run current script”. When ESP8266 obtains acceleration data and gyroscope data of MPU605, it will print them in “Shell”.

```

a/g:
1102      506      16422     -60      39       8
a/g:
0.0672607 g 0.0308838 g 1.00232 g -0.458015 d/s 0.29771 d/s 0.0610687 d/s

a/g:
972      436      16408     -59      39       7
a/g:
0.0593262 g 0.0266113 g 1.00146 g -0.450382 d/s 0.29771 d/s 0.0534351 d/s

a/g:
948      498      16412     -60      39       8
a/g:
0.0578613 g 0.0303955 g 1.00171 g -0.458015 d/s 0.29771 d/s 0.0610687 d/s

a/g:
950      440      16372     -59      38       7
a/g:
0.0579834 g 0.0268555 g 0.999268 g -0.450382 d/s 0.290076 d/s 0.0534351 d/s

```

Note: The data transmission of MPU6050 is very sensitive. Therefore, when using it, please make sure the jumper wire is in good contact, otherwise the data may fail to be obtained.

The following is the program code:

```

1  from mpu6050 import MPU6050
2  import time
3
4  mpu=MPU6050(14, 13) #attach the IIC pin(sclpin, sdapin)
5  mpu.MPU_Init()      #initialize the MPU6050
6  G = 9.8
7  time.sleep_ms(1000)#waiting for MPU6050 to work steadily
8  try:
9      while True:
10         accel=mpu.MPU_Get_Accelerometer()#gain the values of Acceleration
11         gyro=mpu.MPU_Get_Gyroscope()      #gain the values of Gyroscope
12         print("\n\n/g:\t")
13         print(accel[0], "\t", accel[1], "\t", accel[2], "\t",
14               gyro[0], "\t", gyro[1], "\t", gyro[2])
15         print("a/g:\t")
16         print(accel[0]/16384, "g", accel[1]/16384, "g", accel[2]/16384, "g",
17               gyro[0]/16384, "d/s", gyro[1]/16384, "d/s", gyro[2]/16384, "d/s")
18         time.sleep_ms(1000)
19     except:
20         pass

```

Import MPU6050 and time modules.

```

1  from mpu6050 import MPU6050
2  import time

```

Set I2C pins and associate them with MPU6050 module, and then initialize MPU6050 and wait for the initialization to complete.

```

4  mpu=MPU6050(14, 13) #attach the IIC pin(sclpin, sdapin)
5  mpu.MPU_Init()      #initialize the MPU6050
6  G = 9.8
7  time.sleep_ms(1000)#waiting for MPU6050 to work steadily

```

Obtain the acceleration data of MPU6050 and store it in accel. Obtain the gyroscope data and store it in gyro.

```

10    accel=mpu.MPU_Get_Accelerometer()#gain the values of Acceleration
11    gyro=mpu.MPU_Get_Gyroscope()      #gain the values of Gyroscope

```

Update and collect the original data of the gyroscope every second and print the original data and processed acceleration and angular velocity data in "Shell".

```

10    accel=mpu.MPU_Get_Accelerometer()#gain the values of Acceleration
11    gyro=mpu.MPU_Get_Gyroscope()      #gain the values of Gyroscope
12    print("\n\n/g:\t")
13    print(accel[0], "\t", accel[1], "\t", accel[2], "\t",
14          gyro[0], "\t", gyro[1], "\t", gyro[2])
15    print("a/g:\t")
16    print(accel[0]/16384, "g", accel[1]/16384, "g", accel[2]/16384, "g",

```

```
17     gyro[0]/16384, "d/s", gyro[1]/16384, "d/s", gyro[2]/16384, "d/s")  
18     time.sleep_ms(1000)
```

#### Reference

##### Class mpu6050

Before each use of **mpu6050**, please add the statement “**from mpu6050 import MPU6050**” to the top of the python file.

**MPU6050(sclpin,sdapin)**: Create an object MPU6050 and associate I2C pin with it.

**MPU\_Init()**: Initialize MPU6050 module.

**MPU\_Get\_Accelerometer()**: Obtain original data of MPU6050's acceleration

**MPU\_Get\_Gyroscope()**: Obtain original data of MPU6050's Gyroscope

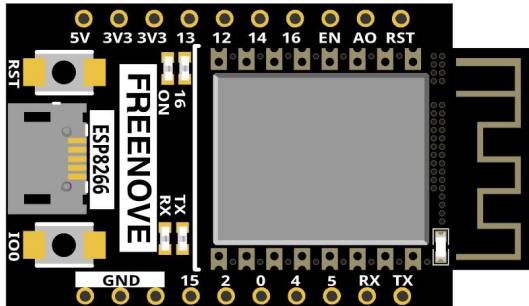
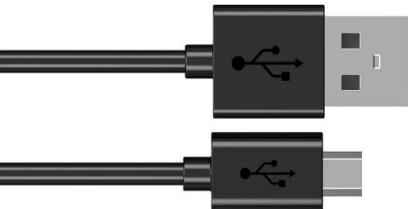
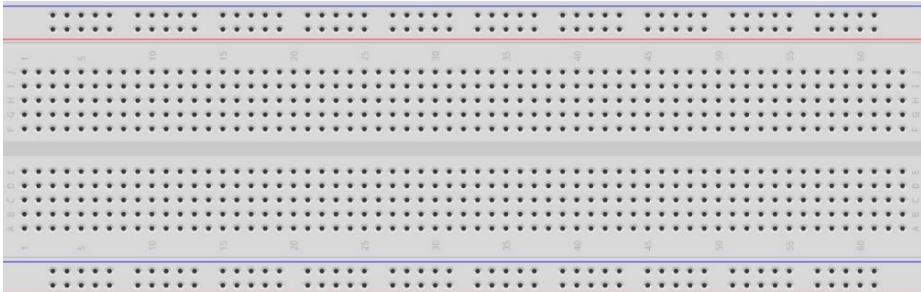
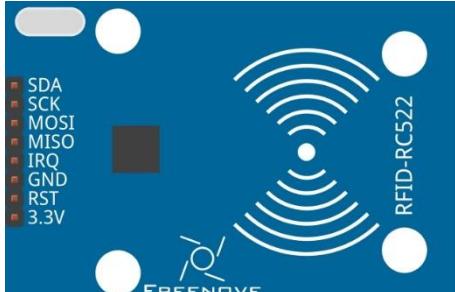
# Chapter 27 RFID

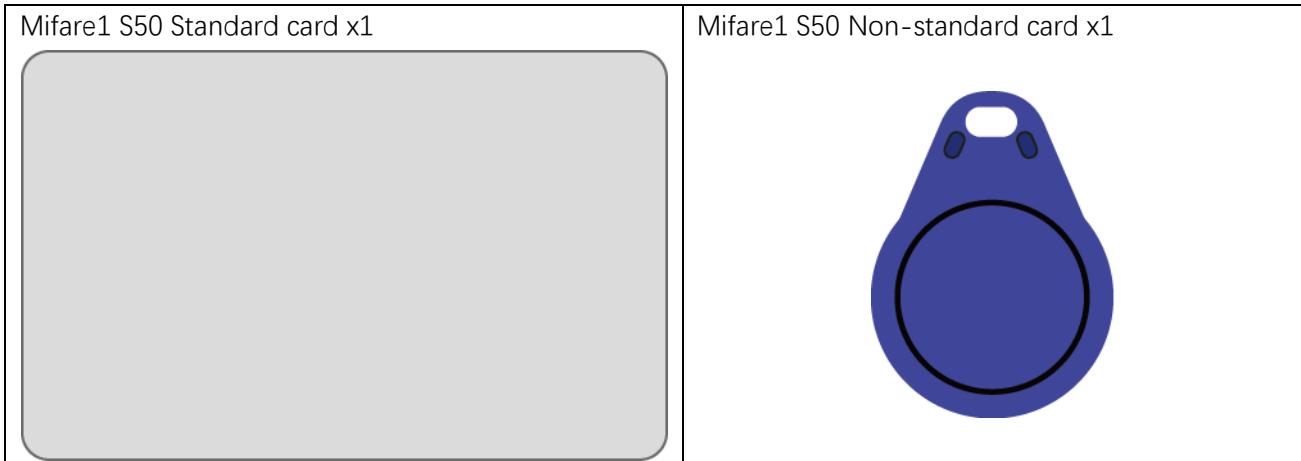
Now, we will learn to use the RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) wireless communication technology.

## Project 27.1 RFID read UID

In this project, we will read the unique ID number (UID) of the RFID card, recognize the type of the RFID card and display the information through serial port.

### Component List

ESP8266 x1	USB cable
	
Breadboard x1	
Jumper wire M/M x8	



## Component knowledge

### RFID

RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) is a wireless communication technology. A complete RFID system is generally composed of the responder and reader. Generally, we use tags as responders, and each tag has a unique code, which is attached to the object to identify the target object. The reader is a device for reading (or writing) tag information.

Products derived from RFID technology can be divided into three categories: passive RFID products, active RFID products and semi active RFID products. And Passive RFID products are the earliest, the most mature and most widely used products in the market among others. It can be seen everywhere in our daily life such as, the bus card, dining card, bank card, hotel access cards, etc., and all of these belong to close-range contact recognition. The main operating frequency of Passive RFID products are: 125KHZ (low frequency), 13.56MHZ (high frequency), 433MHZ (ultrahigh frequency), 915MHZ (ultrahigh frequency). Active and semi active RFID products work at higher frequencies.

The RFID module we use is a passive RFID product with the operating frequency of 13.56MHz.

### MFRC522 RFID Module

The MFRC522 is a highly integrated reader/writer IC for contactless communication at 13.56MHz.

The MFRC522's internal transmitter is able to drive a reader/writer antenna designed to communicate with ISO/IEC 14443 A/MIFARE cards and transponders without additional active circuitry. The receiver module provides a robust and efficient implementation for demodulating and decoding signals from ISO/IEC 14443 A/MIFARE compatible cards and transponders. The digital module manages the complete ISO/IEC 14443A framing and error detection (parity and CRC) functionality.

This RFID Module uses MFRC522 as the control chip, and SPI (Peripheral Interface Serial) as the reserved interface.

**Technical specs:**

Operating Voltage	13-26mA(DC)\3.3V
Idle current	10-13mA(DC)\3.3V
Sleep current in the	<80uA
Peak current	<30mA
Operating frequency	13.56MHz
Supported card type	Mifare1 S50、Mifare1 S70、Mifare Ultralight、Mifare Pro、Mifare Desfire
Size	40mmX60mm
Operation temperature	20-80 degrees(Celsius)
Storage temperature	40-85 degrees (Celsius)
Operation humidity	5%-95%(Relative humidity)

**Mifare1 S50 Card**

Mifare S50 is often called Mifare Standard with the capacity of 1K bytes. And each card has a 4-bytes global unique identifier number (USN/UID), which can be rewritten 100 thousand times and read infinite times. Its storage period can last for 10 years. The ordinary Mifare1 S50 Card and non-standard Mifare1 S50 Card equipped for this kit are shown below.

The Mifare S50 capacity (1K byte) is divided into 16 sectors (Sector0-Sector15). Each sector contains 4 data block (Block0-Block3. 64 blocks of 16 sectors will be numbered according absolute address, from 0 to 63). And each block contains 16 bytes (Byte0-Byte15),  $64 \times 16 = 1024$ . As is shown in the following table:

Sector No.	Block No.	Storage area	Block type	Absolute block No.
sector 0	block 0	vendor code	vendor block	0
	block 1		data block	1
	block 2		data block	2
	block 3	Password A-access control-password B	control block	3
sector 1	block 0		data block	4
	block 1		data block	5
	block 2		data block	6
	block 3	Password A-access control-password B	control block	7
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
sector 15	block 0		data block	60
	block 1		data block	61
	block 2		data block	62
	block 3	Password A-access control-password B	control block	63

Each sector has a set of independent password and access control put in its last block, that is, Block 3, which is also known as sector trailer. Sector 0, block 0 (namely absolute address 0) of S50 is used to store the card serial number and vendor code, which has been solidified and can't be changed. Except the manufacturer and the control block, the rest of the cards are data blocks, which can be used to store data. Data block can be used for two kinds of applications:

(1) used as general data storage and can be operated for reading and writing data.



(2) used as data value, and can be operated for initializing, adding, subtracting and reading the value.

The sector trailer block in each sector is the control block, including a 6-byte password A, a 4-byte access control and a 6-byte password B. For example, the control block of a brand new card is as follows:

A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 A5	FF 07 80 69	B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 B5
password A	access control	password B

The default password of a brand new card is generally 0A1A2A3A4A5 for password A and B0B1B2B3B4B5 for password B, or both the password A and password B are 6 FF. Access control is used to set the access conditions for each block (including the control block itself) in a sector.

Blocks of S50 are divided into data blocks and control blocks. There are four operations, "read", "write", "add value", "subtract value (including transmission and storage)" for data blocks, and there are two operations, "read" and "write" for control blocks.

For more details about how to set data blocks and control blocks, please refer to Datasheet.

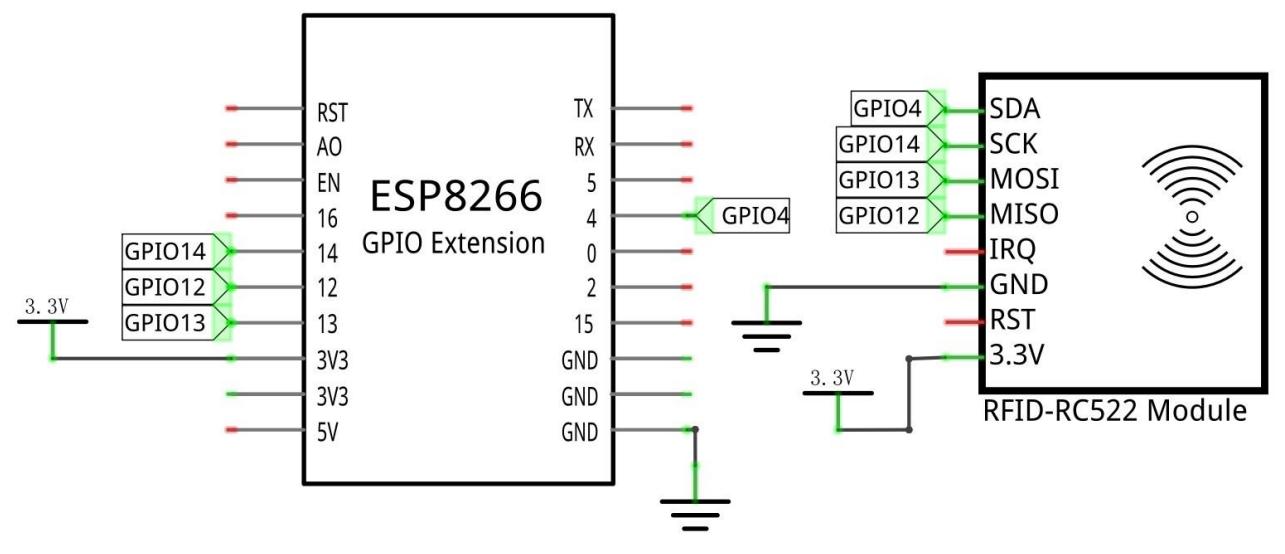
By default, after verifying password A or password B, we can do reading or writing operation to data blocks. And after verifying password A, we can do reading or writing operation to control blocks. But password A can never be read, so if you choose to verify password A but forget the password A, the block will never be able to read again. **It is highly recommended that beginners should not try to change the contents of control blocks.**

For Mifare1 S50 card equipped in Freenove RFID Kit, the default password A and B are both FFFFFFFFFFFF.

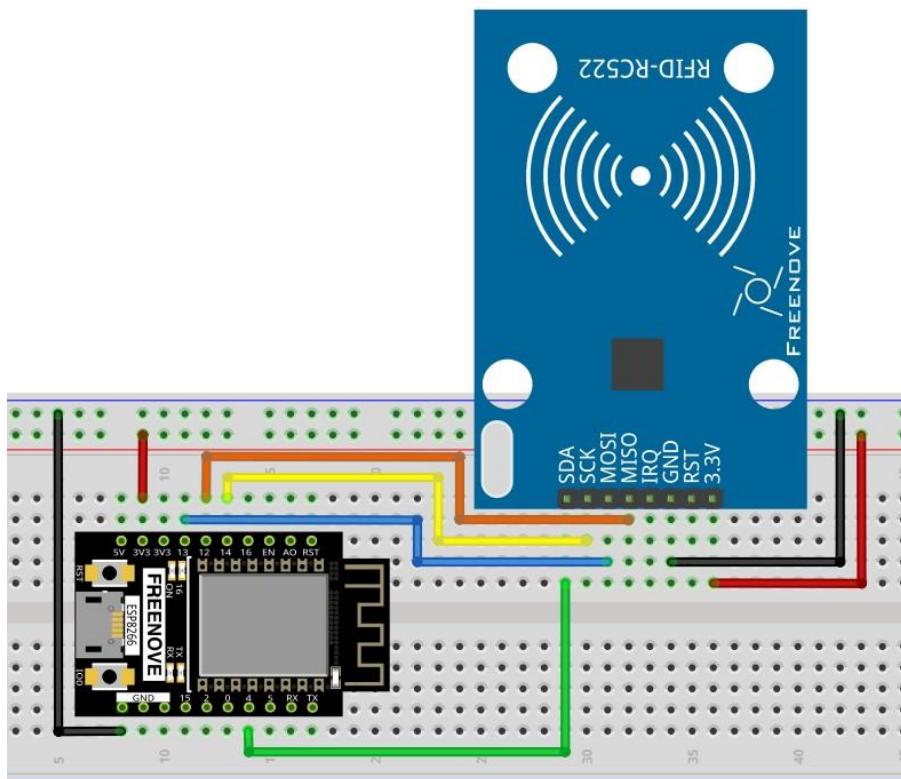
## Circuit

The connection of control board and RFID module is shown below.

Schematic diagram



Hardware connection. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



## Code

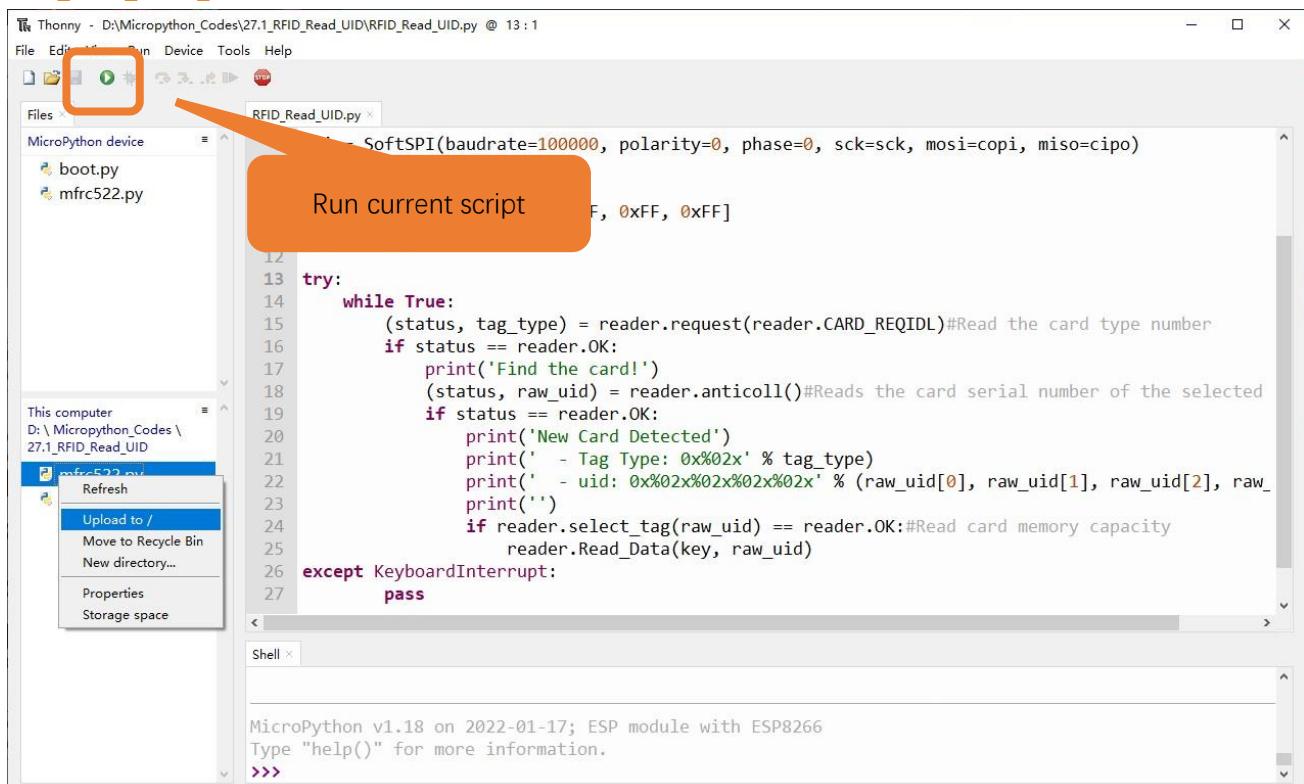
In this project, we will read the unique ID number (UID) of the RFID card, recognize the type of the RFID card and display the information through serial port.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “27.1\_Infrared\_Motion\_Detector” and then double click “Infrared\_Motion\_Detector.py”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “27.1\_RFID\_Read\_UID”. **Select “mfrc522.py”, right click to select “Upload to /”, wait for “mfrc522.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “RFID\_Read\_UID.py”.**

### 27.1\_RFID\_Read\_UID



Click “Run current script”, put the white or blue magnetic card near the RFID module, and Pico will print out the read information such as card type, card UID and card address data to “Shell”. Press the “RST” button on the ESP8266 development board and exit the program. You can also click “Run current script” again.

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface. In the top bar, it says "Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\27.1\_RFID\_Read\_UID\RFID\_Read\_UID.py @ 13 : 1". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for file operations. The left sidebar shows a "Files" tab with "MicroPython device" expanded, containing "boot.py" and "mfrc522.py". The main area has two tabs: "RFID\_Read\_UID.py" and "Shell". The "RFID\_Read\_UID.py" tab contains the following code:

```

7  spi = SoftSPI(baudrate=100000, polarity=0, phase=0, sck=sck, mosi=copi, miso=cipo)
8  sda = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
9  reader = MFRC522(spi, sda)
10 key = [0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF]
11 option = 0
12
13 try:
14     while True:
15         (status, tag_type) = reader.request(reader.CARD_REQIDL)#Read the card type number
16         if status == reader.OK:
17             print('Find the card!')
18             (status, raw_uid) = reader.anticoll()#Reads the card serial number of the selected
19             if status == reader.OK:
20                 print('New Card Detected')
21                 print(' - Tag Type: 0x%02x' % tag_type)
22                 print(' - uid: 0x%02x%02x%02x%02x' % (raw_uid[0], raw_uid[1], raw_uid[2], raw_
23                 print('')

```

The "Shell" tab shows the output of the script:

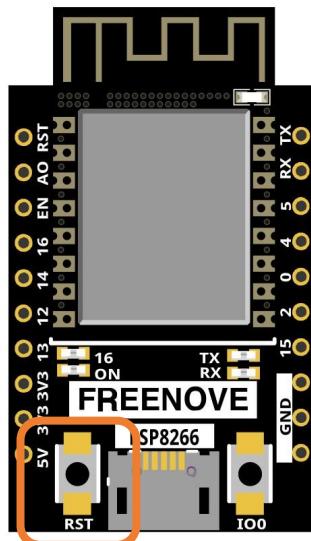
```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> Python 3.8.10 | EDITOR CONTENT
Find the card!
New Card Detected
- Tag Type: 0x10
- uid: 0xfcfc2f4a
4: WelcomeFreenove
21.

```

If your "Shell" output is incorrect, check that the hardware connection is correct and press the "RST" button on the ESP8266 development board and click "Run current script" again.

If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



The following is the program code:

```

1  from machine import Pin, SoftSPI
2  from mfrc522 import MFRC522
3
4  sck = Pin(14, Pin.OUT)
5  copi = Pin(13, Pin.OUT) # Controller out, peripheral in
6  cipo = Pin(12, Pin.OUT) # Controller in, peripheral out
7  spi = SoftSPI(baudrate=100000, polarity=0, phase=0, sck=sck, mosi=copi, miso=cipo)

```

```

8 sda = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
9 reader = MFRC522(spi, sda)
10 key = [0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF]
11
12 try:
13     while True:
14         (status, tag_type) = reader.request(reader.CARD_REQIDL) #Read the card type number
15         if status == reader.OK:
16             print('Find the card!')
17             (status, raw_uid) = reader.anticoll() #Reads the card serial number of the selected
18             card
19             if status == reader.OK:
20                 print('New Card Detected')
21                 print(' - Tag Type: 0x%02x' % tag_type)
22                 print(' - uid: 0x%02x%02x%02x%02x' % (raw_uid[0], raw_uid[1], raw_uid[2],
23                     raw_uid[3]))
24                 print('')
25                 if reader.select_tag(raw_uid) == reader.OK: #Read card memory capacity
26                     reader.Read_Data(key, raw_uid)
27     except KeyboardInterrupt:
28         pass

```

Import Pin, SoftSPI and MFRC522 modules

```

1 from machine import Pin, SoftSPI
2 from mfrc522 import MFRC522

```

Set SPI Pins and associate them with RFID-RC522 module, and then set MFRC522 module.

```

4 sck = Pin(14, Pin.OUT)
5 copi = Pin(13, Pin.OUT) # Controller out, peripheral in
6 cipo = Pin(12, Pin.OUT) # Controller in, peripheral out
7 spi = SoftSPI(baudrate=100000, polarity=0, phase=0, sck=sck, mosi=copi, miso=cipo)
8 sda = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)
9 reader = MFRC522(spi, sda)

```

Call the request() function to determine whether the RFID module detects the card. If so, read the model information of the card.

```

14     (status, tag_type) = reader.request(reader.CARD_REQIDL) #Read the card type number

```

Call anticoll() function to read serial number of the selected card and save the data to the raw\_uid variable.

```

17     (status, raw_uid) = reader.anticoll() #Reads the card serial number of the selected
18     card

```

Call select\_tag() function to determine whether the memory information of the card can be read.

Call the auth() function to verify whether the card's password information is correct.

```

23     reader.select_tag(raw_uid)

```

Read the data of the card.

```

24     reader.Read_Data(key, raw_uid)

```

The process of reading card information:

First determine whether the RFID module detects the card. If it does, read the model information and UID of

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

the card, and then determine whether the memory information of the card is readable. If it is readable, first verify the password of the card. If the password is correct, read the address data of the card, and print out all the read information to the "Shell".

```

13     while True:
14         (status, tag_type) = reader.request(reader.CARD_REQIDL) #Read the card type number
15         if status == reader.OK:
16             print('Find the card!')
17             (status, raw_uid) = reader.anticoll() #Reads the card serial number of the selected
18             card
19             if status == reader.OK:
20                 print('New Card Detected')
21                 print(' - Tag Type: 0x%02x' % tag_type)
22                 print(' - uid: 0x%02x%02x%02x%02x' % (raw_uid[0], raw_uid[1], raw_uid[2],
23                     raw_uid[3]))
24                 print('')
25             if reader.select_tag(raw_uid) == reader.OK:#Read card memory capacity
26                 reader.Read_Data(key, raw_uid)

```

## Reference

### Class MFRC 522()

Before each use of mfrc522 module, please add the statement “**from mfrc522 import MFRC522**” to the top of the python file.

**MFRC522(spi, cs)**: Creat an object MFRC522.

**spi**: instance of the SoftSPI class.

**cs**: Chip select.

**Default variables in the MFRC522 class:**

MFRC522.OK = 0

MFRC522.NO\_TAG\_ERR = 1

MFRC522.ERR = 2

MFRC522.CARD\_REQIDL = 0x26

MFRC522.AUTH = 0x60

**MFRC522.init()**: Initialize MFRC522 module.

**MFRC522.reset()**: Reset MFRC522 module.

**MFRC522.request(mode)**: Request to read card data. The function returns a status code and an int. The status code is used to check whether a card is being read. The data of the int type is the model data of the card.

**mode**: CARD\_REQIDL = 0x26.

**MFRC522.anticol1()**: Read the serial number of the card. The function returns a list and a status code. The data in the list is the serial number of the card.

**MFRC522.select\_tag()**: Check whether the memory information of the card can be read.

**MFRC522.auth(mode, addr, sect, serial\_number)**: The function is used to verify the card password, and returns a boolean value. If it is correct, it returns True, if it is wrong, it returns False.

**mode**: AUTH = 0x60.

**addr**: data address.

**sect**: password of the card.

**serial\_number**: serial number of the card.

**MFRC522.read(addr)**: read data in addr address.

**MFRC522.write(addr, data)**: Function to write card data. addr is the address of the data to be written and data is the data to be written. Returns a status code.

**MFRC522.Read\_Data(sect, serial\_number)**: Read all the data written to the card and print it out.

**sect**: password of the card.

**serial\_number**: serial number of the card.

**MFRC522.Write\_Data(sect, serial\_number, datas)**: Write datas data into the card, the original data in the card will be overwritten.

**MFRC522.Clear\_Data(sect, serial\_number)**: Clear the data written to the card.

**MFRC522.Write\_Row\_Data(sect, serial\_number, addr, datas)**: Write the datas data to the addr address.

**MFRC522.Read\_Row\_Data(sect, serial\_number, addr)**: Read the data at the addr address and print it out.

**MFRC522.Clear\_Row\_Data(sect, serial\_number, addr)**: Clear the data of the addr address.

### Class SoftSPI

Before each use of SoftSPI module, please add the statement “**from machine import SoftSPI**” to the top of the python file.

**Machine.SoftSPI(id, baudrate, polarity, phase, bits, sck, mosi, miso)**: construct a new software SPI object. Additional parameters must be give, usually at least id, baudrate, sck, mosi, miso.

**SoftSPI.init(baudrate, polarity, phase, bits, sck, mosi, miso)**:

**Baudrate**: the SCK clock rate.

**Polarity**: It is set as 0 or 1, which represents the level of the clock line when it is idle.

**Phase**: It is set as 0 or 1, to sample data on the first or second clock edge, respectively.

**sck, mosi, miso**: Corresponding pins of SPI bus in ESP8266.

**SoftSPI.deinit()**: Close the SoftSPI bus.

**SoftSPI.read(nbytes, write=0)**: Read a number of bytes specified by nbytes while continuously writing the single byte given by write. Returns a bytes object with the data that was read.

**SoftSPI.readinto(buf, write=0)**: Read into the buffer specified by buf while continuously writing the single byte given by write. Returns None.

**SoftSPI.write(buf)**: Write the bytes contained in buf. Returns None.

**SoftSPI.write\_readinto(write\_buf, read\_buf)**: Write the bytes from write\_buf while reading into read\_buf. The buffers can be the same or different, but both buffers must have the same length. Returns None.

## Project 27.2RFID Read and Write

In this project, we will do reading and writing operations to the card.

### Component List

Same with last section.

### Circuit

Same with last section.

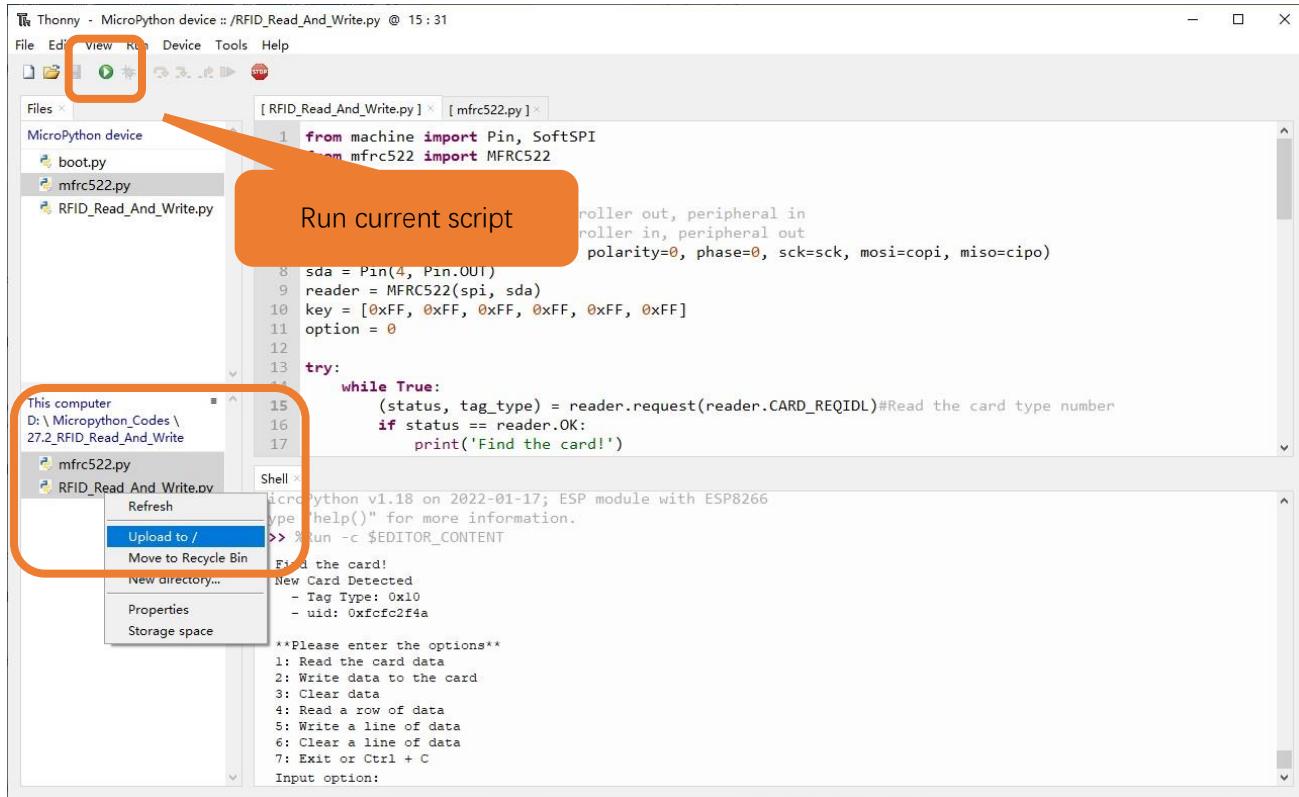
### Code

In this project, we will do reading and writing operations to the card.

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “27.2\_RFID\_Read\_And\_Write”. Select “mfrc522.py”, right click to **select “Upload to /”, wait for “mfrc522.py” to be uploaded to ESP8266 and then double click “RFID\_Read\_And\_Write.py”.**

## 27.2 RFID Read UID



Click "Run current script", put the white magnetic card or blue magnetic card close to the induction area of the RFID module, the "Shell" window prints the read information such as card UID data.

It also provides the option to perform regular read and write operations on the card. Press Ctrl+C or click "Stop/Restart backend" to exit the program.

In the experiment, it is recommended to place the white or blue magnetic card above the sensor area of the RFID module, and then remove it after the experiment. This is conducive to relevant operations and prevent the occurrence of false alarms.

```

>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

Find the card!
New Card Detected
- Tag Type: 0x10
- uid: 0xfcfc2f4a

**Please enter the options**
1: Read the card data
2: Write data to the card
3: Clear data
4: Read a row of data
5: Write a line of data
6: Clear a line of data
7: Exit or Ctrl + C
Input option:

```

For example: Option 1 is to read all the data of the card.

```
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

    Find the card!
    New Card Detected
        - Tag Type: 0x10
        - uid: 0xfcfc2f4a

    **Please enter the options**
    1: Read the card data
    2: Write data to the card
    3: Clear data
    4: Read a row of data
    5: Write a line of data
    6: Clear a line of data
    7: Exit or Ctrl + C
Input option: 1

1: WelcomeFreenove!
reading end
```

Line number

Data stored in the card

Option2 is to write data to the card.

```
3: Clear data
4: Read a row of data
5: Write a line of data
6: Clear a line of data
7: Exit or Ctrl + C
Input option: 2

please input datas: Welcome
Write card OK!

**Please enter the options**
1: Read the card data
2: Write data to the card
3: Clear data
4: Read a row of data
5: Write a line of data
6: Clear a line of data
7: Exit or Ctrl + C
Input option: 1
```

Select Option2

Input datas

Select Option1

```
1: Welcome
reading end
```

Read the data

Option3 is to clear data.

```

3: Clear data
4: Read a row of data
5: Write a line of data
6: Clear a line of data
7: Exit or Ctrl + C
Input option: 3

```

Select Option3

Clear Data!

```

**Please enter the options**
1: Read the card data
2: Write data to the card
3: Clear data
4: Read a row of data
5: Write a line of data
6: Clear a line of data
7: Exit or Ctrl + C
Input option: 1

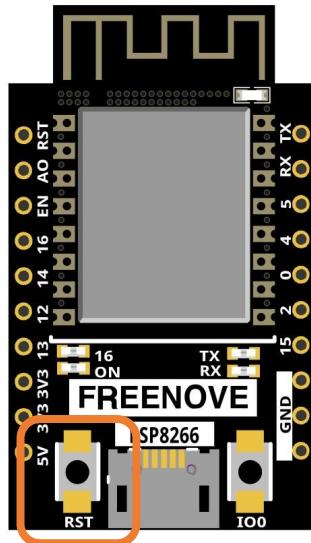
```

Select Option1

reading end  
No Data!

Read data

If your "Shell" output is incorrect or the output error alert, please check that the hardware connection is correct and press the "RST" button on the ESP8266 development board and click "Run current script" again. If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)



The following is the program code:

```

1 from machine import Pin, SoftSPI
2 from mfrc522 import MFRC522
3
4 sck = Pin(14, Pin.OUT)
5 copi = Pin(13, Pin.OUT) # Controller out, peripheral in
6 cipo = Pin(12, Pin.OUT) # Controller in, peripheral out
7 spi = SoftSPI(baudrate=100000, polarity=0, phase=0, sck=sck, mosi=copi, miso=cipo)
8 sda = Pin(4, Pin.OUT)

```

Any concerns? ✉ [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

```
9 reader = MFRC522(spi, sda)
10 key = [0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF]
11 option = 0
12
13 try:
14     while True:
15         (status, tag_type) = reader.request(reader.CARD_REQIDL) #Read the card type number
16         if status == reader.OK:
17             print('Find the card!')
18             (status, raw_uid) = reader.anticoll() #Reads the card serial number of the selected
19             card
20             if status == reader.OK:
21                 print('New Card Detected')
22                 print(' - Tag Type: 0x%02x' % tag_type)
23                 print(' - uid: 0x%02x%02x%02x%02x' % (raw_uid[0], raw_uid[1], raw_uid[2],
24             raw_uid[3]))
25                 print('')
26             if reader.select_tag(raw_uid) == reader.OK:#Read card memory capacity
27                 while option != "7":
28                     print("Please enter the options**")
29                     print("1: Read the card data")
30                     print("2: Write data to the card")
31                     print("3: Clear data")
32                     print("4: Read a row of data")
33                     print("5: Write a line of data")
34                     print("6: Clear a line of data")
35                     print("7: Exit or Ctrl + C")
36                     option = input("Input option: ")
37                     print("")
38                     if option == "1":
39                         reader.Read_Data(key, raw_uid)
40                     elif option == "2":
41                         datas = input("plase input datas: ")
42                         reader.Write_Data(key, raw_uid, datas)
43                     elif option == "3":
44                         reader.Clear_Data(key, raw_uid)
45                     elif option == "4":
46                         row_index = int(input("Please enter the row index: "))
47                         if (row_index+1)%4 == 0 or row_index == 0 or row_index > 63:
48                             print("\nPermission Denied")
49                         if reader.auth(0x60, row_index, key, raw_uid) == reader.OK:
#Verification card password
                                if bytarray(reader.read(row_index)) == bytarray(16):
                                    print("No Data")
```

```

50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
    else:
        print(str(row_index) + ":" + 
str(bytarray(reader.read(row_index)).decode()))
    else:
        print("ERROR")
elif option == "5":
    row_index = int(input("Please enter the row index: "))
    datas = input("plase input datas: ")
    reader.Write_Row_Data(key, raw_uid, row_index, datas)
elif option == "6":
    row_index = int(input("Please enter the row index: "))
    reader.Clear_Row_Data(key, raw_uid, row_index)
elif option == "7":
    reader.stop_crypto1()
    print("Exit the success")
else:
    print("Input error")
print("")
break
except KeyboardInterrupt:
    pass

```

Print the function of each option, use the option variable to receive the options input by the user.

```

26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
    print("**Please enter the options**")
    print("1: Read the card data")
    print("2: Write data to the card")
    print("3: Clear data")
    print("4: Read a row of data")
    print("5: Write a line of data")
    print("6: Clear a line of data")
    print("7: Exit or Ctrl + C")
    option = input("Input option: ")

```

Read\_Data() function reads data in the card (excluding the password).

37	reader.Read_Data(key, raw_uid)
----	--------------------------------

Call Write\_Data() to continuously write data to the card. Call the function again will overwrite data previously input.

40	reader.Write_Data(key, raw_uid, datas)
----	--

Clear\_Data() function is used to clear all input data in the card.

42	reader.Clear_Data(key, raw_uid)
----	---------------------------------

Call Read\_Row\_Data() function to read data in designated address.

```

45
46
47
48
    if (row_index+1)%4 == 0 or row_index == 0 or row_index > 63:
        print("\nPermission Denied")
    if reader.auth(0x60, row_index, key, raw_uid) == reader.OK:
        #Verification card password
        if bytarray(reader.read(row_index)) == bytarray(16):

```

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

```

49                     print("No Data")
50
51             else:
52                 print(str(row_index) + ":" +
53                     str(bytarray(reader.read(row_index)).decode()))
54             else:
55                 print("ERROR")

```

Write\_Row\_Data() function writes data to designated address.

```

57             reader.Write_Row_Data(key, raw_uid, row_index, datas)

```

Clear\_Row\_Data() clears data of designated address.

```

60             reader.Clear_Row_Data(key, raw_uid, row_index)

```

Based on the prompt, users can input option in "Shell" to read, write, or erase data on the card, and output the result in the "Shell". You can exit the program by inputting 7 or pressing Ctrl + C.

```

25             while option != "7":
26                 print("**Please enter the options**")
27                 print("1: Read the card data")
28                 print("2: Write data to the card")
29                 print("3: Clear data")
30                 print("4: Read a row of data")
31                 print("5: Write a line of data")
32                 print("6: Clear a line of data")
33                 print("7: Exit or Ctrl + C")
34                 option = input("Input option: ")
35                 print("")
36                 if option == "1":
37                     reader.Read_Data(key, raw_uid)
38                 elif option == "2":
39                     datas = input("plase input datas: ")
40                     reader.Write_Data(key, raw_uid, datas)
41                 elif option == "3":
42                     reader.Clear_Data(key, raw_uid)
43                 elif option == "4":
44                     row_index = int(input("Please enter the row index: "))
45                     if (row_index+1)%4 == 0 or row_index == 0 or row_index > 63:
46                         print("\nPermission Denied")
47                     if reader.auth(0x60, row_index, key, raw_uid) == reader.OK:
#Verification card password
48                         if bytarray(reader.read(row_index)) == bytarray(16):
49                             print("No Data")
50                         else:
51                             print(str(row_index) + ":" +
52                                 str(bytarray(reader.read(row_index)).decode()))
53                         else:
54                             print("ERROR")
55                 elif option == "5":

```

```
55         row_index = int(input("Please enter the row index: "))
56         datas = input("plase input datas: ")
57         reader.Write_Row_Data(key, raw_uid, row_index, datas)
58     elif option == "6":
59         row_index = int(input("Please enter the row index: "))
60         reader.Clear_Row_Data(key, raw_uid, row_index)
61     elif option == "7":
62         reader.stop_crypto1()
63         print("Exit the success")
64     else:
65         print("Input error")
66         print("")
67     break
```

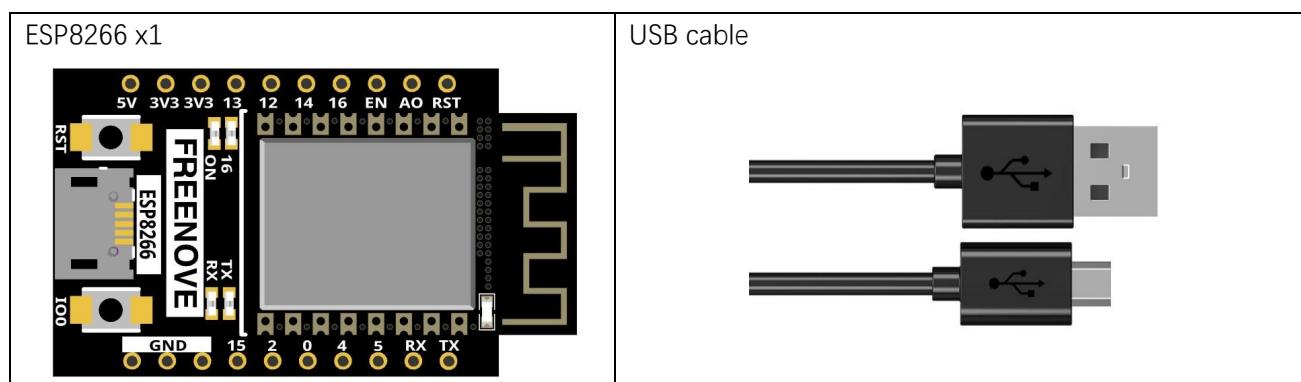
# Chapter 28 WiFi Working Modes

In this chapter, we'll focus on the WiFi infrastructure for ESP8266.

ESP8266 has 3 different WiFi operating modes: Station mode, AP mode and AP+Station mode. All WiFi programming projects must be configured with WiFi operating mode before using WiFi, otherwise WiFi cannot be used.

## Project 28.1 Station mode

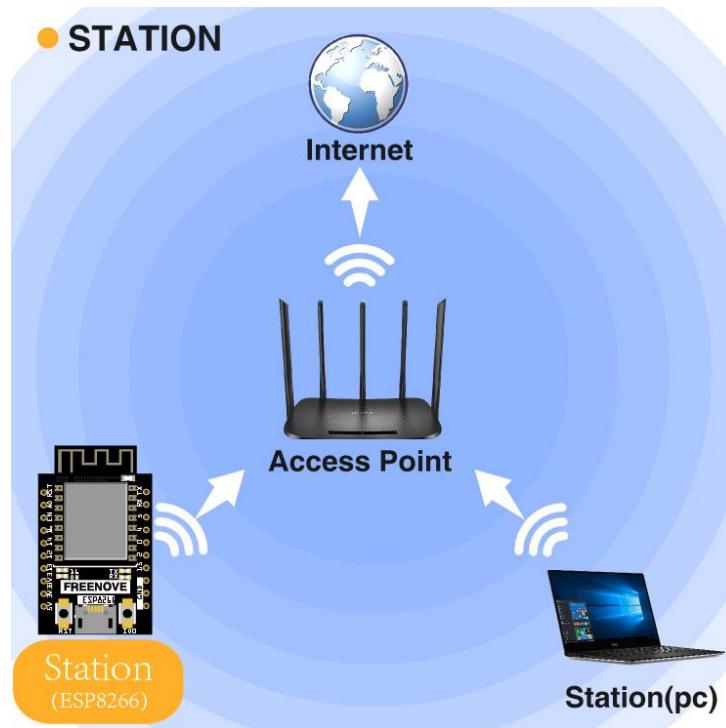
### Component List



### Component knowledge

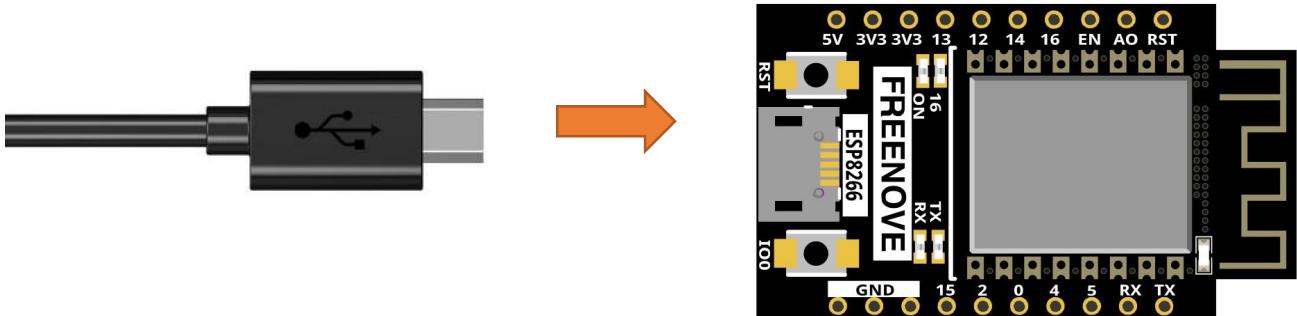
#### Station mode

When ESP8266 selects Station mode, it acts as a WiFi client. It can connect to the router network and communicate with other devices on the router via WiFi connection. As shown below, the PC is connected to the router, and if ESP8266 wants to communicate with the PC, it needs to be connected to the router.



## Circuit

Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer using the USB cable.



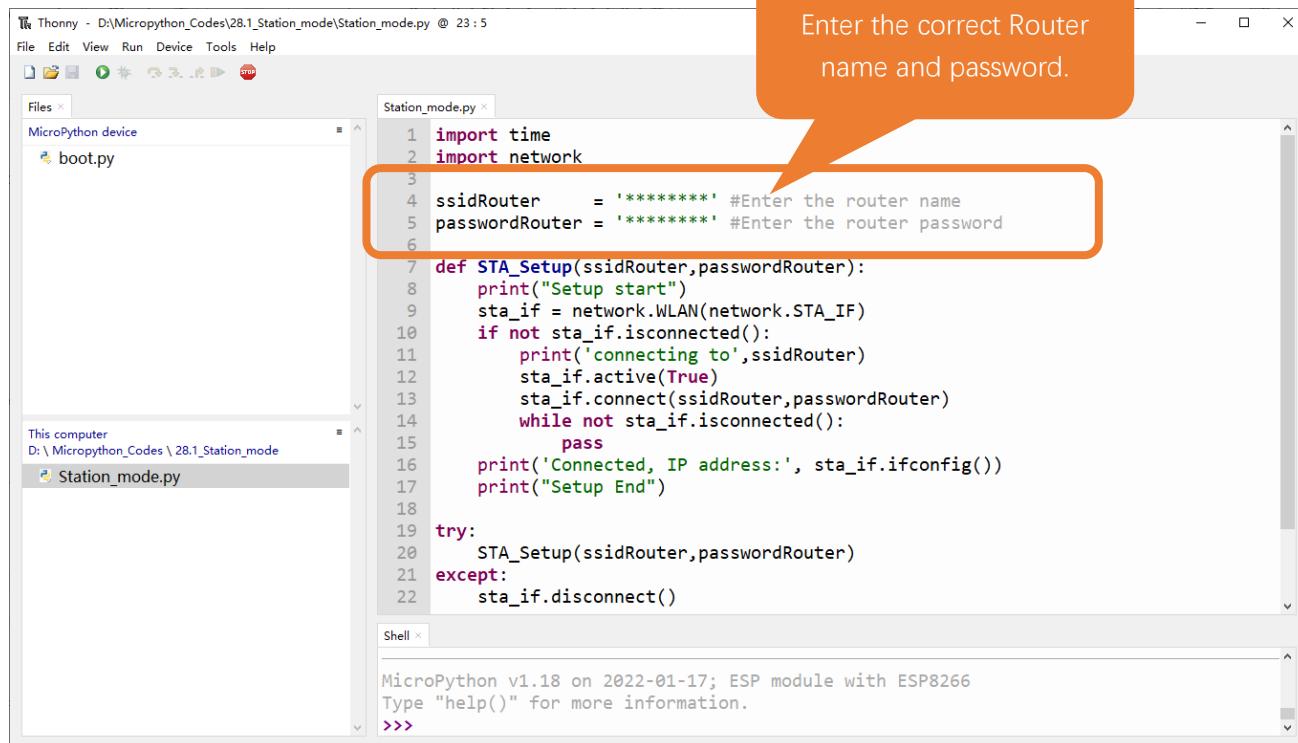
## Code

Move the program folder "**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**" to disk(D) in advance with the path of "**D:/Micropython\_Codes**".

Open "Thonny", click "This computer" → "D:" → "Micropython\_Codes" → "28.1\_Station\_mode" and double click "Station\_mode.py".

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

## 28.1\_Station\_mode



The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface with the following details:

- File Menu:** File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, Help.
- File Explorer:** Shows files: boot.py and Station\_mode.py (selected).
- Code Editor:** Displays the Python code for WiFi station mode:

```
1 import time
2 import network
3
4 ssidRouter = '*****' #Enter the router name
5 passwordRouter = '*****' #Enter the router password
6
7 def STA_Setup(ssidRouter,passwordRouter):
8     print("Setup start")
9     sta_if = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
10    if not sta_if.isconnected():
11        print('connecting to',ssidRouter)
12        sta_if.active(True)
13        sta_if.connect(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
14        while not sta_if.isconnected():
15            pass
16        print('Connected, IP address:', sta_if.ifconfig())
17    print("Setup End")
18
19 try:
20     STA_Setup(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
21 except:
22     sta_if.disconnect()
```
- Callout Bubble:** Points to the lines `ssidRouter = '*****'` and `passwordRouter = '*****'` with the text "Enter the correct Router name and password."
- Shell:** Shows the MicroPython environment information: MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266. It also shows the prompt `>>>`.



Because the names and passwords of routers in various places are different, before the Code runs, users need to enter the correct router's name and password in the box as shown in the illustration above.

After making sure the router name and password are entered correctly, compile and upload codes to ESP8266, wait for ESP8266 to connect to your router and print the IP address assigned by the router to ESP8266 in "Shell".

```
MicroPython v1.12 on 2019-12-20; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

  Setup start
  connecting to FYI_2.4G
I (4155528) phy: phy_version: 4102, 2fa7a43, Jul 15 2019, 13:06:06,
0, 2
Connected, IP address: ('192.168.1.102', '255.255.255.0', '192.168.
1.1', '192.168.1.1')
  Setup End

>>>
```

The following is the program code:

```
1 import time
2 import network
3
4 ssidRouter      = '*****' #Enter the router name
5 passwordRouter = '*****' #Enter the router password
6
7 def STA_Setup(ssidRouter,passwordRouter):
8     print("Setup start")
9     sta_if = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
10    if not sta_if.isconnected():
11        print(' connecting to',ssidRouter)
12        sta_if.active(True)
13        sta_if.connect(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
14        while not sta_if.isconnected():
15            pass
16        print(' Connected, IP address:', sta_if.ifconfig())
17        print("Setup End")
18
19 try:
20     STA_Setup(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
21 except:
22     sta_if.disconnect()
```

Import network module.

```
2 import network
```

Enter correct router name and password.

```
4 const char *ssid_Router      = "*****"; //Enter the router name
5 const char *password_Router = "*****"; //Enter the router password
```

Set ESP8266 in Station mode.

```
9 sta_if = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
```

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

Activate ESP8288's Station mode, initiate a connection request to the router and enter the password to connect.

```
12     sta_if.active(True)
13     sta_if.connect(ssidRouter, passwordRouter)
```

Wait for ESP8266 to connect to router until they connect to each other successfully.

```
14     while not sta_if.isconnected():
15         pass
```

Print the IP address assigned to ESP8266 in "Shell".

```
16     Print('Connected, IP address:', sta_if.ifconfig())
```

## Reference

### Class network

Before each use of **network**, please add the statement "**import network**" to the top of the python file.

**WLAN(interface\_id)**: Set to WiFi mode.

**network.STA\_IF**: Client, connecting to other WiFi access points.

**network.AP\_IF**: Access points, allowing other WiFi clients to connect.

**active(is\_active)**: With parameters, it is to check whether to activate the network interface; Without parameters, it is to query the current state of the network interface.

**scan(ssid, bssid, channel, RSSI, authmode, hidden)**: Scan for wireless networks available nearby (only scan on STA interface), return a tuple list of information about the WiFi access point.

**bssid**: The hardware address of the access point, returned in binary form as a byte object. You can use `ubinascii.hexlify()` to convert it to ASCII format.

**authmode**: Access type

```
AUTH_OPEN = 0
AUTH_WEP = 1
AUTH_WPA_PSK = 2
AUTH_WPA2_PSK = 3
AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK = 4
AUTH_MAX = 6
```

**Hidden**: Whether to scan for hidden access points

**False**: Only scanning for visible access points

**True**: Scanning for all access points including the hidden ones.

**isconnected()**: Check whether ESP8266 is connected to AP in Station mode. In STA mode, it returns True if it is connected to a WiFi access point and has a valid IP address; Otherwise it returns False.

**connect(ssid, password)**: Connecting to wireless network.

**ssid**: WiFi name

**password**: WiFi password

**disconnect()**: Disconnect from the currently connected wireless network.

## Project 28.2 AP mode

### Component List & Circuit

Component List & Circuit are the same as in Section 28.1.

### Component knowledge

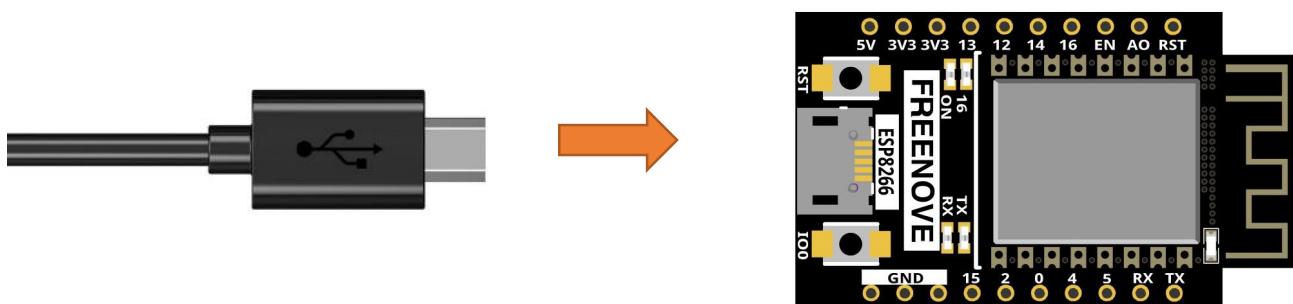
#### AP mode

When ESP8266 selects AP mode, it creates a hotspot network that is separated from the Internet and waits for other WiFi devices to connect. As shown in the figure below, ESP8266 is used as a hotspot. If a mobile phone or PC wants to communicate with ESP8266, it must be connected to the hotspot of ESP8266. Only after a connection is established with ESP8266 can they communicate.



### Circuit

Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer using the USB cable.



Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com

## Code

Move the program folder “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “D:/Micropython\_Codes”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “28.2\_AP\_mode”. and double click “AP\_mode.py”.

## 28.2\_AP\_mode

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface with the following details:

- Title Bar:** Thonny - D:\Micropython\_Codes\28.2\_AP\_mode\AP\_mode.py @ 15 : 21
- File Menu:** File, Edit, View, Run, Device, Tools, Help
- Toolbar:** Includes icons for file operations like Open, Save, Run, Stop, and others.
- Left Sidebar:** Files (MicroPython device), boot.py, This computer (D:\ Micropython\_Codes \ 28.2\_AP\_mode), AP\_mode.py.
- Code Editor:** AP\_mode.py content:

```
1 import network
2
3 ssidAP      = 'WiFi_Name' #Enter the router name
4 passwordAP  = '12345678' #Enter the router password
5
6 local_IP    = '192.168.1.10'
7 gateway     = '192.168.1.1'
8 subnet      = '255.255.255.0'
9 dns         = '8.8.8.8'
10
11 ap_if = network.WLAN(network.AP_IF)
12
13 def AP_Setup(ssidAP,passwordAP):
14     ap_if.ifconfig([local_IP,gateway,subnet,dns])
15     print("Setting soft-AP ... ")
16     ap_if.config(essid=ssidAP,authmode=network.AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK, password=passwordAP)
17     ap_if.active(True)
18     print('Success, IP address:', ap_if.ifconfig())
19     print("Setup End\n")
20
21 try:
22     pass
23
24 except:
25     pass
```
- Shell:** MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266  
Type "help()" for more information.  
>>>
- Callout:** An orange callout box highlights the lines: `ssidAP = 'WiFi_Name'` and `passwordAP = '12345678'`, with the text: "Set a name and a password for ESP8266 AP."

Set a name and a password  
for ESP8266 AP.

Before the Code runs, you can make any changes to the AP name and password for ESP8266 in the box as shown in the illustration above. Of course, you can leave it alone by default.

Click “Run current script”, open the AP function of ESP8266 and print the access point information.

```
Shell x

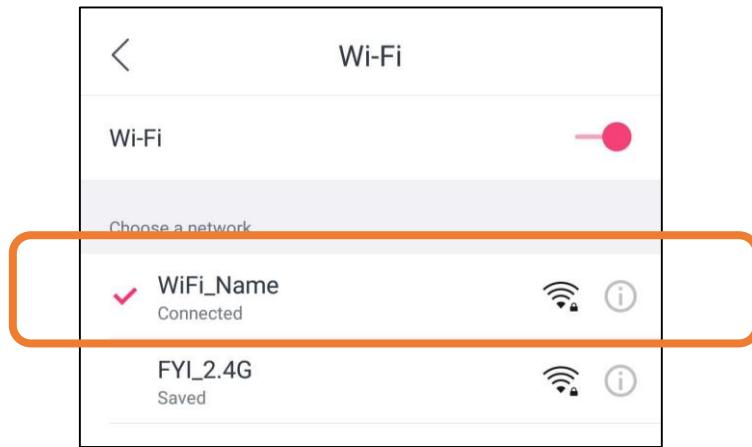
MicroPython v1.12 on 2019-12-20; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

Setting soft-AP ...
Success, IP address: ('192.168.1.10', '192.168.1.1', '255.255.255.0', '8.8.8.8')
Setup End

>>>
```



Turn on the WiFi scanning function of your phone, and you can see the ssid\_AP on ESP8266, which is called "WiFi\_Name" in this Code. You can enter the password "12345678" to connect it or change its AP name and password by modifying Code.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import network
2
3 ssidAP      = 'WiFi_Name' #Enter the router name
4 passwordAP  = '12345678' #Enter the router password
5
6 local_IP    = '192.168.1.10'
7 gateway     = '192.168.1.1'
8 subnet      = '255.255.255.0'
9 dns         = '8.8.8.8'
10
11 ap_if = network.WLAN(network.AP_IF)
12
13 def AP_Setup(ssidAP, passwordAP):
14     ap_if.ifconfig([local_IP, gateway, subnet, dns])
15     print("Setting soft-AP ... ")
16     ap_if.config(essid=ssidAP, authmode=network.AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK, password=passwordAP)
17     ap_if.active(True)
18     print(' Success, IP address:', ap_if.ifconfig())
19     print("Setup End\n")
20
21 try:
22     AP_Setup(ssidAP, passwordAP)
23 except:
24     ap_if.disconnect()

```

Import network module.

1	import network
---	----------------

Enter correct AP name and password.

```
3   ssidAP      = 'WiFi_Name' #Enter the router name
4   passwordAP  = '12345678' #Enter the router password
```

Set ESP8266 in AP mode.

```
11  ap_if = network.WLAN(network.AP_IF)
```

Configure IP address, gateway and subnet mask for ESP8266.

```
14  ap_if.ifconfig([local_IP, gateway, subnet, dns])
```

Turn on an AP in ESP8266, whose name is set by ssid\_AP and password is set by password\_AP.

```
16  ap_if.config(essid=ssidAP, authmode=network.AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK, password=passwordAP)
17  ap_if.active(True)
```

If the program is running abnormally, the AP disconnection function will be called.

```
14  ap_if.disconnect()
```

## Reference

### Class network

Before each use of **network**, please add the statement “**import network**” to the top of the python file.

**WLAN(interface\_id)**: Set to WiFi mode.

**network.STA\_IF**: Client, connecting to other WiFi access points

**network.AP\_IF**: Access points, allowing other WiFi clients to connect

**active(is\_active)**: With parameters, it is to check whether to activate the network interface; Without parameters, it is to query the current state of the network interface

**isconnected()**: In AP mode, it returns True if it is connected to the station; otherwise it returns False.

**connect(ssid, password)**: Connecting to wireless network

**ssid**: WiFi name

**password**: WiFi password

**config(essid, channel)**: To obtain the MAC address of the access point or to set the WiFi channel and the name of the WiFi access point.

**ssid**: WiFi account name

**channel**: WiFi channel

**ifconfig([(ip, subnet, gateway, dns)])**: Without parameters, it returns a 4-tuple (ip, subnet\_mask, gateway, DNS\_server); With parameters, it configures static IP.

**ip**: IP address

**subnet\_mask**: subnet mask

**gateway**: gateway

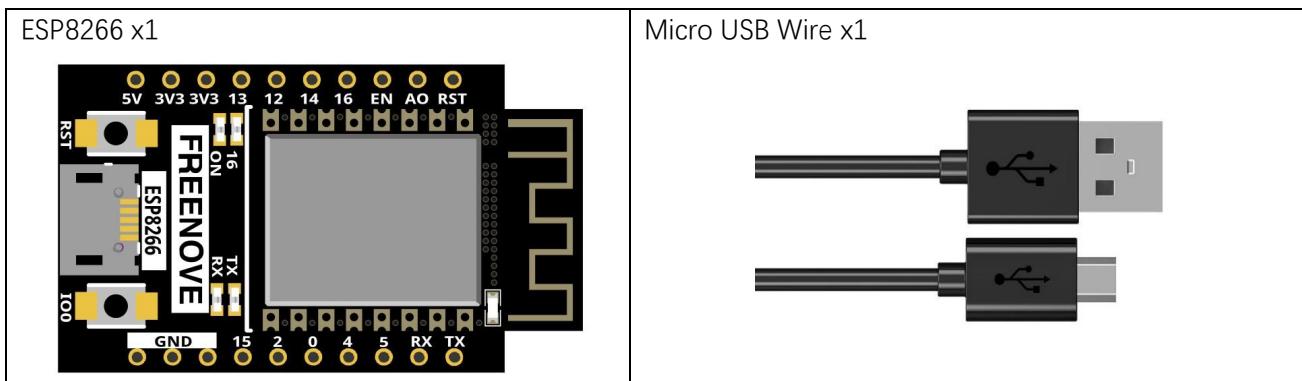
**DNS\_server**: DNS server

**disconnect()**: Disconnect from the currently connected wireless network

**status()**: Return the current status of the wireless connection

## Project 28.3 AP+Station mode

### Component List



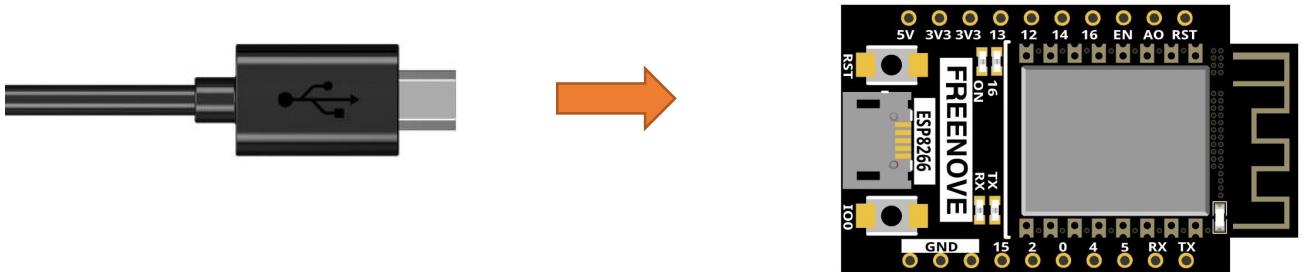
### Component knowledge

#### AP+Station mode

In addition to AP mode and Station mode, ESP8266 can also use AP mode and Station mode at the same time. This mode contains the functions of the previous two modes. Turn on ESP8266's Station mode, connect it to the router network, and it can communicate with the Internet via the router. At the same time, turn on its AP mode to create a hotspot network. Other WiFi devices can choose to connect to the router network or the hotspot network to communicate with ESP8266.

### Circuit

Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer using the USB cable.



### Code

Move the program folder "**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**" to disk(D) in advance with the path of "**D:/Micropython\_Codes**".

**Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com**

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “28.3\_AP+STA\_mode” and double click “AP+STA\_mode.py”.

### 28.3\_AP+STA\_mode

```

import network
ssidRouter = '*****' #Enter the router name
passwordRouter = '*****' #Enter the router password
ssidAP = 'WiFi_Name'#Enter the AP name
passwordAP = '12345678' #Enter the AP password
local_IP = '192.168.4.150'
gateway = '192.168.4.1'
subnet = '255.255.255.0'
dns = '8.8.8.8'

sta_if = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
ap_if = network.WLAN(network.AP_IF)

def STA_Setup(ssidRouter,passwordRouter):
    print("Setting soft-STA ...")
    if not sta_if.isconnected():
        print('connecting to',ssidRouter)
        sta_if.active(True)
        sta_if.connect(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)

```

This computer  
D:\ Micropython\_Codes \ 28.3\_AP+STA\_mode  
AP+STA\_mode.py

Shell

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

It is analogous to project 28.1 and project 28.2. Before running the Code, you need to modify ssidRouter, passwordRouter, ssidAP and passwordAP shown in the box of the illustration above.

After making sure that the code is modified correctly, click “Run current script” and the “Shell” will display as follows:

```

Shell
MicroPython v1.12 on 2019-12-20; ESP32 module (spiram) with ESP32
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

Setting soft-AP ...
Success, IP address: ('192.168.4.150', '192.168.4.1', '255.255.255.0', '8.8.8.8')
Setup End

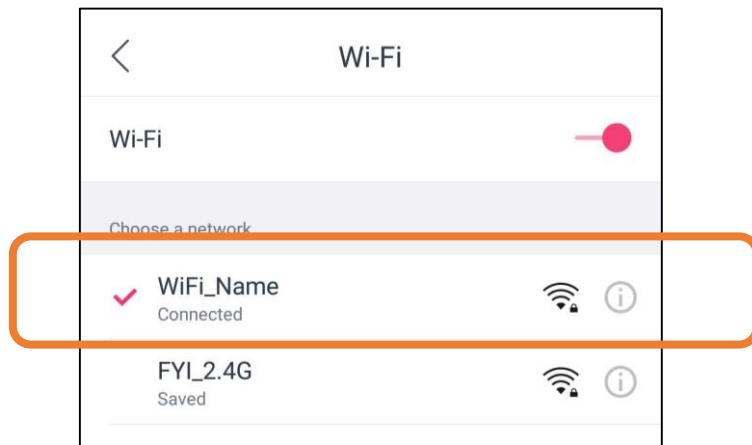
Setting soft-STA ...
Connected, IP address: ('192.168.1.102', '255.255.255.0', '192.168.1.1', '192.168.1.1')
Setup End

>>>

```



Turn on the WiFi scanning function of your phone, and you can see the ssidAP on ESP8266.



The following is the program code:

```

1 import network
2
3 ssidRouter      = '*****' #Enter the router name
4 passwordRouter = '*****' #Enter the router password
5
6 ssidAP         = 'WiFi_Name' #Enter the AP name
7 passwordAP     = '12345678' #Enter the AP password
8
9 local_IP       = '192.168.4.150'
10 gateway        = '192.168.4.1'
11 subnet         = '255.255.255.0'
12 dns            = '8.8.8.8'
13
14 sta_if = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
15 ap_if = network.WLAN(network.AP_IF)
16
17 def STA_Setup(ssidRouter, passwordRouter):
18     print("Setting soft-STA ... ")
19     if not sta_if.isconnected():
20         print(' connecting to',ssidRouter)
21         sta_if.active(True)
22         sta_if.connect(ssidRouter, passwordRouter)
23         while not sta_if.isconnected():
24             pass
25     print('Connected, IP address:', sta_if.ifconfig())
26     print("Setup End")
27
28 def AP_Setup(ssidAP, passwordAP):
29     ap_if.ifconfig([local_IP, gateway, subnet, dns])
30     print("Setting soft-AP ... ")

```

Any concerns? ✉ support@freenove.com

```
31     ap_if.config(essid=ssidAP, authmode=network.AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK, password=passwordAP)
32     ap_if.active(True)
33     print(' Success, IP address:', ap_if.ifconfig())
34     print("Setup End\n")
35
36 try:
37     AP_Setup(ssidAP, passwordAP)
38     STA_Setup(ssidRouter, passwordRouter)
39 except:
40     sta_if.disconnect()
41     ap_if.disconnect()
```

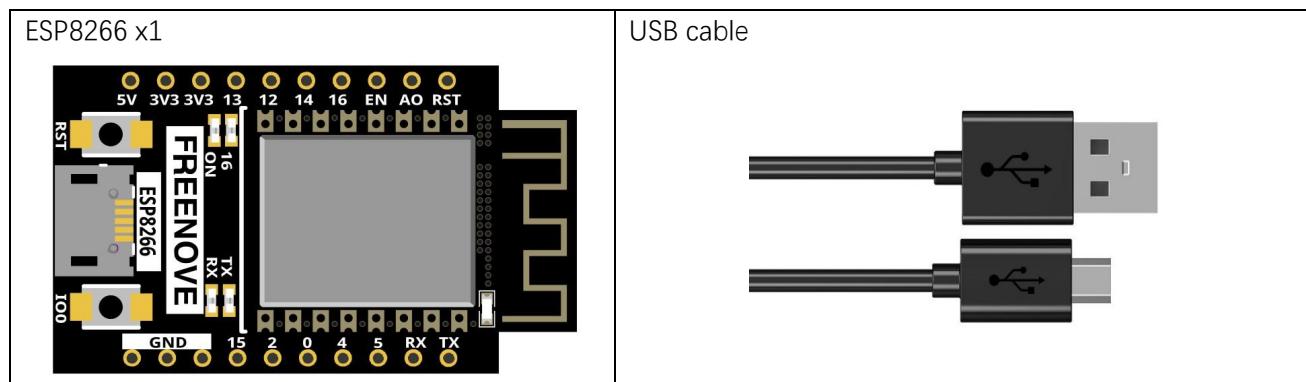
# Chapter 29 TCP/IP

In this chapter, we will introduce how ESP8266 implements network communications based on TCP/IP protocol. There are two roles in TCP/IP communication, namely Server and Client, which will be implemented respectively with two projects in this chapter.

## Project 29.1 As Client

In this section, ESP8266 is used as Client to connect Server on the same LAN and communicate with it.

### Component List



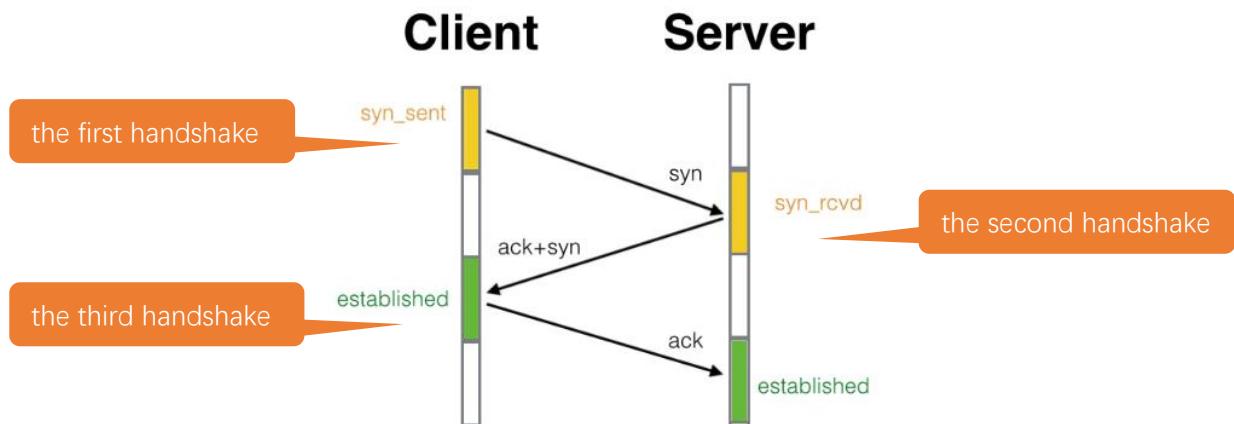
### Component knowledge

#### TCP connection

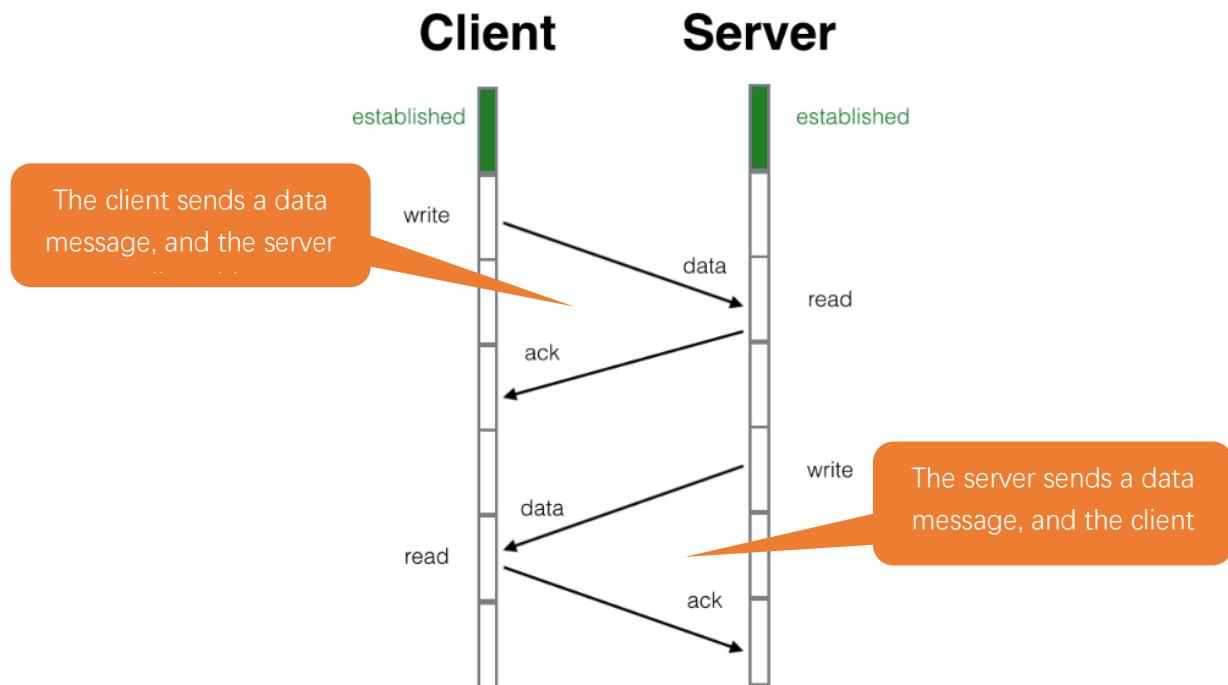
Before transmitting data, TCP needs to establish a logical connection between the sending end and the receiving end. It provides reliable and error-free data transmission between the two computers. In the TCP connection, the client and the server must be clarified. The client sends a connection request to the server, and each time such a request is proposed, a "three-times handshake" is required.

**Three-times handshake:** In the TCP protocol, during the preparation phase of sending data, the client and the server interact three times to ensure the reliability of the connection, which is called "three-times handshake". The first handshake, the client sends a connection request to the server and waits for the server to confirm. The second handshake, the server sends a response back to the client informing that it has received the connection request.

The third handshake, the client sends a confirmation message to the server again to confirm the connection.



TCP is a connection-oriented, low-level transmission control protocol. After TCP establishes a connection, the client and server can send and receive messages to each other, and the connection will always exist as long as the client or server does not initiate disconnection. Each time one party sends a message, the other party will reply with an ack signal.





## Install Processing

In this tutorial, we use Processing to build a simple TCP/IP communication platform.

If you've not installed Processing, you can download it by clicking <https://processing.org/download/>. You can choose an appropriate version to download according to your PC system.

The screenshot shows the official Processing website's download section. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for "Processing", "p5.js", "Processing.py", "Processing for Android", "Processing for Pi", and "Processing Foundation". Below the navigation is a large banner featuring the word "Processing" and a complex geometric background. To the right of the banner is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon. On the left side of the main content area, there's a sidebar with links: "Cover", "Download", "Donate", "Exhibition", "Reference", "Libraries", "Tools", "Environment", "Tutorials", "Examples", "Books", "Overview", and "People". In the center, the text "Download Processing. Processing is available for Linux, Mac OS X, and Windows. Select your choice to download the software below." is displayed. Below this, the version "3.5.4 (17 January 2020)" is shown. To the right of the version are download links for "Windows 64-bit", "Windows 32-bit", "Linux 64-bit", and "Mac OS X". A large "P" logo is centered in the middle of the page.

Unzip the downloaded file to your computer. Click "processing.exe" as the figure below to run this software.

core	2020/1/17 12:16
java	2020/1/17 12:17
lib	2020/1/17 12:16
modes	2020/1/17 12:16
tools	2020/1/17 12:16
processing.exe	2020/1/17 12:16
processing-java.exe	2020/1/17 12:16
revisions.txt	2020/1/17 12:16

Use Server mode for communication

Open the “Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Codes/Micropython\_Codes/29.1\_TCP\_as\_Client/sketchWiFi/sketchWiFi.pde”. Click “Run”.

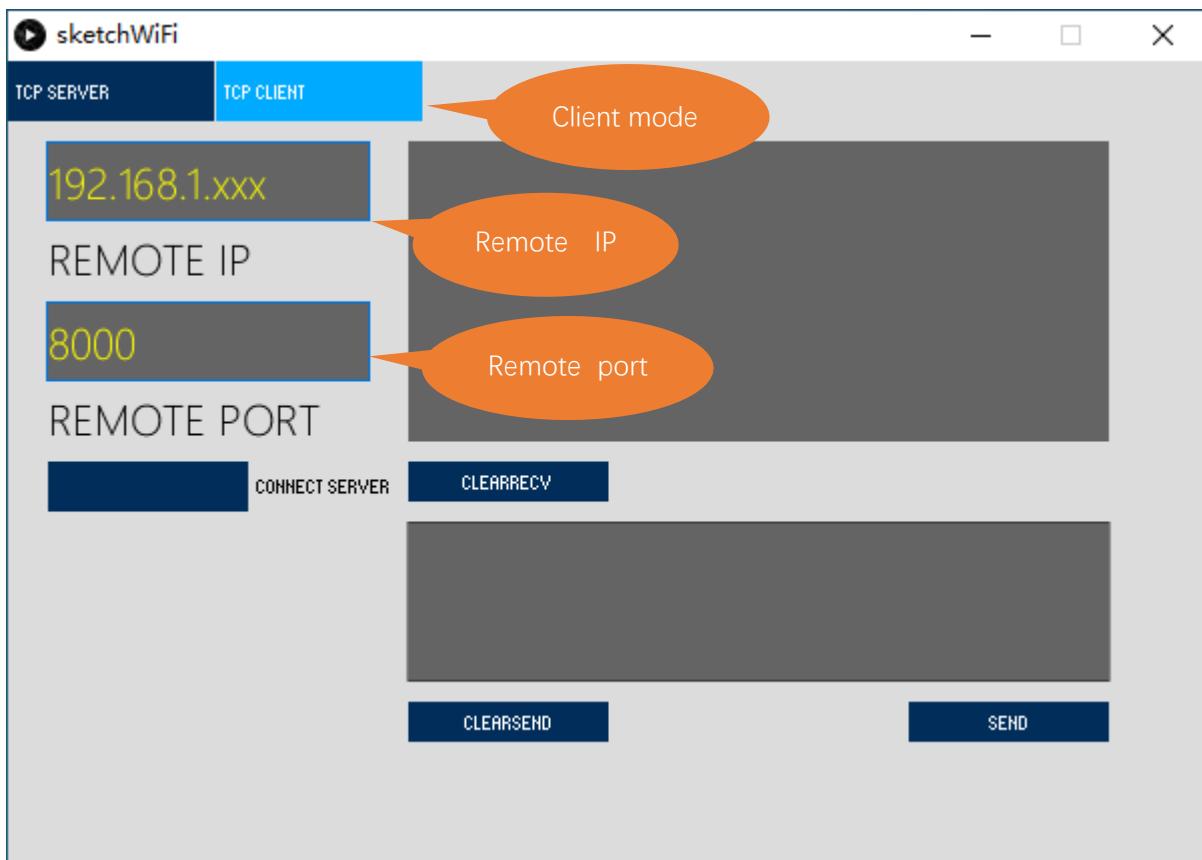


The new pop-up interface is as follows. If ESP8266 is used as Client, select TCP SERVER mode for sketchWiFi.



When sketchWiFi selects TCP SERVER mode, ESP8266 Code needs to be changed according to sketchWiFi's displaying of LOCAL IP or LOCAL PORT.

If ESP8266 serves as Server, select TCP CLIENT mode for sketchWiFi.



When sketchWiFi selects TCP CLIENT mode, the LOCAL IP and LOCAL PORT of sketchWiFi need to be changed according to the IP address and port number printed by the serial monitor.

**Mode selection:** select **Server mode/Client mode**.

**IP address:** In Server mode, this option does not need to be filled in, and the computer will automatically obtain the IP address.

In Client mode, fill in the remote IP address to be connected.

**Port number:** In Server mode, fill in a port number for client devices to make an access connection.

In client mode, fill in port number given by the Server devices to make an access connection.

**Start button:** In server mode, push the button, and then the computer will serve as Server and open a port number for Client to make access connection. During this period, the computer will keep monitoring.

In client mode, before pushing the button, please make sure the server is on, remote IP address and remote port number is correct; push the button, and the computer will make access connection to the remote port number of the remote IP as a Client.

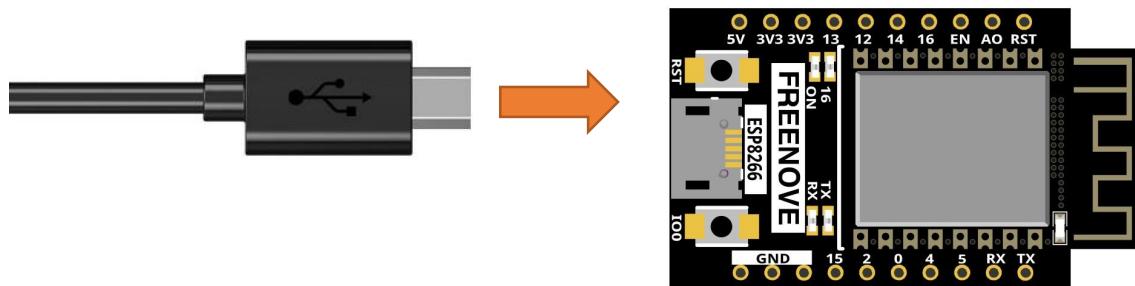
**clear receive:** clear out the content in the receiving text box

**clear send:** clear out the content in the sending text box

**Sending button:** push the sending button, the computer will send the content in the text box to others.

## Circuit

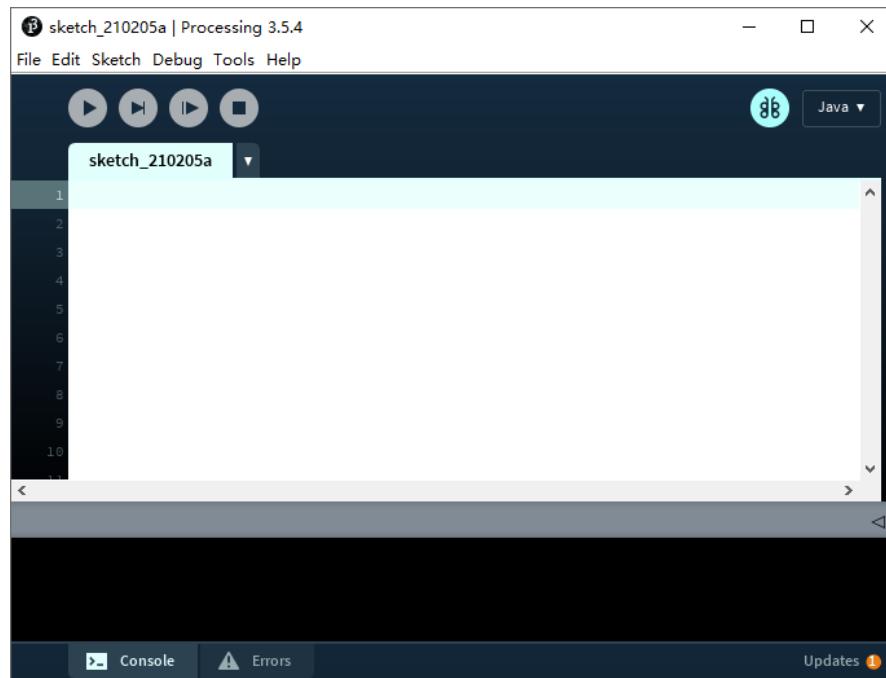
Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer using USB cable.



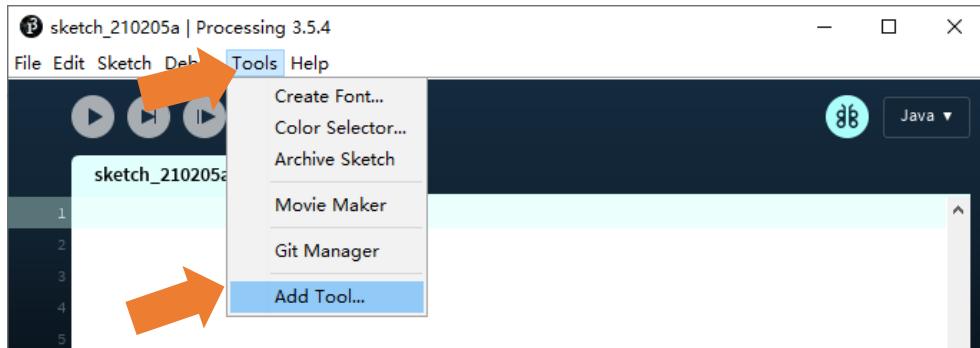
## Code

If you have not installed “ControlIP5”, please follow the following steps to continue the installation, if you have installed, please skip this section.

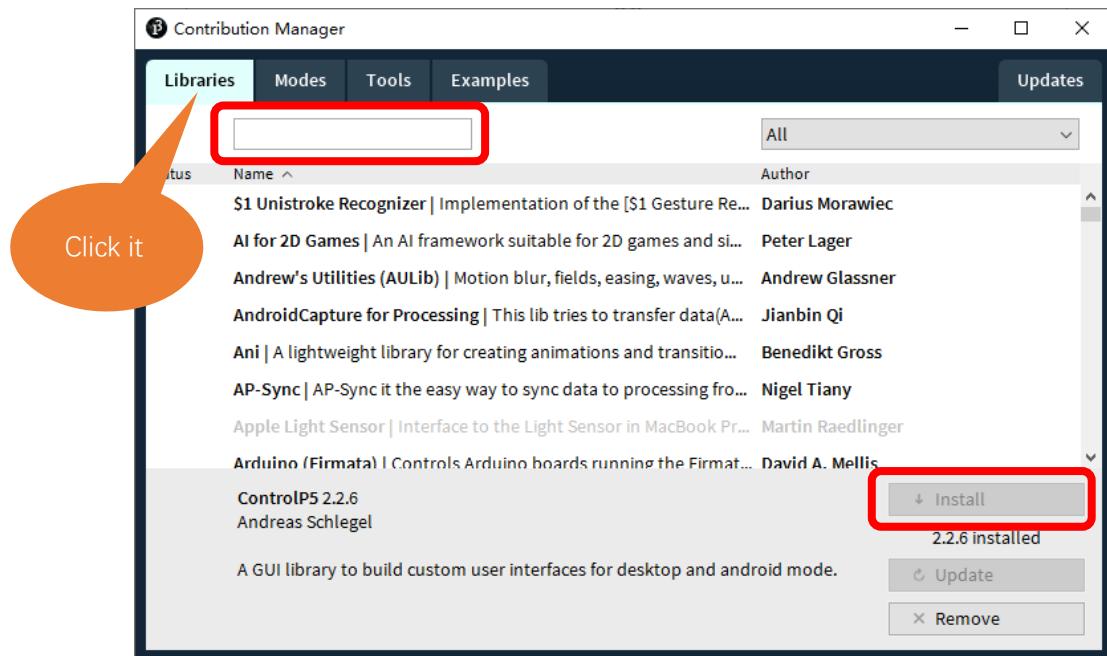
Open Processing.



Click Add Tool under Tools.

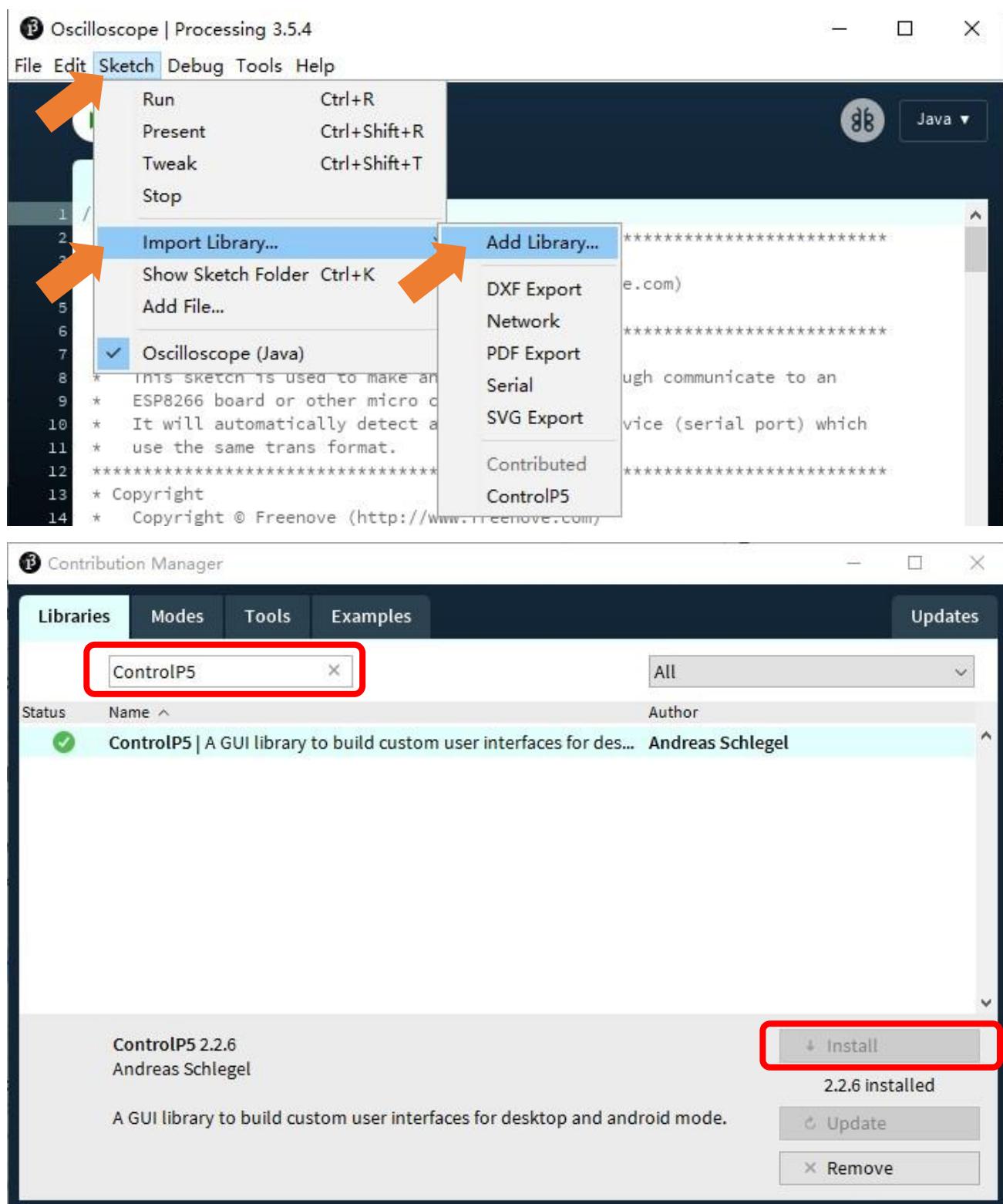


Select Libraries in the pop-up window.

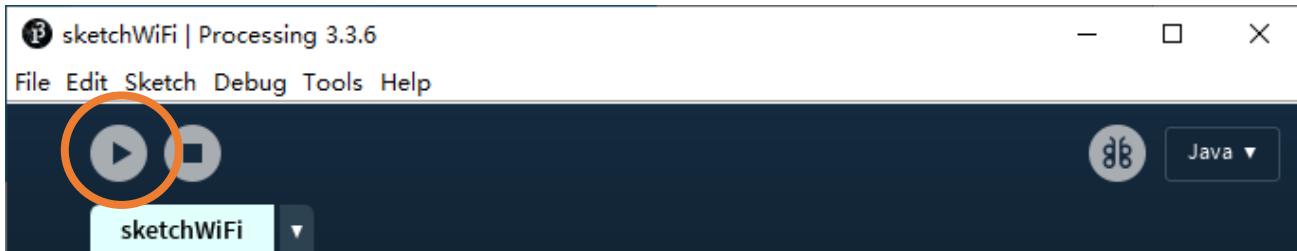


Input "ControlP5" in the searching box, and then select the option as below. Click "Install" and wait for the installation to finish.

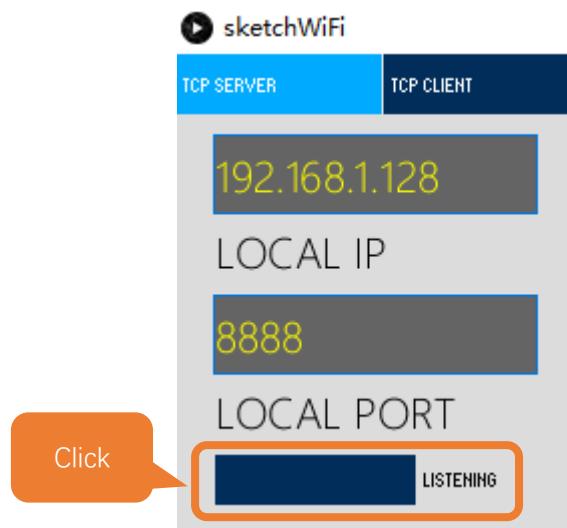
You can also click Add Library under 'Import Library' under 'Sketch'.



Before running the Code, please open “sketchWiFi.pde.” first, and click “Run”.



The newly pop up window will use the computer's IP address by default and open a data monitor port. Click “Listening”.

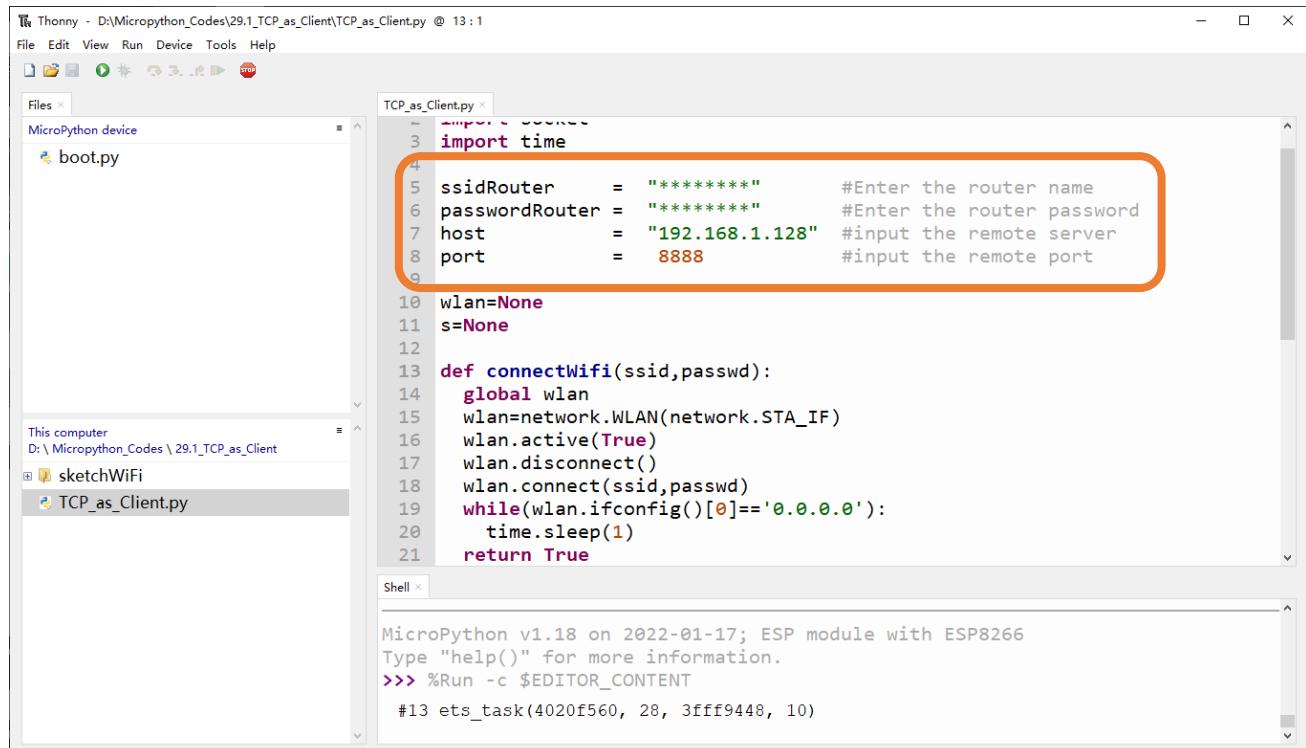


Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “29.1\_TCP\_as\_Client” and double click “TCP\_as\_Client.py”.

Before clicking “Run current script”, please modify the name and password of your router and fill in the “host” and “port” according to the **IP information in processing app** shown in the box below:

### 29.1\_TCP\_as\_Client



```

File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
Files x
MicroPython device
boot.py
TCP_as_Client.py x
import socket
import time
ssidRouter = "*****" #Enter the router name
passwordRouter = "*****" #Enter the router password
host = "192.168.1.128" #input the remote server
port = 8888 #input the remote port

wlan=None
s=None

def connectWifi(ssid,password):
    global wlan
    wlan=network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
    wlan.active(True)
    wlan.disconnect()
    wlan.connect(ssid,password)
    while(wlan.ifconfig()[0]=='0.0.0.0'):
        time.sleep(1)
    return True

```

This computer  
D:\Micropython\_Codes\29.1\_TCP\_as\_Client

sketchWiFi  
TCP\_as\_Client.py

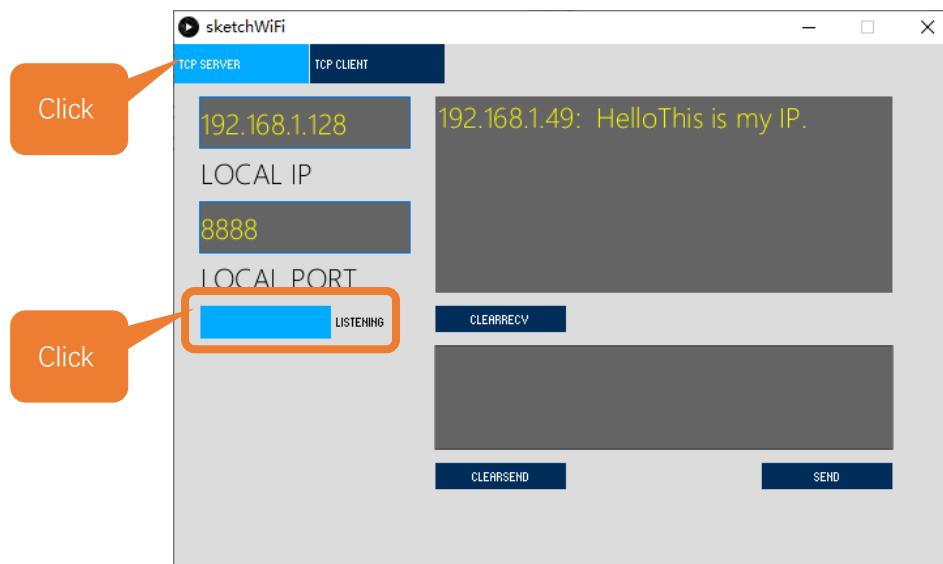
Shell x

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
#13 ets_task(4020f560, 28, 3fff9448, 10)

```

Click “Run current script” and in “Shell”, you can see ESP8266 automatically connects to sketchWiFi.





```
Shell x
MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

#5 ets_task(4020f560, 28, 3ffff9ef0, 10)
TCP Connected to: 192.168.1.128 : 8888
```

If you don't click "Listening" for sketchWiFi, ESP8266 will fail to connect and will print information as follows:

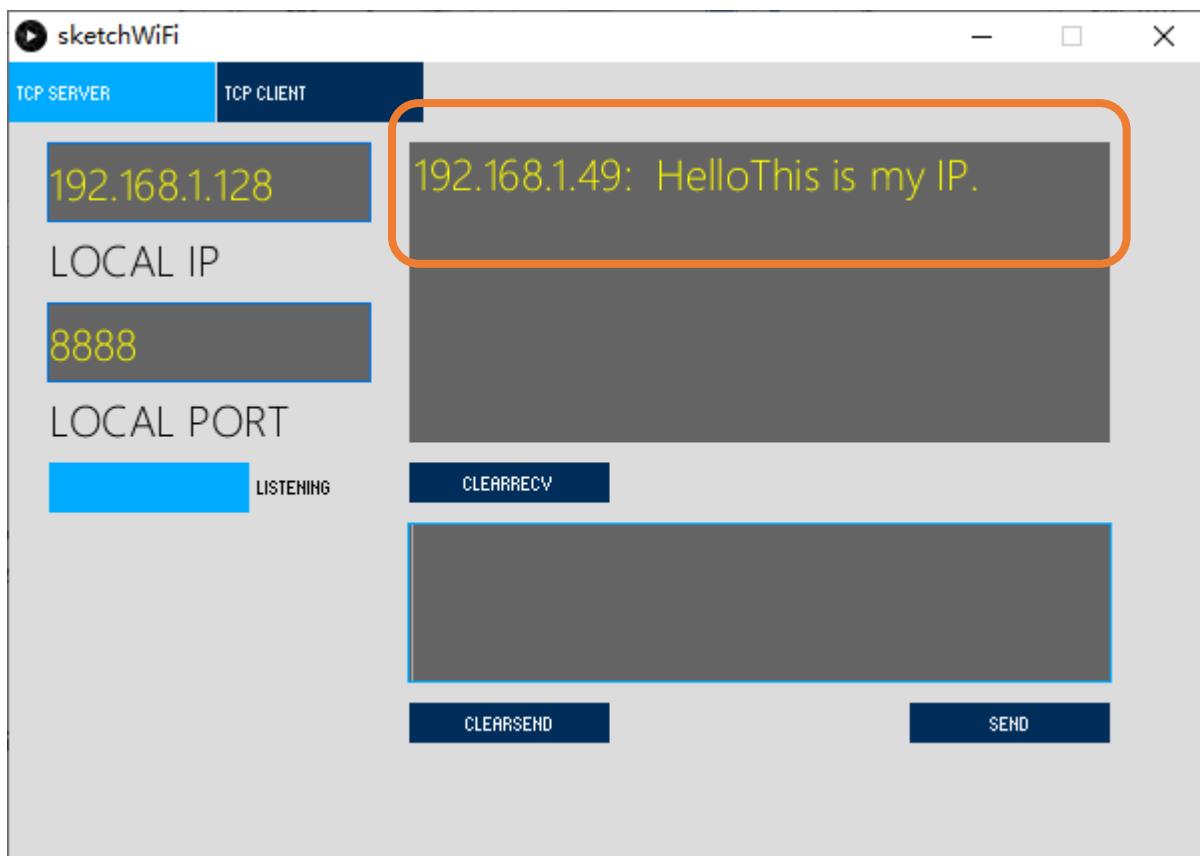
```
Shell x
TCP Connected to: 192.168.1.142 : 8888
Close socket

>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT

TCP close, please reset!

>>>
```

ESP8266 connects with TCP SERVER, and TCP SERVER receives messages from ESP8266, as shown in the figure below.



The following is the program code:

```
1 import network
2 import socket
3 import time
```

```
4
5 ssidRouter      = "*****"      #Enter the router name
6 passwordRouter = "*****"      #Enter the router password
7 host           = "*****"      #input the remote server
8 port           = 8888          #input the remote port
9
10 wlan=None
11 s=None
12
13 def connectWifi(ssid,passwd):
14     global wlan
15     wlan= network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
16     wlan.active(True)
17     wlan.disconnect()
18     wlan.connect(ssid,passwd)
19     while(wlan.ifconfig()[0]=='0.0.0.0'):
20         time.sleep(1)
21     return True
22
23 try:
24     connectWifi(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
25     s = socket.socket()
26     s.setsockopt(socket.SOL_SOCKET, socket.SO_REUSEADDR, 1)
27     s.connect((host,port))
28     print("TCP Connected to:", host, ":", port)
29     s.send('Hello')
30     s.send('This is my IP.')
31     while True:
32         data = s.recv(1024)
33         if(len(data) == 0):
34             print("Close socket")
35             s.close()
36             break
37         print(data)
38         ret=s.send(data)
39 except:
40     print("TCP close, please reset!")
41     if (s):
42         s.close()
43         wlan.disconnect()
44         wlan.active(False)
```

Import network、socket、time modules.

```
1 import network
2 import socket
3 import time
```



Enter the actual router name, password, remote server IP address, and port number.

```
5 ssidRouter      = "*****"      #Enter the router name  
6 passwordRouter = "*****"      #Enter the router password  
7 host           = "*****"      #input the remote server  
8 port           = 8888         #input the remote port
```

Connect specified Router until it is successful.

```
13 def connectWifi(ssid,passwd):  
14     global wlan  
15     wlan= network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)  
16     wlan.active(True)  
17     wlan.disconnect()  
18     wlan.connect(ssid,passwd)  
19     while(wlan.ifconfig()[0]=='0.0.0.0'):  
20         time.sleep(1)  
21     return True
```

Connect router and then connect it to remote server.

```
23     connectWifi(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)  
24     s = socket.socket()  
25     s.setsockopt(socket.SOL_SOCKET, socket.SO_REUSEADDR, 1)  
26     s.connect((host,port))  
27     print("TCP Connected to:", host, ":", port)
```

Send messages to the remote server, receive the messages from it and print them out, and then send the messages back to the server.

```
28     s.send('Hello')  
29     s.send('This is my IP.')  
30     while True:  
31         data = s.recv(1024)  
32         if(len(data) == 0):  
33             print("Close socket")  
34             s.close()  
35             break  
36         print(data)  
37         ret=s.send(data)
```

If an exception occurs in the program, for example, the remote server is shut down, execute the following program, turn off the socket function, and disconnect the WiFi.

```
39     print("TCP close, please reset!")  
40     if (s):  
41         s.close()  
42         wlan.disconnect()  
43         wlan.active(False)
```

## Reference

### Class socket

Before each use of **socket**, please add the statement “**import socket**” to the top of the python file.

**socket([af, type, proto]):** Create a socket.

**af:** address

**socket.AF\_INET:** IPv4

**socket.AF\_INET6:** IPv6

**type:** type

**socket.SOCK\_STREAM** : TCP stream

**socket.SOCK\_DGRAM** : UDP datagram

**socket.SOCK\_RAW** : Original socket

**socket.SO\_REUSEADDR** : socket reusable

**proto:** protocol number

**socket.IPPROTO\_TCP**: TCPmode

**socket.IPPROTO\_UDP**: UDPmode

**socket.setsockopt(level, optname, value):** Set the socket according to the options.

**Level:** Level of socket option

**socket.SOL\_SOCKET**: Level of socket option. By default, it is 4095.

**optname:** Options of socket

**socket.SO\_REUSEADDR**: Allowing a socket interface to be tied to an address that is already in use.

**value:** The value can be an integer or a bytes-like object representing a buffer.

**socket.connect(address):** To connect to server.

**Address:** Tuple or list of the server's address and port number

**send(bytes):** Send data and return the bytes sent.

**recv(bufsize):** Receive data and return a bytes object representing the data received.

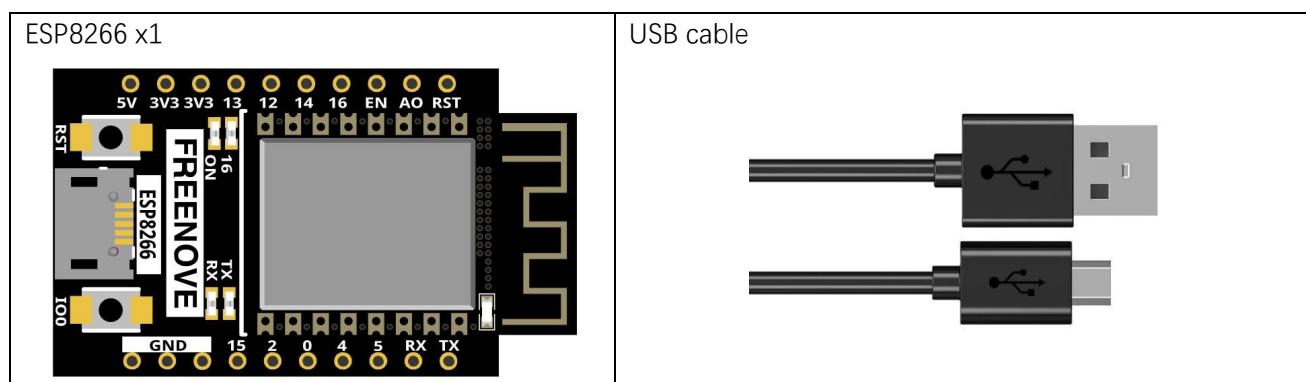
**close():** Close socket.

To learn more please visit: <http://docs.micropython.org/en/latest/>

## Project 29.2 As Server

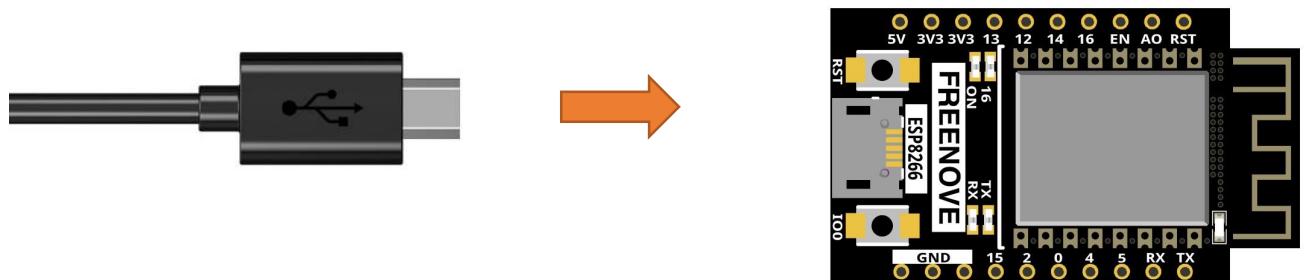
In this section, ESP8266 is used as a Server to wait for the connection and communication with Client on the same LAN.

### Component List



### Circuit

Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer using the USB cable.



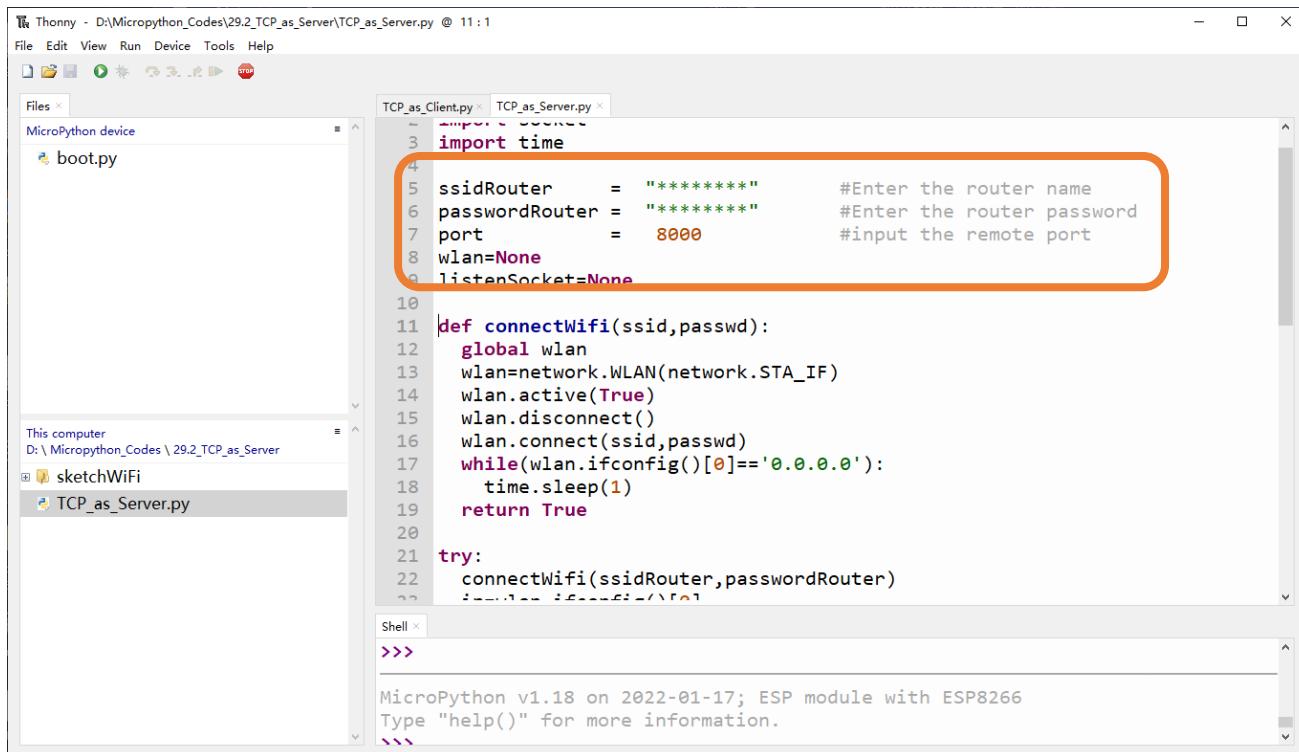
## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “29.2\_TCP\_as\_Server” and double click “TCP\_as\_Server.py”.

Before clicking “Run current script”, please modify the name and password of your router shown in the box below.

### 29.2\_TCP\_as\_Server



```

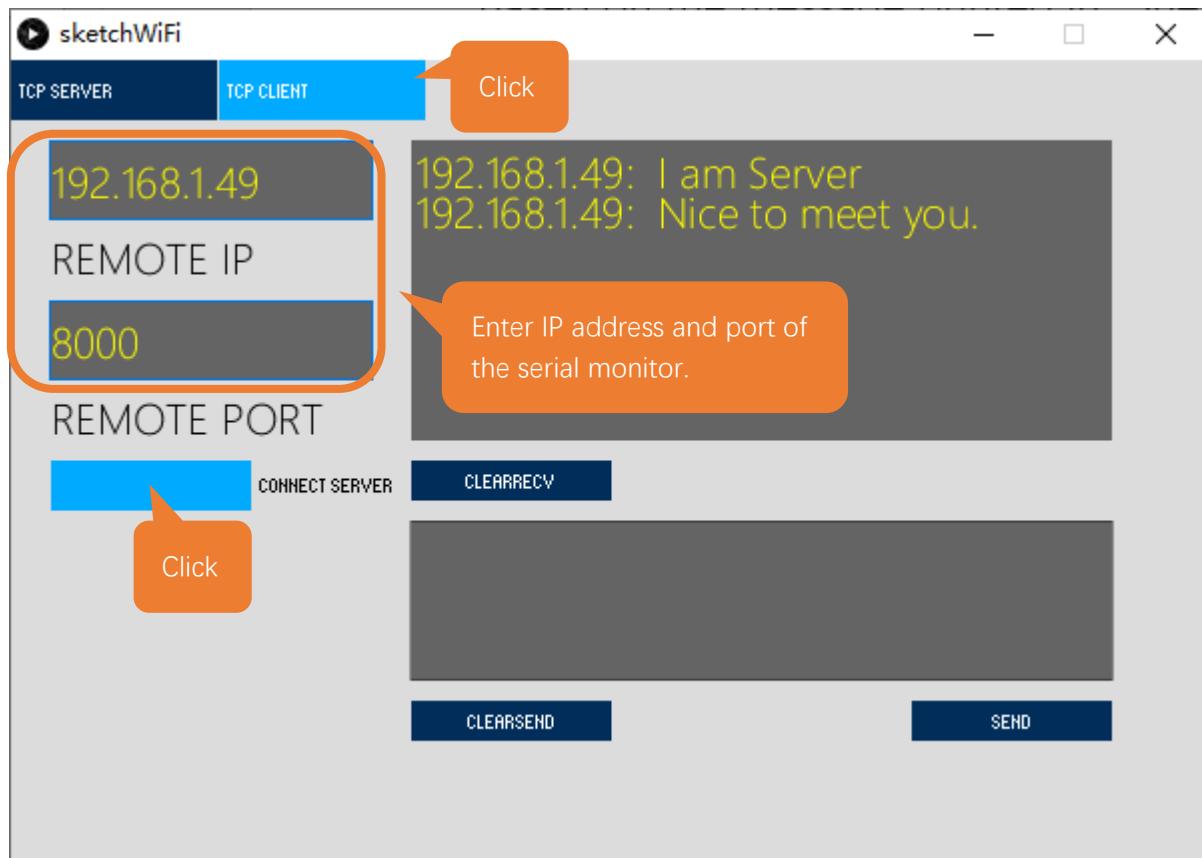
  1  Thonny - D:\Micropython_Codes\29.2_TCP_as_Server\TCP_as_Server.py @ 11 :1
  2  File Edit View Run Device Tools Help
  3  TCP_as_Client.py TCP_as_Server.py
  4  MicroPython device
  5  boot.py
  6
  7
  8
  9
  10
  11 def connectWifi(ssid,password):
  12     global wlan
  13     wlan=network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
  14     wlan.active(True)
  15     wlan.disconnect()
  16     wlan.connect(ssid,password)
  17     while(wlan.ifconfig()[0]=='0.0.0.0'):
  18         time.sleep(1)
  19     return True
  20
  21 try:
  22     connectWifi(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
  23
  24
  25
  26
  27
  28
  29
  30
  31
  32
  33
  34
  35
  36
  37
  38
  39
  40
  41
  42
  43
  44
  45
  46
  47
  48
  49
  50
  51
  52
  53
  54
  55
  56
  57
  58
  59
  60
  61
  62
  63
  64
  65
  66
  67
  68
  69
  70
  71
  72
  73
  74
  75
  76
  77
  78
  79
  80
  81
  82
  83
  84
  85
  86
  87
  88
  89
  90
  91
  92
  93
  94
  95
  96
  97
  98
  99
  100
  101
  102
  103
  104
  105
  106
  107
  108
  109
  110
  111
  112
  113
  114
  115
  116
  117
  118
  119
  120
  121
  122
  123
  124
  125
  126
  127
  128
  129
  130
  131
  132
  133
  134
  135
  136
  137
  138
  139
  140
  141
  142
  143
  144
  145
  146
  147
  148
  149
  150
  151
  152
  153
  154
  155
  156
  157
  158
  159
  160
  161
  162
  163
  164
  165
  166
  167
  168
  169
  170
  171
  172
  173
  174
  175
  176
  177
  178
  179
  180
  181
  182
  183
  184
  185
  186
  187
  188
  189
  190
  191
  192
  193
  194
  195
  196
  197
  198
  199
  200
  201
  202
  203
  204
  205
  206
  207
  208
  209
  210
  211
  212
  213
  214
  215
  216
  217
  218
  219
  220
  221
  222
  223
  224
  225
  226
  227
  228
  229
  230
  231
  232
  233
  234
  235
  236
  237
  238
  239
  240
  241
  242
  243
  244
  245
  246
  247
  248
  249
  250
  251
  252
  253
  254
  255
  256
  257
  258
  259
  260
  261
  262
  263
  264
  265
  266
  267
  268
  269
  270
  271
  272
  273
  274
  275
  276
  277
  278
  279
  280
  281
  282
  283
  284
  285
  286
  287
  288
  289
  290
  291
  292
  293
  294
  295
  296
  297
  298
  299
  300
  301
  302
  303
  304
  305
  306
  307
  308
  309
  310
  311
  312
  313
  314
  315
  316
  317
  318
  319
  320
  321
  322
  323
  324
  325
  326
  327
  328
  329
  330
  331
  332
  333
  334
  335
  336
  337
  338
  339
  340
  341
  342
  343
  344
  345
  346
  347
  348
  349
  350
  351
  352
  353
  354
  355
  356
  357
  358
  359
  360
  361
  362
  363
  364
  365
  366
  367
  368
  369
  370
  371
  372
  373
  374
  375
  376
  377
  378
  379
  380
  381
  382
  383
  384
  385
  386
  387
  388
  389
  390
  391
  392
  393
  394
  395
  396
  397
  398
  399
  400
  401
  402
  403
  404
  405
  406
  407
  408
  409
  410
  411
  412
  413
  414
  415
  416
  417
  418
  419
  420
  421
  422
  423
  424
  425
  426
  427
  428
  429
  430
  431
  432
  433
  434
  435
  436
  437
  438
  439
  440
  441
  442
  443
  444
  445
  446
  447
  448
  449
  450
  451
  452
  453
  454
  455
  456
  457
  458
  459
  460
  461
  462
  463
  464
  465
  466
  467
  468
  469
  470
  471
  472
  473
  474
  475
  476
  477
  478
  479
  480
  481
  482
  483
  484
  485
  486
  487
  488
  489
  490
  491
  492
  493
  494
  495
  496
  497
  498
  499
  500
  501
  502
  503
  504
  505
  506
  507
  508
  509
  510
  511
  512
  513
  514
  515
  516
  517
  518
  519
  520
  521
  522
  523
  524
  525
  526
  527
  528
  529
  530
  531
  532
  533
  534
  535
  536
  537
  538
  539
  540
  541
  542
  543
  544
  545
  546
  547
  548
  549
  550
  551
  552
  553
  554
  555
  556
  557
  558
  559
  560
  561
  562
  563
  564
  565
  566
  567
  568
  569
  570
  571
  572
  573
  574
  575
  576
  577
  578
  579
  580
  581
  582
  583
  584
  585
  586
  587
  588
  589
  590
  591
  592
  593
  594
  595
  596
  597
  598
  599
  600
  601
  602
  603
  604
  605
  606
  607
  608
  609
  610
  611
  612
  613
  614
  615
  616
  617
  618
  619
  620
  621
  622
  623
  624
  625
  626
  627
  628
  629
  630
  631
  632
  633
  634
  635
  636
  637
  638
  639
  640
  641
  642
  643
  644
  645
  646
  647
  648
  649
  650
  651
  652
  653
  654
  655
  656
  657
  658
  659
  660
  661
  662
  663
  664
  665
  666
  667
  668
  669
  670
  671
  672
  673
  674
  675
  676
  677
  678
  679
  680
  681
  682
  683
  684
  685
  686
  687
  688
  689
  690
  691
  692
  693
  694
  695
  696
  697
  698
  699
  700
  701
  702
  703
  704
  705
  706
  707
  708
  709
  710
  711
  712
  713
  714
  715
  716
  717
  718
  719
  720
  721
  722
  723
  724
  725
  726
  727
  728
  729
  730
  731
  732
  733
  734
  735
  736
  737
  738
  739
  740
  741
  742
  743
  744
  745
  746
  747
  748
  749
  750
  751
  752
  753
  754
  755
  756
  757
  758
  759
  760
  761
  762
  763
  764
  765
  766
  767
  768
  769
  770
  771
  772
  773
  774
  775
  776
  777
  778
  779
  780
  781
  782
  783
  784
  785
  786
  787
  788
  789
  790
  791
  792
  793
  794
  795
  796
  797
  798
  799
  800
  801
  802
  803
  804
  805
  806
  807
  808
  809
  810
  811
  812
  813
  814
  815
  816
  817
  818
  819
  820
  821
  822
  823
  824
  825
  826
  827
  828
  829
  830
  831
  832
  833
  834
  835
  836
  837
  838
  839
  840
  841
  842
  843
  844
  845
  846
  847
  848
  849
  850
  851
  852
  853
  854
  855
  856
  857
  858
  859
  860
  861
  862
  863
  864
  865
  866
  867
  868
  869
  870
  871
  872
  873
  874
  875
  876
  877
  878
  879
  880
  881
  882
  883
  884
  885
  886
  887
  888
  889
  890
  891
  892
  893
  894
  895
  896
  897
  898
  899
  900
  901
  902
  903
  904
  905
  906
  907
  908
  909
  910
  911
  912
  913
  914
  915
  916
  917
  918
  919
  920
  921
  922
  923
  924
  925
  926
  927
  928
  929
  930
  931
  932
  933
  934
  935
  936
  937
  938
  939
  940
  941
  942
  943
  944
  945
  946
  947
  948
  949
  950
  951
  952
  953
  954
  955
  956
  957
  958
  959
  960
  961
  962
  963
  964
  965
  966
  967
  968
  969
  970
  971
  972
  973
  974
  975
  976
  977
  978
  979
  980
  981
  982
  983
  984
  985
  986
  987
  988
  989
  990
  991
  992
  993
  994
  995
  996
  997
  998
  999
  1000
  1001
  1002
  1003
  1004
  1005
  1006
  1007
  1008
  1009
  1010
  1011
  1012
  1013
  1014
  1015
  1016
  1017
  1018
  1019
  1020
  1021
  1022
  1023
  1024
  1025
  1026
  1027
  1028
  1029
  1030
  1031
  1032
  1033
  1034
  1035
  1036
  1037
  1038
  1039
  1040
  1041
  1042
  1043
  1044
  1045
  1046
  1047
  1048
  1049
  1050
  1051
  1052
  1053
  1054
  1055
  1056
  1057
  1058
  1059
  1060
  1061
  1062
  1063
  1064
  1065
  1066
  1067
  1068
  1069
  1070
  1071
  1072
  1073
  1074
  1075
  1076
  1077
  1078
  1079
  1080
  1081
  1082
  1083
  1084
  1085
  1086
  1087
  1088
  1089
  1090
  1091
  1092
  1093
  1094
  1095
  1096
  1097
  1098
  1099
  1100
  1101
  1102
  1103
  1104
  1105
  1106
  1107
  1108
  1109
  1110
  1111
  1112
  1113
  1114
  1115
  1116
  1117
  1118
  1119
  1120
  1121
  1122
  1123
  1124
  1125
  1126
  1127
  1128
  1129
  1130
  1131
  1132
  1133
  1134
  1135
  1136
  1137
  1138
  1139
  1140
  1141
  1142
  1143
  1144
  1145
  1146
  1147
  1148
  1149
  1150
  1151
  1152
  1153
  1154
  1155
  1156
  1157
  1158
  1159
  1160
  1161
  1162
  1163
  1164
  1165
  1166
  1167
  1168
  1169
  1170
  1171
  1172
  1173
  1174
  1175
  1176
  1177
  1178
  1179
  1180
  1181
  1182
  1183
  1184
  1185
  1186
  1187
  1188
  1189
  1190
  1191
  1192
  1193
  1194
  1195
  1196
  1197
  1198
  1199
  1200
  1201
  1202
  1203
  1204
  1205
  1206
  1207
  1208
  1209
  1210
  1211
  1212
  1213
  1214
  1215
  1216
  1217
  1218
  1219
  1220
  1221
  1222
  1223
  1224
  1225
  1226
  1227
  1228
  1229
  1230
  1231
  1232
  1233
  1234
  1235
  1236
  1237
  1238
  1239
  1240
  1241
  1242
  1243
  1244
  1245
  1246
  1247
  1248
  1249
  1250
  1251
  1252
  1253
  1254
  1255
  1256
  1257
  1258
  1259
  1260
  1261
  1262
  1263
  1264
  1265
  1266
  1267
  1268
  1269
  1270
  1271
  1272
  1273
  1274
  1275
  1276
  1277
  1278
  1279
  1280
  1281
  1282
  1283
  1284
  1285
  1286
  1287
  1288
  1289
  1290
  1291
  1292
  1293
  1294
  1295
  1296
  1297
  1298
  1299
  1300
  1301
  1302
  1303
  1304
  1305
  1306
  1307
  1308
  1309
  1310
  1311
  1312
  1313
  1314
  1315
  1316
  1317
  1318
  1319
  1320
  1321
  1322
  1323
  1324
  1325
  1326
  1327
  1328
  1329
  1330
  1331
  1332
  1333
  1334
  1335
  1336
  1337
  1338
  1339
  1340
  1341
  1342
  1343
  1344
  1345
  1346
  1347
  1348
  1349
  1350
  1351
  1352
  1353
  1354
  1355
  1356
  1357
  1358
  1359
  1360
  1361
  1362
  1363
  1364
  1365
  1366
  1367
  1368
  1369
  1370
  1371
  1372
  1373
  1374
  1375
  1376
  1377
  1378
  1379
  1380
  1381
  1382
  1383
  1384
  1385
  1386
  1387
  1388
  1389
  1390
  1391
  1392
  1393
  1394
  1395
  1396
  1397
  1398
  1399
  1400
  1401
  1402
  1403
  1404
  1405
  1406
  1407
  1408
  1409
  1410
  1411
  1412
  1413
  1414
  1415
  1416
  1417
  1418
  1419
  1420
  1421
  1422
  1423
  1424
  1425
  1426
  1427
  1428
  1429
  1430
  1431
  1432
  1433
  1434
  1435
  1436
  1437
  1438
  1439
  1440
  1441
  1442
  1443
  1444
  1445
  1446
  1447
  1448
  1449
  1450
  1451
  1452
  1453
  1454
  1455
  1456
  1457
  1458
  1459
  1460
  1461
  1462
  1463
  1464
  1465
  1466
  1467
  1468
  1469
  1470
  1471
  1472
  1473
  1474
  1475
  1476
  1477
  1478
  1479
  1480
  1481
  1482
  1483
  1484
  1485
  1486
  1487
  1488
  1489
  1490
  1491
  1492
  1493
  1494
  1495
  1496
  1497
  1498
  1499
  1500
  1501
  1502
  1503
  1504
  1505
  1506
  1507
  1508
  1509
  1510
  1511
  1512
  1513
  1514
  1515
  1516
  1517
  1518
  1519
  1520
  1521
  1522
  1523
  1524
  1525
  1526
  1527
  1528
  1529
  1530
  1531
  1532
  1533
  1534
  1535
  1536
  1537
  1538
  1539
  1540
  1541
  1542
  1543
  1544
  1545
  1546
  1547
  1548
  1549
  1550
  1551
  1552
  1553
  1554
  1555
  1556
  1557
  1558
  1559
  1560
  1561
  1562
  1563
  1564
  1565
  1566
  1567
  1568
  1569
  1570
  1571
  1572
  1573
  1574
  1575
  1576
  1577
  1578
  1579
  1580
  1581
  1582
  1583
  1584
  1585
  1586
  1587
  1588
  1589
  1590
  1591
  1592
  1593
  1594
  1595
  1596
  1597
  1598
  1599
  1600
  1601
  1602
  1603
  1604
  1605
  1606
  1607
  1608
  1609
  1610
  1611
  1612
  1613
  1614
  1615
  1616
  1617
  1618
  1619
  1620
  1621
  1622
  1623
  1624
  1625
  1626
  1627
  1628
  1629
  1630
  1631
  1632
  1633
  1634
  1635
  1636
  1637
  1638
  1639
  1640
  1641
  1642
  1643
  1644
  1645
  1646
  1647
  1648
  1649
  1650
  1651
  1652
  1653
  1654
  1655
  1656
  1657
  1658
  1659
  1660
  1661
  1662
  1663
  1664
  1665
  1666
  
```

Processing:

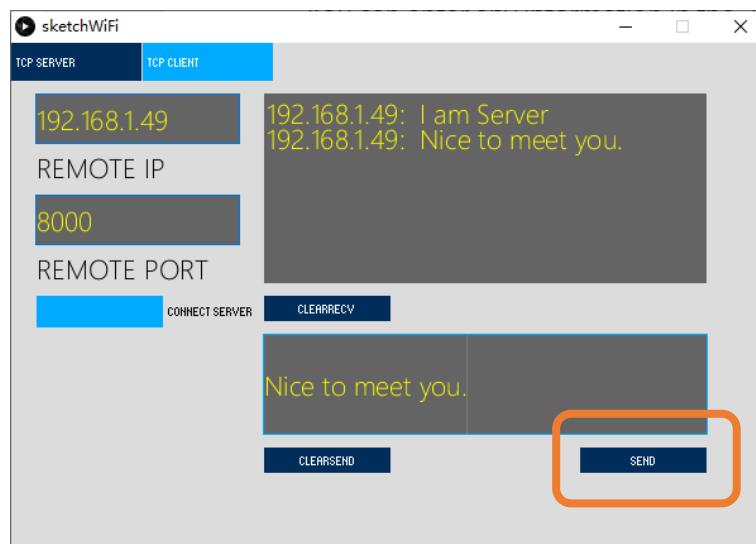
Open the

"Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Codes/MicroPython\_Codes/29.2\_TCP\_as\_Server/sketchWiFi/sketchWiFi.pde".

Based on the message printed in "Shell", enter the correct IP address and port when processing, and click to establish a connection with ESP8266 to communicate.



You can enter any information in the "Send Box" of sketchWiFi. Click "Send" and ESP8266 will print the received messages to "Shell" and send them back to sketchWiFi.



```
Shell x

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>> %Run -c $EDITOR_CONTENT
#12 ets_task(4020f560, 28, 3fff9448, 10)
tcp waiting...
Server IP: 192.168.1.49           Port: 8000
accepting.....
('192.168.1.128', 50312) connected
b'Nice to meet you.'
```

The following is the program code:

```
1 import network
2 import socket
3 import time
4
5 ssidRouter      = "*****"          #Enter the router name
6 passwordRouter = "*****"          #Enter the router password
7 port           = 8000             #input the remote port
8 wlan            = None
9 listenSocket    = None
10
11 def connectWifi(ssid,passwd):
12     global wlan
13     wlan=network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
14     wlan.active(True)
15     wlan.disconnect()
16     wlan.connect(ssid,passwd)
17     while(wlan.ifconfig()[0]=='0.0.0.0'):
18         time.sleep(1)
19     return True
20
21 try:
22     connectWifi(ssidRouter,passwordRouter)
23     ip=wlan.ifconfig()[0]
24     listenSocket = socket.socket()
25     listenSocket.bind((ip,port))
26     listenSocket.listen(1)
27     listenSocket.setsockopt(socket.SOL_SOCKET, socket.SO_REUSEADDR, 1)
28     print('tcp waiting...')
29     while True:
30         print("Server IP:",ip,"\tPort:",port)
31         print("accepting.....")
32         conn,addr = listenSocket.accept()
33         print(addr, "connected")
34         break
35     conn.send('I am Server')
36     while True:
37         data = conn.recv(1024)
38         if(len(data) == 0):
39             print("close socket")
40             listenSocket.close()
41             wlan.disconnect()
42             wlan.active(False)
43             break
```

```

44     else:
45         print(data)
46         ret = conn.send(data)
47     except:
48         print("Close TCP-Server, please reset.")
49         if(listenSocket):
50             listenSocket.close()
51             wlan.disconnect()
52             wlan.active(False)

```

Call function `connectWifi()` to connect to router and obtain the dynamic IP that it assigns to ESP8266.

```

22     connectWifi(ssidRouter, passwordRouter)
23     ip=wlan.ifconfig()[0]

```

Open the socket server, bind the server to the dynamic IP, and open a data monitoring port.

```

24     listenSocket = socket.socket()
25     listenSocket.bind((ip, port))
26     listenSocket.listen(1)
27     listenSocket.setsockopt(socket.SOL_SOCKET, socket.SO_REUSEADDR, 1)

```

Print the server's IP address and port, monitor the port and wait for the connection of other network devices.

```

29     while True:
30         print("Server IP:", ip, "\tPort:", port)
31         print("accepting.....")
32         conn, addr = listenSocket.accept()
33         print(addr, "connected")
34         break

```

Each time receiving data, print them in "Shell" and send them back to the client.

```

36     while True:
37         data = conn.recv(1024)
38         if(len(data) == 0):
39             print("close socket")
40             listenSocket.close()
41             wlan.disconnect()
42             wlan.active(False)
43             break
44         else:
45             print(data)
46             ret = conn.send(data)

```

If the client is disconnected, close the server and disconnect WiFi.

```

47     except:
48         print("Close TCP-Server, please reset.")
49         if(listenSocket):
50             listenSocket.close()
51             wlan.disconnect()
52             wlan.active(False)

```

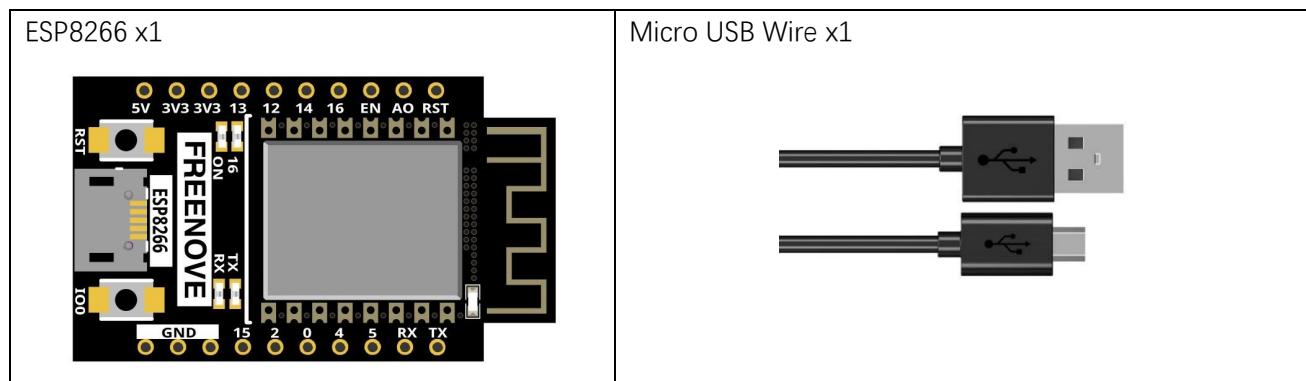
# Chapter 30 Smart Home

In this chapter, we will use ESP8266 to make a simple smart home. We will learn how to control LED lights through web pages.

## Project 30.1 Control\_LED\_through\_Web

In this project, we need to build a Web Service and then use ESP8266 to control the LED through the Web browser of the PC. Through this example, you can remotely control the appliances in your home to achieve smart home.

### Component List



## Component knowledge

### HTML

HyperText Markup Language (HTML) is a standard Markup Language for creating web pages. It includes a set of tags that unify documents on the network and connect disparate Internet resources into a logical whole. HTML text is descriptive text composed of HTML commands that describe text, graphics, animations, sounds, tables, links, etc. The extension of the HTML file is HTM or HTML. Hyper Text is a way to organize information. It uses hyperlinks to associate words and charts in Text with other information media. These related information media may be in the same Text, other files, or files located on a remote computer. This way of organizing information connects the information resources distributed in different places, which is convenient for people to search and retrieve information.

The nature of the Web is hypertext Markup Language (HTML), which can be combined with other Web technologies (e.g., scripting languages, common gateway interfaces, components, etc.) to create powerful Web pages. Thus, HYPERtext Markup Language (HTML) is the foundation of World Wide Web (Web) programming, that is, the World Wide Web is based on hypertext. Hypertext Markup Language is called hypertext Markup language because the text contains so-called "hyperlink" points.

You can build your own WEB site using HTML, which runs on the browser and is parsed by the browser.

Example analysis is shown in the figure below:



**<!DOCTYPE html>**: Declare it as an HTML5 document

**<html>**: Is the root element of an HTML page

**<head>**: Contains meta data for the document, such as &lt; meta charset="utf-8" &gt;. Define the web page encoding format to UTF-8.

**<title>**: Notes the title of the document

**<body>**: Contains visible page content

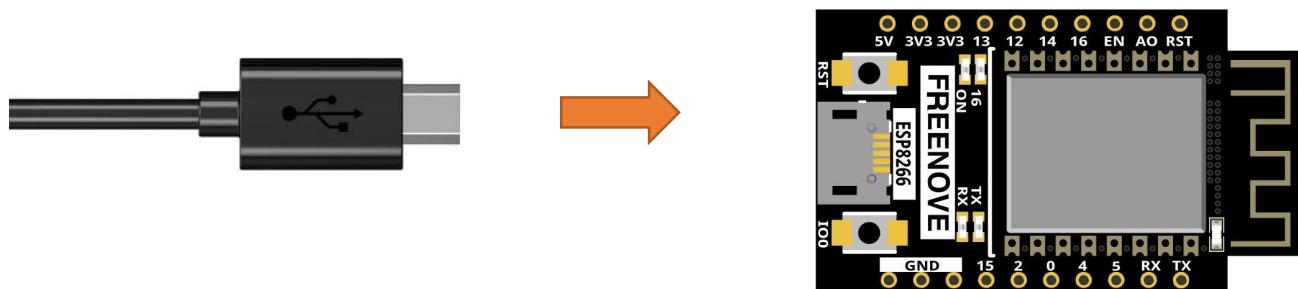
**<h1>**: Define a big heading

**<p>**: Define a paragraph

For more information, please visit: <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/HTML>

## Circuit

Connect Freenove ESP8266 to the computer using a USB cable.



## Code

Move the program folder “**Freenove\_Ultimate\_Starter\_Kit\_for\_ESP8266/Python/Python\_Codes**” to disk(D) in advance with the path of “**D:/Micropython\_Codes**”.

Open “Thonny”, click “This computer” → “D:” → “Micropython\_Codes” → “30.1\_Control\_LED\_through\_Web”. and double click “Control\_LED\_through\_Web”.

### 30.1\_Control\_LED\_through\_Web

The screenshot shows the Thonny IDE interface with the file `Control_LED_through_Web.py` open. The code is as follows:

```

1  from machine import Pin
2  import time
3  import socket
4  import network
5
6  # set led pin
7  led = Pin(2, Pin.OUT)
8
9  ssid = '*****'          #Enter the router name
10 password = '*****'      #Enter the router password
11
12 wifi_status = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
13 wifi_status.active(True)
14 wifi_status.connect(ssid, password)
15 # check wifi connected
16 while wifi_status.isconnected() == False:
17     print('Wifi lost connect...')
18 # if connected
19 print('Wifi connect successful')
20 print(wifi_status.ifconfig())
21
22 def WebPage():
23     if led.value() == 1:
24         gpio_state = 'OFF'
25     else:
26         gpio_state = 'ON'
27
28     # html code ...
29     html = """<html><head> <title>ESP8266 Web Server</title> <meta name="viewport" content="wid
30     <link rel="icon" href="data:;"/> <style>html{font-family: Helvetica; display:inline-block; mar
31     h1{color: #0F3376; padding: 2vh;}p{font-size: 1.5rem;}.button{display: inline-block; backgrou

```

A callout bubble with the text "Enter the correct Router name and password." points to the lines where the WiFi SSID and password are defined.

The bottom shell window shows the MicroPython version and a prompt:

```

MicroPython v1.18 on 2022-01-17; ESP module with ESP8266
Type "help()" for more information.
>>>

```

Because the names and passwords of routers in various places are different, before the Code runs, users need to enter the correct router's name and password in the box as shown in the illustration above.

After making sure the router name and password are entered correctly, compile and upload codes to ESP8266, wait for ESP8266 to connect to your router and print the IP address assigned by the router to ESP8266 in “Shell”.

```
Shell x
Wifi lost connect...
Wifi connect successful
('192.168.1.45', '255.255.255.0', '192.168.1.1', '192.168.1.1')
```

When ESP8266 successfully connects to “ssid”, “Shell” displays the IP address assigned to ESP8266 by the router. Access <http://192.168.1.45> in a computer browser on the LAN. As shown in the following figure:



You can click the corresponding button to control the LED on and off.

The following is the program code:

```
1 from machine import Pin
2 import time
3 import socket
4 import network
5
6 # set led pin
7 led = Pin(2, Pin.OUT)
8
9 ssid = '*****'          #Enter the router name
10 password = '*****'      #Enter the router password
11
```

Any concerns?  support@freenove.com

```
12 wifi_status = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
13 wifi_status.active(True)
14 wifi_status.connect(ssid, password)
15 # check wifi connected
16 while wifi_status.isconnected() == False:
17     print('Wifi lost connect...')
18 # if connected
19 print('Wifi connect successful')
20 print(wifi_status.ifconfig())
21
22 def WebPage():
23     if led.value() == 1:
24         gpio_state = 'OFF'
25     else:
26         gpio_state = 'ON'
27
28     # html code ...
29     html = """<html><head> <title>ESP8266 Web Server</title> <meta name="viewport"
30 content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1">
31     <link rel="icon" href="data:, "> <style>html{font-family: Helvetica; display:inline-block;
32 margin: 0px auto; text-align: center;}</style></head><body> <h1>ESP8266 Web Server</h1>
33     <p>GPIO state: <strong>"""+ gpio_state + """</strong></p><p><a href="/?led=on"><button
34 class="button">ON</button></a></p>
35     <p><a href="/?led=off"><button class="button button2">OFF</button></a></p></body></html>"""
36
37     return html
38
39
40 s = socket.socket(socket.AF_INET, socket.SOCK_STREAM)
41 s.bind(('', 80))
42 s.listen(5)
43 try:
44     while True:
45         conn, addr = s.accept()
46         print('Connection: %s' % str(addr))
47         req = conn.recv(1024)
48         req = str(req)
49         print('Connect = %s' % req)
50         led_on = req.find('/?led=on')
51         led_off = req.find('/?led=off')
52         if led_on == 6:
```

```

56         print(' LED ON')
57         led.value(0)
58     else:
59         print(' LED OFF')
60         led.value(1)
61     if led.value() == 1:
62         gpio_state = 'OFF'
63     else:
64         gpio_state = 'ON'
65     response = WebPage()
66     conn.send('HTTP/1.1 200 OK\n')
67     conn.send('Content-Type: text/html\n')
68     conn.send('Connection: close\n\n')
69     conn.sendall(response)
70     conn.close()
71 except:
72     pass

```

Import socket module and Import network module.

```

3 import socket
4 import network

```

Enter correct AP name and password.

```

3 ssid = '*****'          #Enter the router name
4 password = '*****'      #Enter the router password

```

Set ESP8266 in Station mode and connect it to your router.

```

12 wifi_status = network.WLAN(network.STA_IF)
13 wifi_status.active(True)
14 wifi_status.connect(ssid, password)

```

"Shell" displays the IP address assigned to ESP8266.

```

20 print(wifi_status.ifconfig())

```

Click the button on the web page to control the LED light on and off.

```

55     if led_on == 6:
56         print(' LED ON')
57         led.value(0)
58     else:
59         print(' LED OFF')
60         led.value(1)
61     if led.value() == 1:
62         gpio_state = 'OFF'
63     else:
64         gpio_state = 'ON'

```

# Chapter 31 Soldering Circuit Board

## Project 31.1 Soldering a Buzzer

We have tried to use a buzzer in a previous chapter, and now we will solder a circuit that when the button is pressed, the buzzer sounds.

This circuit doesn't need programming and can work when it is powered on. And when the button is not pressed, there is no power consumption.

You can install it on your bike, bedroom door or any other places where it is needed.

### Component List

Pin header x2	LED x1	Resistor 220Ω x1	Active buzzer x1	Push button x1
				

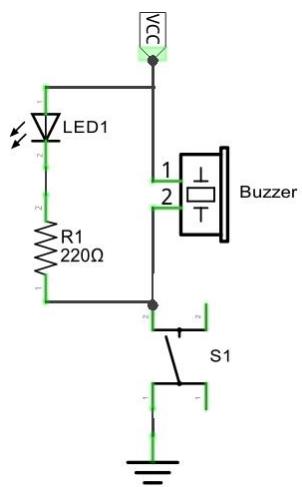
  

AA Battery Holder x1


## Circuit

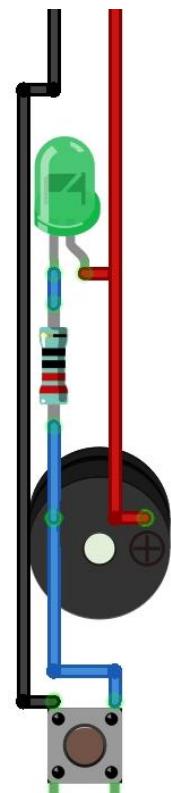
We will solder the following circuit on the main board.

Schematic diagram



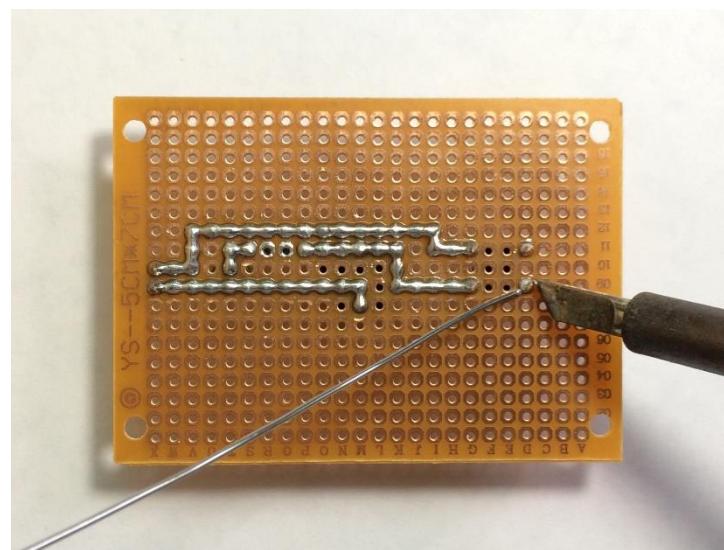
Hardware connection.

If you need any support, please feel free to contact us via: [support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

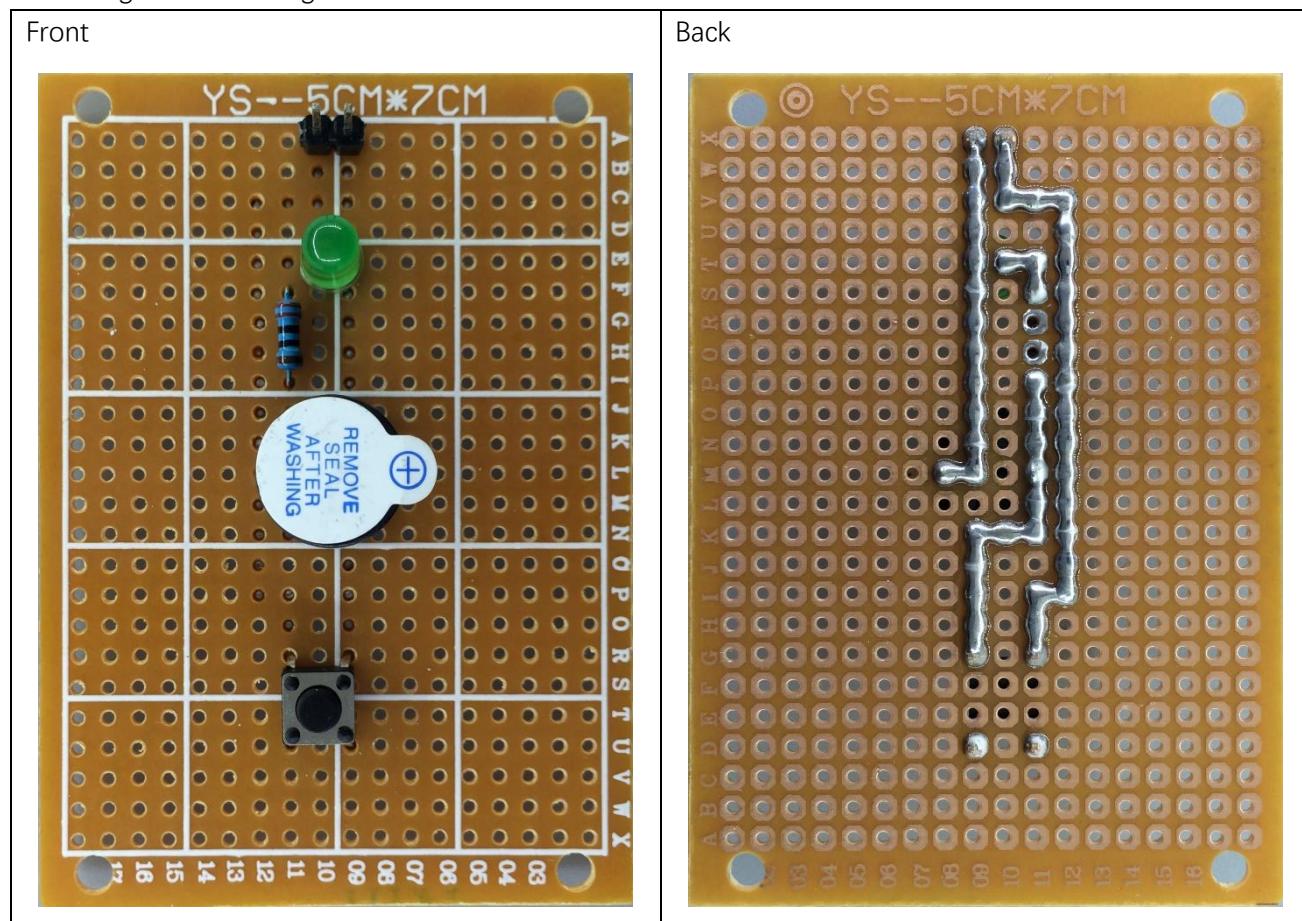


## Solder the Circuit

Insert the components on the main board and solder the circuit on its back.



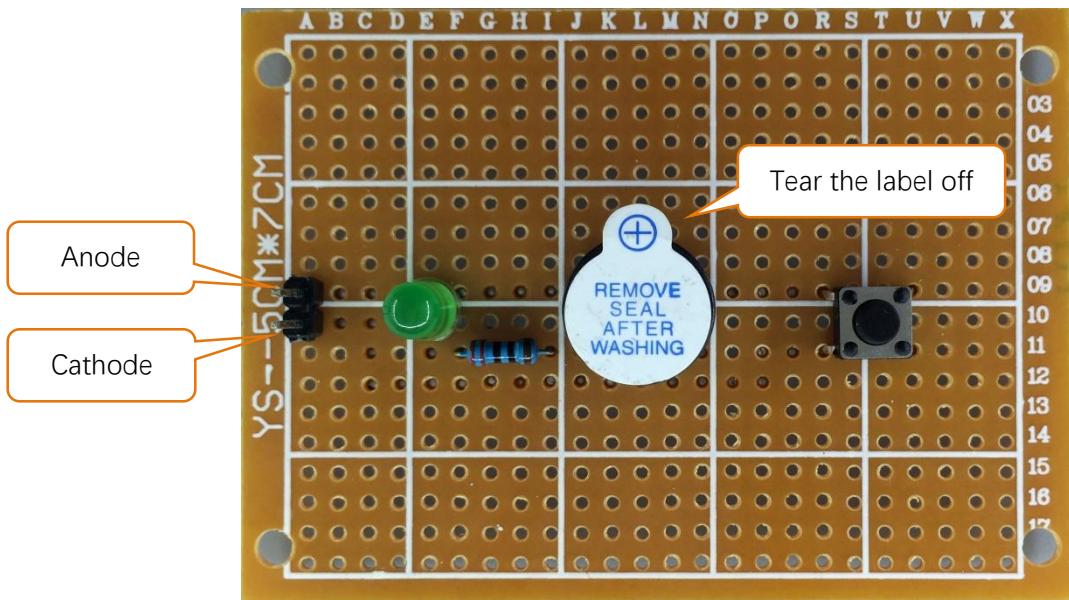
Rendering after soldering:





## Test circuit

Connect the circuit board to power supply (3~5V). You can use ESP8266 board or battery box as the power supply.



Press the push button after connecting the power, and then the buzzer will make a sound.

## Project 31.2 Soldering a Flowing Water Light

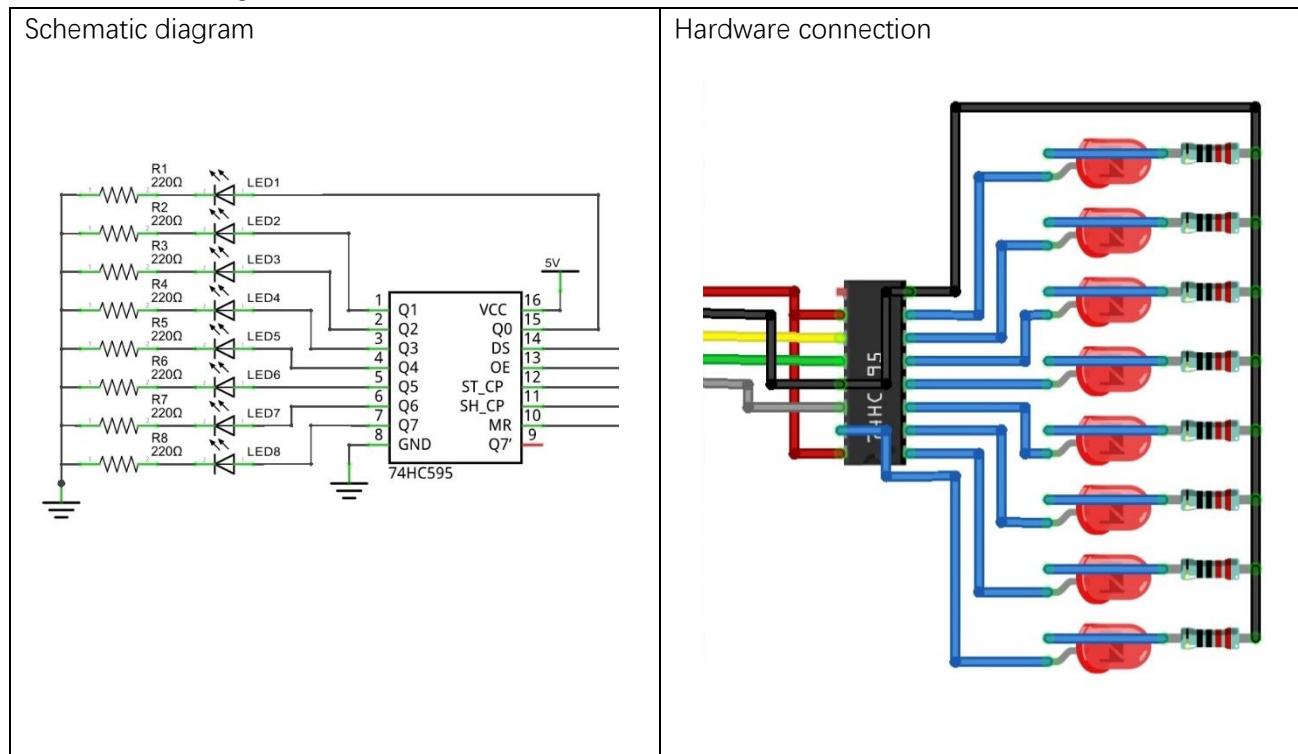
From previous chapter, we have learned to make a flowing water light with LED. Now, we will solder a circuit board, and use the improved code to make a more interesting flowing water light.

### Component List

Pin header x5	Resistor 220Ω x8	LED x1	74HC595 x1

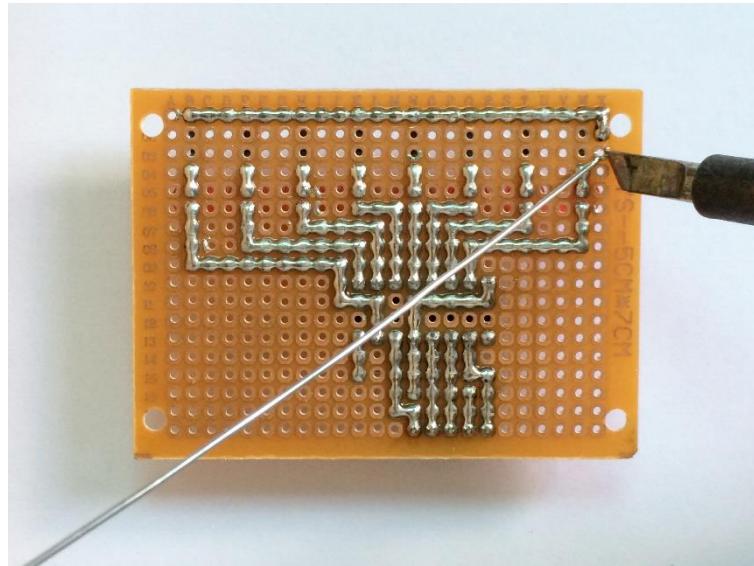
### Circuit

Solder the following circuit on the main board.

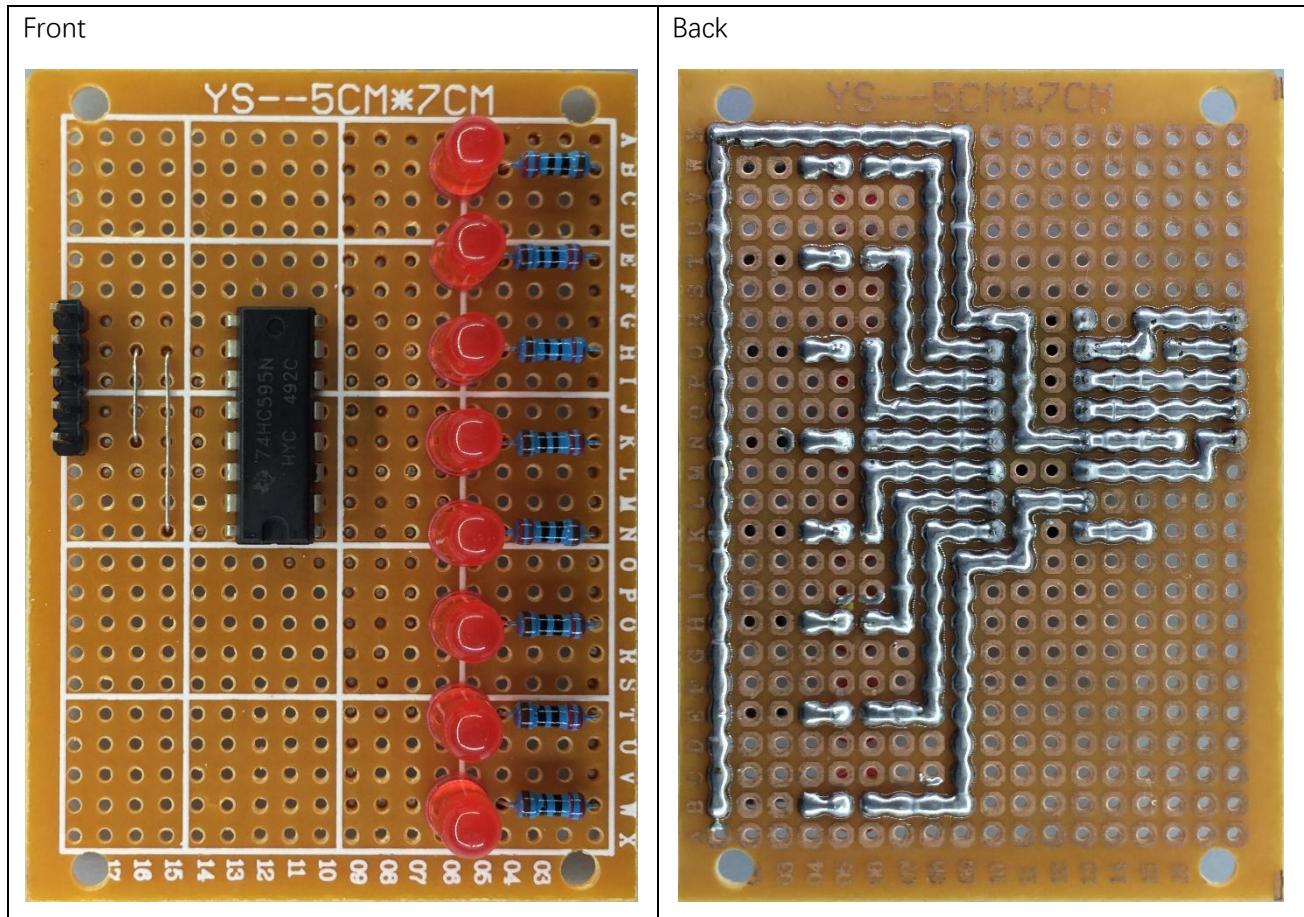


## Soldering the Circuit

Insert the components on the main board and solder the circuit on its back.

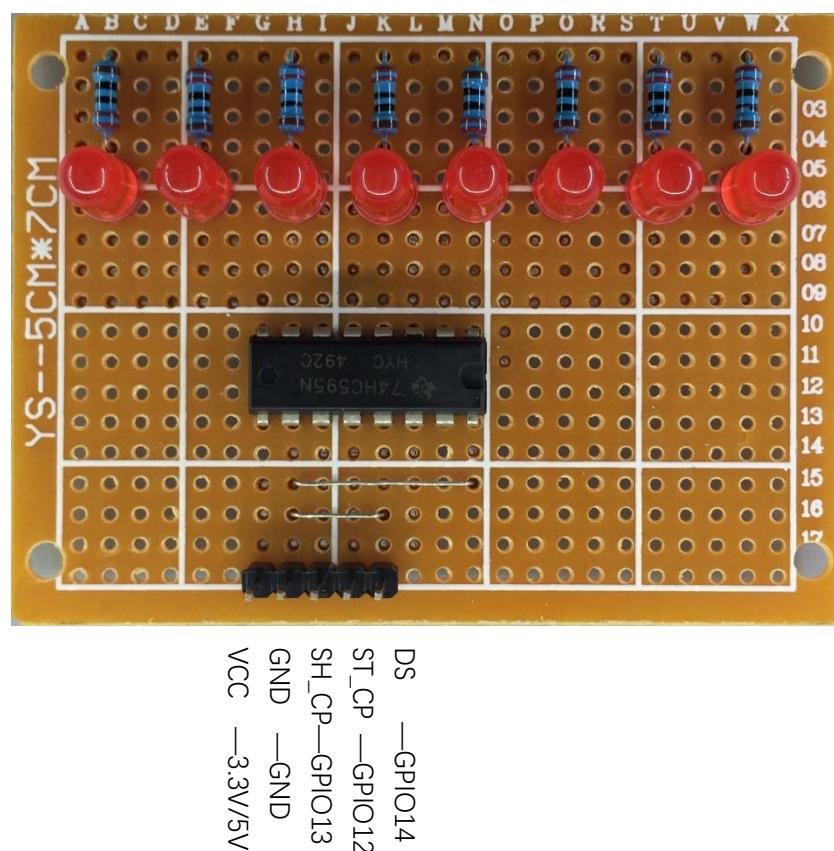


Rendering after soldering:



## Connect the Circuit

Connect the board to ESP8266 with jumper wire in the following way.



## Code

The following is the program code:

```

1 import time
2 from my74HC595 import Chip74HC595
3
4 chip = Chip74HC595(14, 12, 13)
5 # ESP8266-14: 74HC595-DS (14)
6 # ESP8266-12: 74HC595-STCP (12)
7 # ESP8266-13: 74HC595-SHCP (11)
8
9 while True:
10     x=0x01
11     for count in range(8):
12         chip.shiftOut(1,x) #High bit is sent first
13         x=x<<1

```

```
14     time.sleep_ms(300)
15     x=0x01
16     for count in range(8):
17         chip.shiftOut(0, x) #Low bit is sent first
18         x=x<<1
19         time.sleep_ms(300)
```

## What's next?

Thanks for your reading. This tutorial is all over here. If you find any mistakes, omissions or you have other ideas and questions about contents of this tutorial or the kit and etc., please feel free to contact us:

[support@freenove.com](mailto:support@freenove.com)

We will check and correct it as soon as possible.

If you want to learn more about Arduino, Raspberry Pi, smart cars, robots and other interesting products in science and technology, please continue to focus on our website. We will continue to launch cost-effective, innovative and exciting products.

<http://www.freenove.com/>

## End of the Tutorial

Thank you again for choosing Freenove products.